



IT8987E/VG

Embedded Controller

**Preliminary Specification V0.3.1
(For B Version)**

ITE TECH. INC.

*This specification is subject to Change without notice. It is provided "AS IS" and for reference only. For purchasing information, please contact the nearest sales representatives.
Please note that the IT8987E/VG V0.3.1 is applicable to the B version.*

Copyright © 2013 ITE Tech. Inc.

This is a Preliminary document release. All specifications are subject to change without notice.
The material contained in this document supersedes all previous material issued for the products herein referenced. Please contact ITE Tech. Inc. for the latest document(s).

All sales are subject to ITE's Standard Terms and Conditions, a copy of which is included in the back of this document.

ITE, IT8987 is a trademark of ITE Tech. Inc.

All other trademarks are claimed by their respective owners.

All specifications are subject to change without notice.

Additional copies of this manual or other ITE literature may be obtained from:

ITE Tech. Inc.
Marketing Department
7F, No.233-1, Baociao Rd., Sindian City,
Taipei County 23145, Taiwan, ROC

Phone: (02) 29126889
Fax: (02) 2910-2551, 2910-2552

If you have any marketing or sales questions, please contact:

P.Y. Chang, at ITE Taiwan:

E-mail: p.y.chang@ite.com.tw, Tel: 886-2-29126889 X6052, Fax: 886-2-29102551

You may also find the local sales representative nearest you on the ITE web site.

To find out more about ITE, visit our World Wide Web at:

<http://www.ite.com.tw>

Or e-mail itesupport@ite.com.tw for more product information/services

Revision History

Section	Revision	Page No.
6.2.2.4	Chip version modified	41
7.17.4.3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Original: 00h ● Modified: 01h 	402
6.3.4.4	Shared Memory EC Control and Status Register (SMECCS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The default value of bit 5 is decided by host I/F. 	90
7.5.3.9	General Control 8 Register (GCR8) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Bit 4 renamed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Original: PWRSTW WDT 2 Enable (PWSW2EN) ■ Modified: PWRSTW WDT 2 Enable 1 (PWSW2EN1) 	238
7.5.3.10	General Control 9 Register (GCR9) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Bit 5 added 	239
7.7.3.3	Pre-defined command description added	265
Table 7-17	SMBus Interrupt Events Expression table added	292
7.7.4.28	SMCLK 1MHz Setting added	305
7.7.4.29		306
7.7.4.30		306
7.7.4.31		307

CONTENTS

1. Features	1
2. General Description	3
3. System Block Diagram.....	5
3.1 Block Diagram.....	5
3.2 EC Mapped Memory Space	6
3.3 Register Abbreviation.....	8
4. Pin Configuration	9
4.1 Top View	9
5. Pin Descriptions	13
5.1 Pin Descriptions	13
5.2 Chip Power Planes and Power States	19
5.3 Pin Power Planes and States	20
5.4 PWRFAIL# Interrupt to INTC	23
5.5 Reset Sources and Types.....	24
5.5.1 Related Interrupts to INTC	24
5.6 Chip Power Mode and Clock Domain	25
5.7 Pins with Pull, Schmitt-Trigger or Open-Drain Function	29
5.8 Power Consumption Consideration	30
6. Host Domain Functions.....	33
6.1 Low Pin Count Interface.....	33
6.1.1 Overview.....	33
6.1.2 Features	33
6.1.3 Accepted LPC Cycle Type	33
6.1.4 Debug Port Function	34
6.1.5 Serialized IRQ (SERIRQ).....	34
6.1.6 Related Interrupts to WUC	34
6.1.7 LPCPD# and CLKRUN#.....	34
6.1.8 Check Items.....	35
6.2 Plug and Play Configuration (PNPCFG).....	36
6.2.1 Logical Device Assignment	39
6.2.2 Super I/O Configuration Registers	40
6.2.2.1 Logical Device Number (LDN).....	40
6.2.2.2 Chip ID Byte 1 (CHIPID1).....	40
6.2.2.3 Chip ID Byte 2 (CHIPID2).....	40
6.2.2.4 Chip Version (CHIPVER).....	41
6.2.2.5 Super I/O Control Register (SIOCTRL)	41
6.2.2.6 Super I/O IRQ Configuration Register (SIOIRQ)	41
6.2.2.7 Super I/O General Purpose Register (SIOGP).....	42
6.2.2.8 Super I/O Power Mode Register (SIOPWR).....	42
6.2.2.9 Depth 2 I/O Address (D2ADR)	42
6.2.2.10 Depth 2 I/O Data (D2DAT)	43
6.2.3 Standard Logical Device Configuration Registers	43
6.2.3.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	43
6.2.3.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	43
6.2.3.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	43
6.2.3.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	44
6.2.3.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	44
6.2.3.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	44
6.2.3.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	45
6.2.3.8 DMA Channel Select 0 (DMAS0)	45
6.2.3.9 DMA Channel Select 1 (DMAS1)	45
6.2.4 Serial Port 1 (UART1) Configuration Registers.....	46
6.2.4.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	46

6.2.4.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	46
6.2.4.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	46
6.2.4.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	46
6.2.4.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	47
6.2.4.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	47
6.2.4.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	47
6.2.4.8	High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS).....	47
6.2.5	Serial Port 2 (UART2) Configuration Registers	47
6.2.5.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	48
6.2.5.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	48
6.2.5.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	48
6.2.5.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	48
6.2.5.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	48
6.2.5.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	48
6.2.5.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	48
6.2.5.8	High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS).....	49
6.2.6	System Wake-Up Control (SWUC) Configuration Registers	49
6.2.6.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	49
6.2.6.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	49
6.2.6.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	49
6.2.6.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	50
6.2.6.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	50
6.2.6.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	50
6.2.6.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	50
6.2.7	KBC / Mouse Interface Configuration Registers	50
6.2.7.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	50
6.2.7.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	51
6.2.7.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	51
6.2.7.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	51
6.2.7.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	51
6.2.7.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	51
6.2.7.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	51
6.2.8	KBC / Keyboard Interface Configuration Registers	52
6.2.8.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	52
6.2.8.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	52
6.2.8.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	52
6.2.8.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	52
6.2.8.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	52
6.2.8.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	53
6.2.8.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	53
6.2.9	Consumer IR Configuration Registers	53
6.2.9.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	53
6.2.9.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	53
6.2.9.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	53
6.2.9.4	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	53
6.2.9.5	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	54
6.2.10	Shared Memory/Flash Interface (SMFI) Configuration Registers	54
6.2.10.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	54
6.2.10.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	54
6.2.10.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	55
6.2.10.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	55
6.2.10.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	55
6.2.10.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	55
6.2.10.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	55
6.2.10.8	LPC Memory Window Base Address [31:24] (LPCMWB[31:24])	55
6.2.10.9	LPC Memory Window Base Address [23:16] (LPCMWB[23:16])	56

6.2.10.10	LPC Memory Window Mapping Region Select (LPCMWMRS)	56
6.2.10.11	LPC Memory Window Control Register (LPCMWCR).....	56
6.2.10.12	Shared Memory Configuration Register (SHMC)	56
6.2.10.13	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [15:12] (HLPCRAMBA[15:12]).....	57
6.2.10.14	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [23:16] (HLPCRAMBA[23:16]).....	57
6.2.10.15	H2RAM Host Semaphore Interrupt Enable (H2RAMHSIE).....	57
6.2.10.16	H2RAM Host Semaphore Address (H2RAMHSA)	58
6.2.10.17	H2RAM EC Semaphore Status (H2RAMECSS)	59
6.2.10.18	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [24] (HLPCRAMBA[24]).....	59
6.2.11	RTC-like Timer Configuration Registers	60
6.2.11.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	60
6.2.11.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60
6.2.11.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	60
6.2.11.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	61
6.2.11.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	61
6.2.11.6	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[15:8])	61
6.2.11.7	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[7:0])	61
6.2.11.8	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 3 (IOBAD3[15:8])	61
6.2.11.9	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 3 (IOBAD3[7:0])	61
6.2.11.10	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 4 (IOBAD4[15:8])	61
6.2.11.11	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 4 (IOBAD4[7:0])	62
6.2.11.12	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	62
6.2.11.13	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	62
6.2.11.14	RAM Lock Register (RLR)	62
6.2.11.15	Date of Month Alarm Register Offset (DOMAO)	62
6.2.11.16	Month Alarm Register Offset (MONAO)	63
6.2.11.17	P80L Begin Index (P80LB)	63
6.2.11.18	P80L End Index (P80LE)	63
6.2.11.19	P80L Current Index (P80LC)	63
6.2.12	Power Management I/F Channel 1 Configuration Registers.....	64
6.2.12.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	64
6.2.12.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	64
6.2.12.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	64
6.2.12.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	64
6.2.12.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	65
6.2.12.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	65
6.2.12.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	65
6.2.13	Power Management I/F Channel 2 Configuration Registers.....	65
6.2.13.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	65
6.2.13.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	66
6.2.13.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	66
6.2.13.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	66
6.2.13.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	66
6.2.13.6	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[15:8])	66
6.2.13.7	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[7:0])	66
6.2.13.8	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	67
6.2.13.9	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	67
6.2.13.10	General Purpose Interrupt (GPINTR)	67
6.2.14	Power Management I/F Channel 3 Configuration Registers.....	67
6.2.14.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	67
6.2.14.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	68
6.2.14.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	68
6.2.14.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	68
6.2.14.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	68
6.2.14.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	68
6.2.14.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	68

6.2.15 Power Management I/F Channel 4 Configuration Registers.....	69
6.2.15.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	69
6.2.15.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	69
6.2.15.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	69
6.2.15.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	69
6.2.15.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	70
6.2.15.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	70
6.2.15.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	70
6.2.16 Power Management I/F Channel 5 Configuration Registers.....	70
6.2.16.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	70
6.2.16.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	70
6.2.16.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	71
6.2.16.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	71
6.2.16.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	71
6.2.16.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	71
6.2.16.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71
6.2.17 Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) Configuration Registers	72
6.2.17.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	72
6.2.17.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	72
6.2.17.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	72
6.2.17.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	72
6.2.17.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	73
6.2.17.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	73
6.2.17.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	73
6.2.18 Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI) Configuration Registers	73
6.2.18.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA).....	73
6.2.18.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	73
6.2.18.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	74
6.2.18.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	74
6.2.18.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	74
6.2.18.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX).....	74
6.2.18.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	74
6.2.19 Programming Guide	75
6.3 Shared Memory Flash Interface Bridge (SMFI)	77
6.3.1 Overview.....	77
6.3.2 Features	77
6.3.3 Function Description.....	77
6.3.3.1 Supported Interface	77
6.3.3.2 Supported Flash	77
6.3.3.3 HLPC: Host Translation	77
6.3.3.4 EC-Indirect Memory Read/Write Transaction	77
6.3.3.5 Flash Shared between Host and EC Domains	78
6.3.3.6 Response to a Forbidden Access.....	79
6.3.3.7 Scratch SRAM	79
6.3.3.8 DMA for Scratch SRAM	80
6.3.3.9 HLPC: Flash Programming via Host LPC Interface with Scratch SRAM	80
6.3.3.10 Force 8032 to Code Fetch from Internal SRAM	80
6.3.3.11 Force 8032 to Clear Dynamic Caches.....	81
6.3.3.12 HLPC: Serial Flash Programming	81
6.3.3.13 Host Side to EC Scratch RAM (H2RAM).....	82
6.3.3.14 E-flash Power-on Detection	85
6.3.4 EC Interface Registers	87
6.3.4.1 FBIU Configuration Register (FBCFG)	88
6.3.4.2 Flash Programming Configuration Register (FPCFG).....	89
6.3.4.3 Flash EC Code Banking Select Register (FECBSR).....	89
6.3.4.4 Shared Memory EC Control and Status Register (SMECCS).....	90

6.3.4.5	Shared Memory Host Semaphore Register (SMHSR)	90
6.3.4.6	Flash Control 1 Register (FLHCTRL1R).....	91
6.3.4.7	Flash Control 2 Register (FLHCTRL2R).....	91
6.3.4.8	Cache Disabled Register (CACHDISR).....	92
6.3.4.9	uC Control Register (UCCTRLR)	92
6.3.4.10	Host Control 2 Register (HCTRL2R)	92
6.3.4.11	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 0 (ECINDAR0)	92
6.3.4.12	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 1 (ECINDAR1)	93
6.3.4.13	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 2 (ECINDAR2)	93
6.3.4.14	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 3 (ECINDAR3)	93
6.3.4.15	EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR).....	93
6.3.4.16	Scratch SRAM 0 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR0L)	93
6.3.4.17	Scratch SRAM 0 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR0M).....	93
6.3.4.18	Scratch SRAM 0 Address High Byte Register (SCAR0H).....	94
6.3.4.19	Scratch SRAM 1 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR1L)	94
6.3.4.20	Scratch SRAM 1 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR1M)	94
6.3.4.21	Scratch SRAM 1 Address High Byte Register (SCAR1H).....	94
6.3.4.22	Scratch SRAM 2 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR2L)	94
6.3.4.23	Scratch SRAM 2 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR2M)	94
6.3.4.24	Scratch SRAM 2 Address High Byte Register (SCAR2H).....	95
6.3.4.25	Scratch SRAM 3 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR3L)	95
6.3.4.26	Scratch SRAM 3 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR3M)	95
6.3.4.27	Scratch SRAM 3 Address High Byte Register (SCAR3H).....	95
6.3.4.28	Scratch SRAM 4 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR4L).....	95
6.3.4.29	Scratch SRAM 4 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR4M)	95
6.3.4.30	Scratch SRAM 4 Address High Byte Register (SCAR4H).....	96
6.3.4.31	Protect 0 Base Addr Register 0 (P0BA0R).....	96
6.3.4.32	Protect 0 Base Addr Register 1 (P0BA1R).....	96
6.3.4.33	Protect 0 Size Register (P0ZR)	96
6.3.4.34	Protect 1 Base Addr Register 0 (P1BA0R).....	98
6.3.4.35	Protect 1 Base Addr Register 1 (P1BA1R).....	98
6.3.4.36	Protect 1 Size Register (P1ZR)	98
6.3.4.37	Protect 2 Base Addr Register 0 (P2BA0R).....	98
6.3.4.38	Protect 2 Base Addr Register 1 (P2BA1R).....	98
6.3.4.39	Protect 2 Size Register (P2ZR)	99
6.3.4.40	Protect 3 Base Addr Register 0 (P3BA0R).....	99
6.3.4.41	Protect 3 Base Addr Register 1 (P3BA1R).....	99
6.3.4.42	Protect 3 Size Register (P3ZR)	99
6.3.4.43	Deferred SPI Instruction (DSINST).....	99
6.3.4.44	Deferred SPI Address 15-12 (DSADR1)	99
6.3.4.45	Deferred SPI Address 23-16 (DSADR2)	100
6.3.4.46	Host Instruction Control 1 (HINSTC1)	100
6.3.4.47	Host Instruction Control 2 (HINSTC2)	100
6.3.4.48	Flash Control Register 3 (FLHCTRL3R).....	101
6.3.4.49	Flash Control Register 4 (FLHCTRL4R).....	101
6.3.4.50	Security Host View Block Mode Select [15:8] (SHVBMS[15:8])	102
6.3.4.51	Security Host View Block Mode Select [7:0] (SHVBMS[7:0])	102
6.3.4.52	Host RAM Window Control (HRAMWC)	102
6.3.4.53	Host RAM Winodw 0 Base Address (HRAMW0BA[11:4])	103
6.3.4.54	Host RAM Window 1 Base Address (HRAMW1BA[11:4])	103
6.3.4.55	Host RAM Window 0 Access Allow Size (HRAMW0AAS)	103
6.3.4.56	Host RAM Window 1 Access Allow Size (HRAMW1AAS)	104
6.3.4.57	Host RAM Winodw 2 Base Address (HRAMW2BA[11:4])	104
6.3.4.58	Host RAM Winodw 3 Base Address (HRAMW3BA[11:4])	104
6.3.4.59	Host RAM Window 2 Access Allow Size (HRAMW2AAS)	105
6.3.4.60	Host RAM Window 3 Access Allow Size (HRAMW3AAS)	105

6.3.4.61	H2RAM EC Semaphore Interrupt Enable (H2RAMECSIE).....	106
6.3.4.62	H2RAM EC Semaphore Address (H2RAMECSA)	106
6.3.4.63	H2RAM Host Semaphore Status (H2RAMHSS)	107
6.3.4.64	Host Protect Authentication Data Register (HPADR).....	108
6.3.4.65	Flash Control Register 5 (FLHCTRL5R).....	108
6.3.5	Host Interface Registers	108
6.3.5.1	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 0 (SMIMAR0)	108
6.3.5.2	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 1 (SMIMAR1)	109
6.3.5.3	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 2 (SMIMAR2)	109
6.3.5.4	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 3 (SMIMAR3)	109
6.3.5.5	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Data Register (SMIMDR)	109
6.3.5.6	Security Key Index Register (SECKIR)	109
6.3.5.7	Security Key Data Register (SECKDR)	109
6.3.5.8	Shared Memory Host Semaphore Register (SMHSR)	110
6.4	System Wake-Up Control (SWUC)	111
6.4.1	Overview.....	111
6.4.2	Features	111
6.4.3	Functional Description	111
6.4.3.1	Wake-Up Status.....	111
6.4.3.2	Wake-Up Events	112
6.4.3.3	Wake-Up Output Events	113
6.4.3.4	Other SWUC Controlled Options	113
6.4.4	Host Interface Registers	115
6.4.4.1	Wake-Up Event Status Register (WKSTR)	115
6.4.4.2	Wake-Up Event Enable Register (WKER).....	116
6.4.4.3	Wake-Up Signals Monitor Register (WKS MR)	116
6.4.4.4	Wake-Up ACPI Status Register (WKACPIR)	117
6.4.4.5	Wake-Up SMI# Enable Register (WKS MIER)	117
6.4.4.6	Wake-Up IRQ Enable Register (WKIRQER)	118
6.4.5	EC Interface Registers	118
6.4.5.1	SWUC Control Status 1 Register (SWCTL1)	119
6.4.5.2	SWUC Control Status 2 Register (SWCTL2)	120
6.4.5.3	SWUC Control Status 3 Register (SWCTL3)	120
6.4.5.4	SWUC Host Configuration Base Address Low Byte Register (SWCBALR).....	120
6.4.5.5	SWUC Host Configuration Base Address High Byte Register (SWCBAHR)	121
6.4.5.6	SWUC Interrupt Enable Register (SWCIER)	121
6.4.5.7	SWUC Host Event Status Register (SWCHSTR)	122
6.4.5.8	SWUC Host Event Interrupt Enable Register (SWCHIER)	123
6.5	Keyboard Controller (KBC)	124
6.5.1	Overview.....	124
6.5.2	Features	124
6.5.3	Functional Description	124
6.5.4	Host Interface Registers	125
6.5.4.1	KBC Data Input Register (KBDIR).....	126
6.5.4.2	KBC Data Output Register (KBDOR)	126
6.5.4.3	KBC Command Register (KBCMDR)	126
6.5.4.4	KBC Status Register (KBSTR)	126
6.5.5	EC Interface Registers	127
6.5.5.1	KBC Host Interface Control Register (KBHICR)	127
6.5.5.2	KBC Interrupt Control Register (KBIRQR)	128
6.5.5.3	KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Status Register (KBHISR)	129
6.5.5.4	KBC Host Interface Keyboard Data Output Register (KBHIKDR)	129
6.5.5.5	KBC Host Interface Mouse Data Output Register (KBHIMDR)	129
6.5.5.6	KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Data Input Register (KBHIDIR)	130
6.6	Power Management Channel (PMC)	131
6.6.1	Overview.....	131

6.6.2	Features	131
6.6.3	Functional Description	131
6.6.3.1	General Description	131
6.6.3.2	Compatible Mode	133
6.6.3.3	Enhanced PM mode	133
6.6.3.4	PMC2EX	134
6.6.3.5	PMC3/4/5	135
6.6.4	Host Interface Registers	136
6.6.4.1	PMC Data Input Register (PMDIR)	136
6.6.4.2	PMC Data Output Register (PMDOR)	136
6.6.4.3	PMC Command Register (PMCMDR)	136
6.6.4.4	Status Register (PMSTR)	137
6.6.5	EC Interface Registers	138
6.6.5.1	PM Status Register (PMSTS)	139
6.6.5.2	PM Data Out Port (PMDO)	139
6.6.5.3	PM Data Out Port with SCI# (PMDOSCI)	139
6.6.5.4	PM Data Out Port with SMI# (PMDOSMI)	140
6.6.5.5	PM Data In Port (PMDI)	140
6.6.5.6	PM Data In Port with SCI# (PMDISCI)	140
6.6.5.7	PM Control (PMCTL)	141
6.6.5.8	PM Interrupt Control (PMIC)	142
6.6.5.9	PM Interrupt Enable (PMIE)	143
6.6.5.10	Mailbox Control (MBXCTRL)	143
6.6.5.11	PMC3 Status Register (PM3STS)	144
6.6.5.12	PMC3 Data Out Port (PM3DO)	144
6.6.5.13	PMC3 Data In Port (PM3DI)	144
6.6.5.14	PMC3 Control (PM3CTL)	144
6.6.5.15	PMC3 Interrupt Control (PM3IC)	145
6.6.5.16	PMC3 Interrupt Enable (PM3IE)	145
6.6.5.17	PMC4 Status Register (PM4STS)	145
6.6.5.18	PMC4 Data Out Port (PM4DO)	146
6.6.5.19	PMC4 Data In Port (PM4DI)	146
6.6.5.20	PMC4 Control (PM4CTL)	146
6.6.5.21	PMC4 Interrupt Control (PM4IC)	146
6.6.5.22	PMC4 Interrupt Enable (PM4IE)	146
6.6.5.23	PMC5 Status Register (PM5STS)	147
6.6.5.24	PMC5 Data Out Port (PM5DO)	147
6.6.5.25	PMC5 Data In Port (PM5DI)	147
6.6.5.26	PMC5 Control (PM5CTL)	147
6.6.5.27	PMC5 Interrupt Control (PM5IC)	148
6.6.5.28	PMC5 Interrupt Enable (PM5IE)	148
6.6.5.29	16-byte PMC2EX Mailbox 0-15 (MBXEC0-15)	148
6.7	RTC-like Timer (RTCT)	149
6.7.1	Overview	149
6.7.2	Features	149
6.7.3	Functional Description	149
6.7.3.1	Timekeeping	149
6.7.3.2	Update Cycles	149
6.7.3.3	Interrupts	149
6.7.4	Host Interface Registers	150
6.7.4.1	RTCT Bank 0 Register	152
6.7.4.2	RTCT Bank 1 Register	158
6.7.4.3	RTCT I/O Register	160
6.8	Consumer IR (CIR) in Host Domain	161
6.8.1	Overview	161
6.9	Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) in Host Domain	162

6.9.1	Overview.....	162
6.10	Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI) in Host Domain	163
6.10.1	Overview.....	163
6.11	Serial Port 1/2 (UART1/UART2) in Host Domain	164
6.11.1	Overview.....	164
7.	EC Domain Functions	165
7.1	8032 Embedded Controller (EC).....	165
7.1.1	Overview.....	165
7.1.2	Features	165
7.1.3	General Description.....	165
7.1.4	Functional Description.....	165
7.1.5	Memory Organization	166
7.1.6	On-Chip Peripherals.....	167
7.1.7	Timer / Counter	169
7.1.8	Idle and Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep Mode.....	178
7.1.9	EC Internal Register Description	178
7.1.9.1	Port 0 Register (P0R)	179
7.1.9.2	Stack Pointer Register (SPR)	179
7.1.9.3	Data Pointer Low Register (DPLR).....	179
7.1.9.4	Data Pointer High Register (DPHR)	180
7.1.9.5	Data Pointer 1 Low Register (DP1LR).....	180
7.1.9.6	Data Pointer 1 High Register (DP1HR)	180
7.1.9.7	Data Pointer Select Register (DPSR)	180
7.1.9.8	Power Control Register (PCON).....	180
7.1.9.9	Timer Control Register (TCON).....	181
7.1.9.10	Timer Mode Register (TMOD)	182
7.1.9.11	Timer 0 Low Byte Register (TL0R)	182
7.1.9.12	Timer 1 Low Byte Register (TL1R)	182
7.1.9.13	Timer 0 High Byte Register (TH0R)	182
7.1.9.14	Timer 1 Low Byte Register (TH1R)	183
7.1.9.15	Clock Control Register (CKCON)	183
7.1.9.16	Port 1 Register (P1R)	183
7.1.9.17	Serial Port Control Register (SCON)	184
7.1.9.18	Serial Port Buffer Register (SBUFR)	184
7.1.9.19	Port 2 Register (P2R)	184
7.1.9.20	Interrupt Enable Register (IE)	185
7.1.9.21	Port 3 Register (P3R)	185
7.1.9.22	Interrupt Priority Register (IP)	185
7.1.9.23	Status Register (STATUS)	186
7.1.9.24	Timer 2 Control Register (T2CON)	186
7.1.9.25	Timer Mode Register (T2MOD)	187
7.1.9.26	Timer 2 Capture Low Byte Register (RCAP2LR)	187
7.1.9.27	Timer 2 Capture High Byte Register (RCAP2HR)	187
7.1.9.28	Timer 2 Low Byte Register (TL2R)	187
7.1.9.29	Timer 2 High Byte Register (TH2R)	187
7.1.9.30	Program Status Word Register (PSW)	188
7.1.9.31	Watch Dog Timer Control Register (WDTCON)	188
7.1.9.32	Accumulator Register (ACC)	188
7.1.9.33	B Register (BR).....	189
7.1.9.34	Manual Prefetch Register (MPREFC)	189
7.1.10	Programming Guide	189
7.1.10.1	IT8987 Coding Consideration	189
7.1.10.2	Code Snippet of Entering Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep Mode	190
7.1.10.3	Code snippet of Copying Flash Content to Scratch ROM 0 (PIO)	191
7.1.10.4	Code snippet of Copying Flash Content to Scratch ROM (DMA)	192
7.1.10.5	Code snippet of Clearing Dynamic Caches.....	192

7.1.10.6	Code snippet of EC Base Signature	192
7.2	Interrupt Controller (INTC)	193
7.2.1	Overview	193
7.2.2	Features	193
7.2.3	Functional Description	193
7.2.3.1	Power Fail Interrupt	193
7.2.3.2	ROM Match Interrupt	193
7.2.3.3	Programmable Interrupts	193
7.2.4	EC Interface Registers	194
7.2.4.1	Interrupt Status Register 0-19 (ISR0 - ISR19)	196
7.2.4.2	Interrupt Enable Register 0-19 (IER0 - IER19)	197
7.2.4.3	Interrupt Edge/Level-Trigged Mode Register 0-19 (IELMR0 - IELMR19)	198
7.2.4.4	Interrupt Polarity Register 0-19 (IPOLR0 - IPOLR19)	199
7.2.4.5	Interrupt Vector Register (IVCT)	200
7.2.4.6	8032 INT0# Status (INT0ST)	200
7.2.4.7	Power Fail Register (PFAILR)	201
7.2.5	INTC Interrupt Assignments	202
7.2.6	Programming Guide	208
7.3	Wake-Up Control (WUC)	209
7.3.1	Overview	209
7.3.2	Features	209
7.3.3	Functional Description	209
7.3.4	EC Interface Registers	209
7.3.4.1	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 1-14 (WUEMR1-WUEMR14)	210
7.3.4.2	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 1-14 (WUESR1-WUESR14)	211
7.3.4.3	Wake-Up Enable Register 1/3/4 (WUENR1, WUENR3, WUENR4)	211
7.3.5	WUC Input Assignments	212
7.3.6	Programming Guide	216
7.4	Keyboard Matrix Scan Controller	217
7.4.1	Overview	217
7.4.2	Features	217
7.4.3	Functional Description	217
7.4.4	EC Interface Registers	218
7.4.4.1	Keyboard Scan Out Low Byte Data Register (KSOL)	218
7.4.4.2	Keyboard Scan Out High Byte Data 1 Register (KSOH1)	219
7.4.4.3	Keyboard Scan Out Control Register (KSOCTRL)	219
7.4.4.4	Keyboard Scan Out High Byte Data 2 Register (KSOH2)	219
7.4.4.5	Keyboard Scan In Data Register (KSIR)	219
7.4.4.6	Keyboard Scan In Control Register (KSICTRLR)	220
7.4.4.7	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Control Register (KSIGCTRLR)	220
7.4.4.8	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSIGOENR)	221
7.4.4.9	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Data Register (KSIGDATR)	221
7.4.4.10	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSIGDMRR)	222
7.4.4.11	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Control Register (KSOHGCTRLR)	223
7.4.4.12	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSOHGOENR)	223
7.4.4.13	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSOHGDMRR)	224
7.4.4.14	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Control Register (KSOLGCTRLR)	225
7.4.4.15	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSOLGOENR)	225
7.4.4.16	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSOLGDMRR)	226
7.4.4.17	KSO0 Low Scan Data Register (KSO0LSDR)	226
7.4.4.18	KSO1 Low Scan Data Register (KSO1LSDR)	227
7.4.4.19	KSO2 Low Scan Data Register (KSO2LSDR)	227
7.4.4.20	KSO3 Low Scan Data Register (KSO3LSDR)	227
7.4.4.21	KSO4 Low Scan Data Register (KSO4LSDR)	227
7.4.4.22	KSO5 Low Scan Data Register (KSO5LSDR)	227
7.4.4.23	KSO6 Low Scan Data Register (KSO6LSDR)	227

7.4.4.24	KSO7 Low Scan Data Register (KSO7LSDR)	228
7.4.4.25	KSO8 Low Scan Data Register (KSO8LSDR)	228
7.4.4.26	KSO9 Low Scan Data Register (KSO9LSDR)	228
7.4.4.27	KSO10 Low Scan Data Register (KSO10LSDR)	228
7.4.4.28	KSO11 Low Scan Data Register (KSO11LSDR)	228
7.4.4.29	KSO12 Low Scan Data Register (KSO12LSDR)	228
7.4.4.30	KSO13 Low Scan Data Register (KSO13LSDR)	229
7.4.4.31	KSO14 Low Scan Data Register (KSO14LSDR)	229
7.4.4.32	KSO15 Low Scan Data Register (KSO15LSDR)	229
7.4.4.33	KSO16 Low Scan Data Register (KSO16LSDR)	229
7.4.4.34	KSO17 Low Scan Data Register (KSO17LSDR)	229
7.4.4.35	Scan Data Control1 Register (SDC1R)	230
7.4.4.36	Scan Data Control2 Register (SDC2R)	230
7.4.4.37	Scan Data Control3 Register (SDC3R)	231
7.4.4.38	Scan Data Status Register (SDSR)	231
7.5	General Purpose I/O Port (GPIO)	232
7.5.1	Overview	232
7.5.2	Features	232
7.5.3	EC Interface Registers	232
7.5.3.1	General Control Register (GCR)	233
7.5.3.2	General Control 1 Register (GCR1)	234
7.5.3.3	General Control 2 Register (GCR2)	235
7.5.3.4	General Control 3 Register (GCR3)	235
7.5.3.5	General Control 4 Register (GCR4)	236
7.5.3.6	General Control 5 Register (GCR5)	236
7.5.3.7	General Control 6 Register (GCR6)	237
7.5.3.8	General Control 7 Register (GCR7)	237
7.5.3.9	General Control 8 Register (GCR8)	238
7.5.3.10	General Control 9 Register (GCR9)	239
7.5.3.11	General Control 10 Register (GCR10)	240
7.5.3.12	General Control 11 Register (GCR11)	240
7.5.3.13	General Control 12 Register (GCR12)	240
7.5.3.14	General Control 13 Register (GCR13)	241
7.5.3.15	General Control 14 Register (GCR14)	241
7.5.3.16	General Control 15 Register (GCR15)	241
7.5.3.17	General Control 16 Register (GCR16)	242
7.5.3.18	General Control 17 Register (GCR17)	242
7.5.3.19	General Control 18 Register (GCR18)	243
7.5.3.20	General Control 19 Register (GCR19)	244
7.5.3.21	General Control 20 Register (GCR20)	245
7.5.3.22	General Control 21 Register (GCR21)	246
7.5.3.23	General Control 22 Register (GCR22)	246
7.5.3.24	Port Data Registers A-J,M (GPDRA-J,M)	246
7.5.3.25	Port Data Mirror Registers A-J,M (GPDMRA-J,M)	247
7.5.3.26	Port Control n Registers (GPCRn, n = A0-M6)	248
7.5.3.27	Output Type Registers A/B/D/E/F/H/J (GPOT A/B/D/E/F/H/J)	249
7.5.4	Alternate Function Selection	250
7.5.5	Programming Guide	256
7.6	EC Clock and Power Management Controller (ECPM)	257
7.6.1	Overview	257
7.6.2	Features	257
7.6.3	EC Interface Registers	257
7.6.3.1	Clock Gating Control 1 Register (CGCTRL1R)	257
7.6.3.2	Clock Gating Control 2 Register (CGCTRL2R)	258
7.6.3.3	Clock Gating Control 3 Register (CGCTRL3R)	258
7.6.3.4	PLL Control (PLLCTRL)	259

7.6.3.5	Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG).....	259
7.6.3.6	PLL Frequency (PLLFRQ).....	260
7.6.3.7	Clock Gating Control 4 Register (CGCTRL4R)	260
7.7	SMBus Interface (SMB)	261
7.7.1	Overview.....	261
7.7.2	Features	261
7.7.3	Functional Description.....	261
7.7.3.1	SMBus Master Interface	262
7.7.3.2	SMBus Slave Interface	264
7.7.3.3	SMBus Porting Guide	265
7.7.3.4	SMBus Master Programming Guide	275
7.7.3.5	Description of SMCLK and SMDAT Line Control in Software Mode	289
7.7.3.6	Description of SMBus Slave Interface Select.....	289
7.7.3.7	Expression of SMBus Interrupt Events	292
7.7.3.8	SMBus Waveform.....	294
7.7.4	EC Interface Registers	295
7.7.4.1	Host Status Register (HOSTA).....	296
7.7.4.2	Host Control Register (HOCTL).....	297
7.7.4.3	Host Command Register (HOCMD)	297
7.7.4.4	Transmit Slave Address Register (TRASLA)	298
7.7.4.5	Data 0 Register (D0REG).....	298
7.7.4.6	Data 1 Register (D1REG).....	298
7.7.4.7	Host Block Data Byte Register (HOBDB)	298
7.7.4.8	Packet Error Check Register (PECERC).....	299
7.7.4.9	Receive Slave Address Register (RESLADR)	299
7.7.4.10	Receive Slave Address Register 2 (RESLADR2)	299
7.7.4.11	Slave Data Register (SLDA)	299
7.7.4.12	SMBus Pin Control Register (SMBPCTL)	300
7.7.4.13	Slave Status Register (SLSTA)	300
7.7.4.14	Slave Interrupt Control Register (SICR)	301
7.7.4.15	Notify Device Address Register (NDADR).....	301
7.7.4.16	Notify Data Low Byte Register (NDLB).....	302
7.7.4.17	Notify Data High Byte Register (NDHB)	302
7.7.4.18	Host Control Register 2 (HOCTL2).....	302
7.7.4.19	Slave Interface Select Register (SLVISELR)	303
7.7.4.20	4.7 μ s Low Register (4P7USL)	303
7.7.4.21	4.0 μ s Low Register (4P0USL)	304
7.7.4.22	300 ns Register (300NSREG)	304
7.7.4.23	250 ns Register (250NSREG)	304
7.7.4.24	25 ms Register (25MSREG)	304
7.7.4.25	45.3 μ s Low Register (45P3USLREG)	304
7.7.4.26	45.3 μ s High Register (45P3USHREG)	305
7.7.4.27	4.7 μ s And 4.0 μ s High Register (4P7A4P0H)	305
7.7.4.28	SMCLK Timing Setting Register A (SCLKTS_A)	305
7.7.4.29	SMCLK Timing Setting Register B (SCLKTS_B)	306
7.7.4.30	SMCLK Timing Setting Register C (SCLKTS_C)	306
7.7.4.31	SMCLK Timing Setting Register D (SCLKTS_D)	307
7.7.4.32	Master FIFO Control 1 Register (MSTFCTRL1).....	307
7.7.4.33	Master FIFO Status 1 Register (MSTFSTS1)	307
7.7.4.34	Master FIFO Control 2 Register (MSTFCTRL2)	308
7.7.4.35	Master FIFO Status 2 Register (MSTFSTS2)	308
7.7.4.36	Host Nack Source (HONACKSRC) (A)(B)(C)(D)	309
7.7.4.37	Slave FIFO Threshold (SLVFTH)	309
7.7.4.38	Master FIFO Threshold (MSTFTH)	309
7.7.4.39	Master FIFO Threshold Enable (MFTHEN)	310
7.7.4.40	Master FIFO Threshold Interrupt Status (MFTISTA)	311

7.7.4.41	Slave FIFO Threshold Enable (SFTHEN)	311
7.7.4.42	Slave FIFO Threshold Interrupt Status (SFTISTA)	312
7.7.4.43	Slave FIFO Control Register (SFFCTL)	312
7.7.4.44	Slave FIFO Status (SFFSTA)	312
7.7.4.45	I2C Wr To Rd FIFO Register (I2CW2RF).....	313
7.7.4.46	I2C Wr To Rd FIFO Interrupt Status (IWRFISTA)	313
7.8	Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI).....	314
7.8.1	Overview.....	314
7.8.2	Features	314
7.8.3	Functional Description.....	314
7.8.3.1	PECI Porting Guide	314
7.8.3.2	PECI Programming Guide	315
7.8.4	Host Interface Registers.....	317
7.8.5	EC Interface Registers	317
7.8.5.1	Host Status Register (HOSTAR)	318
7.8.5.2	Host Control Register (HOCTRLR).....	319
7.8.5.3	Host Command (Write Data 1) Register (HOCMDR).....	320
7.8.5.4	Host Target Address Register (HOTRADDR)	320
7.8.5.5	Host Write Length Register (HOWRLR)	320
7.8.5.6	Host Read Length Register (HORDLR).....	320
7.8.5.7	Host Write Data (2-16) Register (HOWRDR)	320
7.8.5.8	Host Read Data (1-16) Register (HORDDR).....	320
7.8.5.9	Host Control 2 Register (HOCTL2R)	321
7.8.5.10	Pad Control Register (PADCTRLR)	321
7.8.5.11	Received Write FCS Value (RWFCSV).....	321
7.8.5.12	Received Read FCS Value (RRFCSV)	321
7.8.5.13	Write FCS Value (WFCSV)	322
7.8.5.14	Read FCS Value (RFCSV)	322
7.8.5.15	Assured Write FCS Value (AWFCSV).....	322
7.9	PS/2 Interface	323
7.9.1	Overview.....	323
7.9.2	Features	323
7.9.3	Functional Description.....	323
7.9.3.1	Hardware Mode Selected	323
7.9.3.2	Software Mode Selected	324
7.9.4	EC Interface Registers	324
7.9.4.1	PS/2 Control Register 1-3 (PSCTL1-3)	325
7.9.4.2	PS/2 Interrupt Control Register 1-3 (PSINT1-3).....	325
7.9.4.3	PS/2 Status Register 1-3 (PSSTS1-3).....	326
7.9.4.4	PS/2 Data Register 1-3 (PSDAT1-3).....	326
7.10	Digital to Analog Converter (DAC)	327
7.10.1	Overview.....	327
7.10.2	Feature	327
7.10.3	Functional Description.....	327
7.10.4	EC Interface Registers	327
7.10.4.1	DAC Power Down Register (DACPREG)	328
7.10.4.2	DAC Data Channel 2~5 Register (DADAT2~5)	328
7.11	Analog to Digital Converter (ADC)	329
7.11.1	Overview.....	329
7.11.2	Features	329
7.11.3	Functional Description.....	329
7.11.3.1	ADC General Description	330
7.11.3.2	Voltage Measurement and Automatic Hardware Calibration	330
7.11.3.3	ADC Operation	331
7.11.4	EC Interface Registers	332
7.11.4.1	ADC Status Register (ADCSTS)	333

7.11.4.2 ADC Configuration Register (ADCCFG).....	334
7.11.4.3 ADC Clock Control Register (ADCCTL)	334
7.11.4.4 ADC General Control Register (ADCGCR)	334
7.11.4.5 Voltage Channel 0 Control Register (VCH0CTL).....	335
7.11.4.6 Calibration Data Control Register (KDCTL)	335
7.11.4.7 Voltage Channel 1 Control Register (VCH1CTL).....	336
7.11.4.8 Volt Channel 1 Data Buffer LSB (VCH1DATL).....	336
7.11.4.9 Volt Channel 1 Data Buffer MSB (VCH1DATM).....	336
7.11.4.10 Voltage Channel 2 Control Register (VCH2CTL).....	337
7.11.4.11 Volt Channel 2 Data Buffer LSB (VCH2DATL).....	337
7.11.4.12 Volt Channel 2 Data Buffer MSB (VCH2DATM).....	337
7.11.4.13 Voltage Channel 3 Control Register (VCH3CTL).....	337
7.11.4.14 Volt Channel 3 Data Buffer LSB (VCH3DATL).....	338
7.11.4.15 Volt Channel 3 Data Buffer MSB (VCH3DATM).....	338
7.11.4.16 Voltage Channel 0 Data Buffer LSB (VCH0DATL).....	338
7.11.4.17 Voltage Channel 0 Data Buffer MSB (VCH0DATM).....	338
7.11.4.18 Voltage Compare Scan Period (VCMPSCP).....	339
7.11.4.19 Voltage Channel 4 Control Register (VCH4CTL).....	339
7.11.4.20 Volt Channel 4 Data Buffer MSB (VCH4DATM).....	340
7.11.4.21 Volt Channel 4 Data Buffer LSB (VCH4DATL).....	340
7.11.4.22 Voltage Channel 5 Control Register (VCH5CTL).....	340
7.11.4.23 Volt Channel 5 Data Buffer MSB (VCH5DATM).....	341
7.11.4.24 Volt Channel 5 Data Buffer LSB (VCH5DATL).....	341
7.11.4.25 Voltage Channel 6 Control Register (VCH6CTL).....	341
7.11.4.26 Volt Channel 6 Data Buffer MSB (VCH6DATM).....	342
7.11.4.27 Volt Channel 6 Data Buffer LSB (VCH6DATL).....	342
7.11.4.28 Voltage Channel 7 Control Register (VCH7CTL).....	342
7.11.4.29 Volt Channel 7 Data Buffer MSB (VCH7DATM).....	343
7.11.4.30 Volt Channel 7 Data Buffer LSB (VCH7DATL).....	343
7.11.4.31 ADC Data Valid Status (ADCDVSTS)	343
7.11.4.32 Voltage Compare Status (VCMPSTS).....	344
7.11.4.33 Voltage Compare 0 Control Register (VCMP0CTL).....	345
7.11.4.34 Voltage Comparator 0 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP0THRDATM)	346
7.11.4.35 Voltage Comparator 0 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP0THRDATL)	346
7.11.4.36 Voltage Compare 1 Control Register (VCMP1CTL).....	346
7.11.4.37 Voltage Comparator 1 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP1THRDATM)	347
7.11.4.38 Voltage Comparator 1 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP1THRDATL)	347
7.11.4.39 Voltage Compare 2 Control Register (VCMP2CTL).....	347
7.11.4.40 Voltage Comparator 2 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP2THRDATM)	348
7.11.4.41 Voltage Comparator 2 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP2THRDATL)	348
7.11.4.42 Voltage Comparator Output Type Register (VCMPOTR).....	348
7.11.4.43 Voltage Comparator Lock Register (VCMPLR).....	348
7.11.5 ADC Programming Guide.....	349
7.11.6 Voltage Comparator Programming Guide.....	350
7.12 PWM	352
7.12.1 Overview.....	352
7.12.2 Features	352
7.12.3 Functional Description	352
7.12.3.1 General Description	352
7.12.3.2 Manual Fan Control Mode	354
7.12.3.3 Manual Color Frequency Control Mode.....	354
7.12.3.4 PWM Dimming Mode	355
7.12.4 EC Interface Registers	356
7.12.4.1 Channel 0 Clock Prescaler Register (C0CPRS)	357
7.12.4.2 Cycle Time Register 0 (CTR0)	357
7.12.4.3 Cycle Time Register 1 (CTR1)	357

7.12.4.4	Cycle Time Register 2 (CTR2)	357
7.12.4.5	Cycle Time Register 3 (CTR3)	358
7.12.4.6	PWM Duty Cycle Register 0 to 7(DCRi)	358
7.12.4.7	PWM Polarity Register (PWMPOL)	358
7.12.4.8	Prescaler Clock Frequency Select Register (PCFSR)	359
7.12.4.9	Prescaler Clock Source Select Group Low (PCSSGL)	359
7.12.4.10	Prescaler Clock Source Select Group High (PCSSGH)	360
7.12.4.11	Prescaler Clock Source Gating Register (PCSGR)	361
7.12.4.12	Fan 1 Tachometer LSB Reading Register (F1TLRR)	361
7.12.4.13	Fan 1 Tachometer MSB Reading Register (F1TMRR)	361
7.12.4.14	Fan 2 Tachometer LSB Reading Register (F2TLRR)	361
7.12.4.15	Fan 2 Tachometer MSB Reading Register (F2TMRR)	362
7.12.4.16	Zone Interrupt Status Control Register (ZINTSCR)	362
7.12.4.17	PWM Clock Control Register (ZTIER)	362
7.12.4.18	Channel 4 Clock Prescaler Register (C4CPRS)	363
7.12.4.19	Channel 4 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C4MCPRS)	363
7.12.4.20	Channel 6 Clock Prescaler Register (C6CPRS)	363
7.12.4.21	Channel 6 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C6MCPRS)	363
7.12.4.22	Channel 7 Clock Prescaler Register (C7CPRS)	364
7.12.4.23	Channel 7 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C7MCPRS)	364
7.12.4.24	PWM Clock 6MHz Select Register (CLK6MSEL)	364
7.12.4.25	PWM5 Timeout Control Register (PWM5TOCTRL)	365
7.12.4.26	Color Frequency LSB Register (CFLRR)	365
7.12.4.27	Color Frequency MSB Register (CFMRR)	365
7.12.4.28	Color Frequency Interrupt Control Register (CFINTCTRL)	366
7.12.4.29	Tachometer Switch Control Register (TSWCTLR)	366
7.12.4.30	PWM Output Open-Drain Enable Register (PWMODENR)	367
7.12.4.31	PWM0 LED Dimming Enable (PWM0LHE)	368
7.12.4.32	PWM0 LED Dimming Control Register 1 (PWM0LCR1)	368
7.12.4.33	PWM0 LED Dimming Control Register 2 (PWM0LCR2)	369
7.12.4.34	PWM1 LED Dimming Enable (PWM1LHE)	369
7.12.4.35	PWM1 LED Dimming Control Register 1 (PWM1LCR1)	370
7.12.4.36	PWM1 LED Dimming Control Register 2 (PWM1LCR2)	370
7.12.5	PWM Programming Guide	371
7.13	8-bit Timer (TMR)	372
7.13.1	Overview	372
7.13.2	Features	372
7.13.3	Functional Description	372
7.13.3.1	General Description	372
7.13.3.2	TMR Counter (CNT)	373
7.13.3.3	TMR Duty Cycle (DCR)	373
7.13.3.4	TMR Cycle Time (CTR)	373
7.13.3.5	TMR Mode	373
7.13.3.6	TMR Interrupt	376
7.13.4	EC Interface Registers	377
7.13.4.1	TMR Prescaler Register (PRSC)	377
7.13.4.2	Group Clock Source and Mode Select Register (GCSMS)	378
7.13.4.3	A0 Cycle Time Register (CTR_A0)	378
7.13.4.4	A1 Cycle Time Register (CTR_A1)	378
7.13.4.5	B0 Cycle Time Register (CTR_B0)	378
7.13.4.6	B1 Cycle Time Register (CTR_B1)	379
7.13.4.7	A0 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_A0)	379
7.13.4.8	A1 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_A1)	379
7.13.4.9	B0 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_B0)	379
7.13.4.10	B1 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_B1)	379
7.13.4.11	Channel Clock Group Select Register (CCGSR)	380

7.13.4.12 TMR Clock Enable Register (TMRCE)	380
7.13.4.13 TMR Interrupt Enable Register (TMRIE)	381
7.13.5 TMR Programming Guide	383
7.14 Consumer Electronics Control (CEC)	384
7.14.1 Overview.....	384
7.14.1.1 General Description	384
7.14.1.2 CEC TX Flow	384
7.14.1.3 CEC RX Flow.....	384
7.14.2 EC Interface Registers	385
7.14.2.1 CEC Data Register (CECDR)	385
7.14.2.2 CEC FIFO Status Register (CECFSTS)	385
7.14.2.3 CEC Device Logical Address Register (CECDLA).....	386
7.14.2.4 CEC Control Register (CECCTRL).....	386
7.14.2.5 CEC Status Register (CECSTS)	386
7.14.2.6 CEC Interrupt Enable Register (CECIE).....	387
7.14.2.7 CEC Operation Status Register (CECOPSTS)	388
7.14.2.8 CEC Received Header Register (CECRH).....	388
7.15 EC Access to the Host Controlled Modules (EC2I Bridge)	389
7.15.1 Overview.....	389
7.15.2 Features	389
7.15.3 Functional Description	389
7.15.4 EC Interface Registers	390
7.15.4.1 Indirect Host I/O Address Register (IHIOA).....	390
7.15.4.2 Indirect Host Data Register (IHD).....	390
7.15.4.3 Lock Super I/O Host Access Register (LSIOHA)	390
7.15.4.4 Super I/O Access Lock Violation Register (SIOLV).....	391
7.15.4.5 EC to I-Bus Modules Access Enable Register (IBMAE).....	391
7.15.4.6 I-Bus Control Register (IBCTL).....	391
7.15.5 EC2I Programming Guide	392
7.16 External Timer and External Watchdog (ETWD)	394
7.16.1 Overview.....	394
7.16.2 Features	394
7.16.3 Functional Description	394
7.16.3.1 External Timer Operation	394
7.16.3.2 External WDT Operation	395
7.16.4 EC Interface Registers	395
7.16.4.1 External Timer 1/WDT Configuration Register (ETWCFG)	396
7.16.4.2 External Timer 1 Prescaler Register (ET1PSR)	396
7.16.4.3 External Timer 1 Counter High Byte (ET1CNTLHR)	396
7.16.4.4 External Timer 1 Counter Low Byte (ET1CNTLLR)	397
7.16.4.5 External Timer 2 Prescaler Register (ET2PSR)	397
7.16.4.6 External Timer 2 Counter High Byte (ET2CNTLHR)	397
7.16.4.7 External Timer 2 Counter Low Byte (ET2CNTLLR)	397
7.16.4.8 External Timer 2 Counter High Byte 2 (ET2CNTLH2R)	397
7.16.4.9 External Timer/WDT Control Register (ETWCTRL)	398
7.16.4.10 External WDT Counter High Byte (EWDCNTLHR)	398
7.16.4.11 External WDT Counter Low Byte (EWDCNTLLR).....	398
7.16.4.12 External WDT Key Register (EWDKEYR)	399
7.17 General Control (GCTRL)	400
7.17.1 Overview.....	400
7.17.2 Features	400
7.17.3 Functional Description	400
7.17.4 EC Interface Registers	401
7.17.4.1 Chip ID Byte 1 (ECHIPID1)	402
7.17.4.2 Chip ID Byte 2 (ECHIPID2)	402
7.17.4.3 Chip Version (ECHIPVER)	402

7.17.4.4 Identify Input Register (IDR)	402
7.17.4.5 Reset Status (RSTS)	403
7.17.4.6 Reset Control 1 (RSTC1)	404
7.17.4.7 Reset Control 2 (RSTC2)	404
7.17.4.8 Reset Control 3 (RSTC3)	404
7.17.4.9 Reset Control 4 (RSTC4)	405
7.17.4.10 Reset Control DMM (RSTDMMC)	405
7.17.4.11 Base Address Select (BADRSEL)	406
7.17.4.12 Wait Next Clock Rising (WNCKR)	406
7.17.4.13 Special Control 1 (SPCTRL1)	406
7.17.4.14 Reset Control Host Side (RSTCH)	407
7.17.4.15 Generate IRQ (GENIRQ)	407
7.17.4.16 Special Control 2 (SPCTRL2)	407
7.17.4.17 Special Control 4 (SPCTRL4)	408
7.17.4.18 Port I2EC High-Byte Register (PI2ECH)	408
7.17.4.19 Port I2EC Low-Byte Register (PI2ECL)	408
7.17.4.20 BRAM Interrupt Address 0 Register (BINTADDR0R)	409
7.17.4.21 BRAM Interrupt Address 1 Register (BINTADDR1R)	409
7.17.4.22 BRAM Interrupt Control Register (BINTCTRLR)	409
7.17.4.23 SHA-1 Hash Control Register (SHA1HASHCTRLR)	409
7.17.4.24 SHA-1 Hash Base Address Register (SHA1HBADDR)	410
7.18 External GPIO Controller (EGPC)	411
7.18.1 Overview	411
7.18.2 Features	411
7.18.3 Functional Description	411
7.18.4 EC Interface Registers	411
7.18.4.1 External GPIO Address Register (EADDR)	412
7.18.4.2 External GPIO Data Register (EDAT)	412
7.18.4.3 External GPIO Control Register (ECNT)	412
7.18.4.4 External GPIO Status Register (ESTS)	413
7.19 BRAM	414
7.19.1 Overview	414
7.19.2 Features	414
7.19.3 Functional Description	414
7.19.3.1 P80L	414
7.19.4 Host Interface Registers	415
7.19.5 EC Interface Registers	415
7.19.5.1 SRAM Byte n Registers (SBTn, n= 0-191)	416
7.20 Consumer IR (CIR)	417
7.20.1 Overview	417
7.20.2 Features	417
7.20.3 Functional Description	417
7.20.3.1 Transmit Operation	418
7.20.3.2 Receive Operation	418
7.20.3.3 Wakeup (Power On) Controller Programming Sequence	418
7.20.4 Host Interface Registers	419
7.20.5 EC Interface Registers	420
7.20.5.1 CIR Data Register (C0DR)	420
7.20.5.2 CIR Master Control Register (C0MSTCR)	421
7.20.5.3 CIR Interrupt Enable Register (C0IER)	422
7.20.5.4 CIR Interrupt Identification Register (C0IIR)	423
7.20.5.5 CIR Carrier Frequency Register (C0CFR)	423
7.20.5.6 CIR Receiver Control Register (C0RCR)	425
7.20.5.7 CIR Transmitter Control Register (C0TCR)	428
7.20.5.8 CIR Slow Clock Control Register (C0SCK)	429
7.20.5.9 CIR Baud Rate Divisor Low Byte Register (C0BDLR)	430

7.20.5.10 CIR Baud Rate Divisor High Byte Register (C0BDHR)	430
7.20.5.11 CIR Transmitter FIFO Status Register (C0TFSR)	430
7.20.5.12 CIR Receiver FIFO Status Register (C0RFSR)	431
7.20.5.13 CIR Wake-Code Set Select Register (C0WCSSR)	431
7.20.5.14 CIR Wakeup Code Length Register (C0WCL)	432
7.20.5.15 CIR Wakeup Code Read/Write Register (C0WCR)	432
7.20.5.16 CIR Wakeup Power Control/Status Register (C0WPS)	432
7.20.5.17 CIR Scratch Register (CSCRR)	433
7.20.5.18 CIR General Purpose Interrupt (CGPINTR)	433
7.21 Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI).....	434
7.21.1 Overview.....	434
7.21.2 Features	434
7.21.3 Functional Description.....	434
7.21.3.1 Data Transmissions	434
7.21.3.2 SPI Mode	434
7.21.3.3 Blocking and Non-blocking mode	436
7.21.4 Host Interface Registers.....	436
7.21.5 EC Interface Registers	436
7.21.5.1 SPI Data Register (SPIDATA)	437
7.21.5.2 SPI Control Register 1 (SPICTRL1)	437
7.21.5.3 SPI Control Register 2 (SPICTRL2)	438
7.21.5.4 SPI Start and End Status Register (SPISTS)	439
7.21.5.5 SPI Control Register 3 (SPICTRL3)	440
7.21.6 Programming Guide	441
7.22 Serial Port (UART)	443
7.22.1 Overview.....	443
7.22.2 Features	443
7.22.3 Functional Description.....	443
7.22.4 Host Interface Registers	443
7.22.5 EC Interface Registers	444
7.22.5.1 Receiver Buffer Register (RBR)	444
7.22.5.2 Transmitter Holding Register (THR)	444
7.22.5.3 Interrupt Enable Register (IER)	445
7.22.5.4 Interrupt Identification Register (IIR)	445
7.22.5.5 FIFO Control Register (FCR)	447
7.22.5.6 Divisor Latch LSB (DLL)	447
7.22.5.7 Divisor Latch MSB (DLM)	447
7.22.5.8 Scratch Pad Register (SCR)	448
7.22.5.9 Line Control Register (LCR)	449
7.22.5.10 Modem Control Register (MCR)	450
7.22.5.11 Line Status Register (LSR)	450
7.22.5.12 Modem Status Register (MSR)	451
7.22.5.13 EC Serial Port Mode Register (ECSPMR)	452
7.22.6 Programming Guide	452
7.22.6.1 Programming Sequence	452
7.22.7 Software Reset	452
7.22.8 Clock Input Operation	452
7.22.9 FIFO Interrupt Mode Operation	453
7.22.10 High Speed Baud Rate Activation	454
7.23 Debugger (DBGR).....	455
7.23.1 Overview.....	455
7.23.2 Features	455
7.23.3 Functional Description	455
7.23.3.1 ROM Address Match Interrupt	455
7.23.3.2 DBGR/EPP	455
7.23.3.3 DBGR/SMB	455

7.23.3.4 In-system Programming Operation.....	455
7.23.3.5 In-system Debugging Operation.....	455
7.23.3.6 EC Memory Snoop (ECMS)	456
7.23.3.7 Other Debug Topics.....	457
7.23.4 EC Interface Registers	457
7.23.4.1 Trigger 1 Address Low Byte Register (BKA1L).....	457
7.23.4.2 Trigger 1 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA1M).....	457
7.23.4.3 Trigger 1 Address High Byte Register (BKA1H).....	458
7.23.4.4 Trigger 2 Address Low Byte Register (BKA2L).....	458
7.23.4.5 Trigger 2 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA2M).....	458
7.23.4.6 Trigger 2 Address High Byte Register (BKA2H).....	458
7.23.4.7 Trigger 3 Address Low Byte Register (BKA3L).....	458
7.23.4.8 Trigger 3 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA3M).....	458
7.23.4.9 Trigger 3 Address High Byte Register (BKA3H).....	458
7.24 Parallel Port (PP)	459
7.24.1 Overview.....	459
7.24.2 Features	459
7.24.3 Functional Description.....	459
7.24.3.1 KBS Connection with Parallel Port Connector	459
8. Register List.....	461
9. DC Characteristics	479
10.AC Characteristics	483
11.Analog Device Characteristics.....	495
12.Package Information.....	497
13.Ordering Information.....	499
14.Top Marking Information.....	501

FIGURES

Figure 3-1. EC 8032 Data/Code Memory Map	7
Figure 5-1. Power State Transitions.....	19
Figure 5-2. Clock Tree.....	26
Figure 6-1. Host View Register Map via Index-Data Pair	40
Figure 6-2. Location of H2RAM Host Semaphore	58
Figure 6-3. Program Flow Chart for PNPCFG	76
Figure 6-4. Scratch SRAM in Data Space.....	79
Figure 6-5. HLPC Follow Mode for Serial Flash (e.g. Fast Read Instruction).....	82
Figure 6-6. H2RAM-HLPC Mapping through LPC Memory/FWH Cycles	83
Figure 6-7. H2RAM-HLPC Mapping through LPC IO Cycles.....	84
Figure 6-8. H2RAM EC/Host Semaphore Interrupt through LPC Memory/FWH Cycles	84
Figure 6-9. H2RAM EC/Host Semaphore Interrupt through LPC IO Cycles	85
Figure 6-10. Location of H2RAM EC Semaphore	106
Figure 6-11. Wakeup Event and Gathering Scheme	111
Figure 6-12. KBRST# Output Scheme	114
Figure 6-13. GA20 Output Scheme.....	114
Figure 6-14. KBC Host Interface Block Diagram	124
Figure 6-15. IRQ Control in KBC Module	125
Figure 6-16. PMC Host Interface Block Diagram	131
Figure 6-17. EC Interrupt Request for PMC	132
Figure 6-18. IRQ/SCI#/SMI# Control in PMC Compatible Mode	133

Figure 6-19. IRQ/SCI#/SMI# Control in PMC Enhanced Mode	134
Figure 6-20. Typical PMC2EX Mailbox Operation	135
Figure 6-21. IRQ Control in PM Channel 3/4/5	135
Figure 6-22. Register Map of RTCT	151
Figure 7-1. Interrupt Control System Configuration	167
Figure 7-2. Interrupt Response Time	169
Figure 7-3. Timer 0/1 in Mode 0 and Mode 1	169
Figure 7-4. Timer 0/1 in Mode 2, Auto-Reload	170
Figure 7-5. Timer 0 in Mode 3 Two 8-bit Timers	170
Figure 7-6. Timer 2: Capture Mode	171
Figure 7-7. Timer 2: Auto Reload (DCEN = 0)	172
Figure 7-8. Timer 2: Auto Reload Mode (DCEN = 1)	173
Figure 7-9. Timer 2: Clock Out Mode	174
Figure 7-10. Watchdog Timer	174
Figure 7-11. Serial Port Block Diagram	175
Figure 7-12. Data Frame (Mode 1, 2 and 3)	176
Figure 7-13. Timer 2 in Baud Rate Generator Mode	177
Figure 7-14. INTC Simplified Diagram	207
Figure 7-15. Program Flow Chart for INTC	208
Figure 7-16. WUC Simplified Diagram	215
Figure 7-17. Program Flow Chart for WUC	216
Figure 7-18. GPIO Simplified Diagram	256
Figure 7-19. Diagram of SMBus Bridge Bypass Function	262
Figure 7-20. Program Flow Chart of SMBus Master Interface	275
Figure 7-21. Schematic Diagram of SMBus Slave Interface Select	289
Figure 7-22. SMBus Waveform versus SMBus Timing Registers	294
Figure 7-23. Program Flow Chart for Polling Mode	315
Figure 7-24. Program Flow Chart for Interrupt Mode	316
Figure 7-25. ADC Channels Control Diagram	329
Figure 7-26. Voltage Comparator Operation Time	351
Figure 7-27. PWM Diagram	352
Figure 7-28. PWM Clock Tree	353
Figure 7-29. PWM Output Waveform	354
Figure 7-30. PWM LED Dimming Mode Waveform	355
Figure 7-31. Program Flow Chart for PWM Channel Output	371
Figure 7-32. TMR Block Diagram	372
Figure 7-33. 8-bit Mode Waveform of Channel N	374
Figure 7-34. 16-bit Mode Waveform of Group G	375
Figure 7-35. 16-bit Mode Waveform of Group N	376
Figure 7-36. Program Flow Chart for TMR Channel Output	383
Figure 7-37. Program Flow Chart for EC2I Read	392
Figure 7-38. Program Flow Chart for EC2I Write	393
Figure 7-39. Simplified Diagram	394
Figure 7-40. BRAM Mapping Diagram	414
Figure 7-41. Simplified Diagram	417
Figure 7-42. SPI Mode 0 Waveform	434
Figure 7-43. SPI Mode 1 Waveform	435
Figure 7-44. SPI Mode 2 Waveform	435

Figure 7-45. SPI Mode 3 Waveform.....	435
Figure 7-46. Program Flow Chart for SSPI Non-blocking	441
Figure 7-47. Program Flow Chart for SSPI Blocking	442
Figure 7-48. I2EC through 2Eh/2Fh I/O Port Operation Flow	456
Figure 7-49. I2EC through Dedicated I/O Port Operation Flow	456
Figure 7-50. Parallel Port Female 25-Pin Connector	459
Figure 10-1. VSTBY Power-on Reset Timing	483
Figure 10-2. Reset Timing	484
Figure 10-3. Warm Reset Timing	484
Figure 10-4. Wakeup from Doze Mode Timing	485
Figure 10-5. Wake Up from Sleep Mode Timing	485
Figure 10-6. Asynchronous External Wakeup/Interrupt Source Edge Detected Timing.....	485
Figure 10-7. LPC and SERIRQ Timing	486
Figure 10-8. SWUC Wake Up Timing	486
Figure 10-9. PWM Output Timing	487
Figure 10-10. PMC SMI#/SCI# Timing.....	487
Figure 10-11. PMC IBF/SCI# Timing	488
Figure 10-12. PS/2 Receive/Transmit Timing	489
Figure 10-13. SMBus Timing	490
Figure 10-14. Consumer IR (CIR) Timing	491
Figure 10-15. External GPIO Controller Data Timing	492
Figure 10-16. Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) Timing.....	493
Figure 10-17. Serial Port (UART) Timing	493

TABLES

Table 3-1. EC/Flash Mapping	6
Table 4-1. Pins Listed in Numeric Order (128-pin LQFP)	11
Table 4-2. Pins Listed in Numeric Order (128-pin VFBGA)	12
Table 5-1. Pin Descriptions of 3.3V/1.8V LPC Bus Interface.....	13
Table 5-2. Pin Descriptions of LPC Bus Interface.....	13
Table 5-3. Pin Descriptions of 3.3V/1.8V External Serial Flash Interface (FSPI)	13
Table 5-4. Pin Descriptions of Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI)	14
Table 5-5. Pin Descriptions of Keyboard Matrix Scan Interface	14
Table 5-6. Pin Descriptions of SMBus Interface	14
Table 5-7. Pin Descriptions of PS/2 Interface	14
Table 5-8. Pin Descriptions of PWM Interface	14
Table 5-9. Pin Descriptions of TMR Interface	15
Table 5-10. Pin Descriptions of Wake Up Control Interface	15
Table 5-11. Pin Descriptions of Serial Port Interface	15
Table 5-12. Pin Descriptions of UART Interface	16
Table 5-13. Pin Descriptions of CIR Interface	16
Table 5-14. Pin Descriptions of External GPIO Bus (EGPC) Interface.....	16
Table 5-15. Pin Descriptions of Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI).....	16
Table 5-16. Pin Descriptions of Hardware Bypass (HWBP)	16
Table 5-17. Pin Descriptions of Parallel Port Interface	17
Table 5-18. Pin Descriptions of GPIO Interface	17
Table 5-19. Pin Descriptions of Hardware Strap	17

Table 5-20. Pin Descriptions of ADC Input Interface	17
Table 5-21. Pin Descriptions of DAC Output Interface	17
Table 5-22. Pin Descriptions of Power/Ground Signals	18
Table 5-23. Power States	19
Table 5-24. Pin States of LPC Bus Interface	20
Table 5-25. Pin States of Keyboard Matrix Scan Interface	20
Table 5-26. Pin States of SMBus Interface	20
Table 5-27. Pin States of PS/2 Interface	21
Table 5-28. Pin States of PWM Interface	21
Table 5-29. Pin States of Wake Up Control Interface	21
Table 5-30. Pin States of UART Interface	21
Table 5-31. Pin States of CIR Interface	21
Table 5-32. Pin States of EGPC Interface	21
Table 5-33. Pin States of SSPI Interface	21
Table 5-34. Pin States of Serial Port Interface	22
Table 5-35. Pin States of GPIO Interface	22
Table 5-36. Pin States of ADC Input Interface	22
Table 5-37. Pin States of DAC Output Interface	22
Table 5-38. Reset Sources	24
Table 5-39. Reset Types and Applied Module	24
Table 5-40. Clock Types	25
Table 5-41. Power Saving by EC Clock Operation Mode	27
Table 5-42. Module Status in Each Power State/Clock Operation	28
Table 5-43. Pins with Pull Function	29
Table 5-44. Pins with Schmitt-Trigger Function	29
Table 5-45. Signals with Open-Drain Function	29
Table 6-1. LPC/FWH Response	33
Table 6-2. Host View Register Map, PNPCFG	36
Table 6-3. Host View Register Map, Logical Devices	36
Table 6-4. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, Standard Plug and Play Configuration Registers	38
Table 6-5. Interrupt Request (IRQ) Number Assignment, Logical Device IRQ via SERIRQ	38
Table 6-6. Logical Device Number (LDN) Assignments	39
Table 6-7. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, UART1 Logical Device	46
Table 6-8. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, UART2 Logical Device	47
Table 6-9. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, SWUC Logical Device	49
Table 6-10. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, KBC / Mouse Interface Logical Device	50
Table 6-11. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, KBC / Keyboard Interface Logical Device	52
Table 6-12. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, Consumer IR Interface Logical Device	53
Table 6-13. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, SMFI Interface Logical Device	54
Table 6-14. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, RTCT Logical Device	60
Table 6-15. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PM1 Logical Device	64
Table 6-16. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PMC2 Logical Device	65
Table 6-17. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PMC3 Logical Device	67
Table 6-18. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PMC4 Logical Device	69
Table 6-19. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PMC5 Logical Device	70
Table 6-20. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, SSPI Logical Device	72
Table 6-21. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, PECI Interface Logical Device	73
Table 6-22. SPI Instruction List Monitored by HLPC Follow Mode 0, Protection Enabled	81

Table 6-23. SPI Instruction List Supported by HLPC Follow Mode 1	82
Table 6-24. Corresponding Table of SPI Flash Power-on Detection	86
Table 6-25. EC View Register Map, SMFI	87
Table 6-26. Host View Register Map, SMFI	108
Table 6-27. Host View Register Map, SWUC	115
Table 6-28. EC View Register Map, SWUC	118
Table 6-29. Host View Register Map, KBC	125
Table 6-30. EC View Register Map, KBC	127
Table 6-31. Host View Register Map, PMC	136
Table 6-32. EC View Register Map, PMC	138
Table 6-33. Host View Register Map, RTCT	150
Table 6-34. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, RTCT Bank 0	152
Table 6-35. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, RTCT Bank 1	152
Table 7-1. 8032 Port Usage	165
Table 7-2. System Interrupt Table	167
Table 7-3. Timer 2 Modes of Operation	173
Table 7-4. Serial Port Signals	175
Table 7-5. Selecting the Baud Rate Generator(s)	177
Table 7-6. Internal RAM Map	179
Table 7-7. EC View Register Map, INTC	194
Table 7-8. INTC Interrupt Assignments	202
Table 7-9. EC View Register Map, WUC	209
Table 7-10. WUC Input Assignments	212
Table 7-11. KSI/KSO as GPIO List	217
Table 7-12. EC View Register Map, KB Scan	218
Table 7-13. EC View Register Map, GPIO	232
Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function	250
Table 7-15. GPIO with some other function	255
Table 7-16. EC View Register Map, ECPM	257
Table 7-17. SMBus Interrupt Events Expression	292
Table 7-18. EC View Register Map, SMBus	295
Table 7-19. Host View Register Map, PECI	317
Table 7-20. EC View Register Map, PECI	317
Table 7-21. EC View Register Map, PS/2	324
Table 7-22. EC View Register Map, DAC	327
Table 7-23. ADC Channel Conversion Time	330
Table 7-24. EC View Register Map, ADC	332
Table 7-25. Detail Step of ADC Channel Conversion	349
Table 7-26. Detail Step of Voltage Comparator Programming	350
Table 7-27. EC View Register Map, PWM	356
Table 7-28. EC View Register Map, TMR	377
Table 7-29. EC View Register Map, CEC	385
Table 7-30. EC View Register Map, EC2I	390
Table 7-31. EC View Register Map, ETWD	395
Table 7-32. SHA-1 Scratch SRAM Usage Map	400
Table 7-33. EC View Register Map, GCTRL	401
Table 7-34. EC View Register Map, EGPC	411
Table 7-35. Host View Register Map, BRAM	415

Table 7-36. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, BRAM Bank 0	415
Table 7-37. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, BRAM Bank 1	415
Table 7-38. EC View Register Map, BRAM	415
Table 7-39. Host View Register Map, CIR	419
Table 7-40. EC View Register Map, CIR.....	420
Table 7-41. Modulation Carrier Frequency	424
Table 7-42. Receiver Demodulation Low Frequency (HCFS = 0)	426
Table 7-43. Receiver Demodulation High Frequency (HCFS = 1).....	427
Table 7-44. Host View Register Map, SSPI	436
Table 7-45. EC View Register Map, SSPI.....	436
Table 7-46. Host/EC View Register Map, UART	444
Table 7-47. Interrupt Control Functions	446
Table 7-48. Baud Rate Using 1.8432MHz Clock	448
Table 7-49. I2EC/D2EC Accessible Target.....	457
Table 7-50. EC View Register Map, DBGR	457
Table 9-1. Power Consumption.....	481
Table 10-1. VSTBY Power-on Reset AC Table	483
Table 10-2. Reset AC Table.....	484
Table 10-3. Warm Reset AC Table	484
Table 10-4. Wakeup from Doze Mode AC Table	485
Table 10-5. Wake Up from Sleep Mode AC Table.....	485
Table 10-6. Asynchronous External Wakeup/Interrupt Source Edge Detected AC Table.....	485
Table 10-7. LPC and SERIRQ AC Table	486
Table 10-8. SWUC Wake Up AC Table	486
Table 10-9. PWM Output AC Table	487
Table 10-10. PMC SMI#/SCI# AC Table.....	487
Table 10-11. PMC IBF/SCI# AC Table	488
Table 10-12. PS/2 Receive/Transmit AC Table	489
Table 10-13. SMBus AC Table	490
Table 10-14. Consumer IR (CIR) AC Table	491
Table 10-15. External GPIO Controller Interface AC Table	492
Table 10-16. Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) AC Table.....	493
Table 10-17. Serial Port (UART) AC Table	493
Table 11-1. ADC Characteristics.....	495
Table 11-2. DAC Characteristics.....	495

1. Features

■ 8032 Embedded Controller

- Twin Turbo version/3-stage pipeline
- 9.2 MHz for EC domain and 8032 internal timer
- Variable frequency range to gain the maximum 8032 code-fetch performance
- Instruction set compatible with standard 8051/2
- 4K SRAM for code/data space

■ LPC Bus Interface

- Compatible with the LPC specification v1.1
- Supports I/O read/write
- Supports Memory read/write
- Supports FWH read/write
- Serial IRQ
- Supports LPC 24MHz to 33MHz
- Supports 3.3V/1.8V level

■ Flash Interface

- 128K-byte e-flash (embedded flash)
- Over 100,000 erase/program cycles
- Over 10-year data retention
- Supports 3.3V/1.8V level

■ Crystal-Free

- Built-in 32.768 kHz clock generator
- External crystal oscillator not required

■ SMBus Controller

- SMBus spec. 2.0
- 4 SMBus masters + 2 slaves
- 4 SMBus channels
- Compatible with I2C cycles

■ System Wake Up Control

- Modem RI# wake up
- Telephone RING# wake up
- IRQ/SMI# routing

■ EC Wake Up Control

- 96 external/internal wake up events
- 75 WUI pins

■ Interrupt Controller

- 128 interrupt events to EC
- Fixed priority

■ Timer / Watch Dog Timer

- 3 internal 16-bit multi-function timers inside 8032, which is based on EC clock
- 1 internal WDT inside 8032, which is based on EC clock
- 1 external 16-bit timer and 1 external 24-bit timer in ETWD module, which are based on 32.768 k clock source
- 1 external 16-bit WDT in ETWD module, which is based on 32.768 k clock source

■ UART

- 1 full duplex UART inside 8032
- 2 standard serial ports (legacy 16C550 COM1/COM2)
- Baud rate up to 460800
- Receiver/Transmitter can be enabled separately

■ ACPI Power Management Channel

- 5 Power management channels
- Compatible and enhanced mode

■ BRAM

- EC registers shared with RTCT SRAM

■ GPIO

- Supports 87-port GPIO
- Programmable pull up/pull down
- Schmitt trigger for input
- Supports 26-port 1.8V input level

■ External GPIO Controller (EGPC)

- Communicate with 4 IT8301/IT8302 chips
- Each IT8301 supports 38 GPIO ports
- Each IT8302 supports 16 GPIO ports

■ KBC Interface

- 8042 style KBC interface
- Legacy IRQ1 and IRQ12
- Fast A20G and KB reset

■ ADC

- 11 ADC channels (8 external)
- 10-bit resolution (+/- 4LSB)
- 3 voltage comparators

■ DAC

- 4 DAC channels
- 8-bit DAC

■ PWM

- 8 PWM channels
- Base clock frequency is 32.768 kHz
- 8 duty cycle resolution
- 8/16-bit common input clock prescaler
- 4 prescalers for 8 PWM output used for devices with different frequencies
- Supports PWM open-drain output
- Supports two sets tachometers; each set tachometer can be switched from two external pins.
- 1 tachometer for color sensor

■ PECI Host

- PECI spec. 2.0/3.0
- Supports 16-byte write/read length
- Supports FCS checking mechanism
- Supports AW_FCS hardwired mechanism
- Supports adjustable V_T level

■ PS/2 Interface

- 3 PS/2 interface
- Hardware/Software mode selection

■ KB Matrix Scan

- Hardware keyboard scan
- 18x8 keyboard matrix scan

■ SPI Slave Interface (SSPI)

- 2-channel SPI Master, Freq between 575 kHz and 4.6MHz
- 4-wire or 3-wire (bi-directional data) I/F
- Supports n-bit transmission (n = 1 ~ 8)
- SPI Mode 0, 1, 2, 3

■ In-System Programming

- ISP via parallel port interface on existing KBS connector
- Fast flash programming with software provided by ITE

■ Consumer IR

- Supports 27-58 KHz, 400-500 KHz device
- Supports remote power-on switch

■ Power Consumption

- Standby with Sleep mode current if Crystal-Free: 45 µA

■ CEC

- Suitable to HDMI 1.4a standard

■ TMR

- Supports four channels
- Supports 8-bit/16-bit pulse mode, and toggle mode

■ RTCT

- Supports 2 alarms

■ Package

- LQFP 128 / VFBGA 128

2. General Description

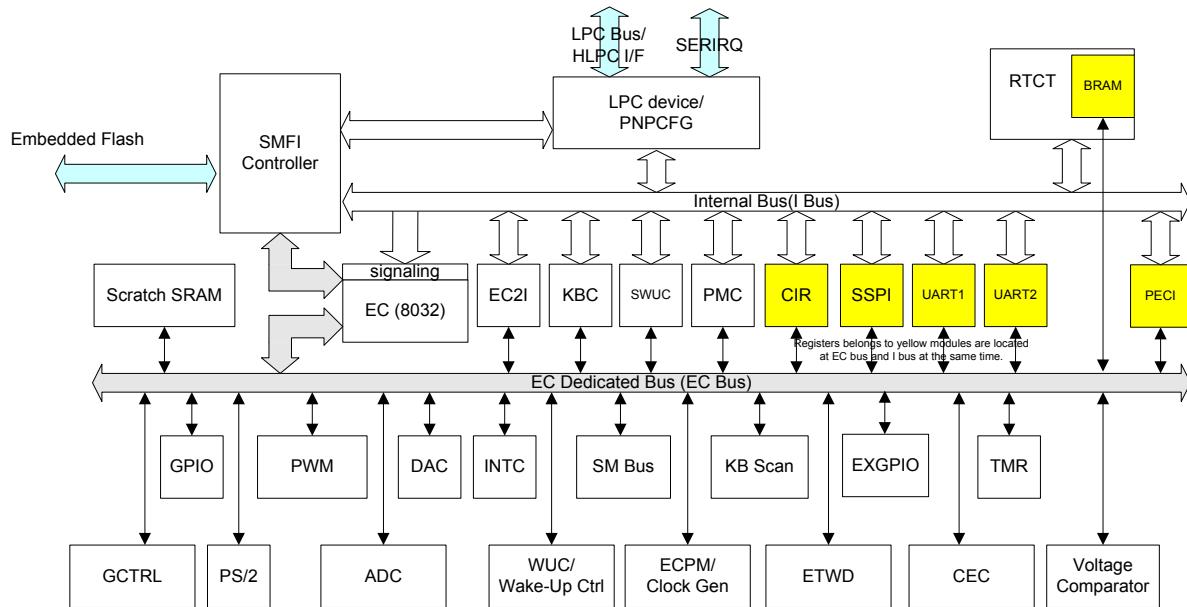
The IT8987 is a highly integrated embedded controller with system functions suitable for mobile system applications. The IT8987 directly interfaces to the LPC bus and provides ACPI embedded controller function, keyboard controller (KBC) and matrix scan, PWM and ADC for hardware monitor, PS/2 interface for external keyboard/mouse devices, BRAM, CIR and system wake up functions for system power management.

This page is intentionally left blank.

3. System Block Diagram

3.1 Block Diagram

- IT8987:



- **Host Domain:**

LPC, PNPCFG, RTCT logic device, host parts of SMFI/SWUC/KBC/PMC logical devices and host parts of EC2I.

- **EC Domain:**

EC 8032, INTC, WUC KB Scan, GPIO, ECPM, SMB, PS/2, DAC, ADC, PWM, ETWD, EC2I, GCTRL, BRAM, EGPC, DBGR, CEC , EC parts of SMFI/SWUC/KBC/PMC and EC parts of EC2I.

- **Double-mapping Module:**

CIR, BRAM, SSPI, PECI, UART1 and UART2.

Note: The SPI master (abbreviated as SSPI) is connected to the slow (contrast to SPI flash) SPI slave(s).

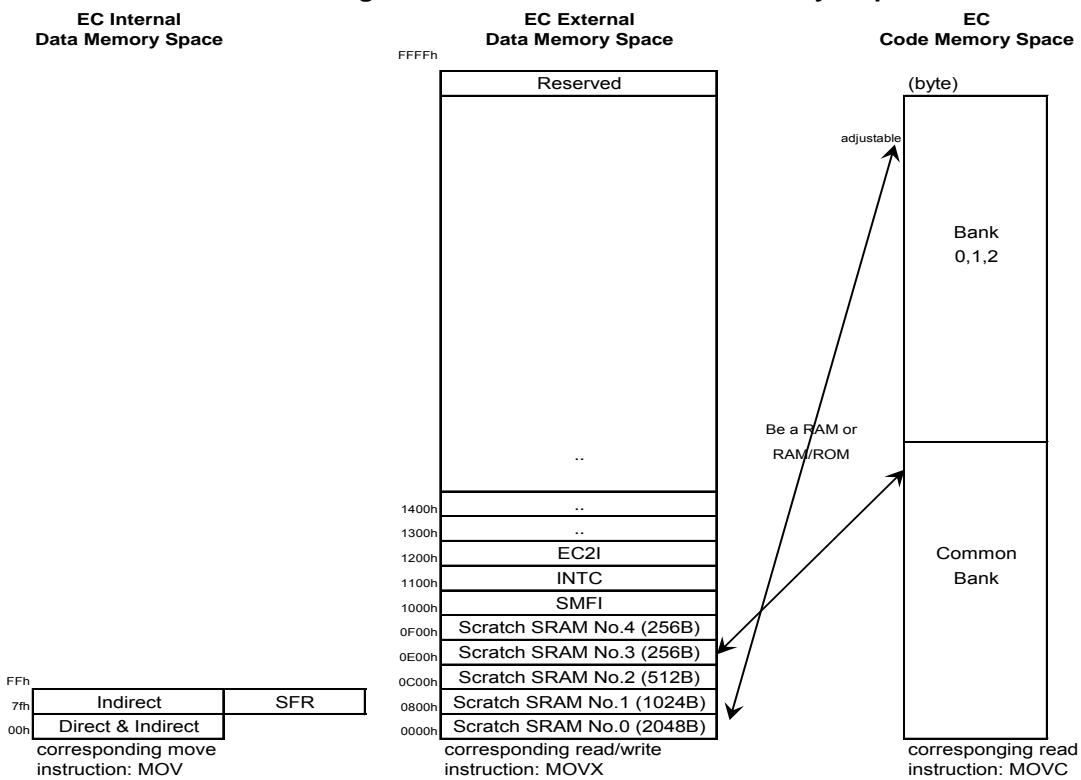
3.2 EC Mapped Memory Space

Table 3-1. EC/Flash Mapping

EC Code Memory Space (byte)	Mapped Flash Address Range (byte)	Size (byte)	Mapping Condition	Bank Selected Condition
Bank 2: 8000h ~ FFFFh	01_8000h ~ 01_FFFFh	32k	Always	ECBB=10
Bank 1: 8000h ~ FFFFh	01_0000h ~ 01_7FFFh	32k	Always	ECBB=01
Bank 0: 8000h ~ FFFFh	00_8000h ~ 00_FFFFh	32k	Always	ECBB=00
Common Bank: 0000h ~ 7FFFh	00_0000h ~ 00_7FFFh	32k	Always	Always

Note: EC code can use the maximum 128k by banking.
Note: All EC code memory space is mapped to both EC and host side at the same time. The EC size is not necessary on 32k boundary.
Note: If BSO=1, ECBB is replaced with P1 register of 8032.
ECBB means ECBB field in FECBSR register.
BSO means BSO bit in FPCFG register.

Figure 3-1. EC 8032 Data/Code Memory Map



See also Figure 6-4. Scratch SRAM in Data Space on page 79.

See also section 8 Register List on page 461.

There are five internal Scratch SRAMs No 0-4, which are always mapped into data space and may be mapped into code space if their corresponding code space mapping registers are enabled. It means that Scratch SRAM may be mapped into data and code space at the same time and the firmware on Scratch ROM can access the same Scratch RAM. It is called Scratch RAM when being located at data space (default after reset) and called Scratch ROM when being located at code space.

The EC code space is 64k bytes and physically occupies the maximum 128k bytes at the bottom of the flash space.

3.3 Register Abbreviation

The register abbreviations and access rules are listed below:

R	READ ONLY. If a register is read only, writing to this register has no effect.
W	WRITE ONLY. If a register is write only, reading to this register returns all zero.
R/W	READ/WRITE. A register with this attribute can be read and written.
RC	READ CLEAR. If a register is read clear, reading to this register clears the register to '0'.
R/WC	READ/WRITE CLEAR. A register bit with this attribute can be read and written. However, writing 1 clears the corresponding bit and writing 0 has no effect.

BFNAME@REGNAME This abbreviation may be shown in figures to represent one bit in a register or one field in a register.

The used radix indicator suffixes in this specification are listed below:

Decimal number: "d" suffix or no suffix

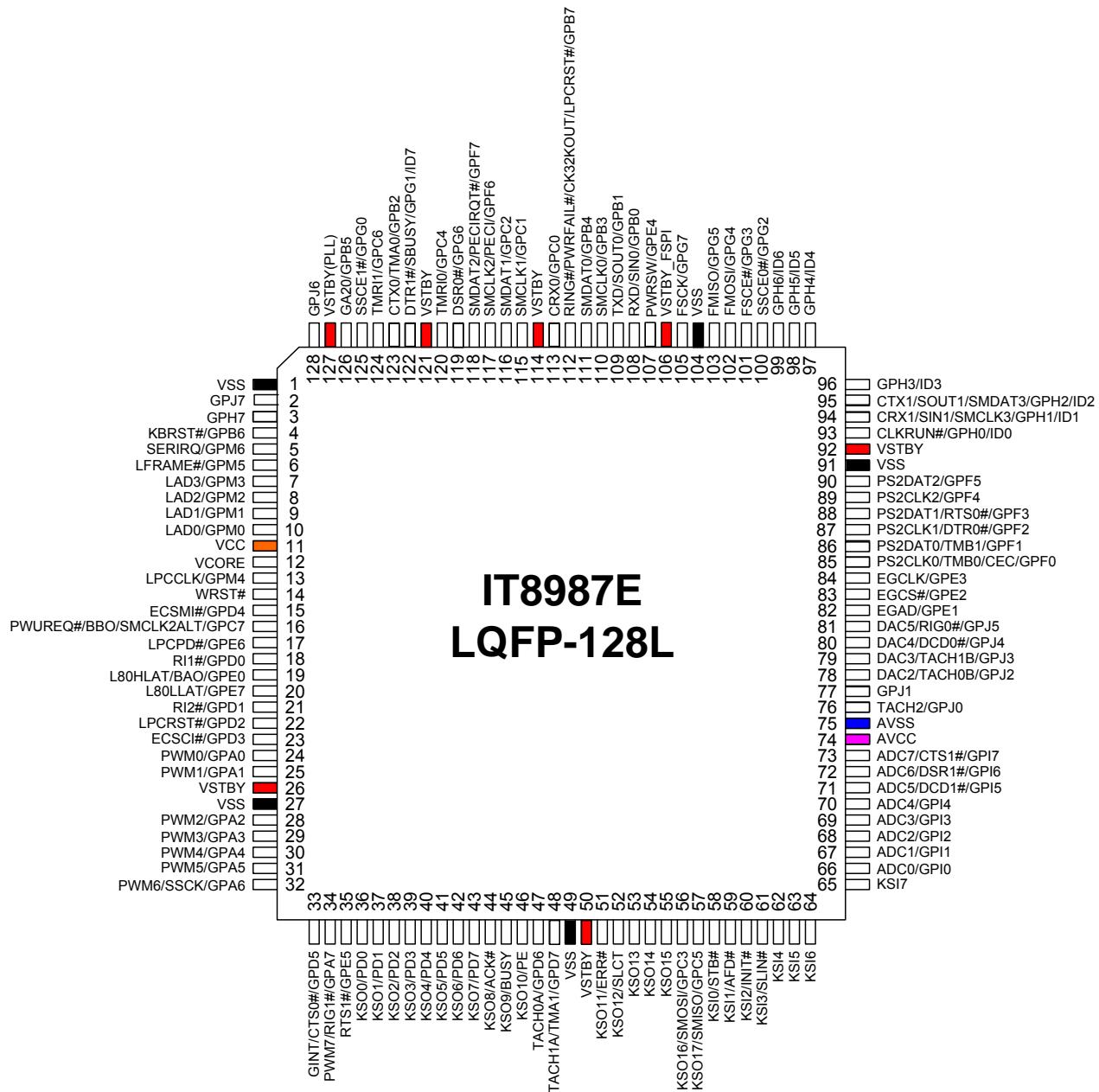
Binary number: "b" suffix

Hexadecimal number: "h" suffix

4. Pin Configuration

4.1 Top View

IT8987E Top View



IT8987VG Top View

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13

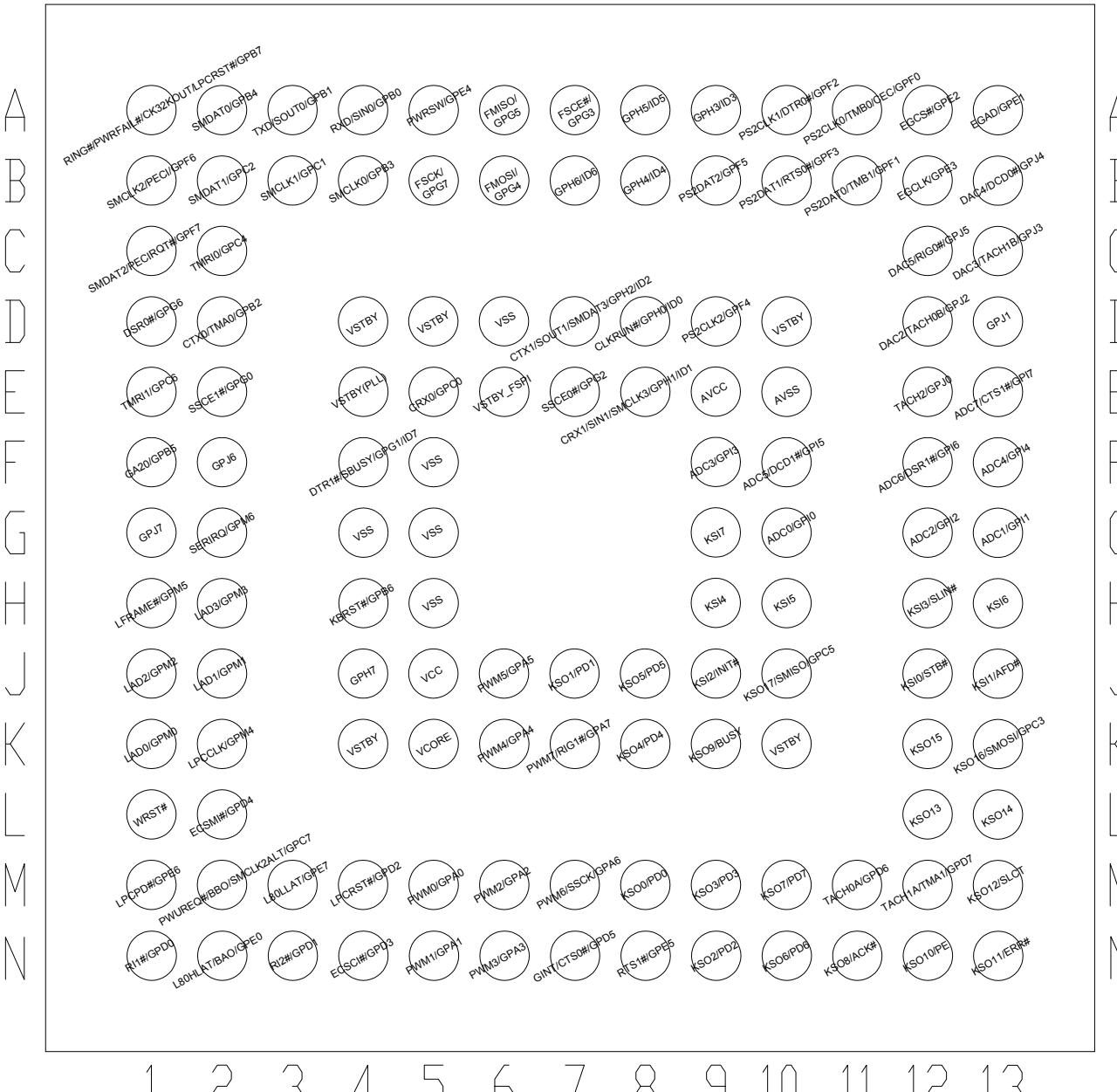


Table 4-1. Pins Listed in Numeric Order (128-pin LQFP)

Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal
1	VSS	33	GINT/CTS0#/GPD5	65	KSI7	97	GPH4/ID4
2	GPJ7	34	PWM7/RIG1#/GPA7	66	ADC0/GPI0	98	GPH5/ID5
3	GPH7	35	RTS1#/GPE5	67	ADC1/GPI1	99	GPH6/ID6
4	KBRST#/GPB6	36	KSO0/PD0	68	ADC2/GPI2	100	SSCE0#/GPG2
5	SERIRQ/GPM6	37	KSO1/PD1	69	ADC3/GPI3	101	FSCE#/GPG3
6	LFRAME#/GPM5	38	KSO2/PD2	70	ADC4/GPI4	102	FMOSI/GPG4
7	LAD3/GPM3	39	KSO3/PD3	71	ADC5/DCD1#/GPI5	103	FMISO/GPG5
8	LAD2/GPM2	40	KSO4/PD4	72	ADC6/DSR1#/GPI6	104	VSS
9	LAD1/GPM1	41	KSO5/PD5	73	ADC7/CTS1#/GPI7	105	FSCK/GPG7
10	LAD0/GPM0	42	KSO6/PD6	74	AVCC	106	VSTBY_FSPI
11	VCC	43	KSO7/PD7	75	AVSS	107	PWRSW/GPE4
12	VCORE	44	KSO8/ACK#	76	TACH2/GPJ0	108	RXD/SIN0/GPB0
13	LPCCLK/GPM4	45	KSO9/BUSY	77	GPJ1	109	TXD/SOUT0/GPB1
14	WRST#	46	KSO10/PE	78	DAC2/TACH0B/GPJ2	110	SMCLK0/GPB3
15	ECSMI#/GPD4	47	TACH0A/GPD6	79	DAC3/TACH1B/GPJ3	111	SMDAT0/GPB4
16	PWUREQ#/BBO/SMC LK2ALT/GPC7	48	TACH1A/TMA1/GPD7	80	DAC4/DCD0#/GPJ4	112	RING#/PWRFail#/C K32KOUT/LPCRST#/GPB7
17	LPCPD#/GPE6	49	VSS	81	DAC5/RIG0#/GPJ5	113	CRX0/GPC0
18	RI1#/GPD0	50	VSTBY	82	EGAD/GPE1	114	VSTBY
19	L80HLAT/BAO/GPE0	51	KSO11/ERR#	83	EGCS#/GPE2	115	SMCLK1/GPC1
20	L80LLAT/GPE7	52	KSO12/SLCT	84	EGCLK/GPE3	116	SMDAT1/GPC2
21	RI2#/GPD1	53	KSO13	85	PS2CLK0/TMB0/CEC/ GPF0	117	SMCLK2/PECI/GPF6
22	LPCRST#/GPD2	54	KSO14	86	PS2DAT0/TMB1/GPF1	118	SMDAT2/PECIRQT#/GPF7
23	ECSCI#/GPD3	55	KSO15	87	PS2CLK1/DTR0#/GPF2	119	DSR0#/GPG6
24	PWM0/GPA0	56	KSO16/SMOSI/GPC3	88	PS2DAT1/RTS0#/GPF3	120	TMRI0/GPC4
25	PWM1/GPA1	57	KSO17/SMISO/GPC5	89	PS2CLK2/GPF4	121	VSTBY
26	VSTBY	58	KSI0/STB#	90	PS2DAT2/GPF5	122	DTR1#/SBUSY/GPG1 /ID7
27	VSS	59	KSI1/AFD#	91	VSS	123	CTX0/TMA0/GPB2
28	PWM2/GPA2	60	KSI2/INIT#	92	VSTBY	124	TMRI1/GPC6
29	PWM3/GPA3	61	KSI3/SLIN#	93	CLKRUN#/GPH0/ID0	125	SSCE1#/GPG0
30	PWM4/GPA4	62	KSI4	94	CRX1/SIN1/SMCLK3/ GPH1/ID1	126	GA20/GPB5
31	PWM5/GPA5	63	KSI5	95	CTX1/SOUT1 /SMDAT3/GPH2/ID2	127	VSTBY(PLL)
32	PWM6/SSCK/GPA6	64	KSI6	96	GPH3/ID3	128	GPJ6

Table 4-2. Pins Listed in Numeric Order (128-pin VFBGA)

Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal
A1	RING#/PWRFAIL#/C K32KOUT/LPCRST#/GPB7	D4	VSTBY	G9	KSI7	K12	KSO15
A2	SMDAT0/GPB4	D5	VSTBY	G10	ADC0/GPI0	K13	KSO16/SMOSI/GPC3
A3	TXD/SOUT0/GPB1	D6	VSS	G12	ADC2/GPI2	L1	WRST#
A4	RXD/SINO/GPB0	D7	CTX1/SOUT1/SMDAT3/GPH2/ID2	G13	ADC1/GPI1	L2	ECSMI#/GPD4
A5	PWRSW/GPE4	D8	CLKRUN#/GPH0/ID0	H1	LFRAME#/GPM5	L12	KSO13
A6	FMISO/GPG5	D9	PS2CLK2/GPF4	H2	LAD3/GPM3	L13	KSO14
A7	FSCE#/GPG3	D10	VSTBY	H4	KBRST#/GPB6	M1	LPCPD#/GPE6
A8	GPH5/ID5	D12	DAC2/TACH0B/GPJ2	H5	VSS	M2	PWUREQ#/BBO/SMCLK2ALT/GPC7
A9	GPH3/ID3	D13	GPJ1	H9	KSI4	M3	L80LLAT/GPE7
A10	PS2CLK1/DTR0#/GP F2	E1	TMRI1/GPC6	H10	KSI5	M4	LPCRST#/GPD2
A11	PS2CLK0/TMB0/CEC /GPF0	E2	SSCE1#/GPG0	H12	KSI3/SLIN#	M5	PWM0/GPA0
A12	EGCS#/GPE2	E4	VSTBY(PLL)	H13	KSI6	M6	PWM2/GPA2
A13	EGAD/GPE1	E5	CRX0/GPC0	J1	LAD2/GPM2	M7	PWM6/SSCK/GPA6
B1	SMCLK2/PECI/GPF6	E6	VSTBY_FSPI	J2	LAD1/GPM1	M8	KSO0/PD0
B2	SMDAT1/GPC2	E7	SSCE0#/GPG2	J4	GPH7	M9	KSO3/PD3
B3	SMCLK1/GPC1	E8	CRX1/SIN1/SMCLK3/GPH1/ID1	J5	VCC	M10	KSO7/PD7
B4	SMCLK0/GPB3	E9	AVCC	J6	PWM5/GPA5	M11	TACH0A/GPD6
B5	FSCK/GPG7	E10	AVSS	J7	KSO1/PD1	M12	TACH1A/TMA1/GPD7
B6	FMOSI/GPG4	E12	TACH2/GPJ0	J8	KSO5/PD5	M13	KSO12/SLCT
B7	GPH6/ID6	E13	ADC7/CTS1#/GPI7	J9	KSI2/INIT#	N1	RI1#/GPD0
B8	GPH4/ID4	F1	GA20/GPB5	J10	KSO17/SMISO/GPC5	N2	L80HLAT/BAO/GPE0
B9	PS2DAT2/GPF5	F2	GPJ6	J12	KSI0/STB#	N3	RI2#/GPD1
B10	PS2DAT1/RTS0#/GP F3	F4	DTR1#/SBUSY/GPG1/ID7	J13	KSI1/AFD#	N4	ECSCI#/GPD3
B11	PS2DAT0/TMB1/GPF1	F5	VSS	K1	LAD0/GPM0	N5	PWM1/GPA1
B12	EGCLK/GPE3	F9	ADC3/GPI3	K2	LPCCLK/GPM4	N6	PWM3/GPA3
B13	DAC4/DCD0#/GPJ4	F10	ADC5/DCD1#/GPI5	K4	VSTBY	N7	INT/CTS0#/GPD5
C1	SMDAT2/PECIRQT#/GPF7	F12	ADC6/DSR1#/GPI6	K5	VCORE	N8	RTS1#/GPE5
C2	TMRI0/GPC4	F13	ADC4/GPI4	K6	PWM4/GPA4	N9	KSO2/PD2
C12	DAC5/RIG0#/GPJ5	G1	GPJ7	K7	PWM7/RIG1#/GPA7	N10	KSO6/PD6
C13	DAC3/TACH1B/GPJ3	G2	SERIRQ/GPM6	K8	KSO4/PD4	N11	KSO8/ACK#
D1	DSR0#/GPG6	G4	VSS	K9	KSO9/BUSY	N12	KSO10/PE
D2	CTX0/TMA0/GPB2	G5	VSS	K10	VSTBY	N13	KSO11/ERR#

5. Pin Descriptions

5.1 Pin Descriptions

Table 5-1. Pin Descriptions of 3.3V/1.8V LPC Bus Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
LPC Bus Interface (3.3V/1.8V CMOS I/F)			
13	LPCCLK	PI	LPC Clock 24MHz to 33MHz clock for LPC domain functions.
7-10	LAD[3:0]	PIO	LPC Address Data
6	LFRAME#	PI	LPC LFRAME# Signal
5	SERIRQ	PIO	SERIRQ Signal

Table 5-2. Pin Descriptions of LPC Bus Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
LPC Bus Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
22	LPCRST#	IK	LPC Hardware Reset LPC hardware reset will reset LPC interface and host side modules. The source is determined by EC side register bit LPCRSTEN. This pin can be omitted if external LPC reset is not required.
17	LPCPD#	IO2	LPC LPCPD# Signal
93	CLKRUN#	IO16	LPC CLKRUN# Signal
15	ECSMI#	O8	EC SMI# Signal This is SMI# signal driven by SWUC module.
23	ECSCI#	O8	EC SCI# Signal This is SCI# signal driven by PMC module.
126	GA20	IO2	Gate A20 Signal This is GA20 signal driven by SWUC module.
4	KBRST#	IO2	KB Reset Signal This is KBRST# signal driven by SWUC module.
14	WRST#	IK	Warm Reset For EC domain function, reset after power up.
16	PWUREQ#	O16	System Power On Request This is PWUREQ# signal driven by SWUC module.
19	L80HLAT	O16	LPC I/O Port 80, High-nibble LAD Latch An active high signal to latch Port 80 high-nibble for the debug purpose.
20	L80LLAT	O16	LPC I/O Port 80, Low-nibble LAD Latch An active high signal to latch Port 80 low-nibble for the debug purpose.

Table 5-3. Pin Descriptions of 3.3V/1.8V External Serial Flash Interface (FSPI)

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
External Serial Flash Interface (3.3V/1.8V CMOS I/F)			
105	FSCK	O4	Serial Flash Clock Clock (frequency = FreqPLL) to external serial flash. (FreqPLL is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)
101	FSCE#	O4	Serial Flash Chip Enable Connected to CE# of serial flash.
102	FMOSI	IOK4	Serial Flash In Connected to SI of serial flash.
103	FMISO	IOK4	Serial Flash Out Connected to SO of serial flash.

NOTE: Please do not place any pull-up resistor on these FSPI pins to reduce power consumption.

Table 5-4. Pin Descriptions of Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI)

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
Serial Peripheral Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
32	SSCK	O8	SSPI Clock Clock to external device.
125,100	SSCE1#, SSCE0#	O8, O4	SSPI Chip Enable Connected to SSCE# of SPI device.
57	SMISO	IOK8	SSPI Master In/Slave Out Connected to SO of 4-wire SPI device, or connected to SIO of 3-wire SPI device.
56	SMOSI	O8	SSPI Master Out/Slave In Connected to SI of 4-wire SPI device.
122	SBUSY	IOK16	SSPI Busy In Connected to BUSY of SPI device

Table 5-5. Pin Descriptions of Keyboard Matrix Scan Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
KB Matrix Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
57-51, 46-36	KSO[17:0]	O8	Keyboard Scan Output Keyboard matrix scan output.
65-58	KSI[7:0]	IK	Keyboard Scan Input Keyboard matrix scan input for switch based keyboard.

Table 5-6. Pin Descriptions of SMBus Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
SMBus Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
94, 117, 115, 110 16	SMCLK[2:0], SMCLK3, SMCLK2ALT	IOK4, IOK16, IOK16	SMBus CLK 4 SMBus interface provided.
95, 118, 116, 111	SMDAT[2:0], SMDAT3	IOK4, IOK16	SMBus Data 4 SMBus interface provided.

Table 5-7. Pin Descriptions of PS/2 Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
PS/2 Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
89, 87, 85	PS2CLK[2:0]	IOK8	PS/2 CLK 3 sets of PS/2 interface, alternate function of GPIO. PS2CLK0-2 correspond to channel 1-3 respectively.
90, 88, 86	PS2DAT[2:0]	IOK8	PS/2 Data 3 sets of PS/2 interface, alternate function of GPIO. PS2DAT0-2 correspond to channel 1-3 respectively.

Table 5-8. Pin Descriptions of PWM Interface

Signal	Pin(s) No.	Attribute	Description
PWM Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
34, 32-28, 25-24	PWM[7:4], PWM[3:0]	O8, O16	Pulse Width Modulation Output These are general-purpose PWM signals. PWM0-7 correspond to channel 0-7 respectively.
76, 48, 79, 47, 78	TACH2 TACH1A TACH1B TACH0A TACH0B	IK	Tachometer Input These are tachometer inputs from external fans. They are used for measuring the external fan speed. TACH2 is for color sensor.
124, 120	TMRI[1:0]	IK	Counter Input TMRI[1:0] are timer/counter input signals connected to timer2 and timer1 of 8032. Notice that the frequency has to be less than 8032 clock to be sampled.

Table 5-9. Pin Descriptions of TMR Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
TMR Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
123,	TMA0	O8,	TMR Output
48,	TMA1	O2	
85,	TMB0	O8	
86	TMB1	O8	

Table 5-10. Pin Descriptions of Wake Up Control Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
Wake Up Control Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function , page 250	WUI[86:80] WUI[74:32] WUI[31:16] WUI[7:0]	IK	EC Wake Up Input Supplied by VSTBY, used for EC wake up.
107	PWRSW	IK	Power Switch Input Supplied by VSTBY, used to indicate the status of power switch.
21,18	RI[2:1]#	IK	Ring Indicator Input Supplied by VSTBY, used for system wake up.
112	RING#	IK	Telephone Line Ring Input Supplied by VSTBY, used for system wake up.
112	PWRFAIL#	IK	Power Fail Input

Table 5-11. Pin Descriptions of Serial Port Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
Serial Port Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
94,108	SIN[1:0]	IOK16	Serial Data Input This input receives serial data from the communications link.
95,109	SOUT[1:0]	IOK16	Serial Data Output This output sends serial data to the communications link. This signal is set to a marking state (logic 1) after a Master Reset operation or when the device is in one of the Infrared communications modes.
72,119	DSR[1:0]#	AI / IK	Data Set Ready When the signal is low, it indicates that the MODEM or data set is ready to establish a communications link. The DSR# signal is a MODEM status input whose condition can be tested by reading the MSR register.
35,88	RTS[1:0]#	O2 / O8	Request to Send When this signal is low, this output indicates to the MODEM or data set that the device is ready to send data. RTS# is activated by setting the appropriate bit in the MCR register to 1. After a Master Reset operation or during Loop mode, RTS# is set to its inactive state.
122,87	DTR[1:0]#	O16 / O8	Data Terminal Ready DTR# is used to indicate to the MODEM or data set that the device is ready to exchange data. DTR# is activated by setting the appropriate bit in the MCR register to 1. After a Master Reset operation or during Loop mode, DTR# is set to its inactive state.
73,33	CTS[1:0]#	AI / IK	Clear to Send When the signal is low, it indicates that the MODEM or data set is ready to accept data. The CTS# signal is a MODEM status input whose condition can be tested by reading the MSR register.
34,81	RIG[1:0]#	IK	Ring Indicator When the signal is low, it indicates that a telephone ring signal has been received by the MODEM. The RI# signal is a MODEM status input whose condition can be tested by reading the MSR register.

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
71,80	DCD[1:0]#	AI / IK	<p>Data Carrier Detect</p> <p>When the signal is low, it indicates that the MODEM or data set has detected a carrier. The DCD# signal is a MODEM status input whose condition can be tested by reading the MSR register.</p>

NOTE: It's required to check the "5VT" field in Table 7-14 on page 250.

Table 5-12. Pin Descriptions of UART Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
UART Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
109	TXD	O	<p>UART TX Output</p> <p>UART TX Output from 8032</p>
108	RXD	IK	<p>UART RX Input</p> <p>UART RX Input from 8032</p>

Table 5-13. Pin Descriptions of CIR Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
CIR Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
123	CTX0	IOK8,	CIR TX Output
95	CTX1	IOK16	Transmission data for CIR interface.
113	CRX0	IOK2,	CIR RX Input
94	CRX1	IOK16	Receive data for CIR interface.

NOTE: There are two channels on interface muxed with GPIO. The alternative function of CTX0/CRX0 and CTX1/CRX1 cannot be enabled at the same time.

Table 5-14. Pin Descriptions of External GPIO Bus (EGPC) Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
External GPIO Bus (EGPC) Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
82	EGAD	IO8	<p>Address/Data</p> <p>The signal is used for the address or data of ITE specify Bus. Connected to IT8301/IT8302 GPIO_DATA pin.</p>
83	EGCS#	O8	<p>Address Chip Select</p> <p>The signal is used to identify the chip-select signal. Connected to IT8301/IT8302 CYCLE_START pin.</p>
84	EGCLK	O16	<p>Clock</p> <p>The clock frequency is EC clock frequency (listed in Table 10-2 on page 484). The signal only is running when the cycle is active. Connected to IT8301/IT8302 GPIO_CLK pin.</p>

Table 5-15. Pin Descriptions of Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI)

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
Platform Environment Control Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
117	PECI	PECI	<p>PECI</p> <p>This bi-directional pin provides data communication between the PECI host and devices.</p>
118	PECIRQT#	O4	<p>PECI Request</p> <p>The PECI request is output to PECI devices. When this pin goes low, it requests the system to make the PECI bus available.</p>

Table 5-16. Pin Descriptions of Hardware Bypass (HWBP)

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
External GPIO Bus (EGPC) Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
19	BAO	O16	<p>Buffer A Output</p> <p>Hardware bypass path from GPI6 to BAO.</p>
16	BBO	O16	<p>Buffer B Output</p> <p>Hardware bypass path from GPI7 to BBO.</p>

Table 5-17. Pin Descriptions of Parallel Port Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
Parallel Port Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
52	SLCT	O8	<i>Printer Select</i>
46	PE	O8	<i>Printer Paper End</i>
45	BUSY	O8	<i>Printer Busy</i>
44	ACK#	O8	<i>Printer Acknowledge</i>
61	SLIN#	IK	<i>Printer Select Input</i>
60	INIT#	IK	<i>Printer Initialize</i>
51	ERR#	O8	<i>Printer Error</i>
59	AFD#	IK	<i>Printer Auto Line Feed</i>
58	STB#	IK	<i>Printer Strobe</i>
43-36	PD[7:0]	O8	<i>Parallel Port Data[7:0]</i>

*: The interface can be connected to parallel port of computer through ITE-specified cable. The programmer can directly read/write flash through this interface.

Table 5-18. Pin Descriptions of GPIO Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
GPIO Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
Refer to Pins List Table	GPA[7:0], GPB[7:0], GPC[7:0], GPD[7:0], GPE[7:0], GPF[7:0], GPG[7:0], GPH[7:0], GPI[7:0], GPJ[7:0], GPM[6:0]	IOK	<p>GPIO Signals The GPIO pins are divided into groups. Some GPIO pins have alternative function.</p> <p>PLEASE DO NOT PLACE ANY PULL-UP RESISTOR ON GPG[7:2] (Reserved hardware strapping).</p> <p>PGP2 must be pulled down with an external resistor.</p>
33	GINT	IK	<p>General Purpose Interrupt General Purpose Interrupt directly input to INT28 of INTC.</p>

Table 5-19. Pin Descriptions of Hardware Strap

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
Hardware Strap (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
107, 99-93	ID[7:0]	IK	<p>Identify Input These hardware straps are used to identify the version for firmware usage. These input signals will be latched when the VSTBY power up. Note that these hardware straps are only available if these pins are not driven by other components on PCB. Disabled if no pull-up or pull-down resistor.</p>

Table 5-20. Pin Descriptions of ADC Input Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
ADC Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
73-66	ADC[7:0]	AI	<p>ADC Input/Alternate GPIO These 8 ADC inputs can be used as GPIO ports depending on the ADC channels required.</p>

Table 5-21. Pin Descriptions of DAC Output Interface

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
DAC Interface (3.3V CMOS I/F)			
81-78	DAC[5:2]	AO	<i>DAC Output</i>

Table 5-22. Pin Descriptions of Power/Ground Signals

Pin(s) No.	Signal	Attribute	Description
Power Ground Signals			
1, 27, 49, 91, 104	VSS	I	Ground Digital ground.
11	VCC	I	System Power Supply of 3.3V/1.8V The power supply of LPC and related functions, which is main power of system.
26, 50, 92, 114, 121, 127	VSTBY	I	Standby Power Supply of 3.3V The power supply of EC domain functions, which is standby power of system. Note that the power of PLL is sourced by pin 127 only.
106	VSTBY_FSPI	I	Standby Power Supply of 3.3V/1.8V This is for EC domain functions' power supply, which is the standby power of the system. If the external SPI flash is used, the power level of it must be the same as that of pin 106. If the external SPI flash is not used, this pin must be connected to the 3.3V power supply. The on/off state of this power pin must be the same as that of the VSTBY pin.
12	VCORE	I/O	Core Power Bypass Internal core power output. External capacitor is required to be connected between this pin and VSS and physically close to this pin. The capacitor type must be low-ESR and MLCC is required.
75	AVSS	I	Analog Ground for Analog Component
74	AVCC	I	Analog VCC for Analog Component

Notes: I/O cell types are described below:

- I: Input PAD.
- AI: Analog Input PAD.
- IK: Schmitt Trigger Input PAD.
- IKD: Schmitt Trigger Input PAD (integrated one pull-down resistor).
- PI: PCI Bus Specified Input PAD.
- PIO:PCI Bus Specified Input/Output PAD.
- OSCI: Oscillator Input PAD.
- AO: Analog Output PAD.
- O2: 2 mA Output PAD.
- O4: 4 mA Output PAD.
- O6: 6 mA Output PAD.
- O8: 8 mA Output PAD.
- PIO:PCI Bus Specified Bidirectional PAD.
- OSCIO: Oscillator Bidirectional PAD.
- AIO2: 2 mA Bidirectional PAD with Analog Input PAD.
- IOK2: 2 mA Bidirectional PAD with Schmitt Trigger Input PAD.
- IOK4: 4 mA Bidirectional PAD with Schmitt Trigger Input PAD.
- IOK6: 6 mA Bidirectional PAD with Schmitt Trigger Input PAD.
- IOK8: 8 mA Bidirectional PAD with Schmitt Trigger Input PAD.
- IOK16: 16 mA Bidirectional PAD with Schmitt Trigger Input PAD.
- PECI: Special design for PECL interface.

All input pins aren't 5V tolerant, except those with the "5VT" field checked in Table 7-14 on page 250.

5.2 Chip Power Planes and Power States

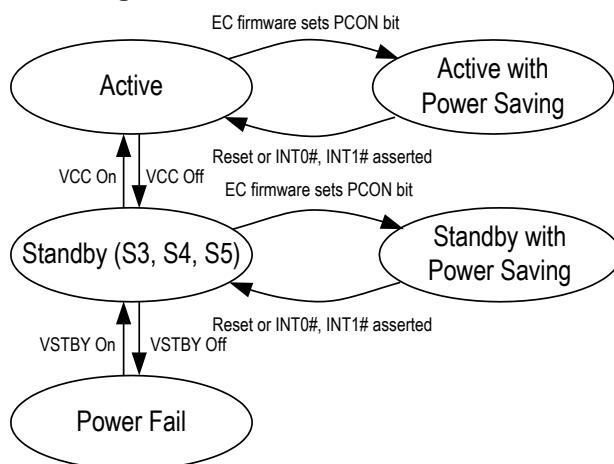
Table 5-23. Power States

Power State	VCC pin	VSTBY/AVCC pin
Active	Supplied	Supplied
Active with Power Saving	Supplied	Supplied EC is in Idle, Doze or Sleep Mode
Standby	Not Supplied	Supplied
Standby with Power Saving	Not Supplied	Supplied EC is in Idle, Doze or Sleep Mode
Power Fail	Not Supplied	Not Supplied

Note:

- (1) The AVCC should be derived from VSTBY.
- (2) All other combinations of VCC / VSTBY are invalid.
- (3) In Power Saving mode, 8032 program counter is stopped and no instruction will be executed no matter whether EC Clock is running or not.

Figure 5-1. Power State Transitions



5.3 Pin Power Planes and States

In the following tables of this section, Standby means that the VCC is not valid but VSTBY is supplied (S3, S4 or S5) and EC is in normal operation. Standby with Sleep means that 8032 and most of its functions are out of work due to PLL power-down while VSTBY is still supplied.

The abbreviations used in the following tables are described below:

H means EC drives high or driven high.

L means EC drives low or driven to low or output pin power off.

Z means EC tri-states the I/O pin or output pin with enable.

RUN means that Output or I/O pins are in normal operation.

Driven means that the input pin is driven by connected chip or logic.

STOP means that the output pin keeps its logical level before the clock is stopped.

OFF means I/O pin power off.

Note that reset sources of 'Reset Finish' columns depend on Reset Types and Applied Module Table and it means the reset is finished when its corresponding power plane is supplied.

Note that GPIO pins listed in different functional tables except GPIO table indicate their pin status of the corresponding alternative function.

Table 5-24. Pin States of LPC Bus Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
LPCRST# (Y)	VSTBY	Driven	L	L	L
LPCCLK	VCC	Driven	L	L	L
LAD[3:0]	VCC	RUN	OFF	OFF	OFF
LFRAME#	VCC	Driven	L	L	L
SERIRQ	VCC	Z	OFF	OFF	OFF
LPCPD# (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	L	L	L
CLKRUN# (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	OFF	L	OFF
ECSMI#	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	Z	OFF
ECSCI# (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	Z	OFF
GA20 (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
KBRST# (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
WRST#	VSTBY	Driven	Driven	Driven	L
PWUREQ#	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
L80HLAT (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	L	L	OFF
L80LLAT (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	L	L	OFF

Table 5-25. Pin States of Keyboard Matrix Scan Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
KSO	VSTBY	L	RUN	STOP	OFF
KSI	VSTBY	Driven	Driven	Driven	L

Table 5-26. Pin States of SMBus Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
SMCLK (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	Z	OFF
SMDAT (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	Z	OFF

Table 5-27. Pin States of PS/2 Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
PS2CLK (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	Z	OFF
PS2DAT (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	Z	OFF

Table 5-28. Pin States of PWM Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
PWM (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
TACH (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
TMRI (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF

Table 5-29. Pin States of Wake Up Control Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
WUI (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
PWRSW (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
RI (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
RING# (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
PWRFAIL# (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF

Table 5-30. Pin States of UART Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
RXD (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
TXD (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF

Table 5-31. Pin States of CIR Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
CRX0/CRX1 (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
CTX0/CTX1 (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF

Table 5-32. Pin States of EGPC Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
EGAD (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
EGCS# (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
EGCLK (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF

Table 5-33. Pin States of SSPI Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
SSCE# (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
SSCK (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
SMOSI (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
SMISO (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF

Table 5-34. Pin States of Serial Port Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
SIN (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
SOUT (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
CTS # (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
DSR # (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
DCD # (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
RIG # (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Driven	Driven	OFF
DTR # (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF
RTS # (Y)	VSTBY	Table 7-14	RUN	STOP	OFF

Table 5-35. Pin States of GPIO Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
GPA0...	VSTBY	Table 7-14	Depends on its mode	STOP	OFF

Table 5-36. Pin States of ADC Input Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
ADC (Y)	AVCC	Driven	Driven	Driven	L

Table 5-37. Pin States of DAC Output Interface

Signal (Alt Func of GPIO ?)	Power Plane	Reset Finish	Standby	Standby with Sleep	Power Fail
DAC (Y)	AVCC	Table 7-14	RUN	RUN	OFF

5.4 PWRFAIL# Interrupt to INTC

The firmware may use the PWRFAIL# to do some necessary response if VSTBY is being lost. Corresponded INT0# has higher priority than INT1#.

5.5 Reset Sources and Types

Table 5-38. Reset Sources

Reset Sources	Description
VSTBY Power-Up Reset	Activated after VSTBY is power up and PLL is stable It takes t_{PLLS} for PLL stablizing, and the external flash has to be ready before VSTBY Power-Up Reset finish
VCC Power-Up Reset	Activated after VCC is power up
Warm Reset	Activated if WRST# is asserted
LPC Hardware Reset	Activated if LPCRST# is asserted
Super I/O Software Reset	Activated if SIOSWRST of PNPCFG is writing 1
Watch Dog Reset	Activated if 8032 WDT or External WDT time-out

Table 5-39. Reset Types and Applied Module

Reset Types	Sources	Applied Module
Host Domain Hardware Reset	Warm Reset, VCC Power-Up Reset or LPC Hardware Reset LPC Hardware Reset may be unused See also LPCRSTEN in GCR register.	LPC, PNPCFG, Logical Devices and EC2I
Host Domain Software Reset	Super I/O Software Reset	PNPCFG, Logical Devices and EC2I
EC Domain Reset	Warm Reset, VSTBY Power-Up Reset or Watch Dog Reset	EC Domain

The WRST# should be driven low for at least t_{WRSTW} before going high (Refer to Table 10-3. Warm Reset AC Table on page 484)

If the firmware wants to assert an EC Domain Reset, start an internal or external watchdog without clearing its counter or write invalid data to EWDKEYR register (refer to EWDKEYEN and EWDKEYR registers).

If the firmware wants to determine the source of the last EC Domain Reset, use LRS field in RSTS register.

5.5.1 Related Interrupts to INTC

- Interrupt to INTC

LPCRST# may come from pin LPCRST#/WUI4/GPD2 or RING#/PWRFAIL#/LPCRST#/GPB7. Both pins have another interrupt related alternative function. LPCRST# can be treated as an orthogonal input and LPCRST# event can be handled in the same interrupt routine of another alternative function.

5.6 Chip Power Mode and Clock Domain

Table 5-40. Clock Types

Types	Description
32.768 k Clock	32.768 kHz generated by internal clock generator.
PLL Clock	Clock (frequency = FreqPLL) generated by internal PLL which feeds 32.768 k PLL Clock is also the base clock of flash interface. (FreqPLL is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)
EC Clock	It's from internal PLL and its frequency is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484
8032 Clock	The clock of internal timer/WDT is from EC clock. Core clock: The frequency is FreqPLL. (FreqPLL is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)
Host LPC Clock	24MHz to 33MHz from LPCCCLK pin and applied on Host Domain.

The 8032 can enter Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode to reduce some power consumption. After entering the Idle mode, timers and the Watch Dog timer of 8032 still work. After entering Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode, clock of 8032 is stopped and internal timers are stopped but the external timer still works. After entering Doze mode, EC domain clock is stopped and all internal timers are stopped. Also see Table 5-42 on page 28 for the details.

The way to wake up 8032 from the Idle mode is to enable internal or external interrupts, or hardware reset. The way to wake up 8032 from Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode is to enable external interrupts or hardware reset. Firmware may set PLLCTRL bit before setting PD bit to enter the Sleep mode, since stopping PLL can reduce more power consumption, but it takes more time to wake up from Sleep mode due to waiting for PLL being stable. The steps to enter and exit Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep are listed below:

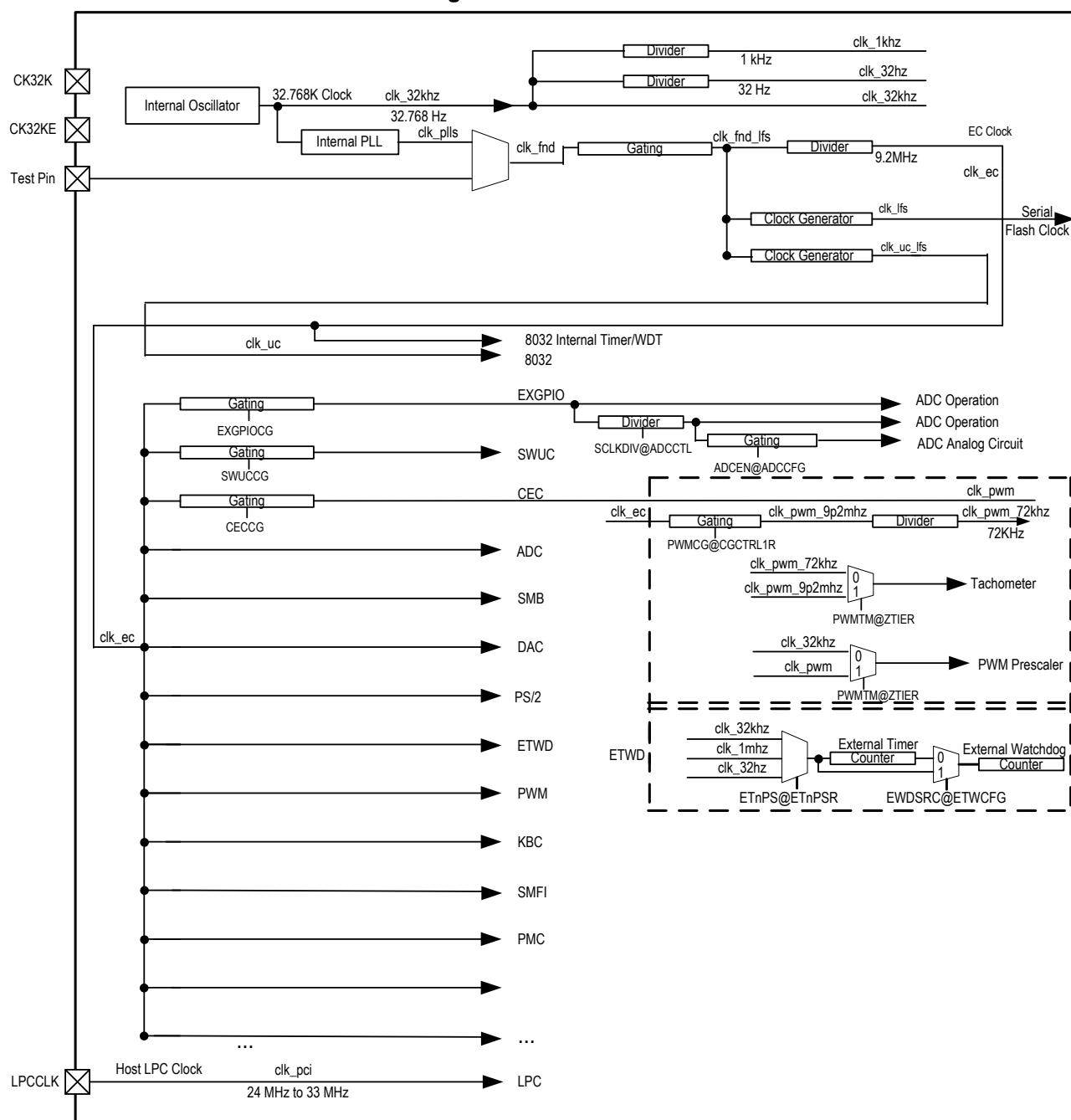
- (a) Set related bits of IE register if they are cleared.
- (b) Set channels of WUC which wants to wake up 8032 and disable unwanted channels.
- (c) Set channels of INTC which wants to wake up 8032 and disable unwanted channels.
- (d) Set PLLCTRL bit for Sleep mode, or clear it for Doze mode.
- (e) Set IDL bit in PCON to enter the Idle mode, or set PD bit in PCON to enter the Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode.
- (f) 8032 waits for an interrupt to wake up.
- (g) After an interrupt is asserted, 8032 executes the corresponding interrupt routine and return the next instruction after setting PCON.

The following figure describes the drivers and branches of the three clocks.

In this figure, clk_32kHz represents 32.768 k Clock; clk_fnd and its branches represent EC Clock; clk_pci represents LPC Clock.

IT8987 has a built-in clock generator, which can generates 32.768kHz clock without an external crystal oscillator. This feature is called “Crytal-Free”.

Figure 5-2. Clock Tree



FreqPLL/FreqEC are listed in Table 10-2 on page 484.

Table 5-41. Power Saving by EC Clock Operation Mode

Mode	Item	Description
Normal	Enter	VSTBY is supplied and hardware reset done
	Exit	Enter other modes
	32.768 k Clock	On
	PLL	On
	EC Domain Clock	Driven by PLL
	8032 Clock	The same as EC Domain Clock
	Comment	Power consumption can be reduced by selectively disabling modules (refer to ECPM module)
Idle	Enter	Set IDL bit in PCON of 8032
	Exit	Interrupt from INTC, interrupt from 8032 timer, watchdog reset or hardware reset
	32.768 k Clock	On
	PLL	On
	EC Domain Clock	Driven by PLL
	8032 Clock	Core: Off Internal timer/WDT: On
	Comment	Power consumption can be reduced by selectively disabling modules (refer to ECPM module)
Doze	Enter	Set PD bit in PCON of 8032
	Exit	Interrupt from INTC or hardware reset
	32.768 k Clock	On
	PLL	On, clearing PLLCTRL of ECPM module is required
	EC Domain Clock	Driven by PLL
	8032 Clock	Off
	Comment	Power consumption can be reduced by selectively disabling modules (refer to ECPM module)
Deep Doze	Enter	Set PD bit in PCON of 8032
	Exit	Interrupt from INTC or hardware reset
	32.768 k Clock	On
	PLL	D2EC disabled: On but gated D2EC enabled: On
	EC Domain Clock	Off
	8032 Clock	Off
	Comment	Power consumption can be reduced by selectively disabling modules (refer to ECPM module)
Sleep	Enter	Set PD bit in PCON of 8032
	Exit	Interrupt from INTC or hardware reset
	32.768 k Clock	On
	PLL	D2EC disabled: Off, setting PLLCTRL of ECPM module is required D2EC enabled: On
	EC Domain Clock	Driven by PLL
	8032 Clock	Off
	Comment	Power consumption can be reduced by selectively disabling modules (refer to ECPM module)

Note:

The PD bit in PCON register may trigger the Doze or Sleep mode of EC Domain.

Table 5-42. Module Status in Each Power State/Clock Operation

Power State and/or Clock Operation	Running Module	Stopped Module	Off Module	Note
<i>Active</i> <i>Active with Power Saving</i>	LPC, PNPCFG, EC2I, host parts of SMFI/ SWUC/ KBC/ PMC / BRAM/RTCT			List host related modules only
<i>Standby</i> <i>Standby with Power Saving</i>			LPC, PNPCFG, EC2I, host parts of SMFI/ SWUC/ KBC/ PMC	List host related modules only
<i>Active with Idle Mode</i> <i>Standby with Idle Mode</i>	All other EC modules 8032 internal timer/WDT	8032 core logic except its internal timer/WDT		List EC modules only
<i>Active with Doze Mode</i> <i>Standby with Doze Mode</i>	All other EC modules	8032		List EC modules only
<i>Active with Deep Doze/Sleep Mode</i> <i>Standby with Deep Doze/Sleep Mode</i>	GPIO, WUC and its sources, INTC and its sources from running modules, SWUC wakeup logic, PWM channel outputs, KBS, ETWD, BRAM	All other EC modules		List all
<i>Power Fail</i>	BRAM		All others	List all

Note: Running module means this module works well.

Stopped module means this module is frozen because its clock is stopped.

Off module means this module is turned off due to power lost.

5.7 Pins with Pull, Schmitt-Trigger or Open-Drain Function

Table 5-43. Pins with Pull Function

Pin	Pull Function	Note
KSI[7:0]	Programmable 75k pull-up resistor	Default off
KSO[17:0]	Programmable 75k pull-up resistor	Default off
GPIO with pull capability and their alternative functions	Programmable 75k pull-up/down resistor	Detail pull capability refer and default on/off refer to Table 7-14 on page 250
ID7-0	Operational 75k pull-down resister	Default off No pull up or down during VSTBY power on to process the hardware strap function

Note: 75k ohm is typical value. Refer to section 9 DC Characteristics on page 479 for details

Table 5-44. Pins with Schmitt-Trigger Function

Pin	Pull Function	Note
All GPIO pins except GPIO group I/J and their alternative functions	Fixed Schmitt-Trigger Input	
KSI[7:0]	Fixed Schmitt-Trigger Input	
WRST#	Fixed Schmitt-Trigger Input	

Table 5-45. Signals with Open-Drain Function

Signal	Open-Drain Function	Note
SERIRQ	Open-drain bi-directional signal	
CLKRUN#	Open-drain output signal	
KSO	Programmable open-drain output signal	Default is push-pull
PS2CLK, PS2DAT	Open-drain bi-directional signal	
SMCLK, SMDAT	Open-drain bi-directional signal	
ECSCI#, ECSMI#, PWUREQ#	Open-drain output signal	
GPIO with open-drain capability and their alternative functions (Other GPIO pin(s) can support open-drain by setting its(their) GPDR register(s) as 0 and switch GPMOD field in GPCR register between input and output mode.)	Programmable open-drain output signal	Default is push-pull

5.8 Power Consumption Consideration

- Each input pin should be driven or pulled

Input floating causes leakage current and should be prevented.

Pins can be pulled by an external pull resistor or internal pull for a pin with programmable pull.

- Each output-drain output pin should be pulled

If an output-drain output pin is not used and is not pulled by an external pull resistor or internal pull for a pin with programmable pull, make it drive low by the firmware.

- Each input pin which belongs to VSTBY power plane is connected or pulled up to VCC power plane

Such cases may cause leakage current when VCC is not supplied and a diode may be used to isolate leakage current from VSTBY to VCC. For example, use diodes for KBRST# and GA20 if they are connected to VCC logic of South-Bridge.

- Any pin which belongs to VSTBY power plane should not be pulled to VCC in most cases.

It may cause a leakage current path when VCC is shut down. Refer to the above consideration.

- Program GPIO ports as output mode as soon as possible

Any GPIO port used in output mode should be programmed as soon as possible since this pin may not be driven (be floating) if its default value of pull is off.

- Disable unnecessary pull in power saving mode

Prevent from driving a pin low or letting a pin be driven low but its pull high function is enabled in power saving mode.

Prevent from driving a pin high or letting a pin be driven high but its pull low function is enabled in power saving mode.

- Handle the connector if no cable is plugged into it

The firmware or the hardware should prevent the wire connected to the connector from no driving if no cable is plugged into the connector such as PS/2 mouse and so on.

- Disable unnecessary pull for a programmable pull pin

Pull control may be enabled for an input pin or an open-drain output pin and should be disabled for a push-pull output pin.

Pull control should be disabled if an external pull resistor exists.

External pull resistor can control the pull current precisely since the register value of the internal pull has large tolerance. Refer to section 9 DC Characteristics on page 479 for details.

- Flash standby mode

Make flash enter standby mode to reduce power consumption if it is not used.

It's controlled by AFSTBY bit in FPCFG register.

- Prevent accessing Scratch RAM before entering power-saving mode

There is unnecessary power consumption after Scratch RAM is accessed in data space. Read any other registers of external data memory once to prevent this condition.

- Use Doze mode rather than Idle mode

Doze mode has less power consumption than Idle mode because 8032 internal timer/WDT clock is gated (stopped) in Doze mode.

Firmware design using Idle mode should be replaced with Doze mode by replacing internal timer and watchdog by external timer and watchdog.

- Use Sleep mode rather than Doze mode

Sleep mode has less power consumption than Doze mode because PLL is power-down and EC clock is stopped in Sleep mode, although most EC modules are not available.

Refer to Table 5-42 on page 28 for the details.

- Gate clock by module in EC domain

All modules in EC domain are not clock gated in default but can be gated by module to get less power consumption.

It's controlled by CGCTRL1R and CGCTRL2R registers.

- Power-down ADC/DAC analog circuit if it is unnecessary.

ADC/DAC analog circuits are power-down in default and should be activated only if necessary.

ADC analog circuit power-down is controlled by ADCEN bit in ADCCFG register.

This page is intentionally left blank.

6. Host Domain Functions

6.1 Low Pin Count Interface

6.1.1 Overview

The Low Pin Count (LPC) is an interface for modern ISA-free system. It is defined in Intel's LPC Interface Specification, Revision 1.1. There are seven host-controlled modules that can be accessed by the host via the LPC interface. These host-controlled modules are "Logical Devices" defined in Plug and Play ISA Specification, Version 1.0a.

6.1.2 Features

- Complies with Intel's LPC Interface Specification, Revision 1.1
- Supports SERIRQ and complies with Serialized IRQ Support for PCI Systems, Revision 6.0
- Supports LPCPD#/CLKRUN#
- Supports Plug and Play ISA registers
- Supports LPC 24MHz to 33MHz

6.1.3 Accepted LPC Cycle Type

The supported LPC cycle types are listed below:

- * LPC I/O Read(16-bit address, 8-bit data)
- * LPC I/O Write (16-bit address, 8-bit data)
- * LPC Memory Read(32-bit address, 8-bit data)
- * LPC Memory Write(32-bit address, 8-bit data)
- * FWH Read (32-bit address, 8-bit data)
- * FWH Write (32-bit address, 8-bit data)

I/O cycles are used to access PNPCFG and Logical Devices. Memory or FWH is used to access Flash content through SMFI module Host-Indirect memory cycles based on I/O cycles can also access Flash. Refer to SMFI Module for details about Host-Indirect memory access.

The following table describes how LPC module responds the I/O, Memory and FWH cycles from Host side in different conditions.

Table 6-1. LPC/FWH Response

Cycle Type/Condition		Read Response	Write Response	
<i>All Cycles before PLL Stable</i> <small>NOTE 4</small>		Long-Wait	Long-Wait	
I/O Cycle to PNPCFG or Logical Devices		Ready	Ready	
I/O Cycle but Address Out Of Range		Cycle Ignored	Cycle Ignored	
I/O Cycle to Locked PNPCFG by EC2I		Returns 00h	Cycle Ignored	
<i>Host-Indirect Memory Address</i> <small>NOTE 3</small>		Ready	Ready	
Memory Cycle, FWH Cycle or Host-Indirect Memory Data		Long-Waits until Ready	Long-Waits until Ready <small>NOTE 1</small>	
Memory Cycle, FWH Cycle or Host-Indirect Memory Data but Address Protected by SMFI	HERES=01	Returns 00h	Cycle Ignored	
Memory Cycle or Host-Indirect Memory Data but Address Out of Range		Cycle Ignored	Cycle Ignored	
FWH Cycle but Address Out of Range		Ready	Ready	
FWH Cycle but FWH ID is unmatched <small>NOTE 2</small>		Cycle Ignored	Cycle Ignored	
FWH Cycle but HBREN bit in HCTRL2R register cleared		Cycle Ignored	Cycle Ignored	

Note 1:

After reset, IT8987 responds Long-Waits before Ready for FWH Write Cycle.

If LPC host (South-Bridge) fails to recognize Long-Wait SYNC during FWH Write Cycle, it is recommended to use Host-Indirect Memory.

Note 2:

FWH ID is defined in FWHID field in SHMC register.

Note 3:

Host-Indirect Memory Cycles access the flash via LPC I/O Cycle. Host-Indirect Memory Address is combined with SMIMAR0, SMIMAR1, SMIMAR2 and SMIMAR3 registers. Host-Indirect Memory Data is SMIMDR register.

Note 4:

The host LPC interface is disabled in sleep mode.

6.1.4 Debug Port Function

LPC module implements two latch signals for Main-Board debug purpose. LPC I/O write cycles with address equal to 80h will cause the LPC module to assert L80HLAT and L80LLAT signals which provide a simple external logic to latch it in order to display on LED, even though I/O port 80h is not recognized by PNPCFG or any Logical Device. L80HLAT goes high when it is time to latch the high-nibble of the data written to port 80h, and L80LLAT means the low-nibble.

Port 80h data can be read via parallel port with the software provided by ITE.

6.1.5 Serialized IRQ (SERIRQ)

IT8987 has programmable IRQ number for each logical device. Available IRQ numbers are 1, 2, 3, 4 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, and 15.

Different logical devices inside IT8987 can share the same IRQ number if they have the same IRQPS bit in IRQTP register and are configured as the same triggered mode (all level-triggered or all edge triggered) in their EC side registers.

But it is not allowed to share an IRQ number with a logical device outside IT8987. Note that edge-triggered interrupts are not suitable for sharing in most cases.

6.1.6 Related Interrupts to WUC

- Interrupt to WUC
If the LPC address of an I/O, LPC Memory or FWH Cycle on LPC bus is accepted, WU42 interrupt will be asserted.

6.1.7 LPCPD# and CLKRUN#

- LPCPD#
LPCPD# is used as internal “power good” signal to indicate the status of VCC. It is recommended to be implemented. See also VCCDO bit in RSTS register in 7.17.4.5 on page 403.
- CLKRUN#
When SERIRQ is in the continuous/quiet mode and LPCCCLK is active, CLKRUN# is used for maintaining LPCCCLK to make sure that the SERIRQ status is entirely transferred to the host side.

When SERIRQ is in the quiet mode and LPCCLK is stopped, CLKRUN# is used for restoring LPCCLK if there is any interrupt status transition required to be transferred to the host side.

6.1.8 Check Items

If EC fails in LPC memory or I/O cycles at boot, check the following recommended items first.

- **LPC/FWH memory cycles**
Check whether LPCRST# reset source from GPD2 or GPB7 is logic low if it is in alternative function.
Check whether LPCPD# signal from GPE6 is logic low if it is in alternative function.
Check whether HBREN bit is enabled in HCTRL2R register.
Check whether the firmware doesn't change the read protection control.
- **LPC I/O cycles**
Check whether LPCRST# reset source from GPD2 or GPB7 is logic low if it is in alternative function.
Check whether LPCPD# signal from GPE6 is logic low if it is in alternative function.
Check whether BADDR1-0 field in BADRSEL register are in correct setting.
Check whether EC2I is not locking PNPCFG access from the host side.

6.2 Plug and Play Configuration (PNPCFG)

The host interface registers of PNPCFG (Plug and Play Configuration) are listed below. The base address can be configured via BADDR1-0 field in BADRSEL register. Note that bit 0 of SWCBALR has to be zero.

To access a register of PNPCFG, write target index to address port and access this PNPCFG register via data port. If accessing the data port without writing index to address port, the latest value written to address port is used as the index. Reading the address port register returns the last value written to it.

Table 6-2. Host View Register Map, PNPCFG

BADDR1-0 =00b	BADDR1-0 =01b	BADDR1-0 =10b	BADDR1-0 =11b	
7	0	I/O Port Address		
Address Port	2Eh	4Eh	(SWCBAHR, SWCBALR)	
Data Port	2Fh	4Fh	(SWCBAHR, SWCBALR+1)	

Note 1: SWCBALR should be on boundary = 2, which means bit 0 has to be 0.

Note 2: Only use BADDR1-0=10b if the port pair is not 2Eh/2Fh or 4Eh/4Fh.

The host interface registers for Logic Device Control are listed below. The base address can be configured via the following Plug and Play Configuration Registers. Note that if a logical device is activated but with base address equal to 0000h, the host side cannot access this logical device since 0000h means I/O address range is disabled.

Table 6-3. Host View Register Map, Logical Devices

7	0	I/O Port Address
Serial Port 1 (UART1)		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h, ...+07h) Base address boundary = 16 Legacy Address = 03F8h
Serial Port 2 (UART2)		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h, ...+07h) Base address boundary = 16 Legacy Address = 02F8h
System Wake-Up Control (SWUC)		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+00h,+02h,+06h,+07h,13h,15h) Base address boundary = 32
KBC / Mouse Interface		Unused
KBC / Keyboard Interface		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+00h), (IOBAD1+00h) Base address boundary = none, none Legacy Address = 60h,64h
Consumer IR (CIR)		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h, ...+07h) Base address boundary = 8
Shared Memory/Flash Interface (SMFI)		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h, ...+8h,+0Ch) Base address boundary = 16
RTC-like Timer (RTCT)		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h,+1h), (IOBAD1+0h,+1h) Used Addr: (IOBAD2+0h,+1h), (IOBAD3+0h,+1h) Used Addr: (IOBAD4+0h,+1h) Base address boundary = 2,2 Legacy Address = 70h-71h,272h-273h

7	0	I/O Port Address
		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h), (IOBAD1+0h) Base address boundary = none, none Legacy Address = 62h,66h
		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h), (IOBAD1+0h) Base address boundary = none, none Legacy Address = 68h,6Ch
		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h), (IOBAD1+0h) Base address boundary = none, none Legacy Address = 6Ah,6Eh
		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h), (IOBAD1+0h) Base address boundary = none, none Legacy Address = 74h,78h
		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h), (IOBAD1+0h) Base address boundary = none, none Legacy Address = 7Ah,7Ch
		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h, ...+03h) Base address boundary = 4
		Depend on PnP SW Used Addr: (IOBAD0+0h, ...+07h) Base address boundary = 8

Note: The boundary number means the address has to be the multiple of this number.

The host interface registers for Standard Plug and Play Configuration of PNPCFG are listed below. These registers are accessed via the Index-Data I/O ports defined in Table 6-3 on page 36. Note PNPCFG registers are not allowed to be accessed if LKCFG bit in LSIOHA register of EC2I module is set. They are divided into two parts, Super I/O Configuration Registers and Logical Device Registers.

Table 6-4. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, Standard Plug and Play Configuration Registers

	7	0	Index
	Register Name		
Super I/O Configuration Registers	Logical Device Number (LDN)		07h
	Chip ID Byte 1(CHIPID1)		20h
	Chip ID Byte 2(CHIPID2)		21h
	Chip Version (CHIPVER)		22h
	Super I/O Control (SIOCTRL)		23h
	Reserved		24h
	Super I/O IRQ Configuration (SIOIRQ)		25h
	Super I/O General Purpose (SIOGP)		26h
	Reserved		27h
	Reserved		28h
	Reserved		29h
	Reserved		2Ah
	Reserved		2Bh
	Super I/O Power Mode (SIOPWR)		2Dh
	Depth 2 I/O Address (D2ADR)		2Eh
	Depth 2 I/O Data (D2DAT)		2Fh
	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)		30h
Logical Device Configuration Registers Selected by LDN Register	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])		60h
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])		61h
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])		62h
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])		63h
	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)		70h
	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)		71h
	DMA Channel Select 0 (DMAS0)		74h
	DMA Channel Select 1 (DMAS1)		75h
	Device Specific Logical Device Configuration 1 to 10		F0h-F9h

The IRQ numbers for Logic Device IRQ via LPC/SERIRQ are listed below. The IRQ numbers can be configured via the above Plug and Play Configuration Registers.

Table 6-5. Interrupt Request (IRQ) Number Assignment, Logical Device IRQ via SERIRQ
 Logical Device

Logical Device	IRQ number
Serial Port 1 (UART1)	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=04
Serial Port 2 (UART2)	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=03
System Wake-Up Control (SWUC)	Depend on PnP SW
KBC / Mouse Interface	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=12
KBC / Keyboard Interface	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=01
Consumer IR (CIR)	Depend on PnP SW
Shared Memory/Flash Interface (SMFI)	Unused
RTC-like Timer (RTCT)	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=08
Power Management I/F Channel 1 (PMC1)	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=01
Power Management I/F Channel 2 (PMC2)	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=01
Power Management I/F Channel 3 (PMC3)	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=01
Power Management I/F Channel 4 (PMC4)	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=01
Power Management I/F Channel 5 (PMC5)	Depend on PnP SW, Legacy IRQ Num=01
Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI)	Depend on PnP SW
Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI)	Unused

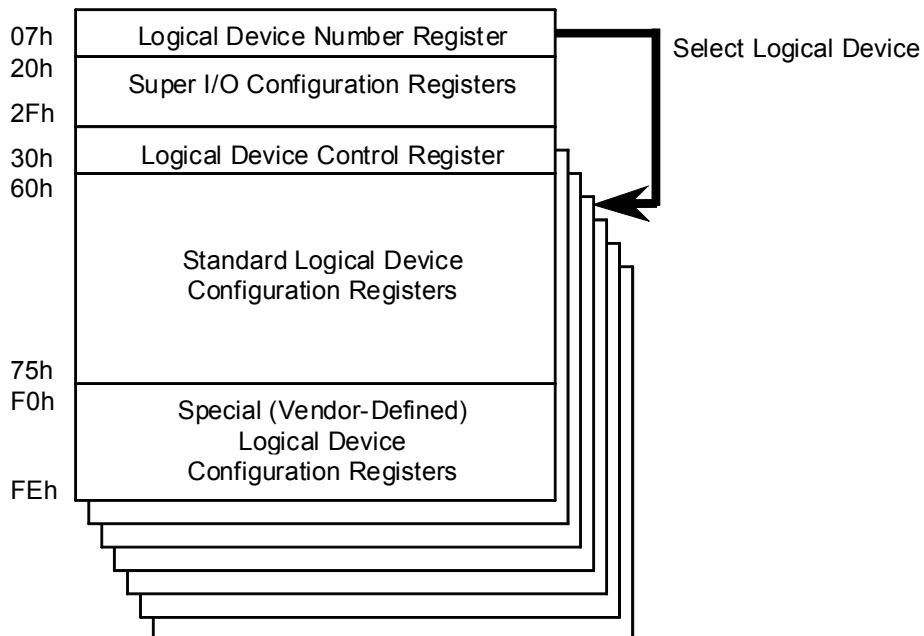
6.2.1 Logical Device Assignment

Table 6-6. Logical Device Number (LDN) Assignments

LDN	Functional Block
01h	Serial Port 1 (UART1)
02h	Serial Port 2 (UART2)
04h	System Wake-Up Control (SWUC)
05h	KBC/Mouse Interface
06h	KBC/Keyboard Interface
0Ah	Consumer IR (CIR)
0Fh	Shared Memory/Flash Interface (SMFI)
10h	RTC-like Timer (RTCT)
11h	Power Management I/F Channel 1 (PMC1)
12h	Power Management I/F Channel 2 (PMC2)
13h	Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI)
14h	Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI)
17h	Power Management I/F Channel 3 (PMC3)
18h	Power Management I/F Channel 4 (PMC4)
19h	Power Management I/F Channel 5 (PMC5)

The following figure indicates the PNPCFG registers are combined with Super I/O Configuration Registers and Logical Device Configuration Registers. Logical Device Configuration Registers of a specified Logical Device is accessible only when Logical Device Number Register is filled with corresponding Logical Device Number listed in Table 6-6 on page 39 .

Figure 6-1. Host View Register Map via Index-Data Pair



6.2.2 Super I/O Configuration Registers

Registers with index from 07h to 2Eh contain Super I/O configuration settings.

6.2.2.1 Logical Device Number (LDN)

This register contains general Super I/O configurations.

Index: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	04h	Logical Device Number (LDN) This register selects the current logical device. All other values are reserved.

6.2.2.2 Chip ID Byte 1 (CHIPID1)

Index: 20h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	89h	Chip ID Byte 1 (CHIPID1) This register contains the Chip ID byte 1.

6.2.2.3 Chip ID Byte 2 (CHIPID2)

Index: 21h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	87h	Chip ID Byte 2 (CHIPID2) This register contains the Chip ID byte 2.

6.2.2.4 Chip Version (CHIPVER)

This register contains revision ID of this chip

Index: 22h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	01h	Chip Version (CHIPVER)

6.2.2.5 Super I/O Control Register (SIOCTRL)

This register contains general Super I/O configurations.

Index: 23h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	0h	Reserved
5-4	-	0h	Reserved
3-2	-	0h	Reserved
1	W	0b	Software Reset (SIOSWRST) Read always returns 0. 0: No action. 1: Software Reset the logical devices.
0	R/W	1b	Super I/O Enable (SIOEN) 0: All Super I/O logical devices are disabled except SWUC and SMFI. 1: Each Super I/O logical device is enabled according to its Activate register. (Index 30h)

6.2.2.6 Super I/O IRQ Configuration Register (SIOIRQ)

This register contains general Super I/O configurations.

Index: 25h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	0h	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	SMI# to IRQ2 Enable (SMI2IRQ2) This bit enables using IRQ number 2 in the SERIRQ protocol as a SMI# interrupt. This bit is similar to LDACT bit in LDA register. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-0	-	0h	Reserved

6.2.2.7 Super I/O General Purpose Register (SIOGP)

This register contains general Super I/O configurations.

Index: 26h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	SIOGP Software Lock (SC6SLK) 0: GPSCR can be cleared by both Hardware and Software reset. (SIOSWRST). 1: GPSCR can only be cleared by Hardware reset.
6-5	R/W	00b	General-Purpose Scratch (GPSCR) Reading returns the value that was previously written. Note that the EC side can access whole PNPCFG registers via EC2I.
4	R/W	0h	RTCT Disabled (RTCTDE) 0: RTCT is enabled according to its Activate register and SIOEN bit in SIOCTRL register. 1: Disabled
3-0	-	0h	Reserved

6.2.2.8 Super I/O Power Mode Register (SIOPWR)

See also 6.4.5.2.

Index: 2Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	0h	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Power Supply Off (PWRSLY) It indicates the EC side that the host requests to shut down the power in legacy mode. Refer to SCRDPSO bit in SWCTL2 register on page 120 0: No action 1: It indicates power shut down if PWRSLY is Legacy mode. Note: It always returns 0 when read.
0	R/W	0h	Power Button Mode (PWRBTN) This bit controls the power button mode in the SWUC. Refer to SCRDPPBM bit in SWCTL2 register on page 120 0: Legacy 1: ACPI

6.2.2.9 Depth 2 I/O Address (D2ADR)

For the address/data pair (a.k.a. index/data pair) listed in Table 6-2. Host View Register Map, PNPCFG on page 36, there are two registers to create a sub address space containing 256 addresses, and its depth is 1.

In addition, there are two registers (D2ADR and D2DAT) to create a further sub address, and its depth is 2.

In the depth 2 address space, there are following three registers.

Offset 10h: I2EC_ADDR_L

Offset 11h: I2EC_ADDR_H

Offset 12h: I2EC_DATA

Index: 2Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	D2ADR

6.2.2.10 Depth 2 I/O Data (D2DAT)

Index: 2Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	D2DAT

6.2.3 Standard Logical Device Configuration Registers

Registers with index from 30h to F9h contain Logical Device configuration settings. LDN of the wanted logical device should be written to LDN register before accessing these registers.

This section lists a standard description of these registers. Some default values for each register and more detailed information for each logical device should be referred in each section.

6.2.3.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	0h	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	Logical Device Activation Control (LDACT) 0: Disabled The registers (Index 60h-FEh) are not accessible. Refer to SIOEN bit in SIOCTRL 1: Enabled

6.2.3.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

This register will be read-only if it is unused by a logical device.

The 16-bit base address must not be 0000h and might have the boundary limit for each logical device.

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	Depend on Logical Device	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBA[15:8]) This register indicates selected I/O base address bits 15-8 for I/O Descriptor 0.

6.2.3.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

This register will be read-only if it is unused by a logical device.

The 16-bit base address must not be 0000h and might have the boundary limit for each logical device.

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	Depend on Logical Device	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBA[7:0]) This register indicates selected I/O base address bits 7-0 for I/O Descriptor 0.

6.2.3.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

This register will be read-only if it is unused by a logical device.

The 16-bit base address must not be 0000h and might have the boundary limit for each logical device.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	Depend on Logical Device	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBA[15:8]) This register indicates selected I/O base address bits 15-8 for I/O Descriptor 1.

6.2.3.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

This register will be read-only if it is unused by a logical device.

The 16-bit base address must not be 0000h and might have the boundary limit for each logical device.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	Depend on Logical Device	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBA[7:0]) This register indicates selected I/O base address bits 7-0 for I/O Descriptor 1.

6.2.3.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

This register will be read-only if it is unused by a logical device.

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	0h	Reserved
4	R/W	0	Wake-Up IRQ Enable (WKIRQEN) Allow this logical device to trigger a wake-up event to SWUC. This bit should not be set in SWUC Logical Device since it is used to collect IRQ sources for SWUC. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3-0	R/W	Depend on Logical Device	IRQ Number (IRQNUM) Select the IRQ number (level) asserted by this logical device via SERIRQ. 00d: This logical device doesn't use IRQ. 01d-012d: IRQ1-12 are selected correspondingly. 14d-15d: IRQ14-15 are selected correspondingly. Otherwise: Invalid IRQ routing configuration.

6.2.3.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

This register will be read-only if it is unused by a logical device.

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	0h	Reserved
1	R/W	Depend on Logical Device	Interrupt Request Polarity Select (IRQPS) This bit indicates the polarity of the interrupt request. 0: IRQ request is buffered and applied on SERIRQ. 1: IRQ request is inverted before being applied on SERIRQ. This bit should be configured before the logical device is activated.
0	R/W	Depend on Logical Device	Interrupt Request Triggered Mode Select (IRQTMS) This bit indicates that edge or level triggered mode is used by this logical device and should be updated by EC firmware via EC2I since the triggered mode is configured in EC side registers. This bit is just read as previously written (scratch register bit) and doesn't affect SERIRQ operation. 0: edge triggered mode 1: level triggered mode

6.2.3.8 DMA Channel Select 0 (DMAS0)

Index: 74h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	0h	Reserved
2-0	R	4h	DMA Channel Select 0 A value of 4 indicates that no DMA channel is active.

6.2.3.9 DMA Channel Select 1 (DMAS1)

Index: 75h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	0h	Reserved
2-0	R	4h	DMA Channel Select 1 A value of 4 indicates that no DMA channel is active.

6.2.4 Serial Port 1 (UART1) Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-7. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, UART1 Logical Device

	7	0	Index
		Register Name	
Super I/O Control Reg Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers		Logical Device Number (LDN)	07h
		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	30h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])-Unused	62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0]) -Unused	63h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)	70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71h
		High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS)	F0h

6.2.4.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.4.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	03h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bit 7-4 (IOBAD0[15:12]) are forced to 0000b and can't be written.

6.2.4.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	F8h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43. Bit 3-0 (IOBAD0[3:0]) are forced to 8h and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 16-byte boundary.

6.2.4.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.4.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.4.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	04h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.4.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	02h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.4.8 High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS)

Index: F0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS) This bit indicates that the baud rate of UART1 can be up to 230.4K/460.8K baud, which are determined by the divisor of the baud rate generator. (From Host Side) 0: Not selected 1: Selected
0	-	0b	Reserved

6.2.5 Serial Port 2 (UART2) Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-8. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, UART2 Logical Device

	7	0	Index
		Register Name	
Super I/O Control Reg		Logical Device Number (LDN)	07h
		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	30h
Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])-Unused	62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0]) -Unused	63h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)	70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71h
		High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS)	F0h

6.2.5.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.5.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	02h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bit 7-4 (IOBAD0[15:12]) are forced to 0000b and can't be written.

6.2.5.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	F8h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43. Bit 3-0 (IOBAD0[3:0]) are forced to 8h and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 16-byte boundary.

6.2.5.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.5.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.5.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	03h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.5.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	02h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.5.8 High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS)

Index: F0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS) This bit indicates that the baud rate of UART2 can be up to 230.4K/460.8K baud, which are determined by the divisor of the baud rate generator. (From Host Side) 0: Not selected 1: Selected
0	-	0b	Reserved

6.2.6 System Wake-Up Control (SWUC) Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-9. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, SWUC Logical Device

	7	0	Index
		Register Name	
Super I/O Control Reg		Logical Device Number (LDN)	07h
		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	30h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])-Unused	62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0]) -Unused	63h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)	70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71h

6.2.6.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.6.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43.

6.2.6.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43. Bits 4-0 (IOBAD0[4:0]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 32-byte boundary.

6.2.6.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.6.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.6.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)**Index: 70h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.6.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)**Index: 71h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.7 KBC / Mouse Interface Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-10. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, KBC / Mouse Interface Logical Device

	7	0	Index
Register Name			
Super I/O Control Reg			07h
Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers			30h
Logical Device Number (LDN)			60h
Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)			61h
I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8]) – Unused			62h
I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0]) – Unused			63h
I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8]) – Unused			70h
I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0]) – Unused			71h
Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)			
Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)			

6.2.7.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)**Index: 30h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.7.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43.

6.2.7.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43.

6.2.7.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.7.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.7.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0Ch	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.7.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.8 KBC / Keyboard Interface Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-11. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, KBC / Keyboard Interface Logical Device

	7	0	Index
	Register Name		
Super I/O Control Reg	Logical Device Number (LDN)		
Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])		
	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)		
	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)		

6.2.8.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.8.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bits 7-3 (IOBAD0[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.8.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	60h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43.

6.2.8.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44. Bits 7-3 (IOBAD1[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.8.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	64h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.8.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.8.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.9 Consumer IR Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-12. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, Consumer IR Interface Logical Device

	7	0	Index
	Register Name		
Super I/O Control Reg	Logical Device Number (LDN)		
	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)		
Logical Device Control And Configuration	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])		
	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)		
	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)		

6.2.9.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.9.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	03h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43.

6.2.9.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	10h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43. Bit 2-0 (IOBAD0[2:0]) are forced to 000b and can't be written.

6.2.9.4 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.9.5 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	02h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.10 Shared Memory/Flash Interface (SMFI) Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-13. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, SMFI Interface Logical Device

	7	0	Index
Super I/O Control Reg		Register Name	
		Logical Device Number (LDN)	07h
		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	30h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])-Unused	62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])-Unused	63h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)	70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71h
		LPC Memory Window Base Address [31:24] (LPCMWB)	F0h
		LPC Memory Window Base Address [23:16] (LPCMWB)	F1h
		LPC Memory Winodow Mapping Region Select (LPCMWMRS)	F2h
		LPC Memory Window Control Register (LPCMWCR)	F3h
		Shared Memory Configuration Register (SHMC)	F4h
		H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [15:12] (HLPCRAMBA[15:12])	F5h
		H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [23:16] (HLPCRAMBA[23:16])	F6h
		H2RAM Host Semaphore Interrupt Enable (H2RAMHSIE)	F9h
		H2RAM Host Semaphore Address (H2RAMHSA)	FAh
		H2RAM EC Semaphore Status (H2RAMECSS)	FBh
		H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [24] (HLPCRAMBA[24])	FCh

6.2.10.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.10.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43.

6.2.10.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43. Bits 3-0 (IOBAD0[3:0]) are forced to 0000b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 16-byte boundary.

6.2.10.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.10.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.10.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.10.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	02h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.10.8 LPC Memory Window Base Address [31:24] (LPCMWB[31:24])

The base address of LPC memory window should not overlap with legacy BIOS range, extended legacy BIOS range and HLPCRAMBA.

Index: F0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	LPC Memory Winow Base Address [31:24] (LPCMWB[31:24]) Specify the base address of the user-defined 64K window on LPC memory space for PCH LGMR application.

6.2.10.9 LPC Memory Window Base Address [23:16] (LPCMWB[23:16])

Index: F1h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	LPC Memory Window Base Address [23:16] (LPCMWB[23:16]) Specify the base address of the user-defined 64K window on LPC memory space for PCH LGMR application.

6.2.10.10 LPC Memory Window Mapping Region Select (LPCMWMRS)

Index: F2h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	LPC Memory Window Mapping Region Select (LPCMWMRS) The LPC memory window is mapped into the region that ranges from (10000_0000h – flash size + 64K*LPCMWMRS) to (FFFF_FFFFh – fflash size + 64K*(LPCMWMRS + 1)) on LPC memory space. The flash size is specified by FMSS.

6.2.10.11 LPC Memory Window Control Register (LPCMWCR)

Index: F3h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	LPC Memory Window Enable (LPCMWE) 0b: Disable 1b: The address located in the user-defined LPC memory window of LPC memory space is mapped into the region of flash address space, which is defined by LPCMWMRS.

6.2.10.12 Shared Memory Configuration Register (SHMC)

Index: F4h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	BIOS FWH ID (FWHID) These bits correspond to the 4-bit ID which is part of a FWH transaction.
3	-	-	Reserved
2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	BIOS Extended Space Enable (BIOSEXTS) This bit expands the BIOS address space to make this chip respond the Extended BIOS address range.
0	-	-	Reserved

6.2.10.13 H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [15:12] (HLPCRAMBA[15:12])

The H2RAM-HLPC base address is only within the range: FXXX_X000h. (X denotes it's programmable by registers).

Use H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [24] to decide the decode Range FEXX_X000h or FFXX_X000h.

The H2RAM-HLPC function will be disabled if SPI follow mode is enabled.

Index: F5h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address Bits [15:12] (HLPCRAMBA[15:12]) If H2RAMPS is set to 0, this field defines EC internal RAM base address on LPC memory space. If H2RAMPS is set to 1, this field defines EC internal RAM base address on LPC IO space.
3-0	-	-	Reserved

6.2.10.14 H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [23:16] (HLPCRAMBA[23:16])

Index: F6h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address Bits [23:16] (HLPCRAMBA[23:16]) If H2RAMPS is set to 0, this field defines EC internal RAM base address on LPC memory space. If H2RAMPS is set to 1, write 1b to HLPCRAMBA[16] to enable H2RAM LPC IO-path.

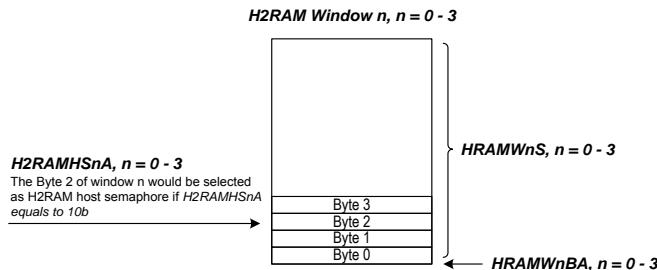
6.2.10.15 H2RAM Host Semaphore Interrupt Enable (H2RAMHSIE)

Address Offset: F9h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 3 Interrupt Enable (H2RAMHS3IE) 0b: Disable 1b: A LPC Memory/FWH/IO Write cycle targeted on H2RAM host semaphore 3 will produce an interrupt (INT83) to EC.
2	R/W	0b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 2 Interrupt Enable (H2RAMHS2IE) 0b: Disable 1b: A LPC Memory/FWH/IO Write cycle targeted on H2RAM host semaphore 2 will produce an interrupt (INT83) to EC.
1	R/W	0b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 1 Interrupt Enable (H2RAMHS1IE) 0b: Disable 1b: A LPC Memory/FWH/IO Write cycle targeted on H2RAM host semaphore 1 will produce an interrupt (INT83) to EC.
0	R/W	0b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 0 Interrupt Enable (H2RAMHS0IE) 0b: Disable 1b: A LPC Memory/FWH/IO Write cycle targeted on H2RAM host semaphore 0 will produce an interrupt (INT83) to EC.

6.2.10.16 H2RAM Host Semaphore Address (H2RAMHSA)

Figure 6-2. Location of H2RAM Host Semaphore



Address Offset: FAh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 3 Address (H2RAMHS3A) 00b: H2RAM host semaphore 3 locates at (H2RAMW3BA[11:0] + 0) 01b: H2RAM host semaphore 3 locates at (H2RAMW3BA[11:0] + 1) 10b: H2RAM host semaphore 3 locates at (H2RAMW3BA[11:0] + 2) 11b: H2RAM host semaphore 3 locates at (H2RAMW3BA[11:0] + 3) This field is available only when H2RAM window 3 is enabled.
5-4	R/W	00b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 2 Address (H2RAMHS2A) 00b: H2RAM host semaphore 2 locates at (H2RAMW2BA[11:0] + 0) 01b: H2RAM host semaphore 2 locates at (H2RAMW2BA[11:0] + 1) 10b: H2RAM host semaphore 2 locates at (H2RAMW2BA[11:0] + 2) 11b: H2RAM host semaphore 2 locates at (H2RAMW2BA[11:0] + 3) This field is available only when H2RAM window 2 is enabled.
3-2	R/W	00b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 1 Address (H2RAMHS1A) 00b: H2RAM host semaphore 1 locates at (H2RAMW1BA[11:0] + 0) 01b: H2RAM host semaphore 1 locates at (H2RAMW1BA[11:0] + 1) 10b: H2RAM host semaphore 1 locates at (H2RAMW1BA[11:0] + 2) 11b: H2RAM host semaphore 1 locates at (H2RAMW1BA[11:0] + 3) This field is available only when H2RAM window 1 is enabled.
1-0	R/W	00b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 0 Address (H2RAMHS0A) 00b: H2RAM host semaphore 0 locates at (H2RAMW0BA[11:0] + 0) 01b: H2RAM host semaphore 0 locates at (H2RAMW0BA[11:0] + 1) 10b: H2RAM host semaphore 0 locates at (H2RAMW0BA[11:0] + 2) 11b: H2RAM host semaphore 0 locates at (H2RAMW0BA[11:0] + 3) This field is available only when H2RAM window 0 is enabled.

6.2.10.17 H2RAM EC Semaphore Status (H2RAMECSS)

The host can know H2RAM EC semaphore status by reading this register.

Address Offset: FBh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W1C	0b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 3 Status (H2RAMECS3S) This bit is automatically set to 1b while H2RAM EC semaphore 3 is written. 0b: H2RAM EC semaphore 3 is not written. 1b: H2RAM EC semaphore 3 is written. Writing 1 to clear this bit.
2	R/W1C	0b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 2 Status (H2RAMECS2S) This bit is automatically set to 1b while H2RAM EC semaphore 2 is written. 0b: H2RAM EC semaphore 2 is not written. 1b: H2RAM EC semaphore 2 is written. Writing 1 to clear this bit.
1	R/W1C	0b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 1 Status (H2RAMECS1S) This bit is automatically set to 1b while H2RAM EC semaphore 1 is written. 0b: H2RAM EC semaphore 1 is not written. 1b: H2RAM EC semaphore 1 is written. Writing 1 to clear this bit.
0	R/W1C	0b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 0 Status (H2RAMECS0S) This bit is automatically set to 1b while H2RAM EC semaphore 0 is written. 0b: H2RAM EC semaphore 0 is not written. 1b: H2RAM EC semaphore 0 is written. Writing 1 to clear this bit.

6.2.10.18 H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [24] (HLPCRAMBA[24])

Index: FCh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	R/W	01h	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address Bits [24] (HLPCRAMBA[24]) 0b: This field only defines EC decode Range FEXX_X000h on LPC memory space. 1b: This field only defines EC decode Range FFXX_X000h on LPC memory space.

6.2.11 RTC-like Timer Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register and more detailed information for this logical device. Some registers' bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-14. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, RTCT Logical Device

	7	0	Index
		Register Name	
Super I/O Control Reg		Logical Device Number (LDN)	07h
		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	30h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD1[7:0])	61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	63h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[15:8])	64h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[7:0])	65h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 3 (IOBAD3[15:8])	66h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 3 (IOBAD3[7:0])	67h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 4 (IOBAD4[15:8])	68h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 4 (IOBAD4[7:0])	69h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX) –Unused	70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP) –Unused	71h
		RAM Lock Register (RLR)	F0h
		Data of Month Alarm Register Offset (DOMAO)	F1h
		Month Alarm Register Offset (MONAO)	F2h
		P80L Begin Index (P80LB)	F3h
		P80L End Index (P80LE)	F4h
		P80L Current Index (P80LC)	F5h

6.2.11.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43. Refer to SIOEN bit in SIOCTRL and SIOEN bit in SIOCTRL Register.

6.2.11.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43.

6.2.11.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	70h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43. Bit 0 (IOBAD0[0]) is forced to 0b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 2-byte boundary.

6.2.11.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	02h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.11.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	72h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44. Bit 0 (IOBAD1[0]) is forced to 0b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 2-byte boundary.

6.2.11.6 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[15:8])

Index: 64h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.11.7 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[7:0])

Index: 65h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44. Bit 0 (IOBAD2[0]) is forced to 0b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 2-byte boundary.

6.2.11.8 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 3 (IOBAD3[15:8])

Index: 66h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.11.9 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 3 (IOBAD3[7:0])

Index: 67h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44. Bit 0 (IOBAD3[0]) is forced to 0b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 2-byte boundary.

6.2.11.10 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 4 (IOBAD4[15:8])

Index: 68h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.11.11 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 4 (IOBAD4[7:0])

Index: 69h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44. Bit 0 (IOBAD4[0]) is forced to 0b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 2-byte boundary.

6.2.11.12 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	08h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.11.13 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.11.14 RAM Lock Register (RLR)

Index: F0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Block Standard RAM R/W (BSRW) 0: R/W to 38h-3Fh of the Standard RAM is allowed. 1: Not allowed. Writes are ignored and reads return FFh.
6	R/W	0b	Block RAM Write (BW) 0: Write to Standard and Extended RAM is allowed. 1: Not allowed. Writes are ignored.
5	R/W	0b	Block Extended RAM Write (BEW) 0: Write to bytes 00h-1Fh of the Extended RAM is allowed. 1: Not allowed. Writes are ignored.
4	R/W	0b	Block Extended RAM Read (BER) 0: Read from bytes 00h-1Fh of the Extended RAM is allowed. 1: Not allowed. Reads return FFh.
3	R/W	0b	Block Extended RAM R/W (BERW) 0: R/W to the Extended RAM 128 bytes is allowed. 1: Not allowed. Writes are ignored and reads return FFh
2-0	-	0h	Reserved

6.2.11.15 Date of Month Alarm Register Offset (DOMAO)

Index: F1h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	0b	Reserved
6-0	R/W	49h	Date of Month Alarm Register Offset (DOMAO) It contains the index offset of "date of month alarm".

6.2.11.16 Month Alarm Register Offset (MONAO)

Index: F2h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	0b	Reserved
6-0	R/W	4Ah	Month Alarm Register Offset (MONAO) It contains the index offset of “month alarm”.

6.2.11.17 P80L Begin Index (P80LB)

Index: F3h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	W	0b	Host RTCT RAM Only (HRTCRAM) If HRTCRAM or ECRTCRAM is one, Index 80h-FFh in RTCT Bank 0/1 is RAM bytes. Otherwise, Bit 7 of index in RTCT Bank 0/1 is not decoded.
6	-	-	Reserved
5-0	R/W	-	P80L Begin Index (P80LBI) It indicates the P80L queue begins in BRAM Bank 1. Refer to section 7.19.3.1 P80L on page 414

6.2.11.18 P80L End Index (P80LE)

Index: F4h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5-0	R/W	-	P80L End Index (P80LEI) It indicates the P80L queue ends in BRAM Bank 1. Refer to section 7.19.3.1 P80L on page 414

6.2.11.19 P80L Current Index (P80LC)

Index: F5h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5-0	R/W	-	P80L Current Index (P80LC) It indicates the P80L queue current in BRAM Bank 1. Refer to section 7.19.3.1 P80L on page 414

6.2.12 Power Management I/F Channel 1 Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-15. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PM1 Logical Device

	7	0	Index
	Register Name		
Super I/O Control Reg	Logical Device Number (LDN)		
Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])		
	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)		
	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)		

6.2.12.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.12.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bits 7-3 (IOBAD0[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.12.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	62h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43.

6.2.12.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44. Bits 7-3 (IOBAD1[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.12.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	66h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.12.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
3-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.12.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.13 Power Management I/F Channel 2 Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-16. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PMC2 Logical Device

	7	0	Index
		Register Name	
Super I/O Control Reg		Logical Device Number (LDN)	07h
		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	30h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	63h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[15:8])	64h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[7:0])	65h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)	70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71h
		General Purpose Interrupt (GPINTR)	F0h

6.2.13.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.13.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bits 7-3 (IOBAD0[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.13.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	62h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43.

6.2.13.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44. Bits 7-3 (IOBAD1[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.13.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	66h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.13.6 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[15:8])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 64h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.13.7 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[7:0])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 65h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44. Bits 3-0 (IOBAD2[3:0]) are forced to 0000b and can't be written.

6.2.13.8 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.13.9 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.13.10 General Purpose Interrupt (GPINTR)

Index: F0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	W	-	General Purpose Interrupt 3 (GPINT3) Writing 1 to this bit will issue an interrupt to INT35.
2	W	-	General Purpose Interrupt 2 (GPINT2) Writing 1 to this bit will issue an interrupt to INT34.
1	W	-	General Purpose Interrupt 1 (GPINT1) Writing 1 to this bit will issue an interrupt to INT33.
0	W	-	General Purpose Interrupt 0 (GPINT0) Writing 1 to this bit will issue an interrupt to INT32.

6.2.14 Power Management I/F Channel 3 Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-17. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PMC3 Logical Device

	7	0	Index
		Register Name	
Super I/O Control Reg		Logical Device Number (LDN)	07h
Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	30h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	63h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)	70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71h

6.2.14.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.14.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bit 7-3 (IOBAD0[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.14.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	6Ah	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43.

6.2.14.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44. Bits 7-3 (IOBAD1[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.14.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	6Eh	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.14.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)**Index: 70h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.14.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)**Index: 71h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.15 Power Management I/F Channel 4 Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-18. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PMC4 Logical Device

	7	0	Index
Super I/O Control Reg		Register Name	
Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers		Logical Device Number (LDN)	07h
		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	30h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	63h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)	70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71h

6.2.15.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.15.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bit 7-3 (IOBAD0[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.15.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	74h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43.

6.2.15.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44. Bits 7-3 (IOBAD1[15:11]) are forced to 00000b and can't be written.

6.2.15.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	78h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.15.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.15.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.16 Power Management I/F Channel 5 Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-19. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O, PMC5 Logical Device

	7	0	Index
	Register Name		
Super I/O Control Reg	Logical Device Number (LDN)		
Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])		
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])		
	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)		
	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)		

6.2.16.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.16.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bit 7-4 (IOBAD0[15:12]) are forced to 0000b and can't be written.

6.2.16.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

It contains Data Register Base Address Register.

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	7Ah	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43.

6.2.16.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44. Bits 7-4 (IOBAD1[15:12]) are forced to 0000b and can't be written.

6.2.16.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

It contains Command/Status Register Base Address Register.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	7Ch	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.16.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.16.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	01h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.17 Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-20. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, SSPI Logical Device

	7	0	Index
Super I/O Control Reg Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers	Logical Device Number (LDN)		07h
	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)		30h
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])		60h
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])		61h
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])-Unused		62h
	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0]) -Unused		63h
	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX)		70h
	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)		71h

6.2.17.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.17.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	03h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43. Bit 7-4 (IOBAD0[15:12]) are forced to 0000b and can't written.

6.2.17.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])

Index: 61h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43. Bit 1-0 (IOBAD0[1:0]) are forced to 00b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 4-byte boundary.

6.2.17.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.17.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.17.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.17.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	02h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.18 Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI) Configuration Registers

This section lists the default value for each register respectively and more detailed information for this logical device. Some register bits will be read-only if unused.

Table 6-21. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, PECI Interface Logical Device

		7	0	Index
		Register Name		
Logical Device Control And Configuration Registers	Super I/O Control Reg	Logical Device Number (LDN)		07h
		Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)		30h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])		60h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])		61h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])-Unused		62h
		I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])-Unused		63h
		Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enabled (IRQNUMX) – Unused		70h
		Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP) -Unused		71h

6.2.18.1 Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)

Index: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.1 on page 43.

6.2.18.2 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])

Index: 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.2 on page 43.

6.2.18.3 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])**Index: 61h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.3 on page 43. Bits 2-0 (IOBAD0[2:0]) are forced to 000b and can't be written. It means the base address is on the 8-byte boundary.

6.2.18.4 I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 62h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.4 on page 44.

6.2.18.5 I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.5 on page 44.

6.2.18.6 Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.6 on page 44.

6.2.18.7 Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)

This register is unused and read-only.

Index: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Refer to section 6.2.3.7 on page 45.

6.2.19 Programming Guide

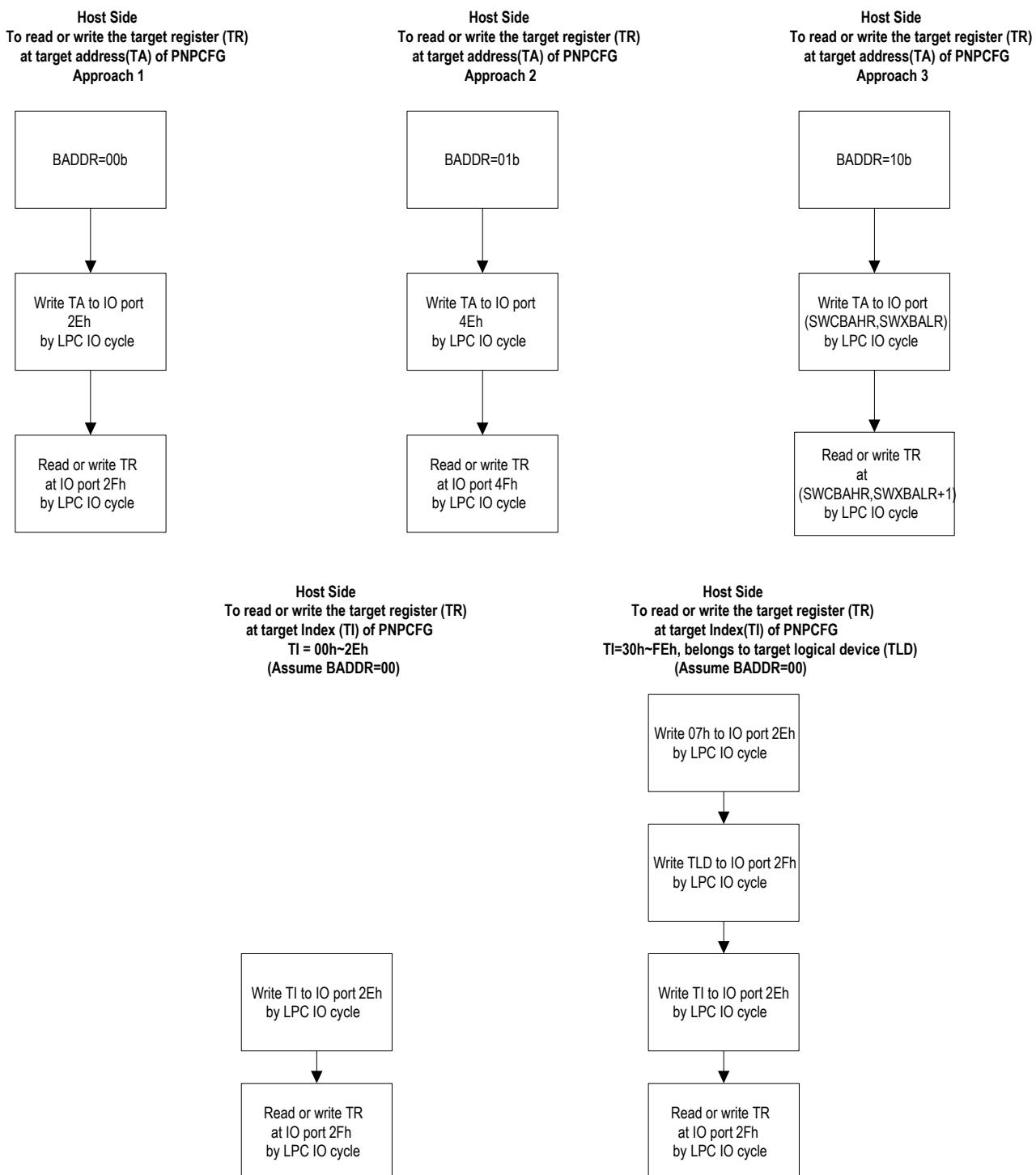
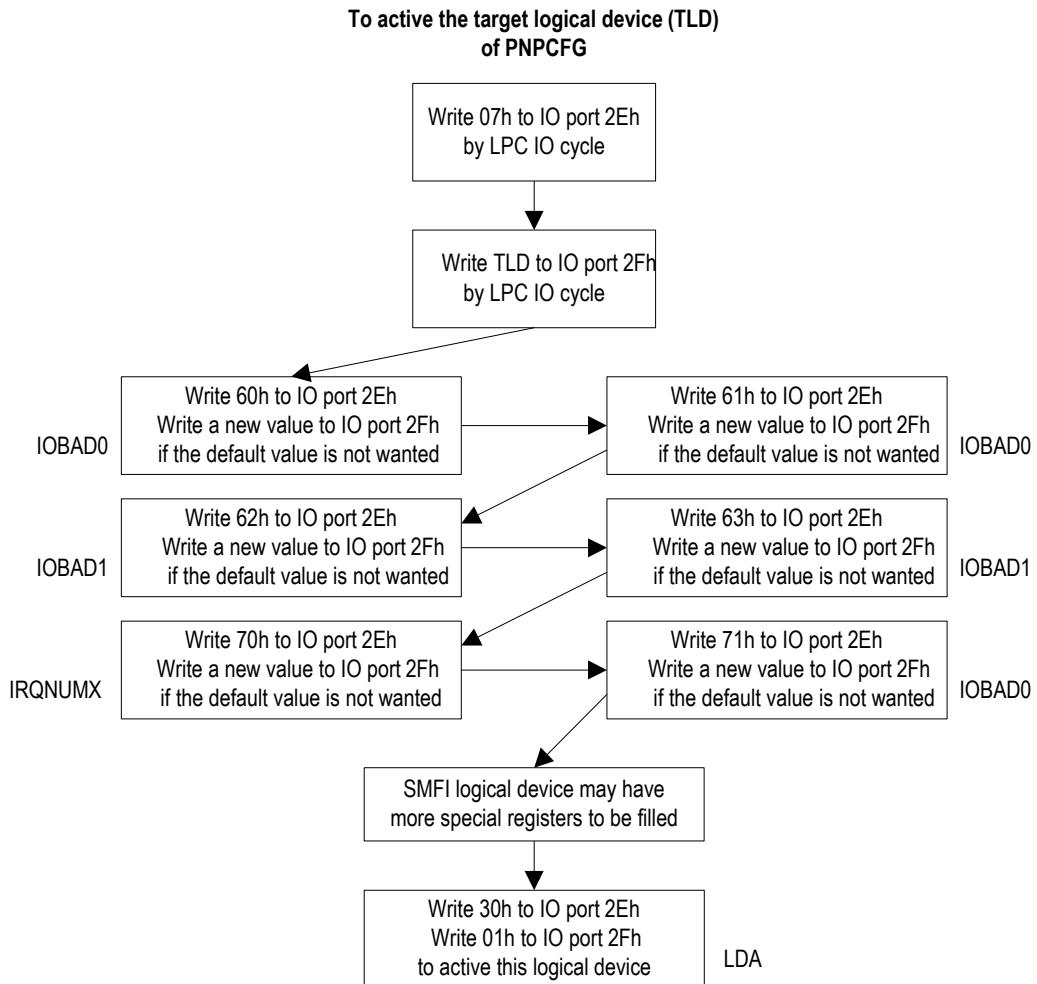


Figure 6-3. Program Flow Chart for PNPCFG



Note: To enable an interrupt to host side through SERIRQ, the firmware enables it in registers at PNPCFG and relative registers in EC side.

See also section 7.15.5 on page 392 for accessing PNPCFG through EC2I.

6.3 Shared Memory Flash Interface Bridge (SMFI)

6.3.1 Overview

The bridge provides the host to access the shared memory. It also provides EC code address space mapped into the host domain address space, and locking mechanism for read/write protection.

6.3.2 Features

- Behaves as a LPC/FWH memory device (HLPC)
- Supports memory mapping between host domain and EC domain
- Supports read/write(program/erase) flash operations and protection mechanism
- Supports two shared memory access paths: host and EC
- Supports 128KB e-flash

6.3.3 Function Description

6.3.3.1 Supported Interface

IT8987/SMFI can behave as a LPC/FWH memory device on LPC bus connected to the host Southbridge and this function is abbreviated as HLPC.

6.3.3.2 Supported Flash

128K-byte e-flash

6.3.3.3 HLPC: Host Translation

The SMFI provides an HLPC interface between the host bus and the M bus. The flash is mapped into the host memory address space for host accesses. The flash is also mapped into the EC memory address space for EC accesses.

An M bus transaction is generated by the host bus translations and has the following three types:

- 8-bit LPC Memory Read/Write
- 8-bit FWH Read/Write
- 8-bit Host-Indirect Memory Read/Write

After the LPC address translation is done, the host memory transaction is forwarded to M-bus (flash interface) if it is accessing an unprotected region. The host side can't issue a write transaction until the firmware write 1 to HOSTWA bit SMECCS register.

6.3.3.4 EC-Indirect Memory Read/Write Transaction

R8032TT in IT8987 can access full flash address range via "MOVX" instruction.

The firmware code to issue EC-Indirect Memory cycle should be executed within Scratch ROM.

This kind of access is useful to

1. read flash ID for EC BIOS.
2. customize user-defined flash programming interface.
3. put extra BIOS data outside EC 64K.

- **EC-Indirect Memory Address Registers (ECINDAR3-0)**

Stand for flash address bit 31 to 0.

- **EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR)**

Stand for read or write data bit 7 to 0.

- **EC-Indirect Read Mode**

The EC firmware can read the flash byte located at the flash address combined by ECINDAR2-0 from ECINDDR when ECINDAR3 is 00h.

- **EC-Indirect Follow Mode**

For serial flash, another mode to access whole flash is performed by EC-Indirect Follow Mode.

EC-Indirect Follow Mode is enabled after

1. Writing 0Fh to ECINDAR3 register.

EC-Indirect Follow Mode is disabled after

1. Writing 00h to ECINDAR3 register.

In EC-Indirect Follow Mode, for access serial flash

1. Writing 00h to EC-Indirect Memory Address FFFF_FExxh generates FSCE# with high level.
2. Writing data to EC-Indirect Memory Address FFFF_FDxxh generates FSCE# with low level and FMOSI with written data.
3. Reading data from EC-Indirect Memory Address FFFF_FDxxh generates FSCE# with low level and read data from FMISO.
4. All of the above actions are clocked by 8 FSCK clock-ticks and FSCK is stopped in other cases.

In EC-Indirect Follow Mode, use the EC-Indirect Memory Address(7FFF_FExxh and 7FFF_FDxxh) to access e-flash.

6.3.3.5 Flash Shared between Host and EC Domains

A hardware arbiter handles flash read/write translation between the host and EC side.

- **HLPC**

IT8987 bridges the memory cycles on LPC bus and bridges them to the attached SPI flash.

The SMFI internal flash controller performs interleave mechanism control to let the flash fetch for the host and EC side.

It may respond to Long-Waits on LPC bus or freeze 8032 code-fetch due to interleave mechanism.

There is no internal hard-wired mechanism to monitor whether the attached SPI flash is in the WIP (busy) state caused by the WIP instruction from the host. Before the host accesses the e-flash, it is necessary to set the LPC Memory Cycle Target Select bit (LMCTS) or Host Indirect Cycle Target Select (HICTS) at HINSTC2.

When the host wants to erase or program the flash via Follow Mode 0, the signaling interface (Semaphore Write or KBC/PMC extended command such as 62h/66h command) notifies the firmware to write 1 to HOSTWA bit in SMECCS register. EC 8032 will fail to code fetch due to the WIP (busy) state caused by erasing/programming so Scratch ROM must be applied. Once the host accessing to the flash is completed, the host should indicate this to the EC, allowing EC to clear HOSTWA bit and resume normal operation. The EC can clear HOSTWA bit at any time, and prevent the host from issuing any erase or program operations.

When the host wants to erase or program the flash via Follow Mode 1, it is not necessary for the firmware to shadow code to the SRAM if the EC code is not modified since there is an internal hard-wired mechanism to monitor the WIP (busy) state of the flash. Refer to section 6.3.3.12 HLPC: Serial Flash Programming on page 81 for its description and limitation.

6.3.3.6 Response to a Forbidden Access

A forbidden access is generated by a translated host address which is protected.

HLPC:

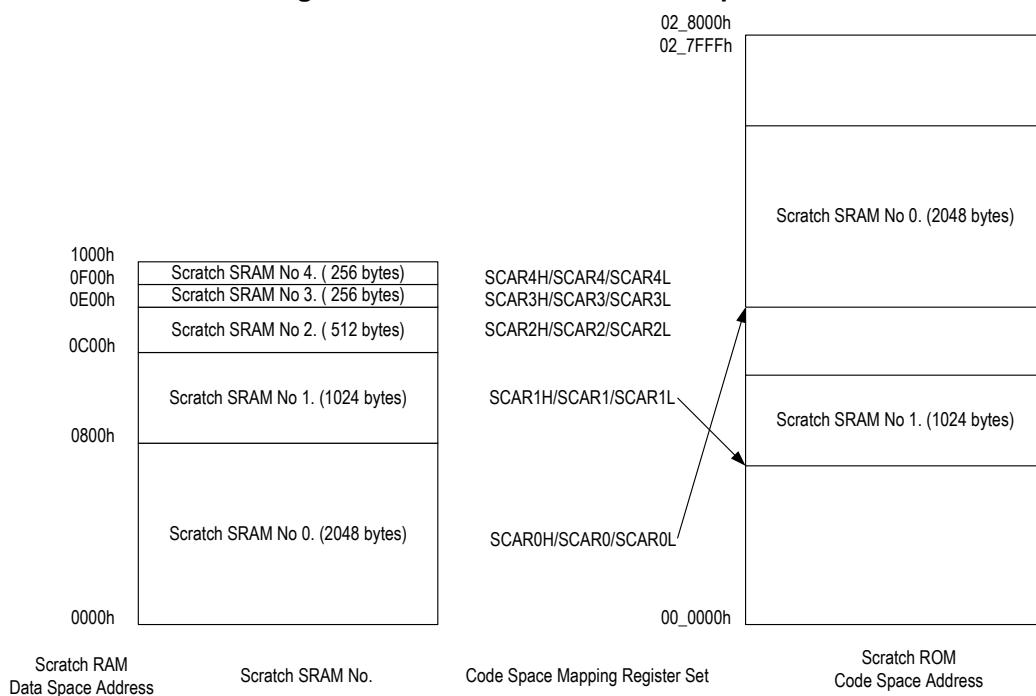
The response to the host bus is according to HERES field in SMECCS register.

6.3.3.7 Scratch SRAM

There are five internal Scratch SRAMs No 0-4 which are always mapped into data space and may be mapped into code space if their corresponding code space mapping registers are enabled. It also means that Scratch SRAM may be mapped into data and code space at the same time and the firmware on Scratch ROM can access the same Scratch RAM. It is called Scratch RAM when being located at data space (default after reset) and called Scratch ROM when being located at code space.

Each of these five Scratch SRAM can be mapped into code space with any base addresses without the boundary limit. More than one Scratch SRAM No. can be mapped into code space with an overlay range.

Figure 6-4. Scratch SRAM in Data Space



Each Scratch SRAM No. has three corresponding code space mapping registers in Figure 6-4. Scratch SRAM in Data Space. To enable a Scratch SRAM to be mapped into code space, refer to the following steps with code space mapping registers.

For Scratch SRAM No. 0:

SC0A17-0 field (18-bit) is the address of Scratch SRAM No. 0. Also refer to ECBB field in FECBSR register on page 89.

The base address in SC0A17-0 field is only valid if it is between 00_0000h and 02_7FFFh.

To enable the code space mapping of Scratch No. 0:

Make SC0A17-0 field is between 00_0000h and 02_7FFFh.

To disable the code space mapping of Scratch No. 0:

Write 11b to SC0A17-16 field.

Scratch SRAM No.0 is always located in data space regardless of mapping into code space.

So is Scratch SRAM No. 1-4.

This SSMC bit in FBCFG register is OBSOLETE. This register bit is only used to be compatible with old IT8510 firmware and should not be used in new firmware.

6.3.3.8 DMA for Scratch SRAM

DMA (Direct Memory Access) is used to shadow flash content of a specified address range inside code space to Scratch SRAM. The performance of DMA is much better than "MOVC-MOVX" steps.

To enable DMA operation to Scratch SRAM No. 0, please follow the steps below:

1. Write data to SCAR0H register with wanted SC0A17-16 field and 1 to NSDMA bit.
2. Write data to SCAR0L register with wanted SC0A7-0 field.
3. Write data to SCAR0M register with wanted SC0A15-8 field.
4. Write data to SCAR0H register with wanted SC0A17-16 field and 0 to NSDMA bit.
DMA operation is started and code space mapping is enabled after DMA operation is finished.

If the firmware wants to modify the mapped base address in code space, more steps below should be taken:

5. Write data to SCAR0H register with 11b to SC0A17-16 field.
Disable code space mapping first since SC0A17-0 are modified in three writings and may be invalid before writing is completed.
6. Write data to SCAR0M/SCAR0L register with wanted SC0A15-0 field.
7. Write data to SCAR0H register with wanted SC0A17-16 field.
Enable code space mapping after this step.

So is Scratch SRAM No. 1-4.

See also 7.1.10.4 Code snippet of Copying Flash Content to Scratch ROM (DMA) on page 192.

6.3.3.9 HLPC: Flash Programming via Host LPC Interface with Scratch SRAM

When programming flash via HLPC Follow Mode 0 is processing, the flash will be busy and code fetch from flash by 8032 and will be invalid and cause 8032 fail to execute instructions. It means the firmware must copy necessary instructions from code space to Scratch SRAM, enable mapping Scratch SRAM to Scratch ROM, and jump to Scratch ROM before programming flash.

Flash Programming Steps:

- (a) The host side communicates to the EC side via KBC/PMC extended or semaphore registers
- (b) EC side: Write 1 to HOSTWA bit in SMECCS register
- (c) EC side: Copy necessary code to Scratch RAM (by MOVC-MOVX steps or DMA)
- (d) EC side: Enable code space mapping of Scratch SRAM
- (e) EC side: Make the host processor enter SMM mode if necessary
- (f) EC side: Jump instruction to Scratch ROM
- (g) Host side: Set related memory-write registers in South-Bridge
- (h) Host side: Start flash programming
- (i) End flash programming and reset EC domain if necessary.
(Refer to section 5.5 on page 24)

Note: Do not let EC enter Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode while processing flash programming flow.

6.3.3.10 Force 8032 to Code Fetch from Internal SRAM

For serial flash, it may not be accessed immediately after issuing "Release Power Down (ABh)" instruction until

a time delay is listed on flash specification.

To make sure there is no access cycle on the flash after waking up from the Sleep mode, the firmware must execute a delay routine in Scratch ROM.

It means that “ORL PCON” instruction, delay routine and interrupt entry (e.g.0013h for INT1#) are all required to be code-fetch from internal SRAM (Scratch).

6.3.3.11 Force 8032 to Clear Dynamic Caches

For serial flash, after the flash is modified by the host program, the dynamic caches have to be cleared since they contain old and invalid cache content. Refer to section 7.1.10.5 Code snippet of Clearing Dynamic Caches on page 192.

6.3.3.12 HLPC: Serial Flash Programming

There is Follow Mode dedicated for serial flash programming through host LPC interface.

There are mode 0 and 1 for Follow Mode and they can not be enabled at the same time.

In mode 0, there is no internal hard-wired mechanism to monitor the WIP (busy) state of the flash.

In mode 1, there is an internal hard-wired mechanism to monitor the WIP (busy) state of the flash; however, the utility in the host side is still required to poll the flash status via RDSR instruction.

In mode 0, it's necessary for the firmware to shadow code to the SRAM and stop all flash access to let the HLPC occupies the flash arbiter.

In mode 1, it's not necessary for the firmware to shadow code to the SRAM and HLPC interleaves with other flash access issued by the firmware.

In mode 0, if the hardware protection is disabled, the program in the host side can construct any SPI cycle.

In mode 0, if the hardware protection is enabled, the WIP instructions listed in Table 6-22 are monitored by protection logic.

Table 6-22. SPI Instruction List Monitored by HLPC Follow Mode 0, Protection Enabled

Instruction	Hex Code	Note
Program Data (PROG)	02h	Monitored by protection logic.
AAI Program Byte (AAIB/AI)	AFh	Monitored by protection logic.
AAI Program Word (AAIW/AI)	ADh	Monitored by protection logic.
Chip/Bulk Erase (ERASE)	60h,C7h	Inhibited by protection logic.
Sector/Block Erase (ERASE)	20h,52h,D7h,D8h	Monitored by protection logic.
Otherwise	-	Not monitored by protection logic.

In mode 1, only some specified instructions are supported.

If the leading two bytes of JEDEC ID of flash is "BFh 25h", "50h 01h" will be sent to the flash before bridging a WIP instruction.

Table 6-23. SPI Instruction List Supported by HLPC Follow Mode 1

Instruction	Hex Code	Note
Program Data (PROG)	02h	Monitored by protection logic. Programming single byte supported. Programming multiple bytes isn't supported.
Read Status (RDSR)	05h	Monitored by protection logic. Reading single status byte supported. Reading multiple status bytes isn't supported.
Chip/Bulk Erase (ERASE)	60h,C7h	Not supported
Sector/Block Erase (ERASE)	20h,52h,D7h,D8h	Monitored by protection logic. Supported
Otherwise	-	Not supported

Follow Mode 0 is enabled after

1. Writing 1 to HOSTWA bit in SMECCS register in the EC side.
2. Writing 00h to LPC/FWH Address FFFF_FExxh in the host side

Follow Mode 0 is disabled after

1. Writing 0 to HOSTWA bit in SMECCS register in the EC side.

Follow Mode 1 is enabled after

1. Writing 1 to HFW1EN bit in HCTRL2R register in the EC side.
2. Writing 00h to LPC/FWH Address FFFF_FExxh in the host side
3. Write 1 to ACP80 bit in SPCTRL1 register to enable LPC_IO-to-FSPI function.

+

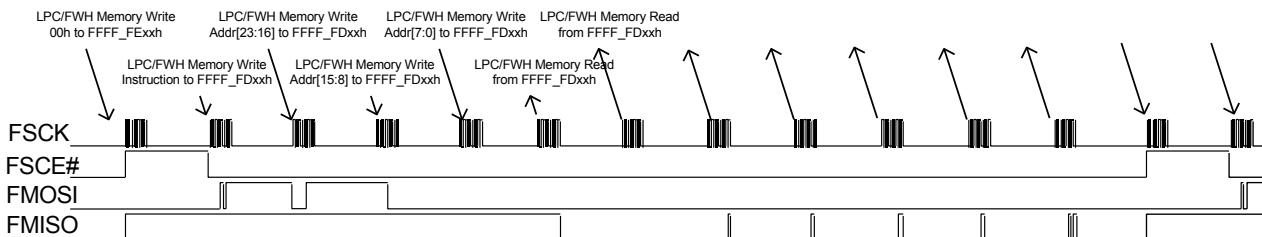
Follow Mode 1 is disabled after

1. Writing 0 to HFW1EN bit in HCTRL2R register in the EC side.

In HLPC Follow Mode,

1. Writing 00h to LPC/FWH Memory Address FFFF_FExxh generates FSCE# with high level.
2. Writing data to LPC/FWH Memory Address FFFF_FDxxh generates FSCE# with low level and FMOSI with written data.
3. Reading data from LPC/FWH Memory Address FFFF_FDxxh generates FSCE# with low level and read data from FMISO.
4. All the above actions are clocked by 8 FSCK clock ticks and FSCK is stopped in other cases.

Figure 6-5. HLPC Follow Mode for Serial Flash (e.g. Fast Read Instruction)



6.3.3.13 Host Side to EC Scratch RAM (H2RAM)

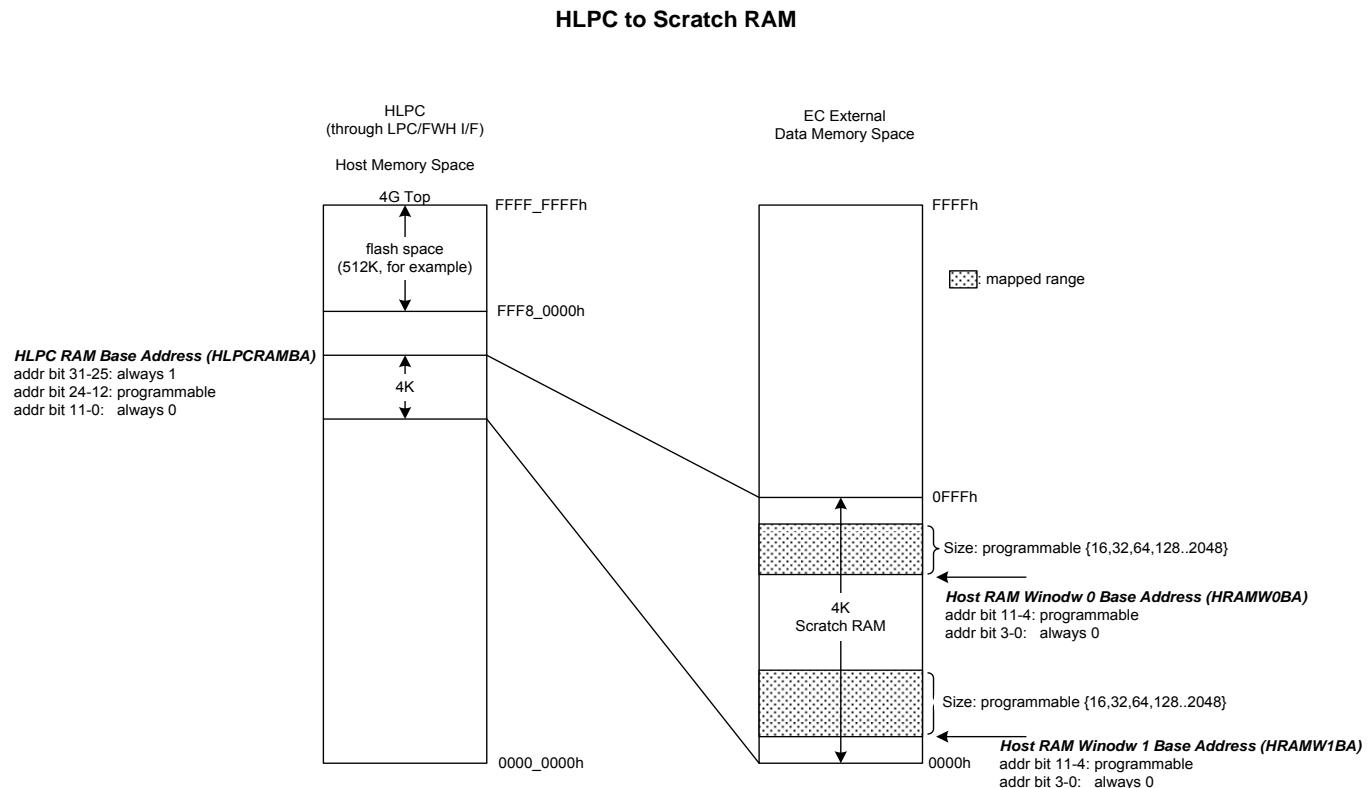
6.3.3.13.1 HLPC to EC Scratch RAM (H2RAM-HLPC) through LPC Memory/FWH Cycles

- H2RAM can be used by the host side software to access 4K Scratch RAM through LPC Memory/FWH

cycles.

- The read/write protection mechanism is also supported by this function.
- H2RAM isn't available through Host-Indirect Memory path.

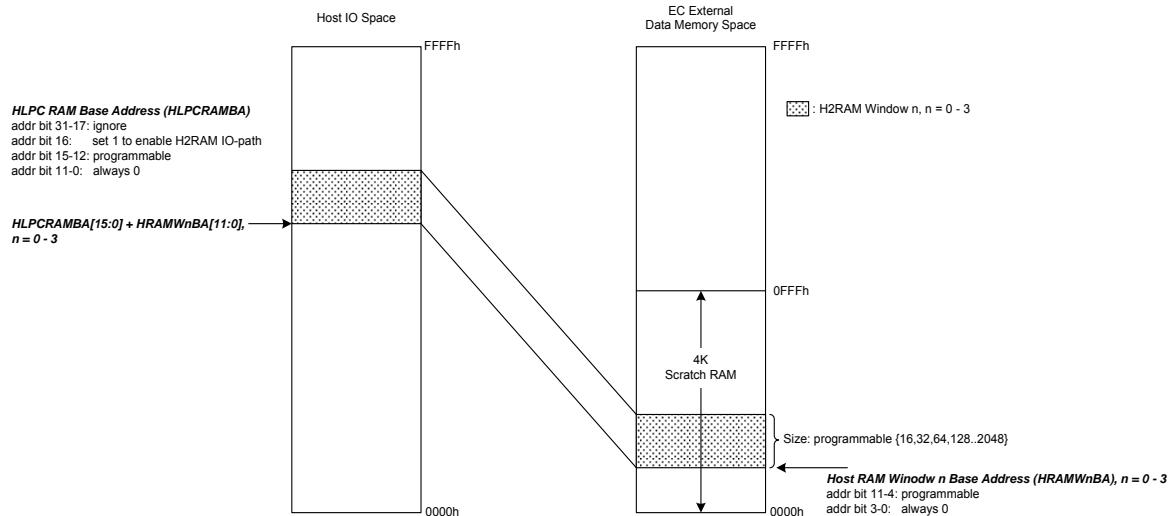
Figure 6-6. H2RAM-HLPC Mapping through LPC Memory/FWH Cycles



6.3.3.13.2 H2RAM to EC Scratch RAM (H2RAM-HLPC) through LPC IO Cycles

- H2RAM also can be used in translating some addresses from the host IO space to Scratch RAM space.
- The read/write protection mechanism is also supported by this function.

Figure 6-7. H2RAM-HLPC Mapping through LPC IO Cycles



6.3.3.13.3 H2RAM EC/Host Semaphore

A LPC Memory/FWH/IO Write cycle targeted on H2RAM host semaphore will produce an interrupt (INT83) to inform EC and a MOVX Write instruction executed on H2RAM EC semaphore also generates an IRQ to the host. Through these semaphores, the host and EC can communicate with each other during H2RAM data transfer.

Figure 6-8. H2RAM EC/Host Semaphore Interrupt through LPC Memory/FWH Cycles

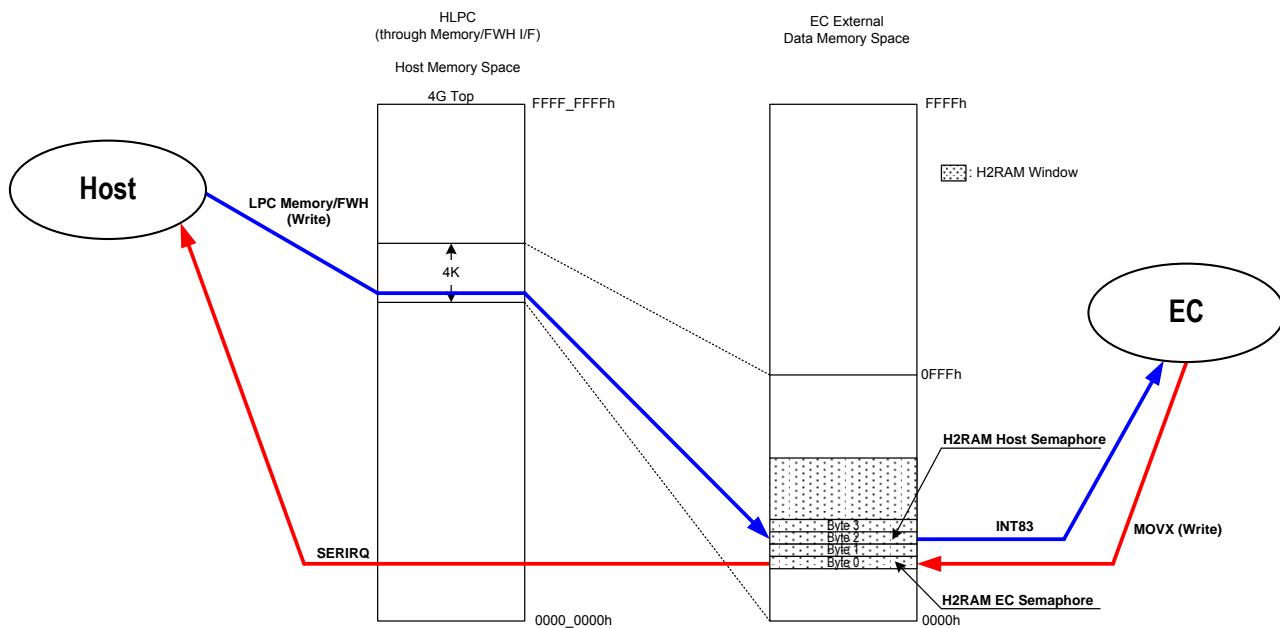
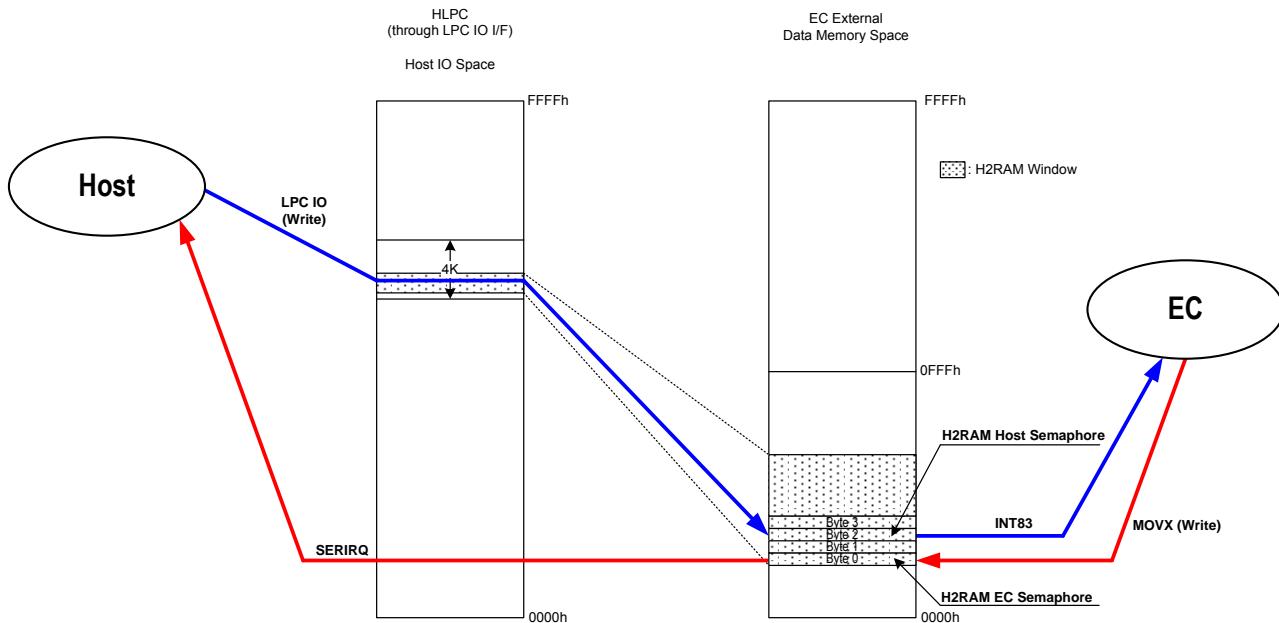


Figure 6-9. H2RAM EC/Host Semaphore Interrupt through LPC IO Cycles


6.3.3.14 E-flash Power-on Detection

6.3.3.14.1 16B-signature and Implicit/Explicit EC Code Base Address

A specific 16 bytes signature is used to locate the EC code base address.

1 st	2 nd	3 rd	4 th	5 th	6 th	7 th	8 th	9 th	10 th	11 th	12 th	13 th	14 th	15 th	16 th
A5h	flag	85h	12h	5Ah	5Ah	AAh	AAh	55h	55h						

All content of the 16 bytes must match the content in the table.

NOTE: Add 16-bytes signature in F/W (strongly recommended)

8th byte's bit 7:

It must be 1b.

8th byte's bit 6:

It must be 0b.

8th byte's bit 5:

It must be 1b.

8th byte's bit 4:

It must be 1b.

8th byte's bit 3:

It must be 0b.

8th byte's bit 2:

It must be 1b.

8th byte's bit 1:

It must be 0b.

8th byte's bit 0:

It must be 1b and this option is removed.

1st byte must be located at 16-byte boundary.

For example, let the address of 1st byte be ADDR1[23:0], then ADDR1[3:0] must be 0000b.

14st byte indicates the compared range ADDR [17:10] between e-flash and SPI flash. The compared range is up to 128K-byte and is multiple of 1K-byte. ADDR[17] must be 0b.

The 1st byte must be located at the address 40h, 50h, 60h, ...F0h offset to the EC code base. For example, let the address of 1st byte be ADDR1[23:0], then ADDR1[7:0] must be 40h, 50h, 60h...F0h (interval 10h) and the EC code base is located at (ADDR1[23:12] * 2¹²). Also refer to section 7.1.10.6 Code snippet of EC Base Signature on page 192.

6.3.3.14.2 Detection Sequence

Table 6-24. Corresponding Table of SPI Flash Power-on Detection

	Scanned Address or Scanned Range	Contents	If content is matched, EC code base address will be at	Note
(a)	[addr 0040h], [addr 0050h], [addr 0060h], ... [addr 00F0h]	16B-signature with implicit format.	000000h	Use implicit format.

6.3.4 EC Interface Registers

The registers of SMFI can be divided into two parts: Host Interface Registers and EC Interface Registers and this section lists the EC interface. The EC interface can only be accessed by the internal 8032 processor. The base address for SMFI is 1000h.

These registers are listed below.

Table 6-25. EC View Register Map, SMFI

7	0	Offset
	FBIU Configuration (FBCFG)	00h
	Flash Programming Configuration Register (FPCFG)	01h
	Flash EC Code Banking Select Register (FECBSR)	05h
	Shared Memory EC Control and Status (SMECCS)	20h
	Shared Memory Host Semaphore (SMHSR)	22h
	Flash Control Register 1 (FLHCTRL1R)	31h
	Flash Control Register 2 (FLHCTRL2R)	32h
	Cache Disabled Register (CACHDISR)	33h
	uC Control Register (UCCTRLR)	34h
	Host Control 2 Register (HCTRL2R)	36h
	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 0 (ECINDAR0)	3Bh
	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 1 (ECINDAR1)	3Ch
	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 2 (ECINDAR2)	3Dh
	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 3 (ECINDAR3)	3Eh
	EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR)	3Fh
	Scratch SRAM 0 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR0L)	40h
	Scratch SRAM 0 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR0M)	41h
	Scratch SRAM 0 Address High Byte Register (SCAR0H)	42h
	Scratch SRAM 1 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR1L)	43h
	Scratch SRAM 1 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR1M)	44h
	Scratch SRAM 1 Address High Byte Register (SCAR1H)	45h
	Scratch SRAM 2 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR2L)	46h
	Scratch SRAM 2 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR2M)	47h
	Scratch SRAM 2 Address High Byte Register (SCAR2H)	48h
	Scratch SRAM 3 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR3L)	49h
	Scratch SRAM 3 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR3M)	4Ah
	Scratch SRAM 3 Address High Byte Register (SCAR3H)	4Bh
	Scratch SRAM 4 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR4L)	4Ch
	Scratch SRAM 4 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR4M)	4Dh
	Scratch SRAM 4 Address High Byte Register (SCAR4H)	4Eh
	Protect 0 Base Addr Register 0 (P0BA0R)	4Fh
	Protect 0 Base Addr Register 1 (P0BA1R)	50h
	Protect 0 Size Register (P0ZR)	51h
	Protect 1 Base Addr Register 0 (P1BA0R)	52h
	Protect 1 Base Addr Register 1 (P1BA1R)	53h
	Protect 1 Size Register (P1ZR)	54h
	Protect 2 Base Addr Register 0 (P2BA0R)	70h
	Protect 2 Base Addr Register 1 (P2BA1R)	71h
	Protect 2 Size Register (P2ZR)	72h
	Protect 3 Base Addr Register 0 (P3BA0R)	73h
	Protect 3 Base Addr Register 1 (P3BA1R)	74h
	Protect 3 Size Register (P3ZR)	75h
	Deferred SPI Instruction (DSINST)	55h
	Deferred SPI Address 15-12 (DSADR1)	56h

7	0	Offset
Deferred SPI Address 23-16 (DSADR2)		57h
Host Instruction Control 1 (HINSTC1)		58h
Host Instruction Control 2 (HINSTC2)		59h
Flash Control Register 3 (FLHCTRL3R)		63h
Flash Control Register 4 (FLHCTRL4R)		64h
Security Host View Block Mode Select [15:8] (SHVBMS[15:8])		6Bh
Security Host View Block Mode Select [7:0] (SHVBMS[7:0])		6Ch
Host RAM Window Control (HRAMWC)		5Ah
Host RAM Window 0 Base Address (HRAMW0BA[11:4])		5Bh
Host RAM Window 1 Base Address (HRAMW1BA[11:4])		5Ch
Host RAM Window 0 Access Allow Size (HRAMW0AAS)		5Dh
Host RAM Window 1 Access Allow Size (HRAMW1AAS)		5Eh
Host RAM Winodw 2 Base Address (HRAMW2BA[11:4])		76h
Host RAM Winodw 3 Base Address (HRAMW3BA[11:4])		77h
Host RAM Window 2 Access Allow Size (HRAMW2AAS)		78h
Host RAM Window 3 Access Allow Size (HRAMW3AAS)		79h
H2RAM EC Semaphore Interrupt Enable (H2RAMECSIE)		7Ah
H2RAM EC Semaphore Address (H2RAMECSA)		7Bh
H2RAM Host Semaphore Status (H2RAMHSS)		7Ch
Host Protect Authentication Data Register (HPADR)		7Eh
Flash Control Register 5 (FLHCTRL5R)		80h

6.3.4.1 FBIU Configuration Register (FBCFG)

The FBIU (Flash Bus Interface Unit) directly interfaces with the flash device. The FBIU also defines the access time to the flash base address from 00_0000h to 3F_FFFFh (4M bytes).

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	0b	Scratch SRAM Map Control (SSMC) 0: Normal 1: Scratch SRAM No. 0, whose size is 2K bytes, is mapped into F800h-FFFFh in code space and overrides the settings in SCAR0H/SCAR0M/SCAR0L register. This bit is OBSOLETE and is only used to be compatible with old IT8510 firmware and should not be used in new firmware. Note that the following is the definition of this register field in IT8510. 0: Scratch RAM (data space). 1: Scratch ROM (code space).
6-2	-	0h	Reserved
1	-	-	Reserved
0	-	-	Reserved

6.3.4.2 Flash Programming Configuration Register (FPCFG)

This register provides general control on banking and flash standby.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	1b	Banking Source Option (BSO) 0: Use 8032 P1[0] and P1[1] as code banking source. 1: Use ECBB[1:0] in FECBSR register as code banking source. Using P1 as banking source has less instruction count since only “MOV” is invoked rather than “MOVX” although T2 and T2EX are used in other bits in P2.
6	R/W	Serial flash: 0b	Auto Flash Standby (AFSTBY) Serial flash: 1: Stop flash access in Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode and issue “Deep Power Down (B9h)” instruction before entering Sleep mode and issue “Release Deep Power Down (ABh)” instruction after waking up from Sleep mode. See also section 6.3.3.10 Force 8032 to Code Fetch from Internal SRAM on page 80. 0: Prevent the flash from entering the standby mode
5	R/W	1b	Reserved
4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	1111b	Reserved

6.3.4.3 Flash EC Code Banking Select Register (FECBSR)

The register is used to select EC banking area Bank 0~2 when BSO =1 in FPCFG register.

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	0h	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	EC Banking Block (ECBB) When ECBB is set to 00, EC code uses conventional code area (maximum 64k) as code memory. Common Bank 32k-byte flash mapping range is from 00_0000h to 00_7FFFh. Bank 0 32k-byte flash mapping range is from 00_8000h to 00_FFFFh. Bank 1 32k-byte flash mapping range is from 01_0000h to 01_7FFFh. Bank 2 32k-byte flash mapping range is from 01_8000h to 01_FFFFh. See also Table 3-1 on page 6 Bits 1-0: 00b: Select Common Bank + Bank 0 01b: Select Common Bank + Bank 1 10b: Select Common Bank + Bank 2 11b: Reserved If A15 of 8032 code memory equals to 0, select Common Bank, otherwise select Bank 0, 1 or 2.

6.3.4.4 Shared Memory EC Control and Status Register (SMECCS)

The following set of registers is accessible only by the EC. The registers are applied to VSTBY. This register provides the flash control and status of a restricted access.

Address Offset: 20h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Host Semaphore Interrupt Enable (HSEMIE) It enables interrupt to 8032 via INT22 of INTC. 0: Disable the host semaphore (write) interrupt to the EC. 1: The interrupt is set (level high) if HSEMW bit is set.
6	R/WC	0b	Host Semaphore Write (HSEMW) 0: Host has not written to HSEM3-0 field in SMHSR register. 1: Host has written to HSEM3-0 field in SMHSR register. Writing 1 to this bit to clear itself and clear internal detect logic. Writing 0 has no effect.
5	R/W	-	Host Write Allow (HOSTWA) This bit is for HLPC only. If host I/F is LPC command, its default value is 0. If host I/F is I2C pre-defined command, its default value is 1. 0: The SMFI does not generate write transactions on M-bus. 1: The SMFI can generate write transactions on M-bus. The read performance on M-bus will be very poor for Host LPC if write transaction is allowed.
4-3	R	01b	Host Error Response (HERES) These bits control response types on read/write translation from/to a protected address. 01b: Read back FFh; ignoring write Otherwise: Reserved
2	-	-	Reserved
1	-	-	Reserved
0	-	-	Reserved

6.3.4.5 Shared Memory Host Semaphore Register (SMHSR)

This register provides eight semaphore bits between the EC and the host. Bits 3-0 may be set by the host and Bits 7-4 may be set by the EC. The register is reset on host domain hardware reset.

This is the register the same as the one in section 6.3.5.8 but they are in different views.

Address Offset: 22h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	EC Semaphore (CSEM3-0) These four bits may be written by the EC and read by both the host and the EC
3-0	R	0h	Host Semaphore (HSEM3-0) These four bits may be written by the host and read by both the host and the EC.

6.3.4.6 Flash Control 1 Register (FLHCTRL1R)

Address Offset: 31h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6-4	R/W	001b	<p>SPI Flash Read Mode (SPIFR) For serial flash:</p> <p>011b: Uses instruction = BBh 010b: Uses instruction = 3Bh 001b: Uses instruction = 0Bh 000b: Uses instruction = 03h</p> <p>The performance of “Read” cycle is better than “Fast Read” cycle in the same frequency since “Fast Read” cycle request 8 dummy clock ticks in each cycle. The attached must support “Fast Read” cycle since it’s the default read instruction to serial flash.</p> <p>Instruction A3h of SPI flash isn’t supported. A few flash types can not achieve their documented frequencies without issuing this instruction.</p>
3	R/W	1b	<p>Serial Wait 1T (LFSW1T) For serial flash: Always write 1 to it.</p>
2-0	-	-	Reserved

6.3.4.7 Flash Control 2 Register (FLHCTRL2R)

For serial flash only.

Address Offset: 32h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5-4	R/W	00b	<p>FSCE# Min Read High Width (SCEMINRHW) 00b: Disabled 01b: Reserved 10b: 1.5T 10b: Reserved</p> <p>It is similar to SCEMINHW; however, it only applies to the width after all read instructions and overrides SCEMINHW.</p>
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	011b	<p>FSCE# Min High Width (SCEMINHW) 000b: Reserved 001b: 1.5T 010b: 2.5T 011b: 3.5T 100b: 4.5T 101b: 5.5T 110b: 6.5T</p> <p>It depends on the “FSCE# High Time” on flash specification. Small value gets better performance. This register may needs to be modified before the PLL frequency is changed.</p>

6.3.4.8 Cache Disabled Register (CACHDISR)

Address Offset: 33h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	Dynamic Caches Disabled (DYNDIS) 00b: Dynamic Caches Enable. 11b: Dynamic Caches Disable. Other: Reserved

6.3.4.9 uC Control Register (UCCTRLR)

Address Offset: 34h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	uC Burst Mode (UCBST) 0: Default 1: for chipset that issues LPC Abort if LPC Long-wait count during a LPC Memory cycle is greater than 255. This bit can be modified only before VCC power is supplied.
6	-	-	Reserved
5-3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	5h	uC Burst Threshold (UCTH) 5h: default 3h: for chipset that issues LPC Abort if LPC Long-wait count during a LPC Memory cycle is greater than 255. Otherwise: reserved. This field can be modified only before VCC power is supplied.

6.3.4.10 Host Control 2 Register (HCTRL2R)

Address Offset: 36h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	1b	Host Bridge Enable (HBREN) 1: The host memory cycle is decoded 0: Otherwise This bit can be modified only before VCC power is supplied.
6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	HLPC Follow Mode 1 Enable (HFW1EN) 1: Enable HLPC Follow Mode 1 if HOSTWA bit in SMECCS register isn't set. 0: Otherwise This bit can be modified only before VCC power is supplied.
4	-	-	Reserved
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	-	-	Reserved

6.3.4.11 EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 0 (ECINDAR0)

Address Offset: 3Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	EC-Indirect Memory Address (ECINDA7-0) Define the EC-Indirect memory address when asserting a read/write cycle to EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR).

6.3.4.12 EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 1 (ECINDAR1)

Address Offset: 3Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	EC-Indirect Memory Address (ECINDA15-8) Define the EC-Indirect memory address when asserting a read/write cycle to EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR).

6.3.4.13 EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 2 (ECINDAR2)

Address Offset: 3Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	EC-Indirect Memory Address (ECINDA23-16) Define the EC-Indirect memory address when asserting a read/write cycle to EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR).

6.3.4.14 EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 3 (ECINDAR3)

Address Offset: 3Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	W	-	EC-Indirect Memory Address (ECINDA31-30) 00b/11b: Select SPI 01b: Select e-flash 10b: Reserved
5-4	R	00b	EC-Indirect Memory Address (ECINDA29-28) Read only.
3-0	R/W	0h	EC-Indirect Memory Address (ECINDA27-24) Define the EC-Indirect memory address when asserting a read/write cycle to EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR).

6.3.4.15 EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR)

Address Offset: 3Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	EC-Indirect Memory Data (ECINDD7-0) Read/Write to this register will access one byte on the flash with the 32-bit flash address defined in ECINDAR3-0.

6.3.4.16 Scratch SRAM 0 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR0L)

Address Offset: 40h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 0 Address (SC0A7-0)

6.3.4.17 Scratch SRAM 0 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR0M)

Address Offset: 41h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 0 Address (SC0A15-8)

6.3.4.18 Scratch SRAM 0 Address High Byte Register (SCAR0H)

Address Offset: 42h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Next Start DMA (NSDMA) If 1 is written to this bit, DMA will be started at the next writing.
6	-	-	Reserved
5-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	11b	Scratch SRAM 0 Address (SC0A17-16) The default value makes this scratch SRAM not be a scratch ROM.

6.3.4.19 Scratch SRAM 1 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR1L)

Address Offset: 43h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 1 Address (SC1A7-0)

6.3.4.20 Scratch SRAM 1 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR1M)

Address Offset: 44h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 1 Address (SC1A15-8)

6.3.4.21 Scratch SRAM 1 Address High Byte Register (SCAR1H)

Address Offset: 45h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Next Start DMA (NSDMA) If 1 is written to this bit, DMA will be started at the next writing.
6	-	-	Reserved
5-2	R/W	0h	Reserved
1-0	R/W	11b	Scratch SRAM 1 Address (SC1A17-16) The default value makes this scratch SRAM not be a scratch ROM.

6.3.4.22 Scratch SRAM 2 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR2L)

Address Offset: 46h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 2 Address (SC2A7-0)

6.3.4.23 Scratch SRAM 2 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR2M)

Address Offset: 47h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 2 Address (SC2A15-8)

6.3.4.24 Scratch SRAM 2 Address High Byte Register (SCAR2H)

Address Offset: 48h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Next Start DMA (NSDMA) If 1 is written to this bit, DMA will be started at the next writing.
6	-	-	Reserved
5-2	R/W	0h	Reserved
1-0	R/W	11b	Scratch SRAM 2 Address (SC2A17-16) The default value makes this scratch SRAM not be a scratch ROM.

6.3.4.25 Scratch SRAM 3 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR3L)

Address Offset: 49h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 3 Address (SC3A7-0)

6.3.4.26 Scratch SRAM 3 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR3M)

Address Offset: 4Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 3 Address (SC3A15-8)

6.3.4.27 Scratch SRAM 3 Address High Byte Register (SCAR3H)

Address Offset: 4Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Next Start DMA (NSDMA) If 1 is written to this bit, DMA will be started at the next writing.
6	-	-	Reserved
5-2	R/W	0h	Reserved
1-0	R/W	11b	Scratch SRAM 3 Address (SC3A17-16) The default value makes this scratch SRAM not be a scratch ROM.

6.3.4.28 Scratch SRAM 4 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR4L)

Address Offset: 4Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 4 Address (SC4A7-0)

6.3.4.29 Scratch SRAM 4 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR4M)

Address Offset: 4Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Scratch SRAM 4 Address (SC4A15-8)

6.3.4.30 Scratch SRAM 4 Address High Byte Register (SCAR4H)

Address Offset: 4Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Next Start DMA (NSDMA) If 1 is written to this bit, DMA will be started at the next writing.
6	-	-	Reserved
5-2	R/W	0h	Reserved
1-0	R/W	11b	Scratch SRAM 4 Address (SC4A17-16) The default value makes this scratch SRAM not be a scratch ROM.

6.3.4.31 Protect 0 Base Addr Register 0 (P0BA0R)

Address Offset: 4Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	-	Protect 0 Address (P0BA23-20) The default value is uncertain.

6.3.4.32 Protect 0 Base Addr Register 1 (P0BA1R)

Address Offset: 50h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Protect 0 Address (P0BA19-12) The default value is uncertain.

6.3.4.33 Protect 0 Size Register (P0ZR)

Address Offset: 51h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	Protect 0 Mode (P0M) It controls the protection mode of set 0. 00b: Read protection 01b: Write protection 10b: Read protection plus write protection 11b: Reserved This field returns to the default after warm set, and VSTBY power-up reset.
5	R/W	0b	Release 4K Proteted Part (R4PP) 0b: Disable. 1b: The upper 4K part of the range that is specified by P0Z will be released from protection function. This bit is valid only when P0Z is 5h, 6h, Eh, 7h, 8h, 9h, Ah or Bh.
4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0	Protect 0 Size (P0Z) If this field is zero, there is no memory block on SPI flash locked by "Protect 0" configuration. If this field is not zero, it means that read or write cycles from the host side to the specified SPI memory block are locked. The address defined by P0BA0R and P0BA1R is SPI physical address, not host LPC address.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
			<p>If write protection is enabled in P0M field, this size field must be equal to or greater than the allowed sector/block size of ERASE instruction. See also HINSTC2 register.</p> <p>This field returns to the default after warm set, and VSTBY power-up reset.</p> <p>The protected size cannot cross the boundary of the base address.</p> <p>0h: Disable</p> <p>1h: The range is from (P0BA[23..12] << 12) to (P0BA[23..12] << 12) + ((1 << 12) - 1) and totally 2^12 (4K) bytes are locked.</p> <p>2h: The range is from (P0BA[23..13] << 13) to (P0BA[23..13] << 13) + ((1 << 13) - 1) and totally 2^13 (8K) bytes are locked.</p> <p>3h: The range is from (P0BA[23..14] << 14) to (P0BA[23..14] << 14) + ((1 << 14) - 1) and totally 2^14 (16K) bytes are locked.</p> <p>4h: The range is from (P0BA[23..15] << 15) to (P0BA[23..15] << 15) + ((1 << 15) - 1) and totally 2^15 (32K) bytes are locked.</p> <p>5h: The range is from (P0BA[23..16] << 16) to (P0BA[23..16] << 16) + ((1 << 16) - 1) and totally 2^16 (64K) bytes are locked.</p> <p>6h: The range is from (P0BA[23..17] << 17) to (P0BA[23..17] << 17) + ((1 << 17) - 1) and totally 2^17 (128K) bytes are locked.</p> <p>Eh: The range is from (P0BA[23..18] << 18) to (P0BA[23..18] << 18) + ((1 << 18) - 1) and totally 2^18 (256K) bytes are locked.</p> <p>7h: The range is from (P0BA[23..19] << 19) to (P0BA[23..19] << 19) + ((1 << 19) - 1) and totally 2^19 (512K) bytes are locked.</p> <p>8h: The range is from (P0BA[23..19] << 20) to (P0BA[23..19] << 20) + ((1 << 20) - 1) and totally 2^20 (1M) bytes are locked.</p> <p>9h: The range is from (P0BA[23..19] << 21) to (P0BA[23..19] << 21) + ((1 << 21) - 1) and totally 2^21 (2M) bytes are locked.</p> <p>Ah: The range is from (P0BA[23..19] << 22) to (P0BA[23..19] << 22) + ((1 << 22) - 1) and totally 2^22 (4M) bytes are locked.</p>

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
			Bh: The range is from (P0BA[23.. 19] <<23) to (P0BA[23.. 19] << 23) + ((1 <<23) - 1) and totally 2^23 (8M) bytes are locked. Otherwise: Reserved

6.3.4.34 Protect 1 Base Addr Register 0 (P1BA0R)

Address Offset: 52h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	-	Protect 1 Address (P1BA23-20) The default value is uncertain.

6.3.4.35 Protect 1 Base Addr Register 1 (P1BA1R)

Address Offset: 53h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Protect 1 Address (P1BA19-12) The default value is uncertain.

6.3.4.36 Protect 1 Size Register (P1ZR)

Address Offset: 54h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	Protect 1 Mode (P1) “Protect 1” configuration is the same as “Protect 0”.
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0	Protect 1 Size (P1Z) “Protect 1” configuration is the same as “Protect 0”.

6.3.4.37 Protect 2 Base Addr Register 0 (P2BA0R)

Address Offset: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	-	Protect 2 Address (P2BA23-20) The default value is uncertain.

6.3.4.38 Protect 2 Base Addr Register 1 (P2BA1R)

Address Offset: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Protect 2 Address (P2BA19-12) The default value is uncertain.

6.3.4.39 Protect 2 Size Register (P2ZR)

Address Offset: 72h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	Protect 2 Mode (P2) “Protect 2” configuration is the same as “Protect 0”.
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0	Protect 2 Size (P2Z) “Protect 2” configuration is the same as “Protect 0”.

6.3.4.40 Protect 3 Base Addr Register 0 (P3BA0R)

Address Offset: 73h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	-	Protect 3 Address (P3BA23-20) The default value is uncertain.

6.3.4.41 Protect 3 Base Addr Register 1 (P3BA1R)

Address Offset: 74h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Protect 3 Address (P3BA19-12) The default value is uncertain.

6.3.4.42 Protect 3 Size Register (P3ZR)

Address Offset: 75h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	Protect 3 Mode (P3) “Protect 3” configuration is the same as “Protect 0”.
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0	Protect 3 Size (P3Z) “Protect 3” configuration is the same as “Protect 0”.

6.3.4.43 Deferred SPI Instruction (DSINST)

Address Offset: 55h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Deferred SPI Instruction (DSINST) The 8-bit instruction code of deferred SPI WIP instruction.

6.3.4.44 Deferred SPI Address 15-12 (DSADR1)

Address Offset: 56h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R	-	Deferred SPI Address 15-12 (DSA15-12) The SPI address of deferred SPI WIP instruction.
3-0	-	-	Reserved

6.3.4.45 Deferred SPI Address 23-16 (DSADR2)

Address Offset: 57h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Deferred SPI Address 23-16 (DSA23-16) The SPI address of deferred SPI WIP instruction.

6.3.4.46 Host Instruction Control 1 (HINSTC1)

Address Offset: 58h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	W	-	Scan EC Base (SCECB) (For e-flash only) See also section 6.3.3.14 E-flash Power-on Detection on page 85. Write 1: Scan e-flash control byte and 16 byte Signature. Write 0: Ignored. Read always returns 0. The firmware may write 1 to this bit after the flash is programmed.
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3	W	-	DISS Valid (DISSV) (For SPI flash only) Write 1: Writing DISS bit in this register is valid. Write 0: Writing DISS bit in this register is ignored. Only write 1 to this bit while INT59 is active.
2	R/W	-	Deferred Instruction's Succeeding Step (DISS) (For SPI flash only) Always write 1 to this bit. Writing data to this bit and writing 1 to DISSV bit must be in the same write cycle, or this writing action to DISS bit is ignored.
1-0	R/W	00b	Enable Deferring WIP Instruction (ENDI) (For SPI flash only) HLPC: 11b: Enable deferring an ERASE/PROG instruction in the Follow mode by returning Long-Waits and issuing INT59. 00b: Disable. Otherwise: Reserved.

6.3.4.47 Host Instruction Control 2 (HINSTC2)

This register is only valid when LPC hardware protection is enabled by setting P0ZR and P1ZR register.

Some SPI flashes provide two or more sector/block ERASE instructions, e.g. 4K and 64K ERASE instruction. If one specified 4K block is set as hardware protection, it may be erased by 64K ERASE instruction.

To accomplish the hardware protectin on the SPI flash, the size defined in P0Z/P1Z field in P0ZR/P1ZR register must be equal to or greater than the allowed sector/block size of ERASE instruction.

For the above example, if an SPI flash provides the 4K ERASE instruction (code 20h) and 64K ERASE

instruction (code D8h), the write protection can work well if the size defined in P0Z/P1Z field is equal to or greater than 64K; otherwise, the 64K ERASE instruction should be inhibited by setting DISEID8 bit.

Address Offset: 59h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Host Indirect Cycle Target Select (HICTS) 0b: SPI flash 1b: e-flash
4	R/W	0b	LPC Memory Cycle Target Select (LMCTS) 0b: SPI flash 1b: e-flash
3	R/W	0b	Disable Erase Instruction D8h (DISEID8) (For SPI flash only) Erasing sector/block instruction D8h will be inhibited.
2	R/W	0b	Disable Erase Instruction D7h (DISEID7) (For SPI flash only) Erasing sector/block instruction D7h will be inhibited.
1	R/W	0b	Disable Erase Instruction 52h (DISEI52) (For SPI flash only) Erasing sector/block instruction 52h will be inhibited.
0	R/W	0b	Disable Erase Instruction 20h (DISEI20) (For SPI flash only) Erasing sector/block instruction 20h will be inhibited.

6.3.4.48 Flash Control Register 3 (FLHCTRL3R)
Address Offset: 63h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	SPI flash I/F Enable (SIFE) 0b: Disable 1b: Enable SPI flash
2-0	-	-	Reserved

6.3.4.49 Flash Control Register 4 (FLHCTRL4R)
Address Offset: 64h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5	W	0b	Scan SPI 16 Byte Signature (SS16BS) 1b: Scan 16 byte signature on SPI flash. 0b: Ignored
4-0	-	-	Reserved

6.3.4.50 Security Host View Block Mode Select [15:8] (SHVBMS[15:8])

HVBMS[15:0] will be replaced by SHVBMS[15:0] if SECKEY[63:0] matches with HAK[63:0].

Address Offset: 6Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	11b	Security Host View Block Mode Select [7:6] (SHVBMS[7:6]) It controls the e-flash protection mode for host view. 11b: Block 4 of e-flash is read/write allowed. 10b: Block 4 of e-flash is read allowed, but write protected. 01b: Block 4 of e-flash is read protected, but write allowed. 00b: Block 4 of e-flash is read/write protected. This field is available only when SECKEY[63:0] matches with HAK[63:0] and RHVPC is set.
5-4	R/W	11b	Security Host View Block Mode Select [5:4] (SHVBMS[5:4]) Similar to bit 7-6 but it acts on block 5 of e-flash.
3-2	R/W	11b	Security Host View Block Mode Select [3:2] (SHVBMS[3:2]) Similar to bit 7-6 but it acts on block 6 of e-flash.
1-0	R/W	11b	Security Host View Block Mode Select [1:0] (SHVBMS[1:0]) Similar to bit 7-6 but it acts on block 7 of e-flash.

6.3.4.51 Security Host View Block Mode Select [7:0] (SHVBMS[7:0])

HVBMS[15:0] will be replaced by SHVBMS[15:0] if SECKEY[63:0] matches with HAK[63:0].

Address Offset: 6Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	11b	Security Host View Block Mode Select [15:14] (SHVBMS[15:14]) It controls the e-flash protection mode for host view. 11b: Block 0 of e-flash is read/write allowed. 10b: Block 0 of e-flash is read allowed, but write protected. 01b: Block 0 of e-flash is read protected, but write allowed. 00b: Block 0 of e-flash is read/write protected. This field is available only when SECKEY[63:0] matches with HAK[63:0] and RHVPC is set.
5-4	R/W	11b	Security Host View Block Mode Select [13:12] (SHVBMS[13:12]) Similar to bit 7-6 but it acts on block 1 of e-flash.
3-2	R/W	11b	Security Host View Block Mode Select [11:10] (SHVBMS[11:10]) Similar to bit 7-6 but it acts on block 2 of e-flash.
1-0	R/W	11b	Security Host View Block Mode Select [9:8] (SHVBMS[9:8]) Similar to bit 7-6 but it acts on block 3 of e-flash.

6.3.4.52 Host RAM Window Control (HRAMWC)

Address Offset: 5Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	H2RAM Path Select (H2RAMPS) 0b: H2RAM through LPC Memory/FWH cycle. 1b: H2RAM through LPC IO cycle.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
3	R/W	0b	H2RAM Window 3 Enable (H2RAMW3E) 0b: Disabled. 1b: H2RAM window 3 enabled.
2	R/W	0b	H2RAM Window 2 Enable (H2RAMW2E) 0b: Disabled. 1b: H2RAM window 2 enabled.
1	R/W	0b	H2RAM Window 1 Enable (H2RAMW1E) 0b: Disabled. 1b: H2RAM window 1 enabled.
0	R/W	0b	H2RAM Window 0 Enable (H2RAMW0E) 0b: Disabled. 1b: H2RAM window 0 enabled.

6.3.4.53 Host RAM Winodw 0 Base Address (HRAMW0BA[11:4])

Address Offset: 5Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host RAM Window 0 Base Address Bits [11:4] (HRAMW0BA[11:4]) Define RAM window 0 base address.

6.3.4.54 Host RAM Window 1 Base Address (HRAMW1BA[11:4])

Address Offset: 5Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
0	R/W	00h	Host RAM Window 1 Base Address Bits [11:4] (HRAMW1BA[11:4]) Define RAM window 1 base address.

6.3.4.55 Host RAM Window 0 Access Allow Size (HRAMW0AAS)

Address Offset: 5Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 0 Read Protect Enable (HRAMW0RPE) 00b: Disabled 01b: Lower half of RAM window protected 10b: Upper half of RAM window protected 11b: All protected
5-4	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 0 Write Protect Enable (HRAMW0WPE) 00b: Disabled 01b: Lower half of RAM window protected 10b: Upper half of RAM window protected 11b: All protected
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 0 Size (HRAMW0S) 0h: 16 bytes 1h: 32 bytes 2h: 64 bytes 3h: 128 bytes 4h: 256 bytes 5h: 512 bytes 6h: 1024 bytes 7h: 2048 bytes

6.3.4.56 Host RAM Window 1 Access Allow Size (HRAMW1AAS)

Address Offset: 5Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 1 Read Protect Enable (HRAMW1RPE) 00b: Disabled 01b: Lower half of RAM window protected 10b: Upper half of RAM window protected 11b: All protected
5-4	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 1 Write Protect Enable (HRAMW1WPE) 00b: Disabled 01b: Lower half of RAM window protected 10b: Upper half of RAM window protected 11b: All protected
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 1 Size (HRAMW1S) 0h: 16 bytes 1h: 32 bytes 2h: 64 bytes 3h: 128 bytes 4h: 256 bytes 5h: 512 bytes 6h: 1024 bytes 7h: 2048 bytes

6.3.4.57 Host RAM Winodw 2 Base Address (HRAMW2BA[11:4])

Address Offset: 76h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host RAM Window 2 Base Address Bits [11:4] (HRAMW2BA[11:4]) Define RAM window 2 base address.

6.3.4.58 Host RAM Winodw 3 Base Address (HRAMW3BA[11:4])

Address Offset: 77h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host RAM Window 3 Base Address Bits [11:4] (HRAMW3BA[11:4]) Define RAM window 3 base address.

6.3.4.59 Host RAM Window 2 Access Allow Size (HRAMW2AAS)

Address Offset: 78h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 2 Read Protect Enable (HRAMW2RPE) 00b: Disabled 01b: Lower half of RAM window protected 10b: Upper half of RAM window protected 11b: All protected
5-4	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 2 Write Protect Enable (HRAMW2WPE) 00b: Disabled 01b: Lower half of RAM window protected 10b: Upper half of RAM window protected 11b: All protected
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 2 Size (HRAMW2S) 0h: 16 bytes 1h: 32 bytes 2h: 64 bytes 3h: 128 bytes 4h: 256 bytes 5h: 512 bytes 6h: 1024 bytes 7h: 2048 bytes

6.3.4.60 Host RAM Window 3 Access Allow Size (HRAMW3AAS)

Address Offset: 79h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 3 Read Protect Enable (HRAMW3RPE) 00b: Disabled 01b: Lower half of RAM window protected 10b: Upper half of RAM window protected 11b: All protected
5-4	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 3 Write Protect Enable (HRAMW3WPE) 00b: Disabled 01b: Lower half of RAM window protected 10b: Upper half of RAM window protected 11b: All protected
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	Host RAM Window 3 Size (HRAMW3S) 0h: 16 bytes 1h: 32 bytes 2h: 64 bytes 3h: 128 bytes 4h: 256 bytes 5h: 512 bytes 6h: 1024 bytes 7h: 2048 bytes

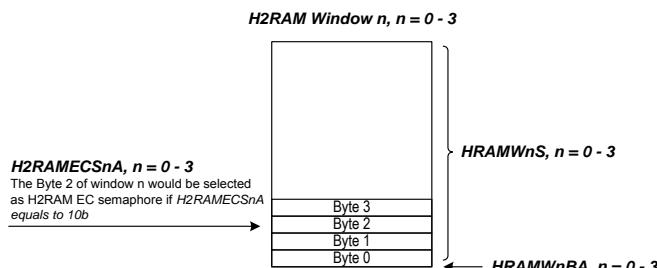
6.3.4.61 H2RAM EC Semaphore Interrupt Enable (H2RAMECSIE)

Address Offset: 7Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 3 Interrupt Enable (H2RAMECS3IE) 0b: Disable. 1b: A MOVX Write instruction executed on H2RAM EC semaphore 3 will produce an IRQ to the host.
2	R/W	0b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 2 Interrupt Enable (H2RAMECS2IE) 0b: Disable. 1b: A MOVX Write instruction executed on H2RAM EC semaphore 2 will produce an IRQ to the host.
1	R/W	0b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 1 Interrupt Enable (H2RAMECS1IE) 0b: Disable. 1b: A MOVX Write instruction executed on H2RAM EC semaphore 1 will produce an IRQ to the host.
0	R/W	0b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 0 Interrupt Enable (H2RAMECS0IE) 0b: Disable. 1b: A MOVX Write instruction executed on H2RAM EC semaphore 0 will produce an IRQ to the host.

6.3.4.62 H2RAM EC Semaphore Address (H2RAMECSA)

Figure 6-10. Location of H2RAM EC Semaphore



Address Offset: 7Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 3 Address (H2RAMECS3A) 00b: H2RAM EC semaphore 3 locates at (HRAMW3BA[11:0] + 0). 01b: H2RAM EC semaphore 3 locates at (HRAMW3BA[11:0] + 1). 10b: H2RAM EC semaphore 3 locates at (HRAMW3BA[11:0] + 2). 11b: H2RAM EC semaphore 3 locates at (HRAMW3BA[11:0] + 3). This field is available only when H2RAM window 3 is enabled.
5-4	R/W	00b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 2 Address (H2RAMECS2A) 00b: H2RAM EC semaphore 2 locates at (HRAMW2BA[11:0] + 0). 01b: H2RAM EC semaphore 2 locates at (HRAMW2BA[11:0] + 1). 10b: H2RAM EC semaphore 2 locates at (HRAMW2BA[11:0] + 2). 11b: H2RAM EC semaphore 2 locates at (HRAMW2BA[11:0] + 3). This field is available only when H2RAM window 2 is enabled.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
3-2	R/W	00b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 1 Address (H2RAMECS1A) 00b: H2RAM EC semaphore 1 locates at (HRAMW1BA[11:0] + 0). 01b: H2RAM EC semaphore 1 locates at (HRAMW1BA[11:0] + 1). 10b: H2RAM EC semaphore 1 locates at (HRAMW1BA[11:0] + 2). 11b: H2RAM EC semaphore 1 locates at (HRAMW1BA[11:0] + 3). This field is available only when H2RAM window 1 is enabled.
1-0	R/W	00b	H2RAM EC Semaphore 0 Address (H2RAMECS0A) 00b: H2RAM EC semaphore 0 locates at (HRAMW0BA[11:0] + 0). 01b: H2RAM EC semaphore 0 locates at (HRAMW0BA[11:0] + 1). 10b: H2RAM EC semaphore 0 locates at (HRAMW0BA[11:0] + 2). 11b: H2RAM EC semaphore 0 locates at (HRAMW0BA[11:0] + 3). This field is available only when H2RAM window 0 is enabled.

6.3.4.63 H2RAM Host Semaphore Status (H2RAMHSS)

EC can know H2RAM host semaphore status by reading this register.

Address Offset: 7Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W1C	0b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 3 Status (H2RAMHS3S) This bit is automatically set to 1b while H2RAM host semaphore 3 is written. 0b: H2RAM host semaphore 3 is not written. 1b: H2RAM host semaphore 3 is written. Writing 1 to clear this bit.
2	R/W1C	0b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 2 Status (H2RAMHS2S) This bit is automatically set to 1b while H2RAM host semaphore 2 is written. 0b: H2RAM host semaphore 2 is not written. 1b: H2RAM host semaphore 2 is written. Writing 1 to clear this bit.
1	R/W1C	0b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 1 Status (H2RAMHS1S) This bit is automatically set to 1b while H2RAM host semaphore 1 is written. 0b: H2RAM host semaphore 1 is not written. 1b: H2RAM host semaphore 1 is written. Writing 1 to clear this bit.
0	R/W1C	0b	H2RAM Host Semaphore 0 Status (H2RAMHS0S) This bit is automatically set to 1b while H2RAM host semaphore 0 is written. 0b: H2RAM host semaphore 0 is not written. 1b: H2RAM host semaphore 0 is written. Writing 1 to clear this bit.

6.3.4.64 Host Protect Authentication Data Register (HPADR)

Address Offset: 7Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host Protect Lock Authentication Data (GLAD) The lock state is default off. Write: If the lock state is off, write Auth. Data will enable the lock state. If the lock state is on, write the same Auth. Data will disable the lock state. Read: 00h: The lock state is off. 01h: The lock state is on. If the lock state is on, P0BA0R ~ P1ZR , and P2BA0R ~ P3ZR aren't writable.

6.3.4.65 Flash Control Register 5 (FLHCTRL5R)

Address Offset: 80h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R	01b	e-flash size (FS) 01b: 128K byte Otherwise: Reserved

6.3.5 Host Interface Registers

The registers of SMFI can be divided into two parts: Host Interface Registers and EC Interface Registers and this section lists the host interface. The host interface registers can only be accessed by the host processor. The SMFI resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. These registers are listed below

Table 6-26. Host View Register Map, SMFI

7	0	Offset
Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address (SMIMAR0-3)		00h-03H
Shared Memory Indirect Memory Data (SMIMDR)		04h
Security Key Index Register (SECKIR)		05h
Security Key Data Register (SECKDR)		06h
Shared Memory Host Semaphore (SMHSR)		0Ch

6.3.5.1 Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 0 (SMIMAR0)

The following set of registers is accessible only by the host. The registers are applied to VCC. This register defines the addresses 7-0 for a read or write transaction to the memory.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Indirect Memory Address (IMADR7-0)

6.3.5.2 Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 1 (SMIMAR1)

This register defines the addresses 15-8 for a read or write transaction to the memory.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Indirect Memory Address (IMADR15-8)

6.3.5.3 Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 2 (SMIMAR2)

This register defines the addresses 23-16 for a read or write transaction to the memory.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Indirect Memory Address (IMADR23-16)

6.3.5.4 Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 3 (SMIMAR3)

This register defines the addresses 31-24 for a read or write transaction to the memory.

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Indirect Memory Address (IMADR31-24)

6.3.5.5 Shared Memory Indirect Memory Data Register (SMIMDR)

This register defines the Data bits 7-0 for a read or write transaction to the memory.

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Indirect Memory Data (IMDA7-0)

6.3.5.6 Security Key Index Register (SECKIR)

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	111b	Security Key Index Register (SECKIR) This field is used in specifying the index of SECKDR[63:0]. It is paired with SECKDR.

6.3.5.7 Security Key Data Register (SECKDR)

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	-	Security Key Data Register (SECKDR) This field is used in modifying the corresponding bits of SECKDR[63:0]. It is paired with SECKIR.

6.3.5.8 Shared Memory Host Semaphore Register (SMHSR)

This register provides eight semaphore bits between the EC and the host. Bits 3-0 may be set by the host and Bits 7-4 may be set by the EC. The register reset on host domain hardware reset.

This is the register the same as the one in section 6.3.4.9 on page 92 but they are in different views.

Address Offset: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R	0h	EC Semaphore (CSEM3-0) Four bits that may be updated by the EC and read by both the host and the EC.
3-0	R/W	0b	Host Semaphore (HSEM3-0) Four bits that may be updated by the host and read by both the host and the EC.

6.4 System Wake-Up Control (SWUC)

6.4.1 Overview

SWUC detects wakeup events and generate SCI#, SMI# and PWUREQ# signals to the host side, or alert EC by interrupts to WUC.

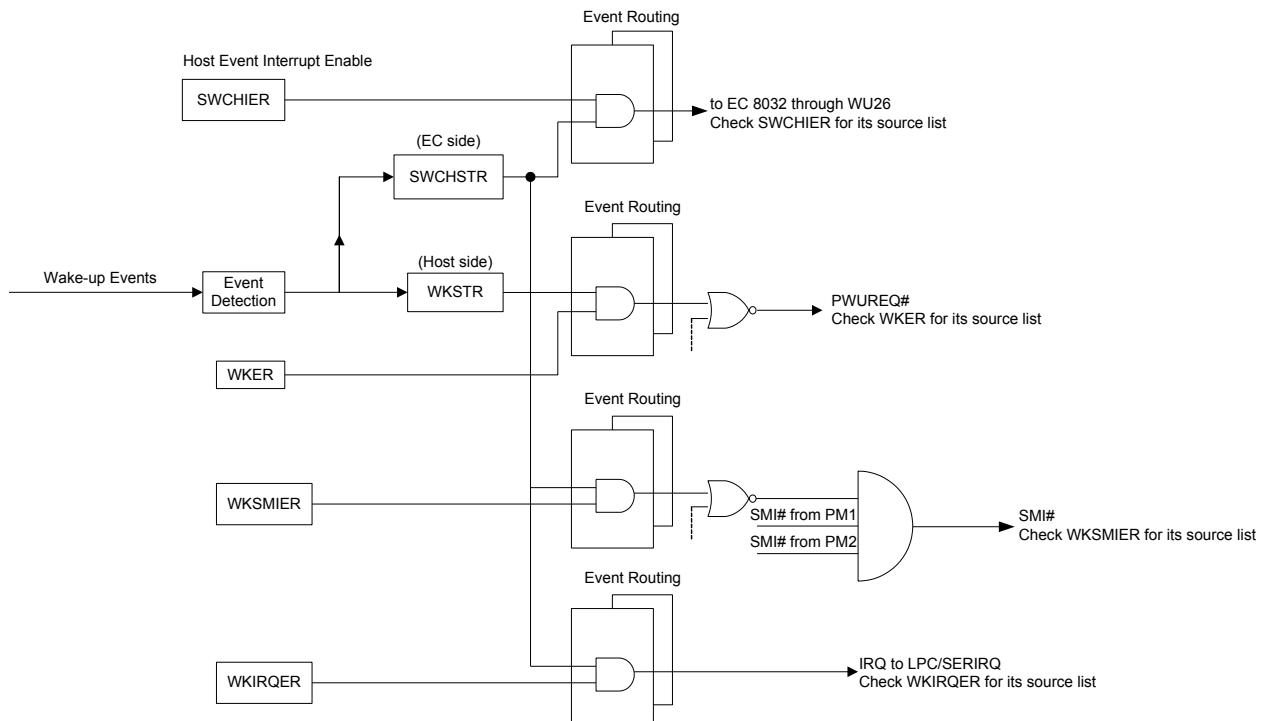
6.4.2 Features

- Supports programmable wake-up events source from the host controlled modules.
- Generates SMI# or PWUREQ# interrupt to the host to wake-up system.

6.4.3 Functional Description

The wakeup event and gathering scheme is shown in Figure 6-11. Wakeup Event and Gathering Scheme on page 111.

Figure 6-11. Wakeup Event and Gathering Scheme



6.4.3.1 Wake-Up Status

When the wake up event is detected, the related status bit is set to 1 in both host and EC status registers, no matter whether any event enable bits are set or not. A status bit is cleared by writing 1 to it. Writing 0 to a status bit does not change its value. Clearing the event enable bit does not affect the status bit, but prevents it from issuing an event to output. The host uses a mask register (WKSMIER) to decide what the status bits will respond to.

6.4.3.2 Wake-Up Events

When a wake up event is detected, it is recorded on a status bit in WKSTR (host view) register and SWCHSTR register (EC view), regardless of the enabled bit. Each event behavior is determined by a wake up control logic controlled by a set of dedicated registers.

Input events are detected by the SWUC shown as follows:

- Module IRQ Wake up Event
- Modem Ring (RI1 and RI2)
- Telephone Ring (RING input)
- RTCT Alarm
- Software event
- Legacy off event
- ACPI state change Event

Module IRQ Wake-Up Event

A module IRQ wake-up event from each logical device is asserted when the leading edge of the module IRQ is detected.

The related enable bit (WKIRQEN) has to be set to 1 to enable and trigger a wake-up event. Refer to the IRQNUM and WKIRQEN fields in IRQNUMX register. When the event is detected, MIRQS bit in WKSTR register is set to 1. If MIRQE in WKER register is also set to 1, the PWUREQ# output is still asserted and until the status bit is cleared.

Modem Ring

If transitions form high to low on RI1# (or RI2#) is detected on the Serial Port 1 (or Serial Port 2) connected to a modem, and then when the signal goes high on RI1#(or RI2#), it will cause a ring wake-up event asserted if the RI1#(or RI2#) event enable bit is set to 1 in the WKER register (bit0 for RI1#, and bit1 for RI2#).

Telephone Ring

If transitions form high to low on the Ring input pin, and then when the signal goes high on Ring input pin. It will cause a ring wake-up event asserted when the ring event enable bit is set to 1 in the WKER register (BIT3).

RTCT Alarm

An alarm signal can be generated by RTCT module and used as a wake up event. After an alarm event is detected in the RTCT, the RTCT alarm status bit will be set and RTCAL bit in SWCTL3 register will be set as well to respond it. To enable RTCT alarm as a wake-up event to EC, the software needs to follow the sequence listed below:

1. Set the Alarm condition in the RTCT module.
2. Set EIRTCA bit in SWCIER register to enable Alarm status interrupt masking.
3. Make sure that the RTCAL bit in SWCTL3 register is cleared.
4. Enable the Wake-Up on SWUC event in the WUC and INTC modules.

Software Event

This bit may trigger a wake event by software control. When the SIRQS (Software IRQ Event Status bit) in WKSTR register is set, a software event to the host is active. When the SIRQS bit in SWCHSTR register is set, a software event to the EC is active. The software event may be activated by the EC via access to the Host Controlled Module bridge regardless of the VCC status.

The SIRQS bit in SWCHSTR may be set when the respective bit toggles in WKSTR from 0 to 1 and when HSECM=0 is in SWCTL1 register. When HSECM =1 t, the SIRQS bit in SWCHSTR is set on a write of a 1 to the respective bit in WKSTR. The SIRQS bit in SWCHSTR is cleared by writing 1 to it.

Legacy Off Events

The host supports either legacy or ACPI mode. The operation mode is assigned on PWRBTN bit in the Super I/O Power Mode Register (SIOPWR). When EISCRDPBM bit in SWCIER register is set, any change in this bit will generate an interrupt to the EC. The EC may read this bit, using SCRDPBM bit in SWCTL2 register, to determine the other power state. In the legacy mode, the PWRSLY bit in SIOPWR register represents a turn

power off request. When this bit is set and SCRDP SO bit in SWCTL2 register is set, an interrupt is generated to EC if EISCRDP SO bit in SWCIER register is also set.

ACPI State Change Events

The bits (S1-S5) in WKACPIR register are used to provide a set of ‘system power state change request’. The host uses these bits to issue an ACPI state change request. A write of 1 to any of these bits represents a state change request to the EC, the request may be also read out in SWCTL2 register even ACPIRS0 is represented when all bits in WKACPIR is cleared to 0. When any of ACPIRS0 -S5 bits in SWCTL2 is set and the respective mask bit in SWCIER register is set, an interrupt is generated to EC. All interrupt outputs may be cleared either writing 1 to the status bit or clearing the masking interrupt enable register.

6.4.3.3 Wake-Up Output Events

The SWUC output four types of wake up events:

IRQ	Interrupt through SERIRQ to the host side, which is activated by SWUC logical device of PNPCFG.
PWUREQ#	Routing as an SCI# event.
SMI#	Routing as an SMI# event.
WU26	An interrupt to the WUC module in the EC domain which is handled by EC firmware.

Output events are generated to the host when their status bit is set (1 in WKSTR). Output event to the EC through the WUC is generated when their EC status bit is set (1 in SWCHSTR). The host can program three Event Routing Control registers (WKSTR, WKSMIER and WKIRQER) to handle each of the host events to be asserted. This allows selective routing of these events output to PWUREQ#, SMI# and/or SWUC interrupt request (IRQ). After an output event is asserted, it can be cleared either by clearing its status bit or being masked. The current status of the event may be read out at the Wake-Up Event Status Register(WKSTR), and Wake-Up Signals Monitor Register (WKS MR). The SWUC also handles the wake up event coming from the PMC 1 and 2 for SMI# event. In the EC domain, Wake-Up Event Interrupt Enable register (SWCHIER) holds an enable bit to allow selective routing of the event to output the EC wake-up interrupt (WU26) to the WUC.

6.4.3.4 Other SWUC Controlled Options

Additionally, the SWUC handles the following system control signals:

- Host Keyboard Reset (KBRST#)
- GA20 Signal
- Host Configuration Address Option

- **Host Keyboard Reset (KBRST#)**

The Host Keyboard Reset output (KBRST#) can be asserted either by software or hardware:

Software: KBRST# will be asserted when the EC firmware issues a reset command by writing 1 to HRST in SWCTL1 register. Clear this bit to de-assert the KBRST#.

Hardware: KBRST# will be asserted during VSTBY Power-Up reset if HRSTA bit in SWCTL3 register is set and a LPC transaction is started.

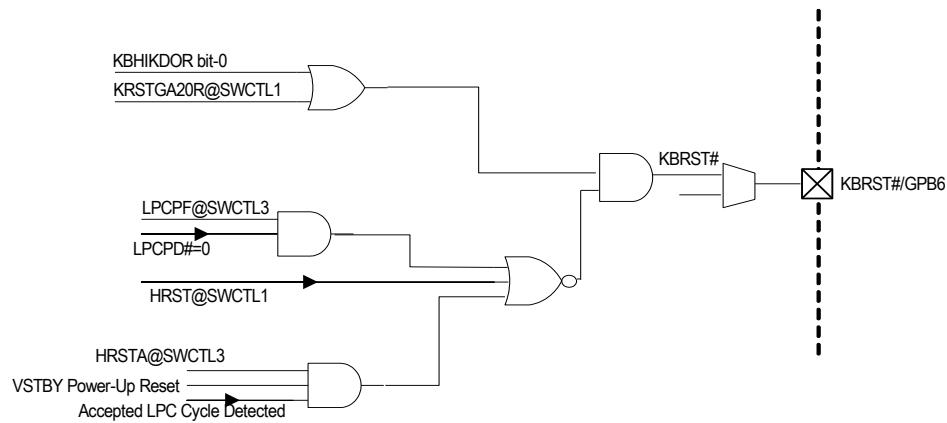
The KBRST# signal will be active in the following conditions:

- (1) HRSTA bit in the SWUC is enabled and LPC cycle is active when the VSTBY is power-on.
- (2) LPCPF bit in the SWUC is enabled and LPCPD# signal is active.
- (3) HRST bit in the SWUC is enabled.
- (4) Bit 0 of KBHKDOR in the KBC is enabled if KRSTG A20R is set.

The KBRST# output scheme is shown in Figure 6-12 on page 114.

Note it is another way to use GPIO output function to send KBRST# signal.

Figure 6-12. KBRST# Output Scheme



- **GA20 Signal**

In the chip, the GA20 is connected to a GPIO signal that is configured as output. Port GPB5 is recommended to be used as GA20 since its initial state is output driving high.

EC can assert the GA20 signal state by

1. modifying GPB5 in GPIO register
2. writing 1 to LPCPF in SWCTL3 register and GA20 signal will be asserted while LPCPD# signal is active.

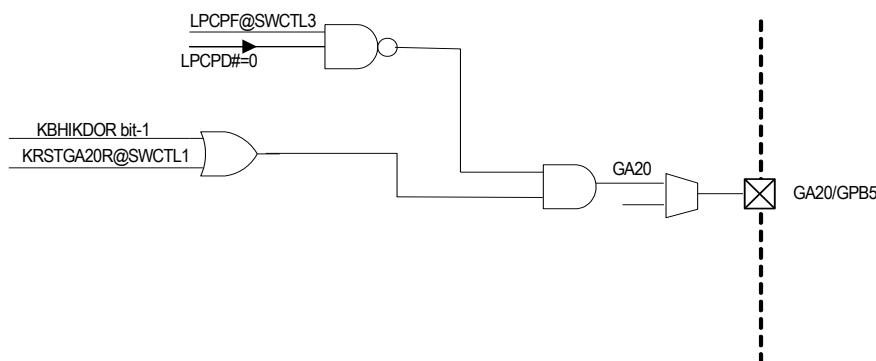
The GA20 signal will be active in the following conditions:

- (1) LPCPF bit in the SWUC is enabled and LPCPD# signal is active.
- (2) Bit-1 of KBHIKDOR in the KBC is enabled if KRSTGA20R is set.

The GA20 output scheme is shown in Figure 6-13 on page 114.

Note it is another way to use GPIO output function to send GA20 signal.

Figure 6-13. GA20 Output Scheme



- **Host Configuration Address Option**

The contents of SWCBAHR and SWCBALR change only during VSTBY Power -Up reset. To update the base address of the PNPCFG registers, refer to the followings:

1. Clear HCAV bit in SWCTL1 register by writing 1 to it.
2. Write the lower byte of the address to SWCBALR (LSB has to be cleared).
3. Write the higher byte of the address to SWCBAHR.
4. Set HCAL bit to prevent the unintended change in the SWCBALR and SWCBAHR register.

6.4.4 Host Interface Registers

The registers of SWUC can be divided into two parts: Host Interface Registers and EC Interface Registers and this section lists the host interface. The host interface registers can only be accessed by the host processor. SWUC resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. These registers are listed below.

Table 6-27. Host View Register Map, SWUC

7	0	Offset
	Wake-Up Event Status Register (WKSTR)	00h
	Wake-Up Enable Register (WKER)	02h
	Wake-Up Signals Monitor Register (WKSMR)	06h
	Wake-Up ACPI Status Register (WKACPIR)	07h
	Wake-Up SMI# Enable Register (WKSMIER)	13h
	Wake-Up Interrupt Enable Register (WKIRQER)	15h

6.4.4.1 Wake-Up Event Status Register (WKSTR)

The register is used to monitor the status of wake-up events. The register will be cleared when the VSTBY power is power-up, or the host domain software reset occurs.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Module IRQ Event Status (MIRQS) 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.
6	R/WC	0b	Software IRQ Event Status (SIRQS) The function of this bit can be changed by programming the HSECM bit in SWUC Control Status Register (SWCTL1). When HSECM=0 and writing 1 to this bit, the value of this bit will be inverted. When HSECM=1 and writing 1 to this bit, the bit is set to 1. The bit will be cleared when the SIRQS bit in SWUC Host Event Status Register (SWCHSTR) is written to 1. 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.
5-4	R	00b	Reserved.
3	R/WC	0b	RING# Event Status (RINGS) If the RING detection mode is disabled, the bit is always 0. 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.
2	R	0b	Reserved
1	R/WC	0b	RI2# Event Status (RI2S) 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.
0	R/WC	0b	RI1# Event Status (RI1S) 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.

6.4.4.2 Wake-Up Event Enable Register (WKER)

The register is used to enable the individual wake-up events to generate PWUREQ# interrupt. The register will be cleared when the VSTBY power is power-up, or the host domain software reset occurs.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Module IRQ Event Enable (MIRQE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
6	R/W	0b	Software IRQ Event Enable (SIRQE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
5-4	R	00b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	RING# Event Enable (RINGE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
2	R	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	RI2# Event Enable (RI2E) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
0	R/W	0b	RI1# Event Enable (RI1E) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.

6.4.4.3 Wake-Up Signals Monitor Register (WKSRR)

The register is used to monitor the value of the SMI# and PWUREQ# signals and identify the generated source. This register is a read-only register.

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R	00b	Reserved
5	R	0b	PWUREQ# Output from SWUC (PWUREQOS) 0: PWUREQ# output from SWUC is low. 1: PWUREQ# output from SWUC is high.
4	R	0b	PWUREQ# Signal Status (PWUREQS) 0: PWUREQ# signal is low. 1: PWUREQ# signal is high.
3	R	0b	SMI# Output from PMC2 (PM2SMI) 0: SMI# output from PM channel 2 is low. 1: SMI# output from PM channel 2 is high.
2	R	0b	SMI# Output from PMC1 (PM1SMI) 0: SMI# output from PM channel 1 is low. 1: SMI# output from PM channel 1 is high.
1	R	0b	SMI# Output from SWUC (SWCSMI) 0: SMI# output from SWUC is low. 1: SMI# output from SWUC is high.
0	R	0	SMI# Signal Status (SMIS) 0: SMI# signal is low. 1: SMI# signal is high.

6.4.4.4 Wake-Up ACPI Status Register (WKACPIR)

The register is used to monitor the status of ACPI. When this register is read, its value always returns 00h.

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R	00b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Change to S5 State (S5) The host uses this bit to request the EC to change the ACPI S5 state. 0: Not request to change S5 state. 1: Request to change S5 state.
4	R/W	0b	Change to S4 State (S4) The host uses this bit to request the EC to change the ACPI S4 state. 0: Not request to change S4 state. 1: Request to change S4 state.
3	R/W	0b	Change to S3 State (S3) The host uses this bit to request the EC to change the ACPI S3 state. 0: Not request to change S3 state. 1: Request to change S3 state.
2	R/W	0b	Change to S2 State (S2) The host uses this bit to request the EC to change the ACPI S2 state. 0: Not request to change S2 state. 1: Request to change S2 state.
1	R/W	0b	Change to S1 State (S1) The host uses this bit to request the EC to change the ACPI S1 state. 0: Not request to change S1 state. 1: Request to change S1 state.
0	R	0b	Reserved

6.4.4.5 Wake-Up SMI# Enable Register (WKSMIER)

The register is used to enable the individual wake-up events to generate SMI# interrupt. The register will be cleared when the VSTBY power is power-up, or the host domain software reset occurs.

Address Offset: 13h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Reserved
6	R/W	0b	Software IRQ Event to SMI# Enable (SSMIE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
5-4	R	00b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	RING# Event to SMI# Enable (RINGSMIE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
2	R	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	RI2# Event to SMI# Enable (RI2SMIE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
0	R/W	0b	RI1# Event to SMI# Enable (RI1SMIE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.

6.4.4.6 Wake-Up IRQ Enable Register (WKIRQER)

The register is used to enable the individual wake-up events to generate the interrupt signal that is assigned by SWUC. The register will be cleared when the VSTBY power is power-up, or the host domain software reset occurs.

Address Offset: 15h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Reserved
6	R/W	0b	Software IRQ Event to IRQ Enable (SIRQE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
5-4	R	00b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	RING# Event to IRQ Enable (RINGIRQE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
2	R	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	RI2# Event to IRQ Enable (RI2IRQE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
0	R/W	0b	RI1# Event to IRQ Enable (RI1IRQE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.

6.4.5 EC Interface Registers

The registers of SWUC can be divided into two parts, Host Interface Registers and EC Interface Registers. This section lists the EC interface. The EC interface can only be accessed by the internal 8032 processor. The base address for SWUC is 1400h.

These registers are listed below.

Table 6-28. EC View Register Map, SWUC

7	0	Offset
SWUC Control Status 1 Register (SWCTL1)		00h
SWUC Control Status 2 Register (SWCTL2)		02h
SWUC Control Status 3 Register (SWCTL3)		04h
SWUC Host Configuration Base Address Low Byte Register (SWCBALR)		08h
SWUC Host Configuration Base Address High Byte Register (SWCBAHR)		0Ah
SWUC Interrupt Enable Register (SWCIER)		0Ch
SWUC Host Event Status Register (SWCHSTR)		0Eh
SWUC Host Event Interrupt Enable Register (SWCHIER)		10h

6.4.5.1 SWUC Control Status 1 Register (SWCTL1)

The register is used to control the individual wake-up action on SWUC. The register will be cleared when the VSTBY power is power-up. Bit 0 is only cleared when the warm reset occurs.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	1b	KB Reset/GA20 Routing (KRSTGA20R) 0: Enable routing bit-0 of KBHIKDOR as KBRST# source Enable routing bit-1 of KBHIKDOR as GA20 source 1: Disable above
6	R/W	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Host Software Event Clear Mode (HSECM) This bit is used to control the clear mode of SIRQS bit at the Wake-Up Event Status Register (WKSTR).
4	R/W	0b	Host Configuration Address Lock (HCAL) When the bit is written to 1, the Host Configuration Address and the bit will be locked. The bit is only cleared at the following condition: VSTBY power-up or watchdog reset.
3	R/WC	0b	Host Configuration Address Valid (HCAV) This bit is set after writing SWCBAHR register. 1: Indicate Host Configuration Base Address stored in SWCBALR and SWCBAHR registers are valid. 0: SWCBALR and SWCBAHR registers are not valid. The bit can be cleared by writing to 1.
2	R	0b	LPC Reset Active (LPCRST) 0: LPCRST# is inactive. 1: LPCRST# is active.
1	R	-	VCC Power On (VCCPO) 0: VCC is power-off. 1: VCC is power-on. See also VCCDO bit in RSTS register in 7.17.4.5 on page 403.
0	R/W	-	Host Reset Active (HRST) When this bit is 1, the KBRST# is active to generate one host software reset.

6.4.5.2 SWUC Control Status 2 Register (SWCTL2)

The register is used to control the individual wake-up action on SWUC. The register will be cleared when the VSTBY power is power-up and LPCRST# is active.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Super I/O Configuration SIOPWR Power Supply Off (SCRDPSO) The bit is used to monitor the Power Supply Off (PWRSLY) bit in SIOPWR register of PNPCFG. When the bit is written to 1, clear the bit and the interrupt signal caused by the value change in this bit. A write of 0 to this bit is ignored.
6	R/WC	0b	Super I/O Configuration SIOPWR Power Button Mode (SCRDPBM) The bit is used to monitor the Power Button Mode (PWRBTN) bit in SIOPWR register of PNPCFG. When the bit is written to 1, clear the interrupt signal caused by the value change in this bit. A write of 0 to this bit is ignored.
5-1	R/WC	00000b	ACPI request S5-1 (ACPIRS5-1) These bits are used to monitor the S5-1 bit at the Wake-Up ACPI Status Register (WKACPIR). When the bit is written to 1, clear the bit and the interrupt signal caused by ACPI. A write of 0 to this bit is ignored.
0	R/WC	0b	ACPI request S0 (ACPIRS0) If all S5-1 bits at the WKACPIR are written to 0, the bit will be set to 1. The bit will be cleared if the bit is written to 1.

6.4.5.3 SWUC Control Status 3 Register (SWCTL3)

The register is used to control the individual wake-up action on SWUC. The register will only be cleared when the VSTBY power is power-up.

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	R	00h	Reserved
2	R/WC	0b	RTCT Alarm Active (RTCTAL) When the RTCT alarm is active, the bit will be set to 1. The bit can be cleared by writing 1 to it.
1	R/W	0b	LPC Power Fail Turn Off KBRST# and GA20 (LPCPF) If the bit is set to 1, the KBRST# and GA20 will be forced to low when the LPCPD# signal is active.
0	R/W	1b	Host Reset Active During VSTBY Power-Up (HRSTA) If the bit is set to 1, the KBRST# signal will be active when the LPC cycle is active until VSTBY Power-Up Reset is finished. Writing data to this bit is ignored if HCAL bit is set.

6.4.5.4 SWUC Host Configuration Base Address Low Byte Register (SWCBALR)

The register is used to program the base address of the SWUC Host Interface registers.
See also Table 6-2 on page 36 and HCAL/HCAV bit in SWCTL1 register.

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Base Address Low Byte (BALB)

6.4.5.5 SWUC Host Configuration Base Address High Byte Register (SWCBAHR)

The register is used to program the base address of the SWUC Host Interface registers. See also Table 6-2 on page 36 and HCAL/HCAV bit in SWCTL1 register.

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Base Address High Byte (BAHB)

6.4.5.6 SWUC Interrupt Enable Register (SWCIER)

The register is used to enable the individual interrupt source on SWUC. The interrupt can be cleared by clearing the status bit or masking the source. On the other hand, the register will be cleared when the warm reset is active.

Address Offset: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Enable Interrupt from Super I/O Configuration SIOPWR Power Supply Off (EISCRDPSO) 1: Generate high-level interrupt when the SCRDPSO bit in SWUC Control Status 2 Register (SWCTL2) is changed. 0: Disable the interrupt source.
6	R/W	0b	Enable Interrupt from Super I/O Configuration SIOPWR Power Button Mode (EISCRDPBM) 1: Generate high-level interrupt when the SCRDPBM bit in SWUC Control Status 2 Register (SWCTL2) is changed. 0: Disable the interrupt source.
5-1	R/W	00000b	Enable Interrupt from ACPI Request S5-1 (EIACPIRS5-1) 1: Generate high-level interrupt when the ACPIRS5-1 bit in SWUC Control Status 2 Register (SWCTL2) is changed. 0: Disable the interrupt source.
0	R/W	0b	Enable Interrupt from RTCT Alarm Active (EIRTCTA) 1: Generate high-level interrupt when the RTCAL bit in SWUC Control Status 3 Register (SWCTL3) is changed to 1. 0: Disable the interrupt source.

6.4.5.7 SWUC Host Event Status Register (SWCHSTR)

The information of this register is mirror as the Wake-Up Event Status Register (WKSTR). The status bits can be cleared by writing to the corresponding bit in the two registers. The register will be cleared when the VSTBY power is power-up, or the host software reset occurs.

Address Offset: 0Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Module IRQ Event Status (MIRQS) 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.
6	R/WC	0b	Software IRQ Event Status (SIRQS) The function of this bit can be changed by programming HSECM bit in SWUC Control Status Register (SWCTL1). When HSECM=0, this bit is set to 1 when SIRQS toggles to 1 in WKSTR register. When HSECM=1 and this bit is set to 1 while writing 1 to SIRQS in WKSTR register. This bit will be cleared by writing 1 to it. 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.
5-4	R	00b	Reserved
3	R/WC	0b	RING# Event Status (RINGS) If the RING detection mode is disabled, the bit is always 0. 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.
2	R	0b	Reserved
1	R/WC	0b	RI2# Event Status (RI2S) 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.
0	R/WC	0b	RI1# Event Status (RI1S) 0: Event is not active. 1: Event is active.

6.4.5.8 SWUC Host Event Interrupt Enable Register (SWCHIER)

The register is used to enable the individual wake-up events to generate one interrupt to the EC 8032 via WU26 of WUC. The register will be cleared when the warm reset occurs.

Address Offset: 10h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Module IRQ Event Enable (MIRQEE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
6	R/W	0b	Software IRQ Event Enable (SIRQEE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
5-4	R	00b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	RING# Event Enable (RINGEE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
2	R	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	RI2# Event Enable (RI2EE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
0	R/W	0b	RI1# Event Enable (RI1EE) 0: Disable. 1: Enable.

6.5 Keyboard Controller (KBC)

6.5.1 Overview

This Keyboard Controller supports a standard keyboard and mouse controller interface.

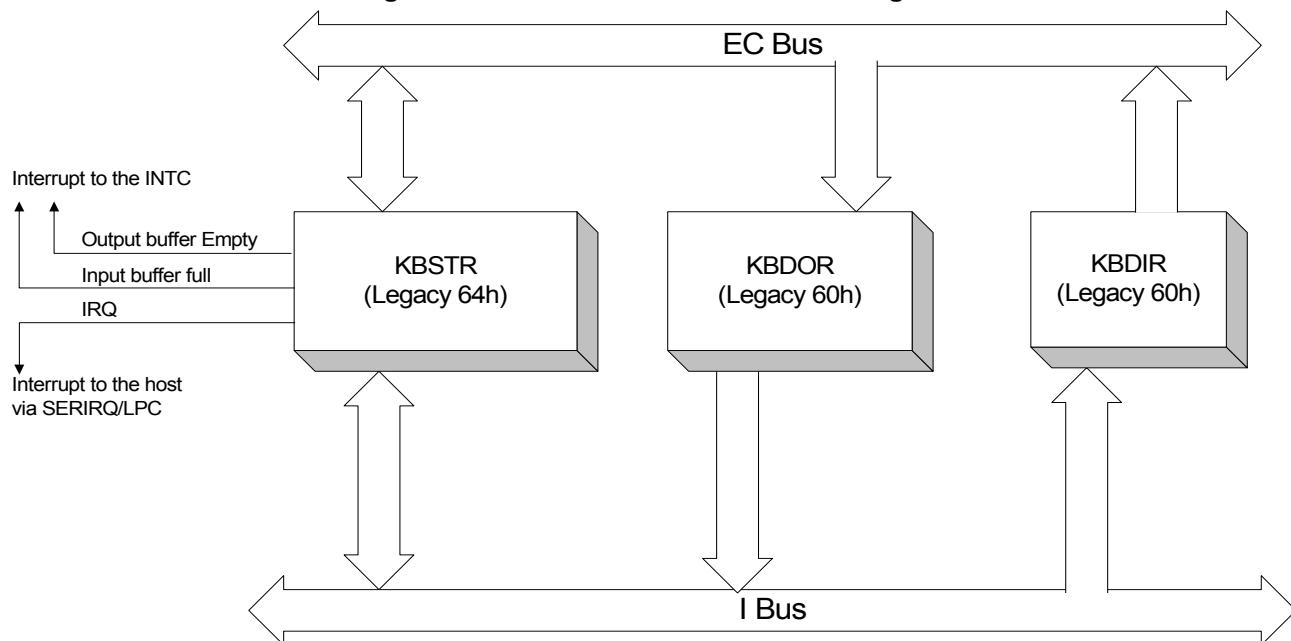
6.5.2 Features

- Compatible with the legacy 8042 interface keyboard controller.
- Supports two standard registers for programming: Command/Data Register and Status Register.
- Automatically generates interrupts to the host side and EC side when the KBC status is changed.

6.5.3 Functional Description

This Keyboard Controller is compatible with the legacy 8042 interface keyboard controller.

Figure 6-14. KBC Host Interface Block Diagram



Status

The host processor can read the status of KBC from the KBC Status Register. The internal 8032 can read the status of KBC from the KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Status Register.

Host Write Data to KBC Interface

When writing to address 60h or 64h (programmable), the IBF bit in the KBC Status Register is set and A2 bit in the KBC Status Register indicates 8032 whose address was written. When writing to address 60h, A2 bit is 0. When writing to address 64h, A2 bit is 1.

EC 8032 can identify that the input buffer is full by either polling IBF bit in the Status register or detecting an interrupt (INT24) if the interrupt is enabled. EC 8032 can read the data from the KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Data Input Register (KBHIDIR), and the IBF bit in the Status Register is cleared.

EC 8032 Write Data to KBC Interface

EC 8032 can write data to the KBC when it needs to send data to the host. When EC 8032 writes data to the KBC Host Interface Keyboard Data Output Register (KBHKDOR), the OBF bit in the Status Register is set. If the IRQ1 interrupt is enabled, the IRQ1 will be sent to the host. The host can read the Data Output Register when it detects the Output Buffer Full condition. When EC 8032 writes data to the KBC Host Interface Mouse

Data Output Register (KBHIMDOR), the OBF bit in the Status Register is set. If the IRQ12 interrupt is enabled, the IRQ12 will be sent to the host. The host can read the Data Output Register when it detects the Output Buffer Full condition. When the Output Buffer Empty interrupt to INTC (INT2) is enabled, the interrupt signal is set high if the output buffer is empty.

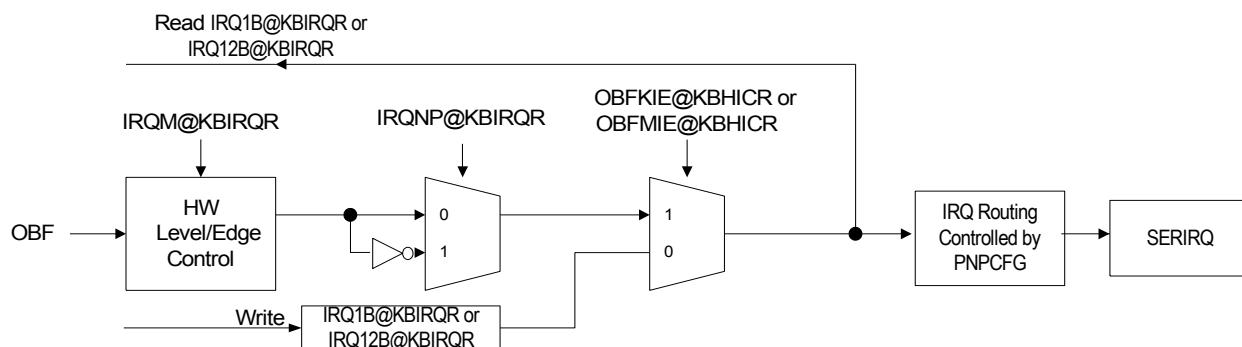
Interrupts

There are two interrupts (Input Buffer Full Interrupt and Output Buffer Empty) connected to the INTC.

There are two interrupts (IRQ1 and IRQ12) connected to the host side (SERIRQ).

The IRQ numbers of KBC are programmable and use IRQ1 and IRQ12 as abbreviations in this section.

Figure 6-15. IRQ Control in KBC Module



GA20 and KBRST#

Refer to section 6.4.3.4 on page 113.

6.5.4 Host Interface Registers

The registers of KBC can be divided into two parts: Host Interface Registers and EC Interface Registers and this section lists the host interface. The host interface registers can only be accessed by the host processor.

The KBC resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. For compatibility issue, the two I/O Port Base Addresses of KBC/Keyboard are suggested to configure at 60h and 64h.

These registers are listed below.

Table 6-29. Host View Register Map, KBC

7	0	Offset
	KBC Data Input Register (KBDIR)	Legacy 60h
	KBC Data Output Register (KBDOR)	Legacy 60h
	KBC Command Register (KBCMDR)	Legacy 64h
	KBC Status Register (KBSTR)	Legacy 64h

Legacy 60h represents (I/O Port Base Address 0) + (Offset 0h)

Legacy 64h represents (I/O Port Base Address 1) + (Offset 0h)

See also Table 6-3 on page 36.

6.5.4.1 KBC Data Input Register (KBDIR)

When the host processor is writing this register, the IBF bit in KBC Status Register (KBSTR) will be set and the A2 bit will be cleared. If the IBFCIE bit in KBC Host Interface Control Register (KBHICR) is enabled, the write action will cause one interrupt to 8032 processor via INT24 of INTC.

Address Offset: 00h for I/O Port Base Address 0, Legacy 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	-	KBC Data Input (KBDI) The data is used to output for Keyboard/Mouse.

6.5.4.2 KBC Data Output Register (KBDOR)

When the host processor is reading this register, The OBF bit in KBC Status Register (KBSTR) will be cleared. The reading access will also clear the interrupt for host processor when the IRQM bits of KBC Interrupt Control Register (KBIRQR) are programmed to be at level mode. If the OBECIE bit in KBC Host Interface Control Register (KBHICR) is enabled, the read action will cause one interrupt to 8032 processor via INT2 of INTC.

Address Offset: 00h for I/O Port Base Address 0, Legacy 60h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	KBC Data Output (KBDO) The data comes from the Keyboard/Mouse source.

6.5.4.3 KBC Command Register (KBCMDR)

When the register is written, the IBF bit in KBC Status Register (KBSTR) will be set and the A2 bit will be set.

Address Offset: 00h for I/O Port Base Address 1, Legacy 64h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	-	KBC Command (KBCMD) The command data is used to output for Keyboard/Mouse.

6.5.4.4 KBC Status Register (KBSTR)

The host processor uses the register to monitor the status of KBC. The same information is similar to the KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Status Register (KBHISR). It is used by the internal 8032.

Address Offset: 01h for I/O Port Base Address 0, Legacy 64h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R	0h	Programming Data 3-0 (PD3-0) The data is used by the 8032 firmware to be the general-purpose setting.
3	R	0b	A2 Address (A2) The bit is used to keep the A2 address information of the last write operation that the host processor accessed the KBC.
2	R	0b	Programming Data II (PDII) The function is the same as the PD3-0.
1	R	0b	Input Buffer Full (IBF) When the host processor is writing data to KBDIR or KBCMDR, the bit is set. On the other hand, the bit will be cleared when the KBDIR or KBCMDR is read by the 8032 firmware.
0	R	0b	Output Buffer Full (OBF) When the EC 8032 is writing data to KBDOR, the bit is set. On the other hand, the bit will be cleared when the KBDOR is read by the host processor.

6.5.5 EC Interface Registers

The registers of KBC can be divided into two parts, Host Interface Registers and EC Interface Registers. This section lists the EC interface. The EC interface can only be accessed by the internal 8032 processor. The base address for KBC is 1300h.

These registers are listed below

Table 6-30. EC View Register Map, KBC

7	0	Offset
		00h
		02h
		04h
		06h
		08h
		0Ah

6.5.5.1 KBC Host Interface Control Register (KBHICR)

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	0b	Reserved
6	-	0b	Reserved
5	-	0b	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	PM Channel 1 Host Interface Interrupt Enable (PM1HIE) 0: The IRQ11 is controlled by the IRQ11B bit in KBC Interrupt Control Register (KBIRQR). 1: Enables the interrupt to the host side via SERIRQ for PM channel 1 when the output buffer is full. The interrupt type is controlled by the IRQM and IRQNP bit in KBIRQR.
3	R/W	0b	Input Buffer Full 8032 Interrupt Enable (IBFCIE) The bit is used to enable the interrupt to 8032 for Keyboard/Mouse when the input buffer is full via INT24 of INTC.
2	R/W	0b	Output Buffer Empty 8032 Interrupt Enable (OBECIE) The bit is used to enable the interrupt to 8032 for Keyboard/Mouse when the output buffer is empty via INT2 of INTC.
1	R/W	0b	Output Buffer Full Mouse Interrupt Enable (OBFMIE) 0: The IRQ12 is controlled by the IRQ12B bit in KBIRQR. 1: Enables the interrupt to mouse driver in the host processor via SERIRQ when the output buffer is full. The interrupt type is controlled by the IRQM and IRQNP bit in KBIRQR.
0	R/W	0b	Output Buffer Full Keyboard Interrupt Enable (OBFKIE) 0: The IRQ1 is controlled by the IRQ1B bit in KBIRQR. 1: Enables the interrupt to keyboard driver in the host processor via SERIRQ when the output buffer is full. The interrupt type is controlled by the IRQM and IRQNP bit in KBIRQR.

6.5.5.2 KBC Interrupt Control Register (KBIRQR)

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	Reserved
6	R/W	0b	Interrupt Negative Polarity (IRQNP) The bit is enabled, and then the interrupt level is inverted.
5-3	R/W	0b	Interrupt Mode (IRQM) These bits are used to control the interrupt type to be level-triggered or edge-triggered (pulse) mode. In level-triggered mode, the default value of IRQ1/11/12 to SERIRQ via routing logic is low and will be set to high when the interrupt condition occurs. In edge-triggered mode, the default value of IRQ1/11/12 to SERIRQ via routing logic is high and a negative pulse will be generated when the interrupt condition occurs. Note that the polarity definition in edge-triggered is different from SCIPM field in PMCTL register and SMIPM field in PMIC register. 000: Level-triggered mode. 001: Edge-triggered mode with 1-cycle pulse width. 010: Edge-triggered mode with 2-cycle pulse width. 011: Edge-triggered mode with 4-cycle pulse width. 100: Edge-triggered mode with 8-cycle pulse width. 101: Edge-triggered mode with 16-cycle pulse width. Other: reserved.
2	R/W	1b	IRQ11 Control Bit (IRQ11B) When the PM1HIE bit in KBC Host Interface Control Register (KBHICR) is 0, the bit directly controls the IRQ11 signal. The bit can be used to monitor the status of IRQ11 signal. Reading this bit returns the status of IRQ11 signal, so the read value is not equal to the written value directly.
1	R/W	1b	IRQ12 Control Bit (IRQ12B) When the OBFMIE bit in KBC Host Interface Control Register (KBHICR) is 0, the bit directly controls the IRQ12 signal. The bit can be used to monitor the status of IRQ12 signal. Reading this bit returns the status of IRQ12 signal, so the read value is not equal to the written value directly.
0	R/W	1b	IRQ1 Control Bit (IRQ1B) When the OBFKIE bit in KBC Host Interface Control Register (KBHICR) is 0, the bit directly controls the IRQ1 signal. The bit can be used to monitor the status of IRQ1 signal. Reading this bit returns the status of IRQ1 signal, so the read value is not equal to the written value directly.

6.5.5.3 KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Status Register (KBHISR)

The 8032 firmware uses the register to monitor the status of KBC. It can use bit 7-4 and bit 2 to send the information to the host processor. The data of this register is the same as the data of KBC Status Register (KBSTR).

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	Programming Data 3-0 (PD3-0) The data is used by the 8032 firmware to be the general-purpose setting.
3	R	0b	A2 Address (A2) The bit is used to keep the A2 address information of the write operation while the host processor accesses the KBC.
2	R/W	0b	Programming Data II (PDII) The function is the same as PD3-0.
1	R	0b	Input Buffer Full (IBF) When the host processor is writing data to KBDIR or KBCMDR, the bit is set. On the other hand, the bit will be cleared when KBHIDIR is read by the 8032 firmware.
0	R	0b	Output Buffer Full (OBF) When 8032 is writing data to KBHIKDOR and KBHIMDOR, the bit is set. On the other hand, the bit will be cleared when the KBDOR is read by the host.

6.5.5.4 KBC Host Interface Keyboard Data Output Register (KBHIKDOR)

The 8032 firmware can write the register to send the data of the KBC Data Output Register (KBDOR). Besides, the action will set the OBF bit in the KBC Status Register (KBSTR). If the OBECIE bit in the KBC Interrupt Control Register (KBIRQR) is enabled, the action will clear the interrupt.

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	-	KBC Keyboard Data Output (KBKDO) The data output to the KBC Data Output Register (KBDOR).

6.5.5.5 KBC Host Interface Mouse Data Output Register (KBHIMDOR)

The 8032 firmware can write the register to send the data of the KBC Data Output Register (KBDOR). Besides, the action will set the OBF bit in the KBC Status Register (KBSTR). If the OBECIE bit in the KBC Interrupt Control Register (KBIRQR) is enabled, the action will clear the interrupt.

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	-	KBC Mouse Data Output (KBKDO) The data output to the KBC Data Output Register (KBDOR).

6.5.5.6 KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Data Input Register (KBHIDIR)

The 8032 firmware can read the register to get the data of the KBC Data Input Register (KBDIR). Besides, the action will clear the IBF bit in the KBC Status Register (KBSTR). If the IBFCIE bit in the KBC Interrupt Control Register (KBIRQR) is enabled, the action will clear the interrupt.

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	KBC Keyboard/Mouse Data Input (KBKMDI) The data is the same as the data of KBC Data Input Register (KBDIR).

6.6 Power Management Channel (PMC)

6.6.1 Overview

The power management channel is defined in ACPI specification and used as a communication channel between the host processor and embedded controller.

6.6.2 Features

- Supports two PM channels
- Supports compatible mode and enhanced mode (all channels)
- Supports shared and private interface
- Supports Command/Status and Data ports
- Supports IRQ/SMI#/SCI# generation

6.6.3 Functional Description

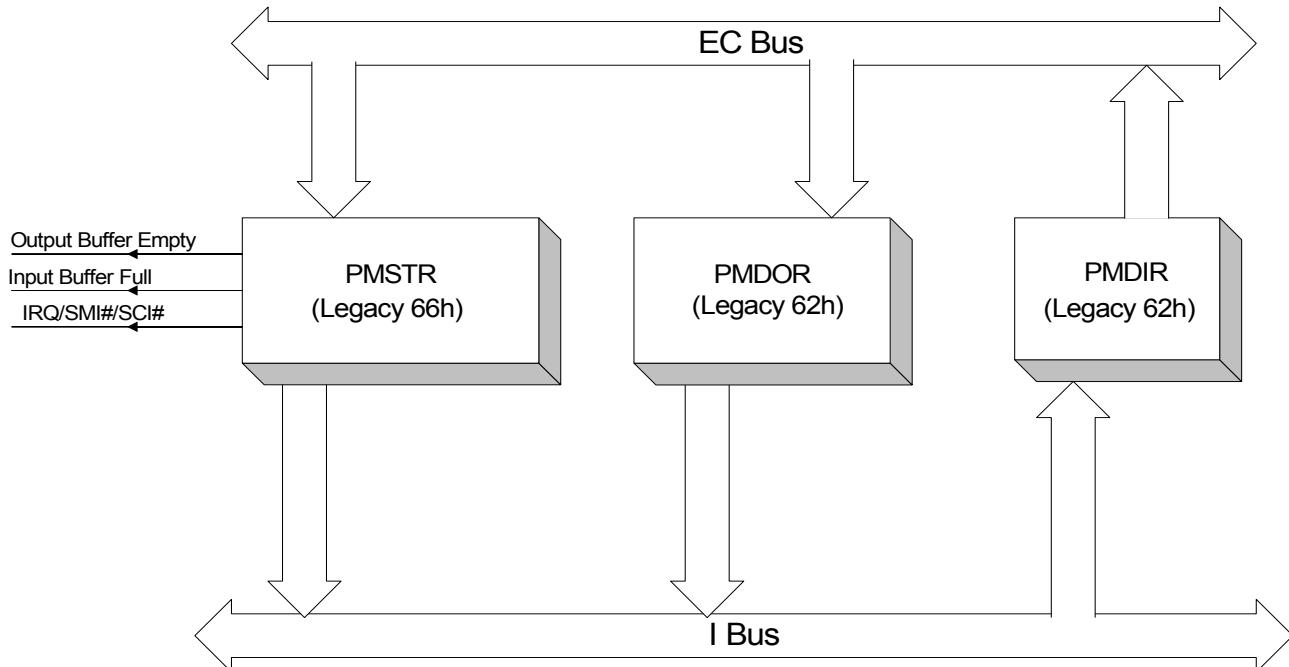
To generate the SCI# and SMI# interrupts to the host

6.6.3.1 General Description

The PM channel supports two operation modes: one is called Compatible mode that is available for channel 1 only. The other is called Enhanced mode. PMC is available for all channels. The PM channel provides four registers: PMDIR, PMDOR, PMCMDR and PMSTR for communication between the EC and host side. The PMDIR register can be written to by the host and read by the EC. The PMDOR register can be written to by the EC and read by the host. The PMCMDR/PMSTR register can be read by both the EC and Host side.

The PMC host interface block diagram is shown below.

Figure 6-16. PMC Host Interface Block Diagram



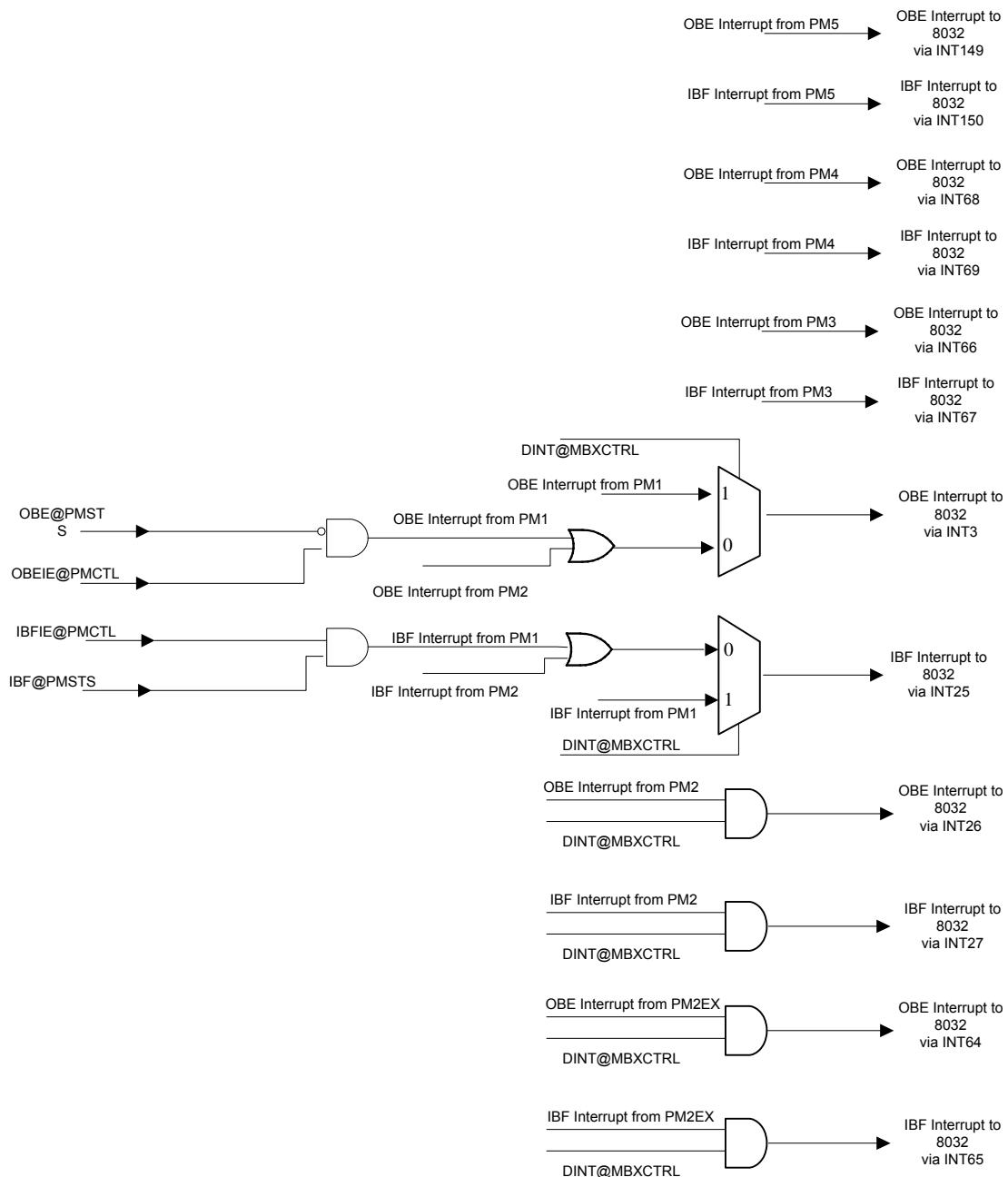
EC Interrupts

Two interrupts (IBF and OBF) are connected to INTC. These interrupts are enabled by OBEIE and IBFIE in www.ite.com.tw

PMnCTL register respectively.

The diagram of PMC interrupt to EC 8032 via INT3/INT25/INT26/INT27/INT64-INT69/INT149/INT150 of INTC is show below.

Figure 6-17. EC Interrupt Request for PMC



Host Interrupt

The EC can select to access to different address space to generate IRQ, SMI# or SCI# interrupt when either IBF or OBF is set.

The IRQ numbers of PMC are programmable and use IRQ11 as the abbreviation in the following section. The abbreviation, n, represents channel 1 and/or channel 2 of this register.

6.6.3.2 Compatible Mode

When IRQ numbers in host configuration register are assigned by host software, and the interrupt can be generated either by hardware via PM1HIE in KBHICR register or by programming KBIRQR register. In Normal Polarity mode (IRQNP in KBIRQR register is cleared), IT8987 supports legacy level for PM compatible mode interrupt. When a level interrupt is selected (IRQM in KBIRQR register is cleared), the interrupt signal is asserted when the OBF flag has been set, which is still asserted until the output buffer is read (i.e., OBF flag is cleared). The EC can control the interrupts generated by the PM channel to the one as follows:

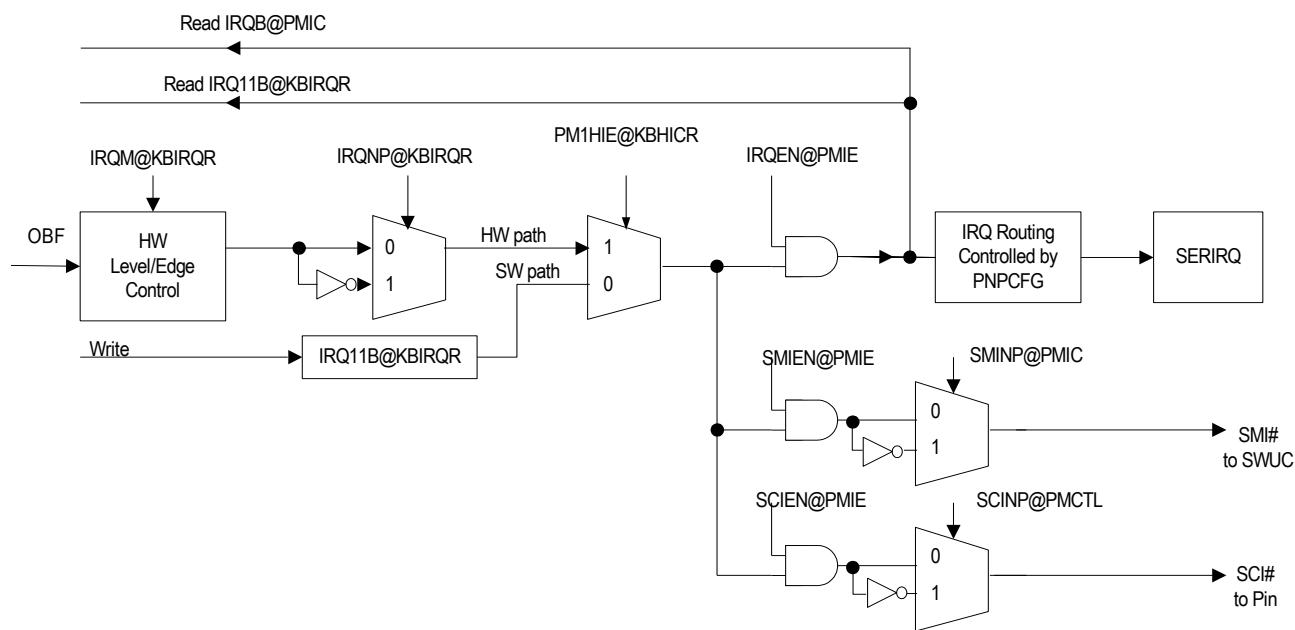
IRQ signal to LPC/SERIRQ, when IRQEN bit in PMnIE register is set.

SMI# output to SWUC, when SMIEN bit in PMnIE register is set.

SCI# signal, using the SCI# output, when SCIEN bit in PMnIE register is set.

The IRQ/SCI#/SMI# control diagram in PMC compatible mode is shown below.

Figure 6-18. IRQ/SCI#/SMI# Control in PMC Compatible Mode



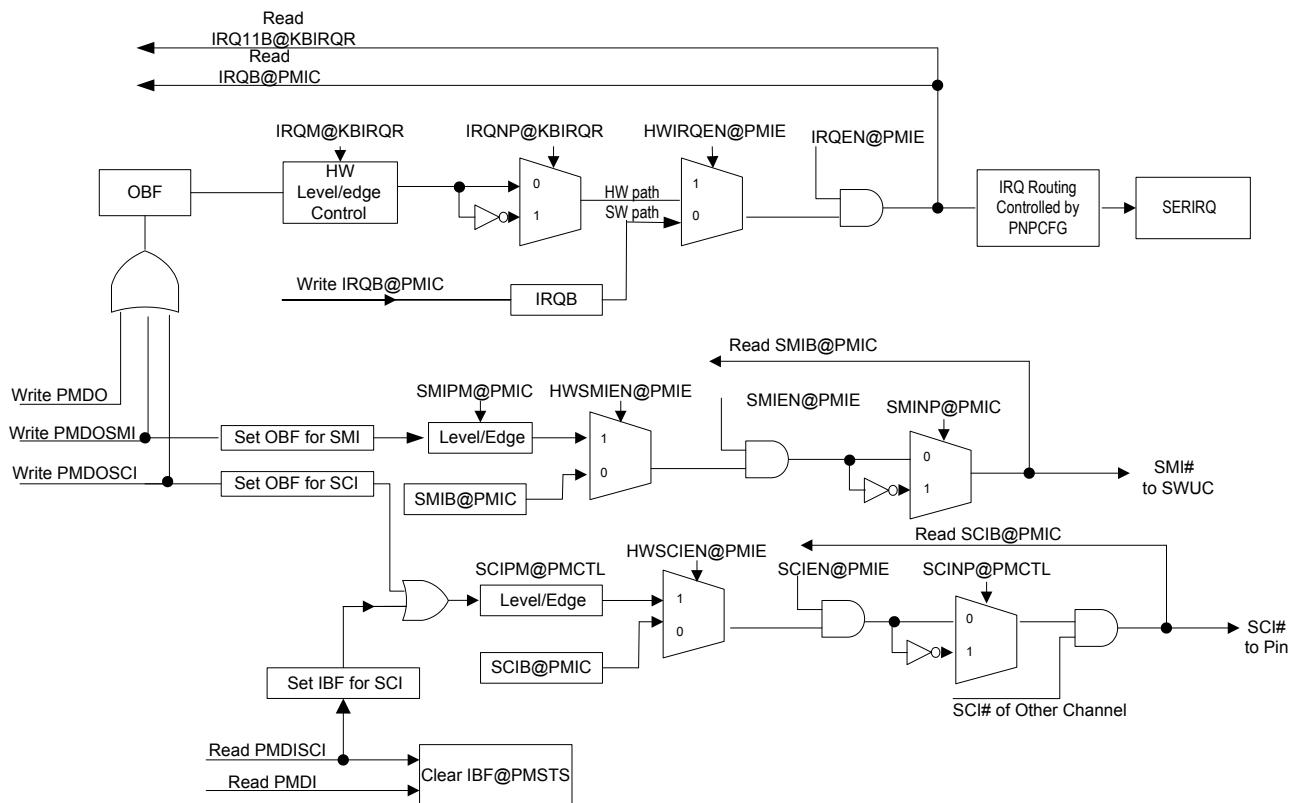
6.6.3.3 Enhanced PM mode

Enhanced PM mode is activated when APM is set to 1 in PMnCTL register. The generated IRQ, SMI# or SCI# interrupt can be selected to output via software control or hardware, which is determined by programming IRQEN bit in PMnIE register. SCI# and SMI# are generated when EC writes to the Data output buffer. SCI# is generated when EC reads the Data Input buffer. Different data register generates different interrupt. The OBF flag in PMnSTS register is set and both SMI# and SCI# interrupts are deasserted when data is written to PMnDO register. The OBF interrupt of SMI# is generated when PMnDOSMI register is written into data. The internal OBF flag of SMI# is cleared when OBF flag is cleared. The OBF interrupt of SCI# is generated When PMnDOSCI register is written into data. OBF_SCI# which is cleared when OBF is cleared.

The IBF flag is cleared and SCI# interrupt is generated when PMnDISCI register is read out data. The IBF flag is cleared and SCI# interrupt is not asserted when PMnDI register is read out data.

The IRQ/SCI#/SMI# control diagram in PMC enhanced mode is shown below.

Figure 6-19. IRQ/SCI#/SMI# Control in PMC Enhanced Mode



6.6.3.4 PMC2EX

There is a channel 2 extended (PMC2EX) mailbox (MBX) function based on PMC channel 2, which is constructed by a 16-byte mailbox shared with BRAM. See also Figure 7-40 on page 414.

This 16-byte mailbox can be accessed from both the EC side (named MBXEC0-15) and host side (MBXH0-15). In the EC side, MBXEC0-15 is always located in PMC module offset F0h-FFh and shared with the topmost 16-byte in BRAM.

In the host side, MBXH0-15 address is based on the descriptor 2 of Power Management I/F Channel 2 logic device inside LPC I/O space. (Refer to section 6.2.13.6 and 6.2.13.7 on page 66)

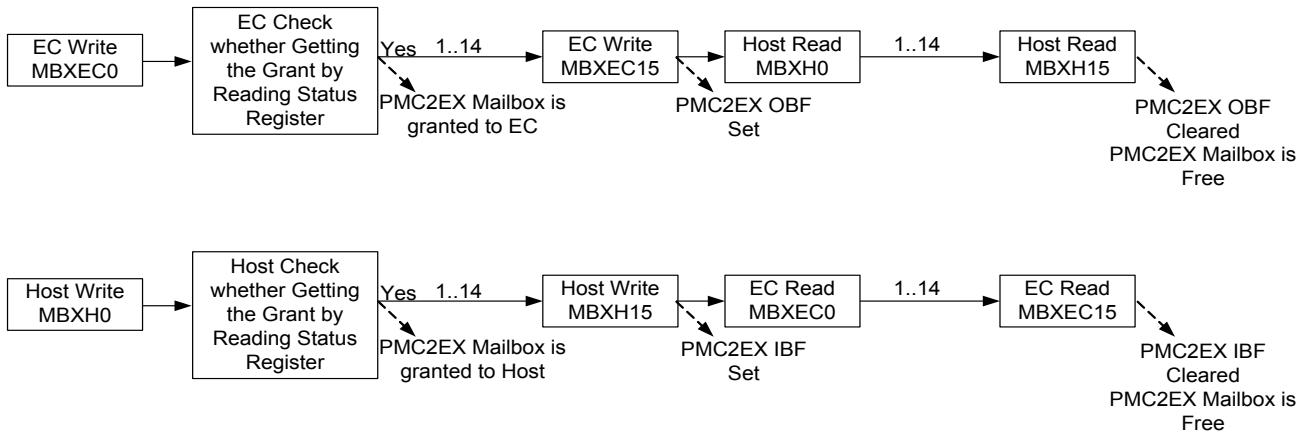
The PMC2EX (channel 2 extended) shares the same interrupt generation resource and registers (offset 10h-18h).

For registers, PMC2EX shares the same registers (offset 10h-18h) and has its dedicated MBXCTRL register (offset 19h).

For interrupt generation, PMC2EX shares the same interrupt logic with channel 2. If MBXEN is set, IBF/OBF interrupt source of PMC2EX is ORed with channel 2.

The EC/host side should check whether to get the grant from the internal arbiter after writing to MBXEC0/MBXH0 (respectively).

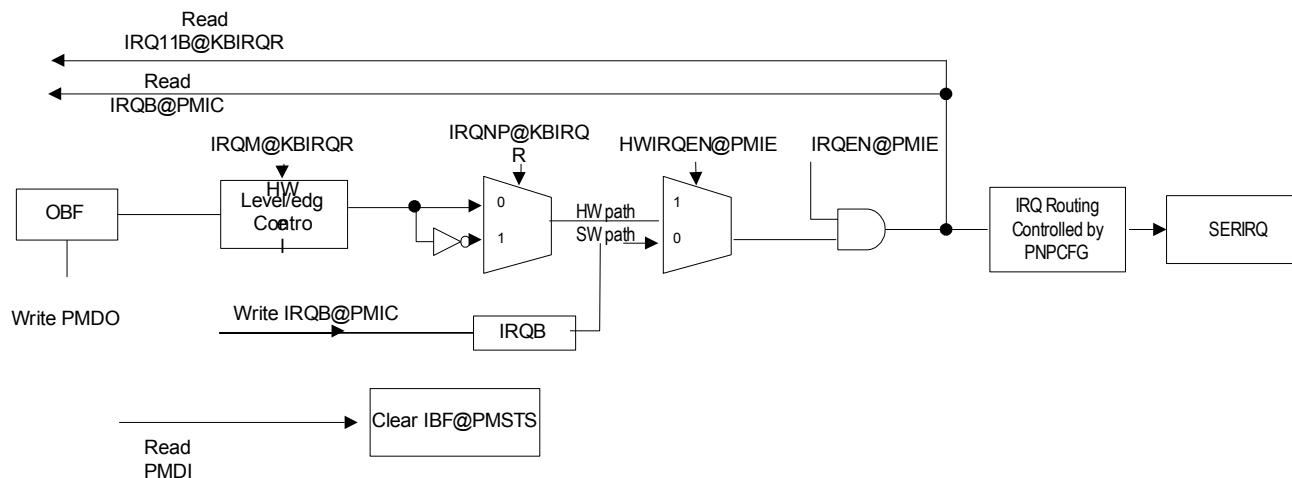
The typical PMC2EX mailbox operation is described below.

Figure 6-20. Typical PMC2EX Mailbox Operation


6.6.3.5 PMC3/4/5

Only Enhanced PM mode is activated in PM channel 3/4/5 and only IRQ interrupt is generated. The generated IRQ interrupt can be selected to output via software control or hardware, which is determined by programming IRQEN bit in PM3IE/PM4IE/PM5IE register. The OBF flag in PM3STS/PM4STS/PM5STS register is set when data is written to PM3DO/PM4DO/PM5DO register. The IBF flag is cleared when PMnDI register is read out data.

The IRQ control diagram in PMC3/PMC4/PMC5 is shown below.

Figure 6-21. IRQ Control in PM Channel 3/4/5


6.6.4 Host Interface Registers

The registers of PMC can be divided into two parts: Host Interface Registers and EC Interface Registers and this section lists the host interface. The host interface registers can only be accessed by the host processor. The PMC Channel 1 and 2 reside at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. For compatibility issue, the two I/O Port Base Addresses of channel 1 are suggested to configure at 62h and 66h.

These registers are listed below.

Table 6-31. Host View Register Map, PMC

7	0	Offset
	PMC Data Input Register (PMDIR)	Legacy 62h
	PMC Data Output Register (PMDOR)	Legacy 62h
	PMC Command Register (PMCMDR)	Legacy 66h
	PMC Status Register (PMSTR)	Legacy 66h

Legacy 62h represents (I/O Port Base Address 0) + (Offset 0h)

Legacy 66h represents (I/O Port Base Address 1) + (Offset 0h)

See also Table 6-3 on page 36.

6.6.4.1 PMC Data Input Register (PMDIR)

Address Offset: 00h for I/O Port Base Address 0, Legacy 62h for Channel 1

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Data Input Register Bit [7:0] (DIRB) This is the data input register for power management channel data communication between the host and EC side. When the host writes this port, data is written to PMDIR register and EC 8032 can read it. Notice that when the Command/Status register is written, the data is also stored into PMDIR register. Users must read A2 to decide whether the PMDIR data is data or command.

6.6.4.2 PMC Data Output Register (PMDOR)

Address Offset: 00h for I/O Port Base Address 0, Legacy 62h for Channel 1

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Data Output Register Bit [7:0] (DORB) This is the data output register for power management channel data communication between the host and EC. When the host reads this port, data is read from PMDOR register and EC 8032 can write it.

6.6.4.3 PMC Command Register (PMCMDR)

Address Offset: 00h for I/O Port Base Address 1, Legacy 66h for Channel 1

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Command Register Bit [7:0] (CRB) The port is written by the host when A2 = 1 in PMSTR register.

6.6.4.4 Status Register (PMSTR)

Address Offset: 00h for I/O Port Base Address 1, Legacy 66h for Channel 1

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	<p>Status Register (STS)</p> <p>For channel 1 and channel 2 with MBXEN cleared: This is a general purpose flag used for signaling between the host and EC side. When used as ACPI PM channel, the predefined meaning is burst, SCI# event and SMI# event.</p> <p>For channel 2 with MBXEN set: Bit 7: IBF of PMC channel 2 extended (PMC2EX) Bit 6: OBF of PMC channel 2 extended (PMC2EX) Bits 5-4: 00b: PMC2EX mailbox is not granted to both sides. 01b: PMC2EX mailbox is granted to the EC side. 10b: PMC2EX mailbox is granted to the host side. 11b: Reserved</p>
3	R	0b	<p>A2 (A2)</p> <p>This bit is used to indicate the last written (by host) address bit A2. If the bit is 0, it represents that what is written by the host is data. If this bit is 1, it represents that what is written by the host is command.</p>
2	R/W	0b	<p>General Purpose flag (GPF)</p> <p>This bit is used as a general-purpose flag.</p>
1	R	0b	<p>Input Buffer Full (IBF)</p> <p>This bit is used to indicate that the PMDIR of the PM channel has been written by the host. This bit is set when the host writes data input register or command register and is cleared when the EC 8032 reads the data input register. Notice that the write to data input register or command register by the host all trigger this flag and EC must use A2 to distinguish whether the write is a command or data.</p>
0	R	0b	<p>Output Buffer Full (OBF)</p> <p>This bit is used to indicate that the PMDOR of the PM channel has been written by the EC. This bit is set when EC writes the data output port and is cleared when the host reads the data out buffer.</p>

6.6.5 EC Interface Registers

The registers of PMC can be divided into two parts, Host Interface Registers and EC Interface Registers. This section lists the EC interface. The EC interface can only be accessed by the internal 8032 processor. The base address is 1500h.

These registers are listed below.

Table 6-32. EC View Register Map, PMC

Offset	7	0
00h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Status (PM1STS)	
01h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Data Out Port (PM1DO)	
02h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Data Out Port with SCI# (PM1DOSCI)	
03h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Data Out Port with SMI# (PM1DOSMI)	
04h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Data In Port (PM1DI)	
05h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Data In Port with SCI# (PM1DISCI)	
06h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Control (PM1CTL)	
07h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Interrupt Control (PM1IC)	
08h	Host Interface PM Channel 1 Interrupt Enable (PM1IE)	
10h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Status (PM2STS)	
11h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Data Out Port (PM2DO)	
12h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Data Out Port with SCI# (PM2DOSCI)	
13h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Data Out Port with SMI# (PM2DOSMI)	
14h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Data In Port (PM2DI)	
15h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Data In Port with SCI# (PM2DISCI)	
16h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Control (PM2CTL)	
17h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Interrupt Control (PM2IC)	
18h	Host Interface PM Channel 2 Interrupt Enable (PM2IE)	
19h	Mailbox Control (MBXCTRL)	
20h	Host Interface PM Channel 3 Status (PM3STS)	
21h	Host Interface PM Channel 3 Data Out Port (PM3DO)	
22h	Host Interface PM Channel 3 Data In Port (PM3DI)	
23h	Host Interface PM Channel 3 Control (PM3CTL)	
24h	Host Interface PM Channel 3 Interrupt Control (PM3IC)	
25h	Host Interface PM Channel 3 Interrupt Enable (PM3IE)	
30h	Host Interface PM Channel 4 Status (PM4STS)	
31h	Host Interface PM Channel 4 Data Out Port (PM4DO)	
32h	Host Interface PM Channel 4 Data In Port (PM4DI)	
33h	Host Interface PM Channel 4 Control (PM4CTL)	
34h	Host Interface PM Channel 4 Interrupt Control (PM4IC)	
35h	Host Interface PM Channel 4 Interrupt Enable (PM4IE)	
40h	Host Interface PM Channel 5 Status (PM5STS)	
41h	Host Interface PM Channel 5 Data Out Port (PM5DO)	
42h	Host Interface PM Channel 5 Data In Port (PM5DI)	
43h	Host Interface PM Channel 5 Control (PM5CTL)	
44h	Host Interface PM Channel 5 Interrupt Control (PM5IC)	
45h	Host Interface PM Channel 5 Interrupt Enable (PM5IE)	
F0h	16-byte PMC2EX Mailbox 0 (MBXEC0)	
FFh	...	
	16-byte PMC2EX Mailbox 15 (MBXEC15)	

6.6.5.1 PM Status Register (PMSTS)

This register is the same as the Status register in host side but reside in the EC side.

Address Offset: 00h/10h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	<p>Status Register (STS) For channel 1 and channel 2 with MBXEN cleared: This is a general-purpose flag used for signaling between the host and EC. When used as ACPI PM channel, the predefined meaning is burst, SCI# event and SMI# event.</p> <p>For channel 2 with MBXEN set: Bit 7: IBF of PMC channel 2 extended (PMC2EX) Bit 6: OBF of PMC channel 2 extended (PMC2EX) Bits 5-4: 00b: PMC2EX mailbox is not granted to both sides. 01b: PMC2EX mailbox is granted to the EC side. 10b: PMC2EX mailbox is granted to the host side. 11b: Reserved</p>
3	R	0b	<p>A2 (A2) This bit is used to indicate the last written (by host) address bit A2. If the bit is 0, it represents that what is written to the data port is data. If this bit is 1, it represents that what is written to the data port is command.</p>
2	R/W	0b	<p>General Purpose Flag (GPF) This bit is used as a general-purpose flag.</p>
1	R	0b	<p>Input Buffer Full (IBF) This bit is used to indicate that the PMDIR of the PM channel has been written by the host. This bit is set when the host writes data port or command port whereas cleared when the EC read the data in the buffer.</p>
0	R	0b	<p>Output Buffer Full (OBF) This bit is used to indicate that the PMDOR of the PM channel has been written by the EC. This bit is set when EC writes data port whereas cleared when the host reads the data output buffer.</p>

6.6.5.2 PM Data Out Port (PMDO)

This register is the PMDOR buffer. The data written to this register is stored in PMDOR.

Address Offset: 01h/11h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	<p>PM Data Out (PMDO[7:0]) This is the data output buffer.</p>

6.6.5.3 PM Data Out Port with SCI# (PMDOSCI)

This register is the PMDOR buffer with SCI#. The data written to this register is stored in PMDOR. SCI# is generated upon write.

Address Offset: 02h/12h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	PM Data Out with SCI# (PMDOSCI[7:0]) This is the data output buffer with SCI#. Writing to this port will generate hardware SCI# if enabled.

6.6.5.4 PM Data Out Port with SMI# (PMDOSMI)

This register is the PMDOR buffer with SMI#. The data written to this register is stored in PMDOR. SMI# is generated upon write.

Address Offset: 03h/13h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	PM Data Out with SMI# (PMDOSMI[7:0]) This is the data output buffer with SMI#. Writing to this port will generate hardware SMI# if enabled.

6.6.5.5 PM Data In Port (PMDI)

This register is the PMDIR buffer. Host written data or command is stored in this buffer.

Address Offset: 04h/14h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	PM Data In (PMDI[7:0]) This is the data input buffer.

6.6.5.6 PM Data In Port with SCI# (PMDISCI)

This register is the PMDIR buffer. Host written data or command is stored in this buffer. Reading this register (EC) generates SCI#.

Address Offset: 05h/15h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	PM Data In with SCI# (PMDISCI[7:0]) This is the data input buffer with SCI#. Reading this port will generate SCI# when enabled.

6.6.5.7 PM Control (PMCTL)

Address Offset: 06h/16h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Enhance PM Mode (APM) Setting this bit to '1' enables the enhance PM mode. The interrupts (IRQ, SCI# or SMI#) are automatically generated by hardware operations if enabled.
6	R/W	1b	SCI# Negative Polarity (SCINP) Setting this bit to '1' causes the SCI# polarity inversed (low active).
5-3	R/W	0h	SCI# Pulse Mode (SCIPM[2:0]) These bits are used to control the interrupt type to be level-triggered or edge-triggered (pulse) mode. In level-triggered mode, the default value of IRQ1/11/12 to SERIRQ via routing logic is low and will be set to high when the interrupt condition occurs. In edge-triggered mode, the default value of IRQ1/11/12 to SERIRQ via routing logic is low and a positive pulse will be generated when the interrupt condition occurs. Note that the polarity definition in edge-triggered is different from IRQM field in KBIRQR register. 000: Level-triggered mode. 001: Edge-triggered mode with 1-cycle pulse width. 010: Edge-triggered mode with 2-cycle pulse width. 011: Edge-triggered mode with 4-cycle pulse width. 100: Edge-triggered mode with 8-cycle pulse width. 101: Edge-triggered mode with 16-cycle pulse width. Other: reserved.
2	-	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Output Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable (OBEIE) Setting this bit to '1' enables the EC interrupt generation when the output buffer full flag is cleared (by host reading the data port).
0	R/W	0b	Input Buffer Full Interrupt Enable (IBFIE) Setting this bit to '1' enables the EC interrupt generation when the input buffer full flag is set (by host writing the data port or command port).

6.6.5.8 PM Interrupt Control (PMIC)

Address Offset: 07h/17h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	0b	Reserved
6	R/W	1b	SMI# Negative Polarity (SMINP) Setting this bit to '1' causes the SMI# polarity inversed.
5-3	R/W	000b	SMI# Pulse Mode (SMIPM[2:0]) These bits are used to control the interrupt type to be level-triggered or edge-triggered (pulse) mode. In level-triggered mode, the default value of IRQ1/11/12 to SERIRQ via routing logic is low and will be set to high when the interrupt condition occurs. In edge-triggered mode, the default value of IRQ1/11/12 to SERIRQ via routing logic is low and a positive pulse will be generated when the interrupt condition occurs. Note that the polarity definition in edge-triggered is different from IRQM field in KBIRQR register. 000b: Level-triggered mode. 001b: Edge-triggered mode with 1-cycle pulse width. 010b: Edge-triggered mode with 2-cycle pulse width. 011b: Edge-triggered mode with 4-cycle pulse width. 100b: Edge-triggered mode with 8-cycle pulse width. 101b: Edge-triggered mode with 16-cycle pulse width. Other: reserved.
2	R/W	0b	Host SCI# Control Bit (SCIB) This bit is the SCI# generation bit when hardware SCI# is disabled. Read always returns the current value of SCI#.
1	R/W	0b	Host SMI# Control Bit (SMIB) This bit is the SMI# generation bit when hardware SMI# is disabled. Read always returns the current value of SMI#.
0	R/W	1b	Host IRQ Control Bit (IRQB) This bit is the IRQ generation bit when hardware IRQ is disabled. Read always returns the current value of IRQ.

6.6.5.9 PM Interrupt Enable (PMIE)

Address Offset: 08h/18h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	00b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Hardware SMI# Enable (HWSMIEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the SMI# generated by hardware control. Writing to the SMIB bit generates the SMI# if this bit is set to '0'.
4	R/W	0b	Hardware SCI# Enable (HWSCIEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the SCI# generated by hardware control. Writing to the SCIB bit generates the SCI# if this bit is set to '0'.
3	R/W	0b	Hardware IRQ Enable (HWIRQEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the IRQ generated by hardware control. Writing to the IRQB bit generates the IRQ if this bit is set to '0'.
2	R/W	0b	SMI# Enable (SMIEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the SMI# generated by this module.
1	R/W	0b	SCI# Enable (SCIEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the SCI# generated by this module.
0	R/W	0b	IRQ Enable (IRQEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the IRQ generated by this module.

6.6.5.10 Mailbox Control (MBXCTRL)

Address Offset: 19h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Mailbox Enable (MBXEN) 1b: Enable 16-byte PMC2EX mailbox 0b: Otherwise
6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Dedicated Interrupt (DINT) 0b: INT3: PMC Output Buffer Empty Int INT25: PMC Input Buffer Full Int 1b: INT3: PMC1 Output Buffer Empty Int INT25: PMC1 Input Buffer Full Int INT26: PMC2 Output Buffer Empty Int INT27: PMC2 Input Buffer Full Int (All are High Level Trig)
4-0	-	-	Reserved

6.6.5.11 PMC3 Status Register (PM3STS)

This register is the same as the Status register in host side but resides in the EC side.

Address Offset: 20h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	Status Register (STS) For channel 3: This is a general-purpose flag used for signaling between the host and EC.
3	R	0b	A2 (A2) This bit is used to indicate the last written (by host) address bit A2. If the bit is 0, it represents what is written to the data port is data. If this bit is 1, it represents what is written to the data port is command.
2	R/W	0b	General Purpose Flag (GPF) This bit is used as a general purpose flag.
1	R	0b	Input Buffer Full (IBF) This bit is used to indicate that the PMDIR of the PM channel has been written by the host. This bit is set when the host writes data port or command port whereas cleared when the EC read the data in the buffer.
0	R	0b	Output Buffer Full (OBF) This bit is used to indicate that the PMDOR of the PM channel has been written by the EC. This bit is set when EC writes data port whereas cleared when the host reads the data output buffer.

6.6.5.12 PMC3 Data Out Port (PM3DO)

This register is the PMDOR buffer. The data written to this register is stored in PMDOR.

Address Offset: 21h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	PM 3 Data Out (PM3DO[7:0]) This is the data output buffer.

6.6.5.13 PMC3 Data In Port (PM3DI)

This register is the PMDIR buffer. Host written data or command is stored in this buffer.

Address Offset: 22h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	PMC3 Data In (PM3DI[7:0]) This is the data input buffer.

6.6.5.14 PMC3 Control (PM3CTL)

Address Offset: 23h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Output Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable (OBEIE) Setting this bit to '1' enables the EC interrupt generation when the output buffer full flag is cleared (by host reading the data port).
0	R/W	0b	Input Buffer Full Interrupt Enable (IBFIE) Setting this bit to '1' enables the EC interrupt generation when the input buffer full flag is set (by host writing the data port or command port).

6.6.5.15 PMC3 Interrupt Control (PM3IC)

Address Offset: 24h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	0b	Reserved
0	R/W	1b	Host IRQ Control Bit (IRQB) This bit is the IRQ generation bit when hardware IRQ is disabled. Read always returns the current value of IRQ.

6.6.5.16 PMC3 Interrupt Enable (PM3IE)

Address Offset: 25h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	00b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	Hardware IRQ Enable (HWIRQEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the IRQ generated by hardware control. Writing data to the IRQB bit generates the IRQ if this bit is set to '0'.
2-1	-	0b	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	IRQ Enable (IRQEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the IRQ generated by this module.

6.6.5.17 PMC4 Status Register (PM4STS)

This register is the same as the Status register in the host side but resides in the EC side.

Address Offset: 30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	Status Register (STS) For channel 4: This is a general-purpose flag used for signaling between the host and EC.
3	R	0b	A2 (A2) This bit is used to indicate the last written (by host) address bit A2. If the bit is 0, it represents what is written to the data port is data. If this bit is 1, it represents what is written to the data port is command.
2	R/W	0b	General Purpose Flag (GPF) This bit is used as a general purpose flag.
1	R	0b	Input Buffer Full (IBF) This bit is used to indicate that the PMDIR of the PM channel has been written by the host. This bit is set when the host writes the data port or command port whereas cleared when the EC reads the data in the buffer.
0	R	0b	Output Buffer Full (OBF) This bit is used to indicate that the PMDOR of the PM channel has been written by the EC. This bit is set when EC writes the data port whereas cleared when the host reads the data output buffer.

6.6.5.18 PMC4 Data Out Port (PM4DO)

This register is the PMDOR buffer. The data written to this register is stored in PMDOR.

Address Offset: 31h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	PM 4 Data Out (PM4DO[7:0]) This is the data output buffer.

6.6.5.19 PMC4 Data In Port (PM4DI)

This register is the PMDIR buffer. The written data or command by Host is stored in this buffer.

Address Offset: 32h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	PMC4 Data In (PM4DI[7:0]) This is the data input buffer.

6.6.5.20 PMC4 Control (PM4CTL)

Address Offset: 33h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Output Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable (OBEIE) Setting this bit to '1' enables the EC interrupt generation when the output buffer full flag is cleared (by host's reading the data port).
0	R/W	0b	Input Buffer Full Interrupt Enable (IBFIE) Setting this bit to '1' enables the EC interrupt generation when the input buffer full flag is set (by host's writing the data port or command port).

6.6.5.21 PMC4 Interrupt Control (PM4IC)

Address Offset: 34h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	0b	Reserved
0	R/W	1b	Host IRQ Control Bit (IRQB) This bit is the IRQ generation bit when hardware IRQ is disabled. Read always returns the current value of IRQ.

6.6.5.22 PMC4 Interrupt Enable (PM4IE)

Address Offset: 35h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	00b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	Hardware IRQ Enable (HWIRQEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the IRQ generated by hardware control. Writing data to the IRQB bit generates the IRQ if this bit is set to '0'.
2-1	-	0b	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	IRQ Enable (IRQEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the IRQ generated by this module.

6.6.5.23 PMC5 Status Register (PM5STS)

This register is the same as the Status register in the host side but resides in the EC side.

Address Offset: 40h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	Status Register (STS) For channel 4: This is a general-purpose flag used for signaling between the host and EC.
3	R	0b	A2 (A2) This bit is used to indicate the last written (by host) address bit A2. If the bit is 0, it represents what is written to the data port is data. If this bit is 1, it represents what is written to the data port is command.
2	R/W	0b	General Purpose Flag (GPF) This bit is used as a general purpose flag.
1	R	0b	Input Buffer Full (IBF) This bit is used to indicate that the PMDIR of the PM channel has been written by the host. This bit is set when the host writes the data port or command port whereas cleared when the EC reads the data in the buffer.
0	R	0b	Output Buffer Full (OBF) This bit is used to indicate that the PMDOR of the PM channel has been written by the EC. This bit is set when EC writes the data port whereas cleared when the host reads the data output buffer.

6.6.5.24 PMC5 Data Out Port (PM5DO)

This register is the PMDOR buffer. The data written to this register is stored in PMDOR.

Address Offset: 41h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	PM 5 Data Out (PM5DO[7:0]) This is the data output buffer.

6.6.5.25 PMC5 Data In Port (PM5DI)

This register is the PMDIR buffer. The written data or command by Host is stored in this buffer.

Address Offset: 42h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	PMC5 Data In (PM5DI[7:0]) This is the data input buffer.

6.6.5.26 PMC5 Control (PM5CTL)

Address Offset: 43h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Output Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable (OBEIE) Setting this bit to '1' enables the EC interrupt generation when the output buffer full flag is cleared (by host's reading the data port).
0	R/W	0b	Input Buffer Full Interrupt Enable (IBFIE) Setting this bit to '1' enables the EC interrupt generation when the input buffer full flag is set (by host's writing the data port or command port).

6.6.5.27 PMC5 Interrupt Control (PM5IC)

Address Offset: 44h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	0b	Reserved
0	R/W	1b	Host IRQ Control Bit (IRQB) This bit is the IRQ generation bit when hardware IRQ is disabled. Read always returns the current value of IRQ.

6.6.5.28 PMC5 Interrupt Enable (PM5IE)

Address Offset: 45h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	00b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	Hardware IRQ Enable (HWIRQEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the IRQ generated by hardware control. Writing data to the IRQB bit generates the IRQ if this bit is set to '0'.
2-1	-	0b	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	IRQ Enable (IRQEN) Setting this bit to '1' enables the IRQ generated by this module.

6.6.5.29 16-byte PMC2EX Mailbox 0-15 (MBXEC0-15)

Address Offset: F0h-FFh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Mailbox Byte Content This byte is the 16-byte PMC2EX mailbox in the EC side.

6.7 RTC-like Timer (RTCT)

6.7.1 Overview

The RTCT module provides timekeeping and calendar management capabilities until VSTBY is off. The alarm function is available ranging from once a second to once a month.

6.7.2 Features

- Timekeeping and calendar management until VSTBY off.
- Supports two-bank SRAM.
- Time of day alarm ranging from once a second to once a month.
- Four interrupt features available: periodic interrupt, alarm 1 interrupt, alarm 2 interrupt, and update ended interrupt.
- Supports BCD or Binary format to represent the time.
- Supports Daylight Saving Compensation function.
- Supports automatic leap year compensation function.
- Latches LPC I/O port 80h written data into SRAM of RTCT bank 1 (P80L function)

6.7.3 Functional Description

6.7.3.1 Timekeeping

The RTCT includes SRAM for each bank (128B for bank 0; 64B for bank 1; totally 192B SRAM), and provides the function of timekeeping and calendar until VSTBY is off. It uses a 32.768 kHz clock signal for timekeeping. The 32.768 kHz clock can be supplied by the internal RTCT oscillator circuit.

The RTCT update cycle occurs once a second if the SET MODE bit in the RTCT Control Register B is programmed to 0 and the Divider Chain Control field in the RTCT Control Register A is programmed to 010. Time is kept in BCD or binary format, as determined by Data Mode field in the RTCT Control Register B, and in either 12 or 24-hour format, as determined by Hour Mode field in the RTCT Control Register B. The Daylight Saving Time function is enabled by settling the Daylight Savings (DS) bit in the RTCT Control Register B.

6.7.3.2 Update Cycles

Because the time and calendar registers are updated serially, unpredictable results may occur if they are accessed during the update. Therefore, we need to ensure that reading data from or writing data to the time registers does not coincide with a system update of these locations. There are two methods to avoid this contention. One is to use the update-ended interrupt to avoid the update cycle period. When the update-ended interrupt is enabled, the interrupt will be generated immediately following the end of the update cycle. When the interrupt is received, it implies that an update has just been completed, and 999 ms remain until the next update. The other is to use the “Update In Progress” (UIP) bit in the RTCT Control Register A to determine whether the update cycle is in progress or not. If the UIP bit is 0, it is committed that the update cycle will not start for at least 244 μ s.

6.7.3.3 Interrupts

The RTCT has three interrupt lines, one (IRQ) is connected to SERIRQ and handles three interrupt conditions, Periodic Interrupt, Alarm 1 Interrupt, and Update End Interrupt. The others are alarm1 interrupt and alarm2 interrupt which are connected to SWUC and INTC (INT29) respectively. The interrupts are generated if the respective enable bits in RTCT Control Register B are set prior to an interrupt event's occurrence. The Periodic Interrupt Rate Select (PIRSEL) field in RTCT Control Register A controls the rate of the periodic interrupt. The Alarm 1 Interrupt and Alarm 2 Interrupt will be generated when the current time reaches a stored alarm time. Any alarm registers may be set to “Unconditional Match” by setting bits 7 and 6 in the alarm register. The Update Ended Interrupt is generated in the end of the update cycle.

6.7.4 Host Interface Registers

The RTCT resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. The RTCT logical device number is 10h (LDN=10h). For compatibility issue, the two I/O Port Base Addresses of channel are suggested to configure at 70h and 72h and it makes two Index/Data pairs mapped into 70h-73h.

These registers are listed below.

Table 6-33. Host View Register Map, RTCT

7	0	Offset
		Legacy 70h
		Legacy 71h
		Legacy 272h
		Legacy 273h

Legacy 70h represents (I/O Port Base Address 0) + (Offset 0h)

Legacy 71h represents (I/O Port Base Address 0) + (Offset 1h)

Legacy 272h represents (I/O Port Base Address 1) + (Offset 0h)

Legacy 273h represents (I/O Port Base Address 1) + (Offset 1h)

See also Table 6-3 on page 36.

The RTCT has two banks of SRAM, which are Bank 0 SRAM and Bank 1 SRAM.

All RTCT time, alarm data, and control registers are accessed by the RTCT Index and Data Registers. Note RTCT registers are not allowed to be accessed if LKRTCHA bit in LSIOHA register of EC2I module is set. The Index Register points to the register location being accessed, and the Data Register contains the data to be transferred to or from the location. The Bank 0 SRAM is accessed via the first pair of the Index and Data Registers (Legacy Index 70h, 71h). The Bank 1 SRAM is accessed via the second pair of the Index and Data Registers (Legacy Index 272h, 273h). The first 14 bytes and two programmable bytes of the Bank 0 SRAM are RTCT time, alarm 1 data and control registers. The first 5 bytes of the Bank 1 SRAM are RTCT alarm 2 data registers. Access to the RTCT SRAM may be locked.

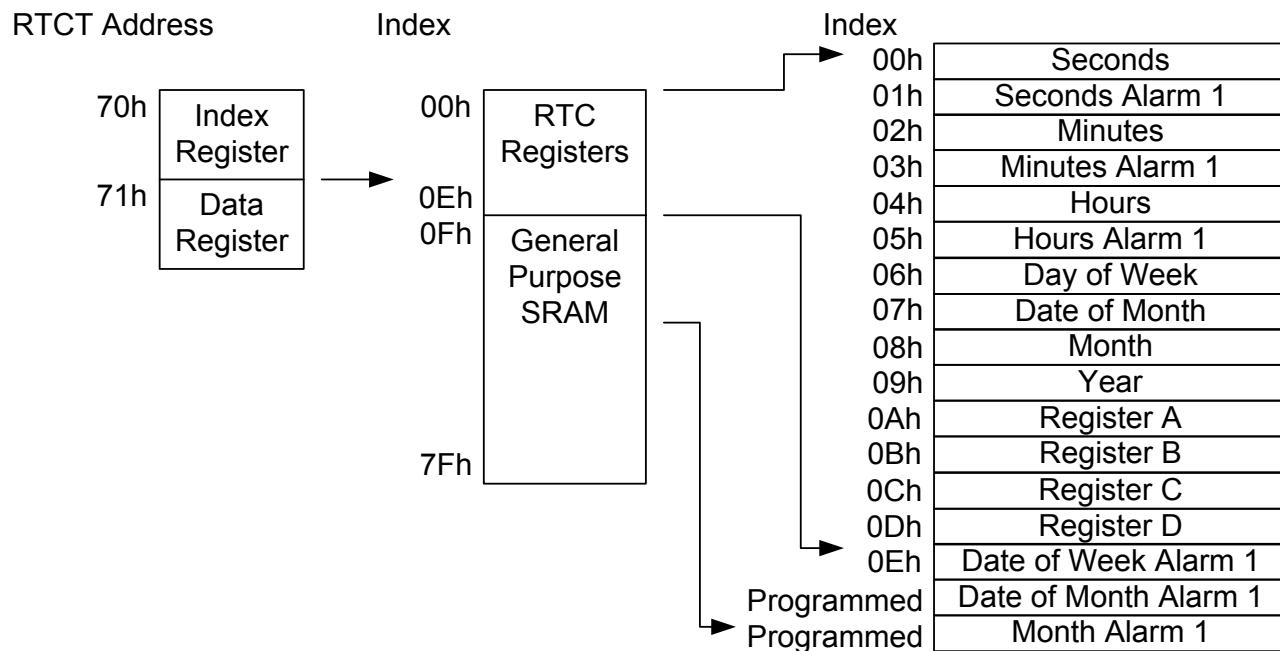
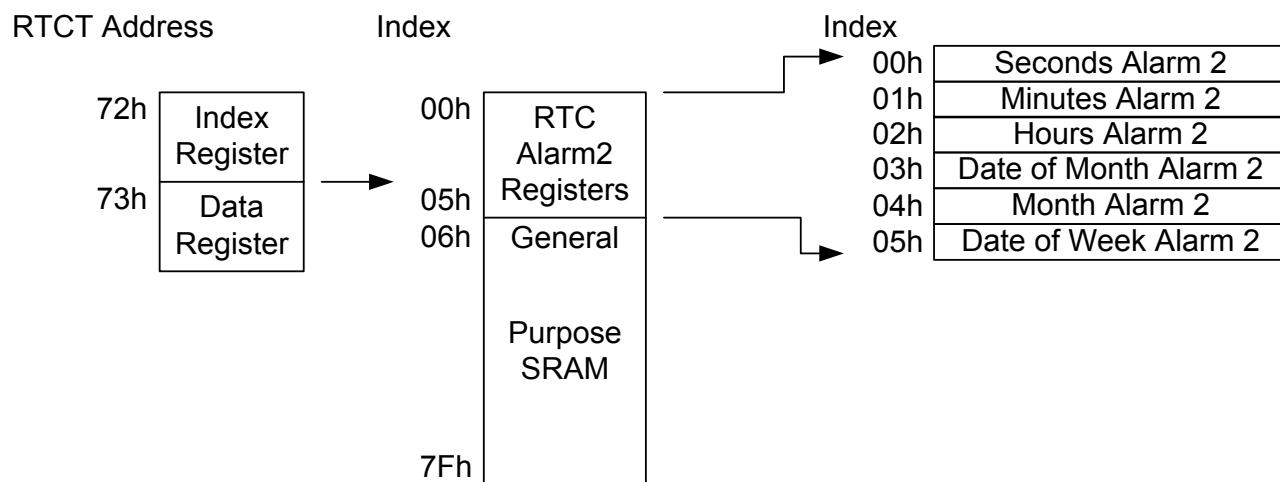
Figure 6-22. Register Map of RTCT

Bank 0 Register


Table 6-34. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, RTCT Bank 0

Index
00h
01h
02h
03h
04h
05h
06h
07h
08h
09h
0Ah
0Bh
0Ch
0Dh
0Eh
Programmed
Programmed

Table 6-35. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, RTCT Bank 1

Index
00h
01h
02h
03h
04h
05h

6.7.4.1 RTCT Bank 0 Register

6.7.4.1.1 Seconds Register (SECREG)

Index: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Seconds Data (SECDAT) 00 to 59 in BCD format. 00 to 3B in binary format.

6.7.4.1.2 Seconds Alarm 1 Register (SECA1REG)

Index: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Seconds Alarm 1 Data (SECA1DAT) 00 to 59 in BCD format. 00 to 3B in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are “11”.

6.7.4.1.3 Minutes Register (MINREG)

Index: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Minutes Data (MINDAT) 00 to 59 in BCD format. 00 to 3B in binary format.

6.7.4.1.4 Minutes Alarm 1 Register (MINA1REG)

Index: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Minutes Alarm 1 Data (MINA1DAT) 00 to 59 in BCD format. 00 to 3B in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are "11".

6.7.4.1.5 Hours Register (HRREG)

Index: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Hours Data (HRDAT) In 12-hour mode: 01 to 12 (AM) and 81 to 92 (PM) in BCD format. 01 to 0C (AM) and 81 to 8C (PM) in binary format. In 24-hour mode: 00 to 23 in BCD format. 00 to 17 in binary format.

6.7.4.1.6 Hours Alarm 1 Register (HRA1REG)

Index: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Hours Alarm 1 Data (HRA1DAT) 1. In 12-hour mode: 01 to 12 (AM) and 81 to 92 (PM) in BCD format. 01 to 0C (AM) and 81 to 8C (PM) in binary format. 2. In 24-hour mode: 00 to 23 in BCD format. 00 to 17 in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are "11".

6.7.4.1.7 Day Of Week Register (DOWREG)

Index: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Day Of Week Data (DOWDAT) 01 to 07 in BCD format. 01 to 07 in binary format. 01 is Sunday.

6.7.4.1.8 Date Of Month Register (DOMREG)

Index: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Date Of Month Data (DOMDAT) 01 to 31 in BCD format. 01 to 1F in binary format.

6.7.4.1.9 Month Register (MONREG)

Index: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Month Data (MONDAT) 01 to 12 in BCD format. 01 to 0C in binary format.

6.7.4.1.10 Year Register (YRREG)

Index: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Year Data (YRDAT) 00 to 99 in BCD format. 00 to 63 in binary format.

6.7.4.1.11 RTCT Control Register A (CTLREGA)
Index: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description																																																			
7	R	-	<p>Update in Progress (UIP) It is 0 when bit 7 of CTLREGB register is 1. 0: Timing registers will not be updated within 244 μs. 1: Timing registers will be updated within 244 μs.</p>																																																			
6-4	R/W	010b	<p>Divider Chain Control (DICCTL) Control the divider chain for timing generation. The following is the table of the divider chain control and test selection:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>CTLREGA[6:4]</th> <th>Configuration</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>000</td> <td>Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>010</td> <td>Normal Operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11x</td> <td>Divider Chain Reset</td> </tr> <tr> <td>others</td> <td>Test Mode</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	CTLREGA[6:4]	Configuration	000	Reserved	010	Normal Operation	11x	Divider Chain Reset	others	Test Mode																																									
CTLREGA[6:4]	Configuration																																																					
000	Reserved																																																					
010	Normal Operation																																																					
11x	Divider Chain Reset																																																					
others	Test Mode																																																					
3-0	R/W	0000b	<p>Periodic Interrupt Rate Select (PIRSEL) Control the rate of the periodic interrupt. The following is the table of the periodic interrupt rate encoding:</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>Rate Select</th> <th>Periodic Interrupt Rate (ms)</th> <th>Divider Chain Output</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0000</td> <td>No interrupts</td> <td>---</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0001</td> <td>3.906250</td> <td>7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0010</td> <td>7.812500</td> <td>8</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0011</td> <td>0.122070</td> <td>2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0100</td> <td>0.244141</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0101</td> <td>0.488281</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0110</td> <td>0.976562</td> <td>5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0111</td> <td>1.953125</td> <td>6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1000</td> <td>3.906250</td> <td>7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1001</td> <td>7.812500</td> <td>8</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1010</td> <td>15.625000</td> <td>9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1011</td> <td>31.250000</td> <td>10</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1100</td> <td>62.500000</td> <td>11</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1101</td> <td>125.000000</td> <td>12</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1110</td> <td>250.000000</td> <td>13</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1111</td> <td>500.000000</td> <td>14</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Rate Select	Periodic Interrupt Rate (ms)	Divider Chain Output	0000	No interrupts	---	0001	3.906250	7	0010	7.812500	8	0011	0.122070	2	0100	0.244141	3	0101	0.488281	4	0110	0.976562	5	0111	1.953125	6	1000	3.906250	7	1001	7.812500	8	1010	15.625000	9	1011	31.250000	10	1100	62.500000	11	1101	125.000000	12	1110	250.000000	13	1111	500.000000	14
Rate Select	Periodic Interrupt Rate (ms)	Divider Chain Output																																																				
0000	No interrupts	---																																																				
0001	3.906250	7																																																				
0010	7.812500	8																																																				
0011	0.122070	2																																																				
0100	0.244141	3																																																				
0101	0.488281	4																																																				
0110	0.976562	5																																																				
0111	1.953125	6																																																				
1000	3.906250	7																																																				
1001	7.812500	8																																																				
1010	15.625000	9																																																				
1011	31.250000	10																																																				
1100	62.500000	11																																																				
1101	125.000000	12																																																				
1110	250.000000	13																																																				
1111	500.000000	14																																																				

6.7.4.1.12 RTCT Control Register B (CTLREGB)

Index: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Set Mode (SM) 0: Timing updates occur normally. 1: Update cycles will not occur until this bit is 0.
6	R/W	0b	Periodic Interrupt Enable (PIE) Enable the periodic interrupt. The rate is determined by CTLREGA[3:0]. It is cleared to 0 on RTCT reset or at the time when RTCT is disabled. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
5	R/W	0b	Alarm 1 Interrupt Enable (A1IE) This interrupt is generated when the alarm1 condition matches the current data time. It is cleared to 0 when bit7 of CTLREGD register is 0. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
4	R/W	0b	Update Ended Interrupt Enable (UEIE) This interrupt is generated when an update occurs. It is cleared to 0 on RTCT reset or at the time when the RTCT is disabled. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
3	R/W	0b	Alarm 2 Interrupt Enable (A2IE) This interrupt is generated when the alarm 2 condition matches the current data time. It is cleared to 0 when bit7 of CTLREGD register is 0. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
2	R/W	0b	Data Mode (DAM) 0: Enable BCD format 1: Enable binary format
1	R/W	1b	Hour Mode (HRM) 0: Enable 12-hour format 1: Enable 24-hour format
0	R/W	0b	Daylight Savings (DS) In spring, time advances from 1:59:59 AM to 3:00:00 AM on the first Sunday in April. In fall, time returns from 1:59:59 AM to 1:00:00 AM on the last Sunday in October. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

6.7.4.1.13 RTCT Control Register C (CTLREGC)

Index: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	<p>IRQ Flag (IRQF) This flag will be set and an interrupt will be generated when one of the following conditions occurs: PIF=1 and PIE=1 A1IF=1 and A1IE=1 UEIF=1 and UEIE=1 This bit is cleared to 0 on RTCT reset or at the time when the RTCT is disabled. This bit is also cleared to 0 when this register is read.</p>
6	R	0b	<p>Periodic Interrupt Flag (PIF) This bit is cleared to 0 on RTCT reset or at the time when the RTCT is disabled. This bit is also cleared to 0 when this register is read. When the CTLREGA [3:0] bits are not 0000b, the interrupt will be generated and this bit is set to 1 once the period is specified.</p>
5	R	0b	<p>Alarm 1 Interrupt Flag (A1IF) This bit is cleared to 0 when bit 7 of CTLREGD register is 0. This bit is also cleared to 0 when this register is read. 0: No alarm condition occurs. 1: Alarm 1 condition occurs.</p>
4	R	0b	<p>Update Ended Interrupt Flag (UEIF) This bit is cleared to 0 on RTCT reset or at the time when the RTCT is disabled. This bit is also cleared to 0 when this register is read. 0: No update occurs. 1: The updated cycle is ended</p>
3	R	0b	<p>Alarm 2 Interrupt Flag (A2IF) This bit is cleared to 0 when bit 7 of CTLREGD register is 0. This bit is also cleared to 0 when this register is read. 0: No alarm condition occurs. 1: Alarm 2 condition occurs.</p>
2-0	-	000b	Reserved

6.7.4.1.14 RTCT Control Register D (CTLREGD)**Index: 0Dh**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	Valid RAM and Time (VRAT) This bit responds whether the voltage that feeds the RTCT is too low or not. 0: RTCT contents are not valid. 1: RTCT contents are valid.
6-0	-	00h	Reserved

6.7.4.1.15 Date of Week Alarm 1 Register (DOWA1REG)**Index: 0Eh**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Date of Week Alarm 1 Data (DOWA1DAT) 01 to 07 in BCD format. 01 to 07 in binary format. 01 is Sunday.

6.7.4.1.16 Date of Month Alarm 1 Register (DOMA1REG)

The index of this register is programmable. Please see the “RTCT Logical Device” for details.

Index: Programmed (Refer to Section 6.2.11.15 , Page 62)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	C0h	Date of Month Alarm 1 Data (DOMA1DAT) 01 to 31 in BCD format. 01 to 1F in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are “11”.

6.7.4.1.17 Month Alarm 1 Register (MONA1REG)

The index of this register is programmable. Please see the “RTCT Logical Device” for details.

Index: Programmed (Refer to Section 6.2.11.16 , Page 63)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	C0h	Month Alarm 1 Data (MONA1DAT) 01 to 12 in BCD format. 01 to 0C in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are “11”.

6.7.4.2 RTCT Bank 1 Register**6.7.4.2.1 Seconds Alarm 2 Register (SECA2REG)****Index: 00h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Seconds Alarm 2 Data (SECA2DAT) 00 to 59 in BCD format. 00 to 3B in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are “11”.

6.7.4.2.2 Minutes Alarm 2 Register (MINA2REG)

Index: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Minutes Alarm 2 Data (MINA2DAT) 00 to 59 in BCD format. 00 to 3B in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are “11”.

6.7.4.2.3 Hours Alarm 2 Register (HRA2REG)

Index: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Hours Alarm 2 Data (HRA2DAT) 1. In 12-hour mode: 01 to 12 (AM) and 81 to 92 (PM) in BCD format. 01 to 0C (AM) and 81 to 8C (PM) in binary format. 2. In 24-hour mode: 00 to 23 in BCD format. 00 to 17 in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are “11”.

6.7.4.2.4 Date of Month Alarm 2 Register (DOMA2REG)

Index: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	C0h	Date of Month Alarm 2 Data (DOMA2DAT) 01 to 31 in BCD format. 01 to 1F in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are “11”.

6.7.4.2.5 Month Alarm 2 Register (MONA2REG)

Index: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	C0h	Month Alarm 2 Data (MONA2DAT) 01 to 12 in BCD format. 01 to 0C in binary format. The unconditional match is selected when bit 7 and 6 are “11”.

6.7.4.2.6 Date of Week Alarm 2 Register (DOWA2REG)

Index: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Date of Week Alarm 2 Data (DOWA1DAT) 01 to 07 in BCD format. 01 to 07 in binary format. 01 is Sunday.

6.7.4.3 RTCT I/O Register**6.7.4.3.1 RTCT Index Register of Bank 0 (RIRB0)**

Address offset: 70h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	RTCT Index Register of Bank 0(RIRB0) This register is used to locate the data on bank 0, and is a read/write access register. It must be paired with RTC Data Register of Bank 0 to program or read the indexed registers.

6.7.4.3.2 RTCT Data Register of Bank 0 (RDRB0)

Address offset: 71h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	RTCT Data Register of Bank 0 (RDRB0) This register is used to preserve the data to be programmed or read from the bank 0, and is a read/write access register. It must be paired with RTC Index Register of Bank 0 to program or read the indexed registers.

6.7.4.3.3 RTCT Index Register of Bank 1 (RIRB1)

Address offset: 272h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	RTCT Index Register of Bank 1(RIRB1) This register is used to locate the data on bank 1, and is a read/write access register. It must be paired with RTC Data Register of Bank 1 to program or read the indexed registers.

6.7.4.3.4 RTCT Data Register of Bank 1 (RDRB1)

Address offset: 273h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	RTC Data Register of Bank 1 (RDRB1) This register is used to preserve the data to be programmed or read from the bank 1, and is a read/write access register. It must be paired with RTC Index Register of Bank 1 to program or read the indexed registers.

6.8 Consumer IR (CIR) in Host Domain

6.8.1 Overview

CIR module is located at I-bus and EC-bus at the same time. It means it can be accessed by the host and EC side without software arbitration. Refer to section 7.20 Consumer IR (CIR) for the EC domain function description on page 417.

CIR can be accessed by the software in the host or EC side, however, the CIR function should be controlled by a side only. See also section 7.17.4.10 Reset Control DMM (RSTDMMC) on page 405 and section 7.6.3.5 Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG) on page 259.

6.9 Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) in Host Domain

6.9.1 Overview

SSPI module is located at I-bus and EC-bus at the same time. It means it can be accessed by the host and EC side without software arbitration. Refer to section 7.21 Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) for the EC domain function description on page 434.

SSPI can be accessed by the software in the host or EC side, however, the SSPI function should be controlled by a side only. See also section 7.17.4.10 Reset Control DMM (RSTDMMC) on page 405 and section 7.6.3.5 Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG) on page 259.

6.10 Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI) in Host Domain

6.10.1 Overview

PECI module is located at I-bus and EC-bus at the same time. It means it can be accessed by the host and EC side without software arbitration. Refer to section 7.8 Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI) for the EC domain function description on 314.

PECI can be accessed by the software in the host or EC side; however, the PECI function should be controlled by a side only. See also section 7.17.4.10 Reset Control DMM (RSTDMMC) on page 405.

6.11 Serial Port 1/2 (UART1/UART2) in Host Domain

6.11.1 Overview

UART1 module is located at I-bus and EC-bus at the same time. It means it can be accessed by the host and EC side without software arbitration. Refer to section 7.22 Serial Port (UART) for the EC domain function description on page 443.

UART1 can be accessed by the software in the host or EC side, however, the UART1 function should be controlled by a side only. See also section 7.17.4.10 Reset Control DMM (RSTDMMC) on page 405 and section 7.6.3.5 Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG) on page 259.

7. EC Domain Functions

7.1 8032 Embedded Controller (EC)

7.1.1 Overview

The embedded controller is an 8032 micro-controller which is an 8051-compatible micro-controller.

7.1.2 Features

- Supports Sleep (a.k.a. power-down) and Idle mode
- Supports two external interrupts and one power fail interrupt
- Supports 64K code/data space
- Supports 256 bytes internal(w.r.t. 8032) RAM, with 128 bytes special function register
- Supports 3x16-bit timer/counter from GPE5, TMRI0 and TMRI1
- Supports 1xwatch dog timer
- Supports full duplex UART
- Memory mapped I/O configuration

7.1.3 General Description

The 8032TT is a high-performance 8051 family compatible micro-controller based on RISC architecture & Pipeline design. This IP Specification of interface timing, external Data Memory read / write timing and external Program Memory read timing are different from that of the standard 80C52. But instruction-set is fully compatible with standard 8051 family.

Table 7-1. 8032 Port Usage

Signal	Port	Note
8032 External Data Bus	P0[7:0], P2[7:0], P3[7:6]	EC Bus MOVX instruction
INT0#	P3[2]	Driven by INTC
INT1#	P3[3]	Driven by INTC
TXD	P3[1]	TXD signal on pin
RXD	P3[0]	RXD signal on pin
T0 Timer	P3[4]	Driven by GPE5
T1 Timer	P3[5]	Driven by TMRI0 pin
T2 Timer	P1[0] Note: T2 and T2EX should be taken care of if 8032 banks are switched by P1. See also section 6.3.4.2 on page 89	Driven by TMRI1 pin (input only and clock-out not available)
T2EX Timer	P1[1]	Unused

7.1.4 Functional Description

Memory

The 8032 manipulates operands in four memory spaces. There are 64K-byte Program Memory space, 64K-byte External Data Memory space, 256-byte Internal Data Memory, and with a 16-bit Program Counter space. The Internal Data Memory address space is further divided into the 256-byte Internal Data RAM and 128-byte Special Function Register address space. The up 128-bytes RAM can be reached by indirect addressing. Four Register Banks, 128 addressable bits, and the stack reside in the Internal Data RAM.

I/O ports

The 8032 has 8-bit I/O ports. The four ports provide 32 I/O lines to interface to the external world. All four ports are both byte and bit addressable. Port 0 is used as an Address/Data bus and Port 2 is used as the upper 8-bits address when external memory/device is accessed. Port 3 contains special control signals such as the read

and write strobes. Port 1 is used for both I/O and external interrupts.

Interrupts

In the 8032 there are six hardware resources that generate an interrupt request. The starting addresses of the interrupt service program for each interrupt source are like standard 8052. The external interrupt request inputs (INT0#, INT1#) can be programmed for either negative edge or low level-activated operation.

Timers / Counters

The 8032 has three 16-bit timers/counters that are the same as the timers of the standard 8051 family. The 8032 has two additional watchdog timers for system failure monitor.

Serial I/O ports

The 8032 has one programmable, full-duplex serial I/O port whose function is the same as that of 8051 family and dependent on the requirement.

Power Management

The 8032 supports Idle and Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep modes of operation. In the Idle mode, the EC 8032 is stopped operation while the peripherals continue operating. In the Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode, all the clocks are stopped. The Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode can be waked up by INT0# or INT1# external interrupt with level trigger.

Dual Data Pointer

The 8032 has two data pointers (DTPR, DTPR1). These two data pointers can help users enhance lots of block data memory moving. Using dual data pointers to move block data almost saves half of the time spent by original 8051 codes.

Watch Dog Timers Interrupt / Reset

The 8032 creates one programmable watchdog timers to monitor system failure. That is maximum 2^{26} .

Hardware Multiply

8032 includes a hardware multiplier to enhance calculating speed. 8032 can finish one multiply instruction at 1 machine cycle.

7.1.5 Memory Organization

In 8032, the memory is organized as three address spaces and the program counter.

The memory spaces are shown in EC Memory Map.

- 16-bit Program Counter
- 64k-byte Program Memory address space
- 64k-byte External Data Memory address space
- 256-byte Internal Data Memory address

The 16-bit Program Counter register provides 8032 with its 64k addressing capabilities. The program Counter allows users to execute calls and branches to any location within the Program Memory space. There are no instructions that permit program execution to move from the Program Memory space to any of the data memory spaces.

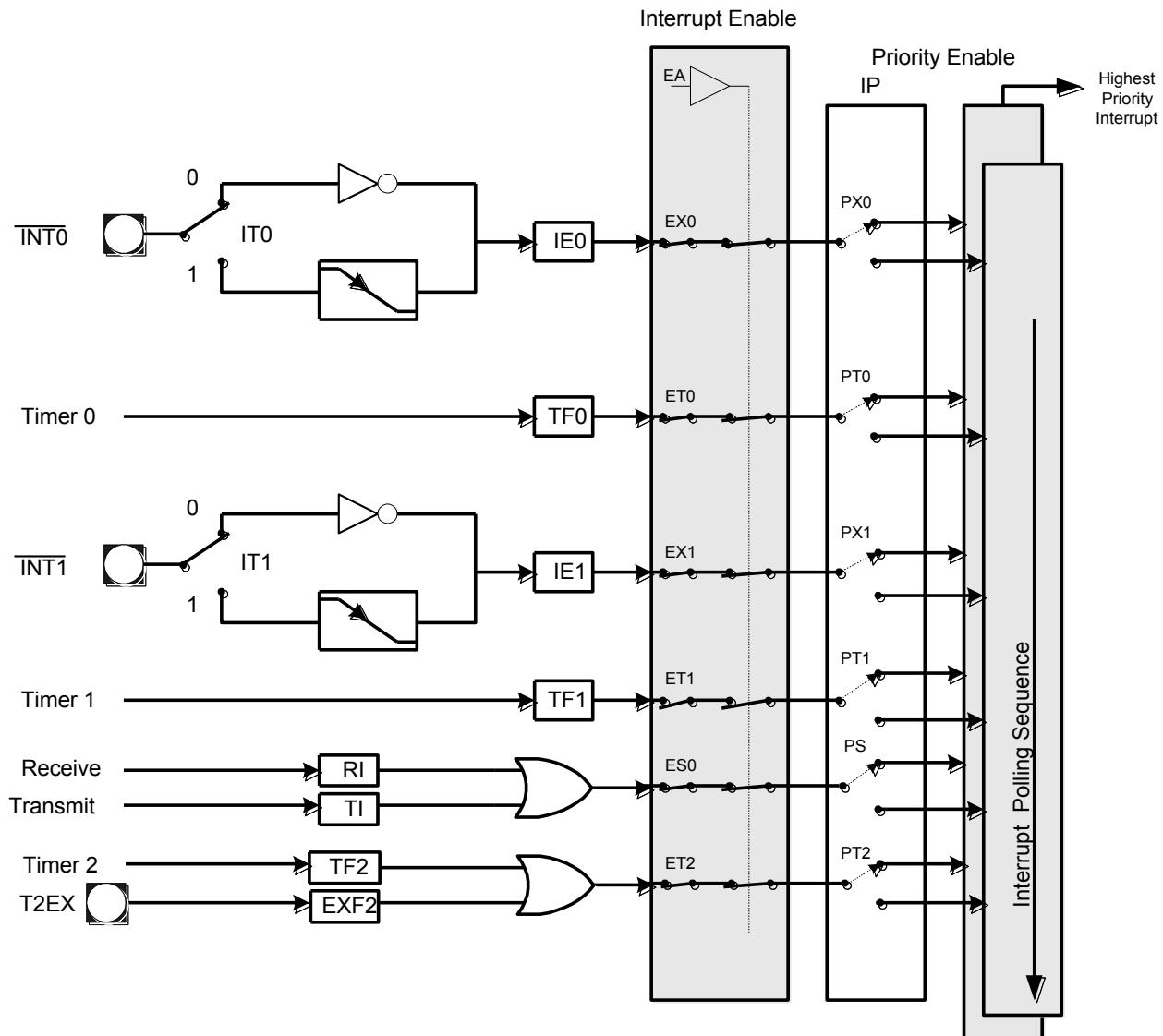
The 64k-byte Program Memory address space is located by dedicated address bus. The 64k-byte External Data Memory address space is automatically accessed when the MOVX instruction is executed. The Internal Data Memory space is subdivided into a 256-byte Internal Data RAM address Space and a 128-byte Special Function Register address space as shown in the SFRs Map. The Internal Data RAM address space is 0 to 255. Four 8-Register Banks occupy locations 0 through 31. The stack can be located anywhere in the Internal Data RAM address space. In addition, 128 bit locations of the on-chip RAM are accessible through Direct Addressing.

7.1.6 On-Chip Peripherals

Table 7-2. System Interrupt Table

Interrupt Source	Request Flag	Priority Flag	Enable Flag	Vector Address	Priority-Within-Level	Flag Cleared by Hardware?
External Request	IE0/TCON.1	PX0/IP.0	EX0/IE.0	0003h	1	Edge-Yes Level-No
Internal Timer0/Counter0	TF0/TCON.5	PT0/IP.1	ET0/IE.1	000Bh	2	Yes
External Request	IE1/TCON.3	PX1/IP.2	EX1/IE.2	0013h	3	Edge-Yes Level-No
Internal Timer1/Counter1	TF1/TCON.7	PT1/IP.3	ET1/IE.3	001Bh	4	Yes
Internal Serial Port	Xmit TI/SCON.1 Rcvr RI/SCON.0	PS/IP.4	ES0/IE.4	0023h	5	No
Internal Timer2/Counter2	TF2/T2CON.7 EXF2/T2CON.6	PT2/IP.5	ET2/IE.5	002Bh	6	No

Figure 7-1. Interrupt Control System Configuration



Note: T2EX is tied to logic high and is not available in IT8987.

External Interrupt

External Interrupt INT0# and INT1# input signal may each be programmed to be level-triggered or edge triggered depending upon bits IT0 and IT1 in the TCON register. If IT0 or IT1 = 0, INT0# or INT1# is triggered by detected low at the input signal. If IT0 or IT1 = 1, INT0# or INT1# is negative-edge triggered. External interrupts are enabled with bits EX0 and EX1 in the IE register. Events on the external interrupt input signals set the interrupt flags IE0 or IE1 in TCON. These request bits are cleared by hardware vectors to service routines only if the interrupt is negative-edge triggered. If the interrupt is level triggered, the interrupt service routine must clear the request bit. External hardware must release INT0# or INT1# before the service routine completes, or an additional interrupt is requested.

External interrupt input signals are sampled once every oscillator clock's rising edge. A level-triggered interrupt input signal held low or high for at least three clocks guarantees detection. Edge-triggered external interrupts only sample the request input signal for one clock time. This ensures edge recognition and sets interrupt request bit EX0 or EX1. The 8032 clears EX0 or EX1 automatically during service routine fetch cycles for edge-triggered interrupts.

Timer Interrupts

Sources of timer 0, timer 1 and timer 2 are GPE5, TMRI0 and TMRI1 from pins. Three timer-interrupt request bits TF0, TF1 and TF2 are set by timer 0, timer 1 and timer 2 overflow. When timer 0 and timer 1 interrupts are generated, the bits TF0 and TF1 are cleared by an on-chip hardware vector to an interrupt service routine. Timer 2 is different from timer 0 or timer 1. Timer 2 has to clear TF2 bit by software writing when timer 2 interrupt is generated. Timer interrupts are enabled by bits ET0, ET1, and ET2 in the IE register.

Timer 2 interrupts are generated by a logical OR of bits TF2 and EXF2 in register T2CON. Neither flag is cleared by a hardware vector to a service routine. In fact, the interrupt service routine must determine if TF2 or EXF2 generates the interrupt, and then clear the bit. Timer 2 interrupt is enabled by ET2 in register IE.

Serial Port Interrupt

Serial port interrupts are generated by the logical OR of bits RI and TI in the SCON register. Neither flag is cleared by a hardware vector to the service routine. The service routine resolves RI and TI interrupt generation and clears the serial port request flag. The serial port interrupt is enabled by bit ES0 in the IE register in the same way by using serial port 1.

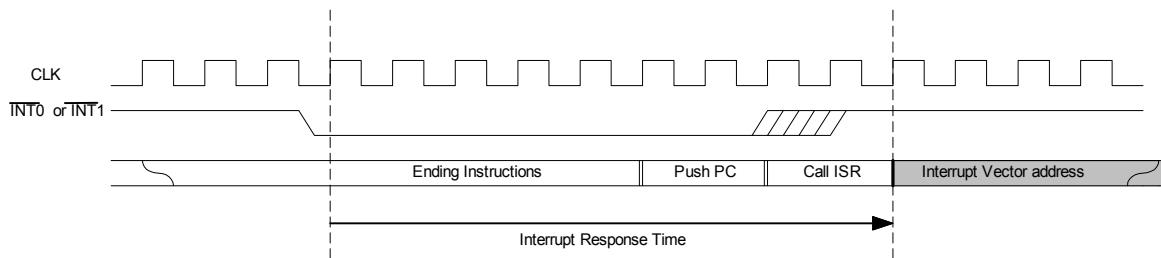
Interrupt Priority

8032 has 2 level priorities. Setting / clearing a bit in the Interrupt Priority register (IP) establish its associated interrupt request as a high / low priority. If a low-priority level interrupt is being serviced, a high-priority level interrupt will interrupt it. However, an interrupt source cannot interrupt a service program of the same or higher level. The interrupt priority is shown on Interrupt Control System Configuration.

Interrupt Response Time

The Figure of Interrupt Response Time shows the response time is between the interrupt request being active and the interrupt service routing being executed. The minimum interrupt response time is eight clocks that when an interrupt request asserts after the ending instruction execution completes. The maximum interrupt response time is 24 clocks when an interrupt request asserts during the ending instruction, DJNZ direct, rel or other instruction sets whose operation period is 16 clocks and is decoded ok. However, a high priority interrupt asserts while a low priority interrupt service program is executing. The minimum and the maximum interrupt response time is 8 clocks and 24 clocks respectively.

Figure 7-2. Interrupt Response Time



7.1.7 Timer / Counter

Timer 0

Timer 0 functions as either a timer or event counter in four modes of operation. Timer 0 is controlled by the four low-order bits of the TMOD register and bits 5, 4, 1 and 0 of the TCON register. The TMOD register selects the method of timer gating (GATE), timer or counter operation (C/T), and mode of operation (M1, M0). The TCON register provides timer 0 control functions: overflow flag (TF0), run control (TR0), interrupt flag (IE0), and interrupt type control (IT0). For normal timer operation (GATE = 0), setting TR0 allows TL0 to be incremented by the selected input. Setting GATE and TR0 allows INT0# to control timer operation.

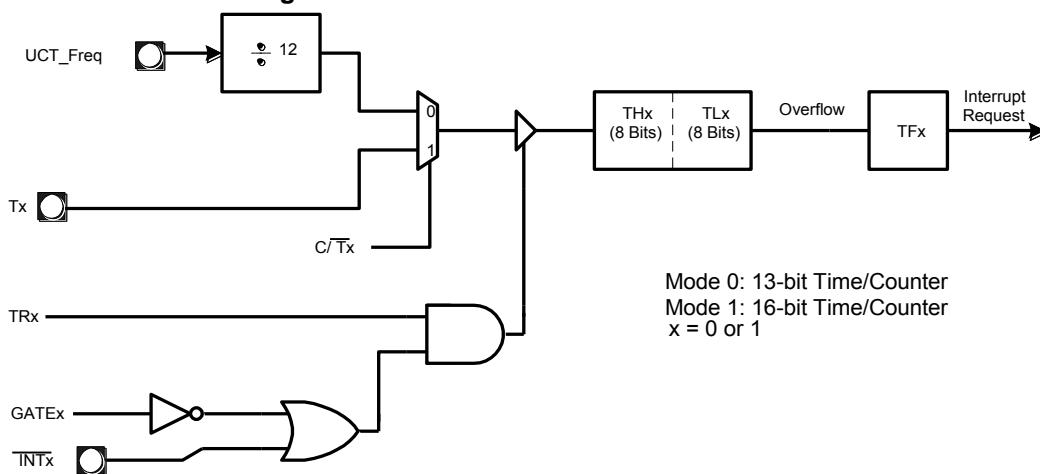
Timer0/Mode 0 (13-bit Timer)

Mode 0 configures timer 0 as a 13-bit timer which is set up as an 8-bit timer (TH0 register) with a module 32 prescaler implemented with the lower five bits of the TL0 register. The upper three bits of TL0 register are indeterminate and should be ignored. Prescaler overflow increments the TH0 register.

Timer 0/ Mode 1 (16-bit Timer)

Mode 1 configures timer 0 as a 16-bit timer with TH0 and TL0 connected in cascade. The selected input increases TL0.

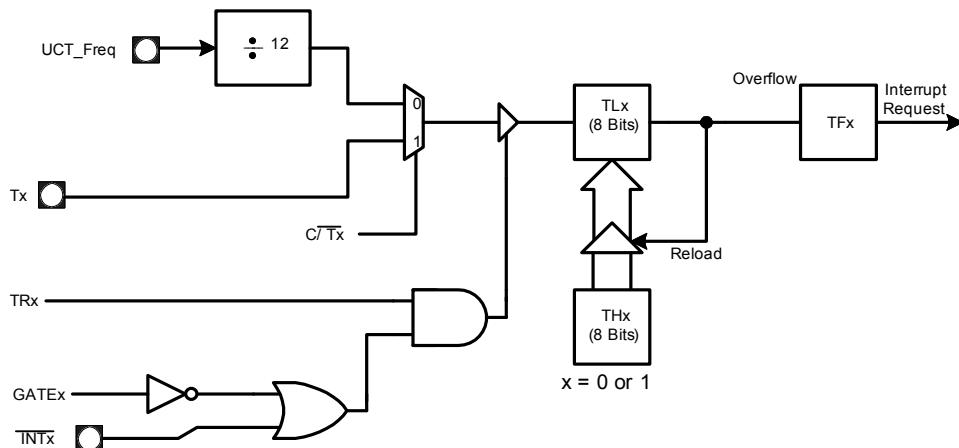
Figure 7-3. Timer 0/1 in Mode 0 and Mode 1



Timer 0/ Mode 2 (8-bit Timer With Auto-reload)

Mode 2 configures timer 0 as an 8-bit timer (TL0 register) that automatically reloads from the TH0 register. TL0 overflow sets the timer overflow flag (TF0) in the TCON register and reloads TL0 with the contents of TH0, which is preset by software. When the interrupt request is serviced, hardware clears TF0. The reload leaves TH0 unchanged.

Figure 7-4. Timer 0/1 in Mode 2, Auto-Reload

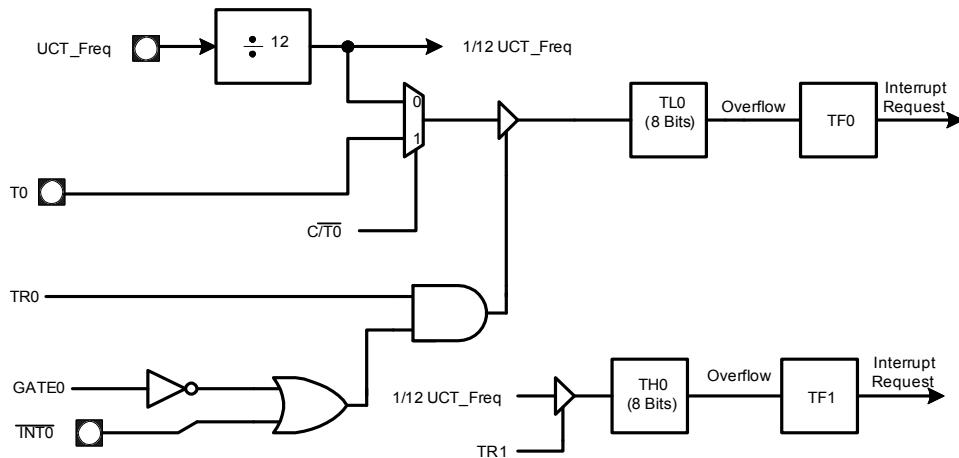


Timer 0/ Mode 3(Two 8-bit Timers)

Mode 3 configures timer 0 such that registers TL0 and TH0 operate as separate 8-bit timers. This mode is provided for application requiring an additional 8-bit timer or counter. TL0 uses the timer 0 control bits C/T and GATE in TMOD, and TR0 in TCON in the normal manner. TH0 is locked into a timer function (counting UCT_Freq/12) and takes over use of the timer 1 interrupt (TF1) and run control (TR1) bits. Thus, operation of timer 1 is restricted when timer 0 is in mode 3.

Note: UCT_Freq equals to EC Clock Frequency (listed in Table 10-2 on page 484).

Figure 7-5. Timer 0 in Mode 3 Two 8-bit Timers



Timer 1

Timer 1 functions as either a timer or event counter in three modes of operation. The logical configuration for modes 0, 1 and 2 is the same as that of Timer 0. Mode 3 of timer 1 is a hold-count mode.

Timer 1 is controlled by the four high-order bits of the TMOD register and bits 7, 6, 3 and 2 of the TCON register. The TMOD register selects the method of timer gating (GATE), timer or counter operation (C/T), and mode of operation (M1 and M0). The TCON register provides timer 1 control functions: overflow flag (TF1), run control (TR1), interrupt flag(IE1), and interrupt type control (IT1).

For normal timer operation (GATE = 0), setting TR1 allows timer register TL1 to be incremented by the selected input. Setting GATE and TR1 allows external input signal INT1# to control timer operation. This setup can be used to make pulse width measurements.

Timer 1/ Mode 0 (13-bit Timer)

Mode 0 configures timer 0 as a 13-bit timer, which is set up as an 8-bit timer (TH1 register) with a modulo-32 prescaler implemented with the lower 5 bits of the TL1 register. The upper 3 bits of the TL1 register are ignored. Prescaler overflow increase the TH1 register.

Timer1/ Mode 1 (16-bit Timer)

Mode 1 configures timer 1 as a 16-bit timer with TH1 and TL1 connected in cascade. The selected input increases TL1.

Timer 1/ Mode 2 (8-bit Timer)

Mode 2 configures timer 1 as an 8-bit timer (TL1 register) with automatic reload from the TH1 register on overflow. Overflow from TL1 sets overflow flag TF1 in the TCON register and reloads TL1 with the contents of TH1, which is preprogrammed by software. The reload leaves TH1 unchanged.

Timer 1/ Mode 3 (Halt)

Placing timer in mode 3 causes it to halt and its count. This can be used to halt timer 1 when the TR1 run control bit is not available, i.e., when timer 0 is in mode 3.

Timer 2

Timer 2 is a 16-bit timer/count maintained by two eight-bit timer registers, TH2 and TL2, which are connected in cascade. The timer/counter 2 mode control register T2MOD and the timer /counter control register T2CON control the operation of timer 2.

Timer 2 provides the following operating modes: capture mode, auto-reload mode, baud rate generator mode, and programmable clock-out mode. Select the operating mode with T2MOD and TCON register bits as shown in table of Timer 2 Modes of Operation. Auto-reload is the default mode. Setting RCLK and/or TCLK selects the baud rate generator mode.

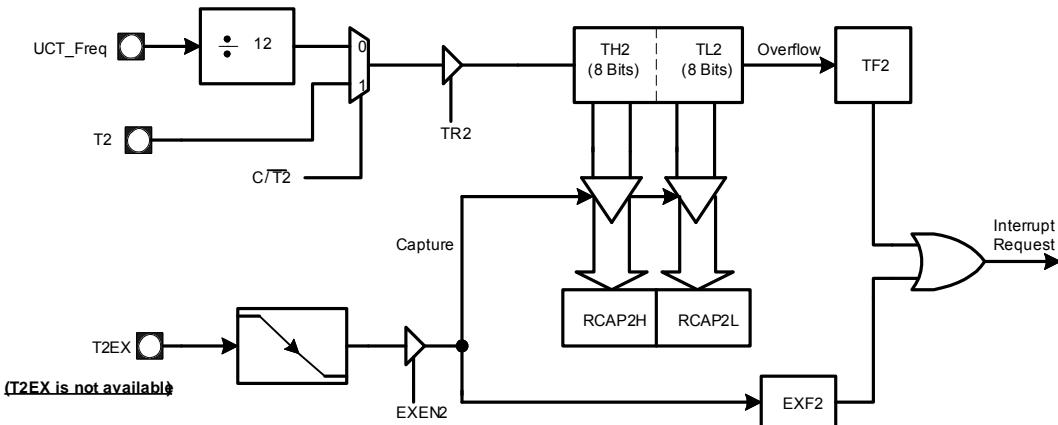
Timer 2 operation is similar to timer 0 and timer 1. C/2 T selects UCT_Freq/12 (timer operation) or external input signal T2 (counter operation) as the timer register input. Setting TF2 to be incremented by the selected input.

Timer 2/ Capture Mode

In the capture mode, timer 2 functions as a 16-bit timer or counter. An overflow condition sets bit TF2, which you can use to request an interrupt. Setting the external enable bit EXEN2 allows the RCAP2H and RCAP2L registers to capture the current value in timer registers TH2 and TL2 in response to a I-to-0 transition at external input T2EX. The transition at T2EX also sets bit EXF2 on T2CON. The EXF2 bit, like TF2, can generate an interrupt. TR2 has to be enabled when this mode is run.

Note: T2EX is tied to logic high and is not available in IT8987.

Figure 7-6. Timer 2: Capture Mode



Note: T2EX is tied to logic high and is not available in IT8987.

Timer 2/ Auto-reload Mode

The auto-reload mode configures timer 2 as a 16-bit timer or event counter with automatic reload. The timer operates as an up counter or up/down counter, as determined by the down counter enable bit (DCEN). At device reset, DCEN is cleared, so in the auto-reload mode, timer 2 defaults to operation as an up counter. TR2 has to be enabled when this mode is run.

Up Counter Operation

When DCEN = 0, timer 2 operates as an up counter. If EXEN2 = 0, timer 2 counts up to FFFFh and sets the TF2 overflow flag. The overflow condition loads the 16-bit value in the reload/capture registers (RCAP2H, RCAP2L) into the timer registers (TH2, TL2). The values in RCAP2H and RCAP2L are preset by software.

If EXEN2 = 1, the timer registers are reloaded by either a timer overflow or a high-to-low transition at external input T2EX. This transition also sets the EXF2 bit in the T2CON register. Either TF2 or EXF2 bit can generate a timer 2 interrupt request. TR2 has to be enabled when its mode is run.

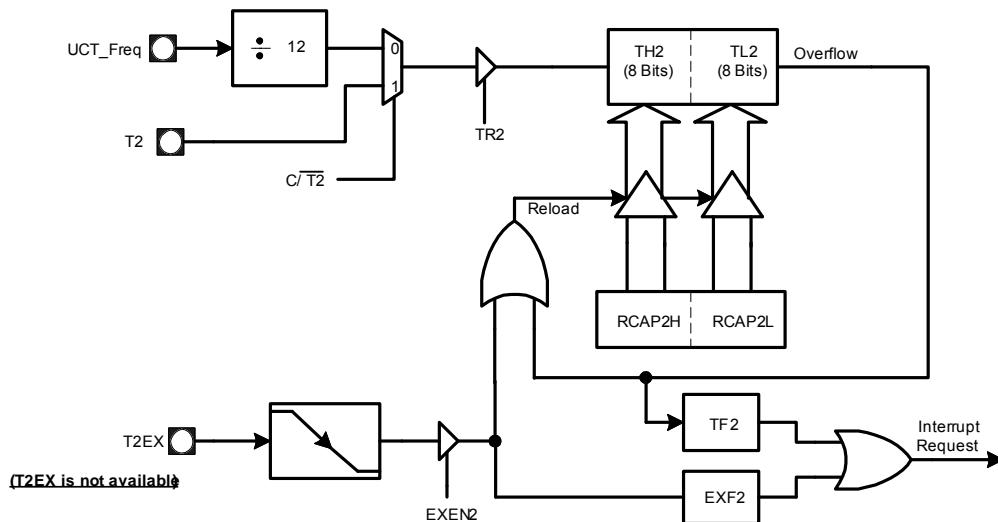
Up/Down Counter Operation

When DCEN = 1, timer 2 operates as an up/down counter. External input signal T2EX controls the direction of the count. When T2EX is high, timer 2 counts up. The timer overflow occurs at FFFFh, which sets the timer 2 overflow flag (TF2) and generates an interrupt request. The overflow also causes the 16-bit value in RCAP2H and RCAP2L to be loaded into the timer registers TH2 and TL2.

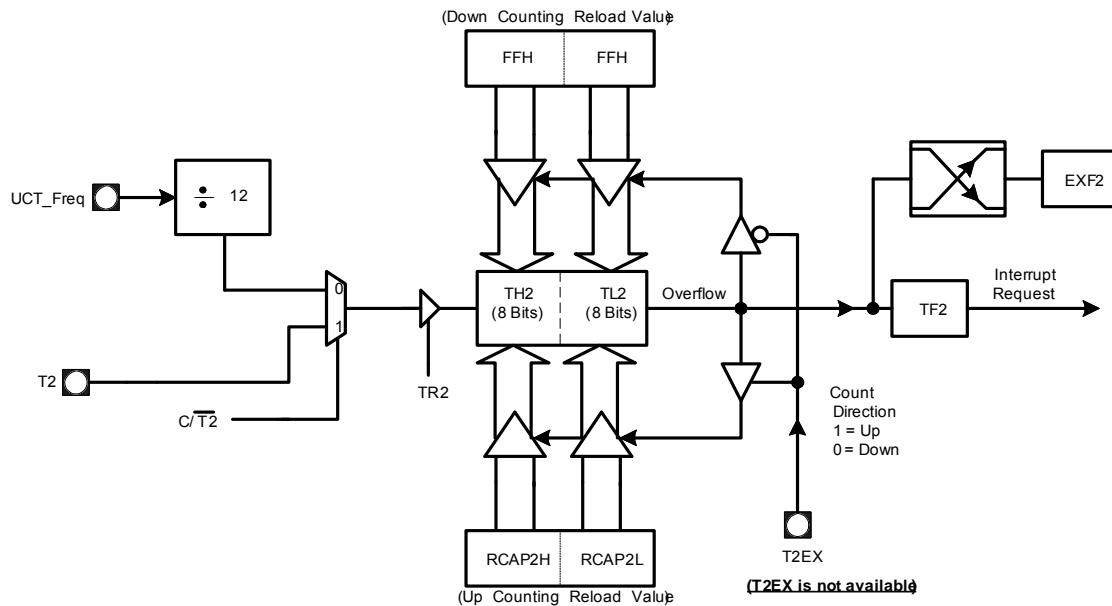
When T2EX is low, timer 2 counts down. Timer underflow occurs when the count in the timer registers (TH2, TL2) equals the value stored in RCAP2H and RCAP2L. The underflow sets the TF2 bit and reloads FFFFh into the timer registers.

The EXF2 bit toggles when timer 2 overflows or underflows changing the direction of the count. When timer 2 operates as an up/down counter, EXF2 does not generate an interrupt. This bit can be used to provide 17-bit resolution. TR2 has to be enabled when his mode is run.

Figure 7-7. Timer 2: Auto Reload (DCEN = 0)



Note: T2EX is tied to logic high and is not available in IT8987.

Figure 7-8. Timer 2: Auto Reload Mode (DCEN = 1)


Note: T2EX is tied to logic high and is not available in IT8987.

Timer 2/ Baud Rate Generator Mode

This mode configures timer 2 as a baud rate generator for use with the serial port. Select this mode by setting the RCLK and/or TCLK bits in T2CON.

Timer 2/ Clock-out Mode

In the clock-out mode, timer 2 functions as a 50%-duty-cycle, variable-frequency clock. The input clock increments TL0 at frequency UCT_Freq/2. The timer repeatedly counts to overflow from a preloaded value. At overflow, the contents of the RCAP2H and RCAP2L registers are loaded into TH2/TL2. In this mode, timer 2 overflows do not generate interrupts. The formula gives the clock-out frequency as a function of the system oscillator frequency and the value in the RCAP2H and RCAP2L registers:

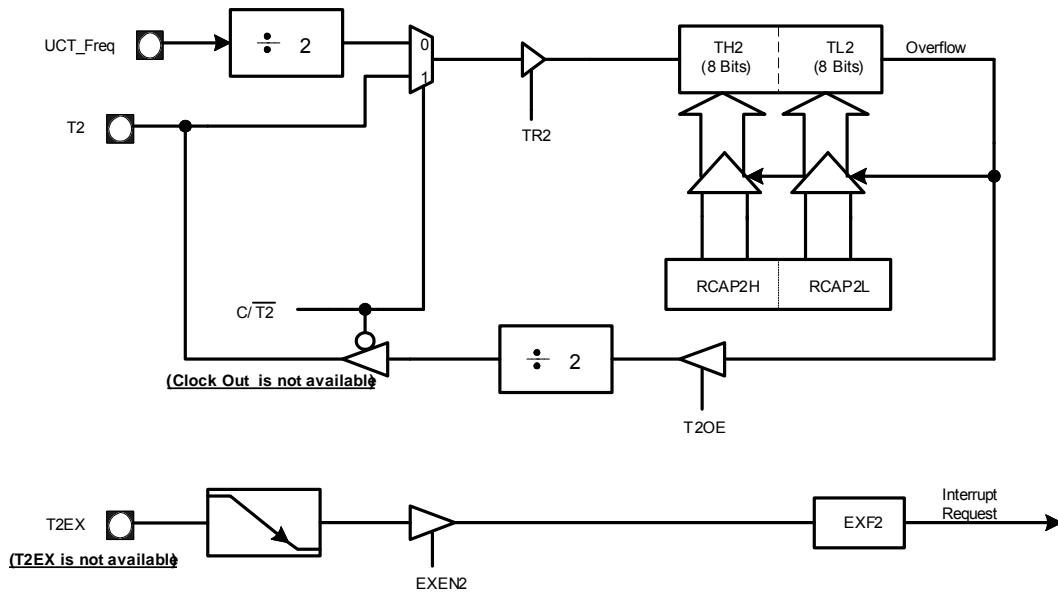
$$\text{Clock-out Frequency} = \text{UCT_Freq} / \{4X(65536 - \text{RCAP2H}, \text{RCAP2L})\}$$

Note: UCT_Freq equals to EC Clock Frequency (listed in Table 10-2 on page 484).

Table 7-3. Timer 2 Modes of Operation

Mode	RCLK OR TCLK (in T2CON)	CP/RL2# (in T2CON)	T2OE (in T2MOD)
Auto-reload Mode	0	0	0
Capture Mode	0	1	0
Baud Rate Generator Mode	1	X	X
Programmable Clock-Out	X	0	1

Figure 7-9. Timer 2: Clock Out Mode

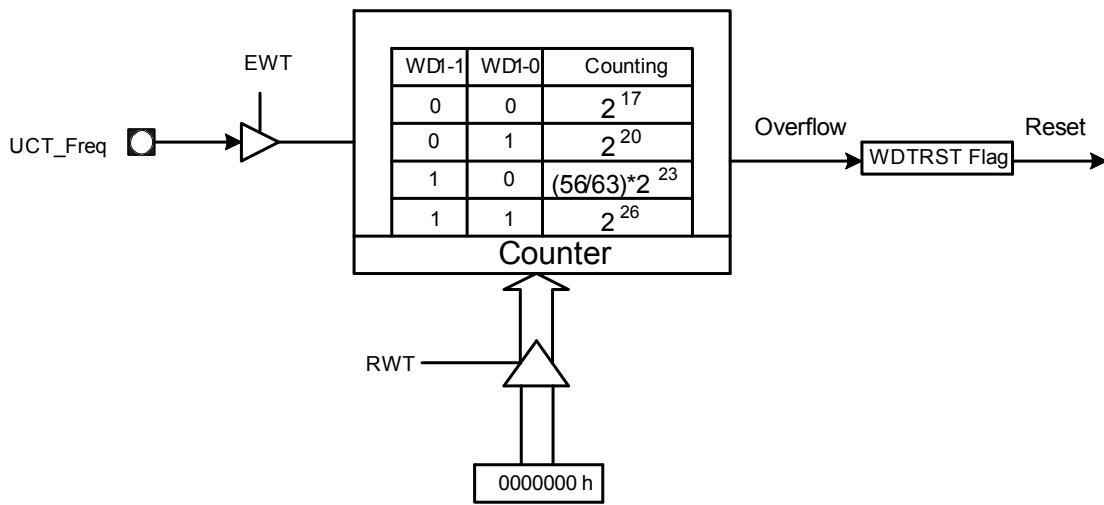


Note: T2EX is tied to logic high and is not available in IT8987.

Watchdog Timer

The watchdog timer has system reset functions. Users can set WD1-1, WD1-0 (in register CKCON, 8Eh) to choose 2^{17} , 2^{20} , $(56/63)*2^{23}$ or 2^{26} counter for Watchdog Timer. After the Watchdog Timer counts the specific counter and an overflow occurs, set WDTRST Flag (in register WDTCON, D8h) and finally reset the 8032. If 8032 has been reset by Watchdog Timer, WDTEN Flag remains one.

Figure 7-10. Watchdog Timer



SERIAL I/O PORT

The serial I/O port provides both asynchronous communication modes. It operates as a universal asynchronous receiver and transmitter (UART) in three full-duplex modes (modes 1, 2, and 3). Asynchronous transmission and reception can occur simultaneously and at different baud rates.

Mode 1 and 3 operate over a wide range of baud rates, which are generated by timer 1 and timer 2.

The serial port signals are defined in Table of Serial Port Signals, and the serial port special function registers (SBUF, SCON) are described in the section of Special Function Registers.

For the three asynchronous modes, the UART transmits on the TXD pin and receives on the RXD pin. The SBUF register, which holds received bytes and bytes to be transmitted, actually consists of two physically different registers. To send, software writes a byte to SBUF; to receive, software reads SBUF. The receive shift register allows reception of a second byte before the byte has been read from SBUF. However, if software has not read the first byte by the time the second byte is received, the second byte will overwrite the first. The UART sets interrupt bits TI and RI on transmission and reception respectively. These two bits share a single interrupt request and interrupt vector.

Figure 7-11. Serial Port Block Diagram

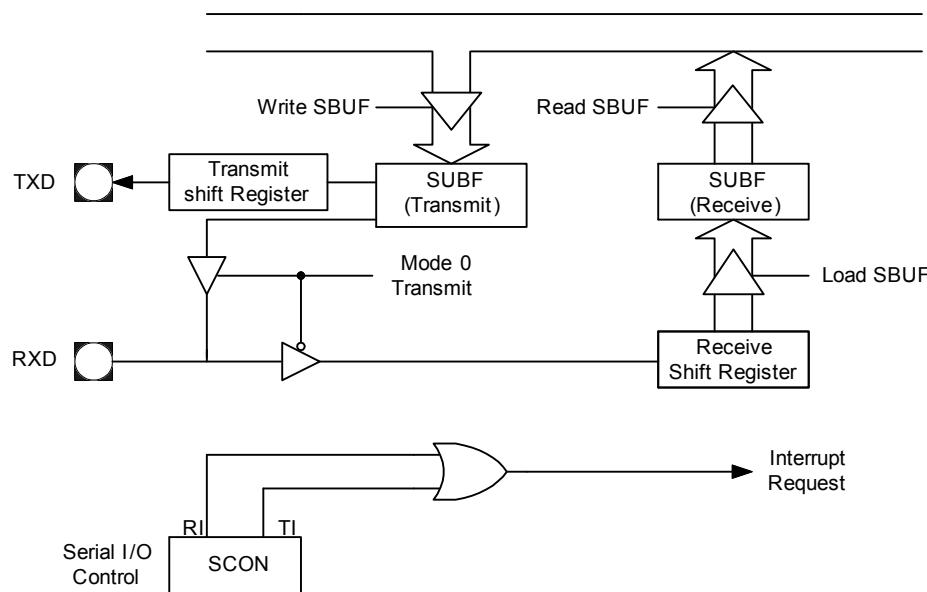


Table 7-4. Serial Port Signals

Function Name	Type	Description	Multiplexed With
TXD	O	Transmit Data. In modes 1, 2 and 3, TXD transmits serial data.	P3.1
RXD	I	Receive Data. In mode 1, 2 and 3, RXD receives serial data.	P3.0

(Mode 0 is not available)

Asynchronous Modes (Modes 1, 2, and 3)

The serial port has three asynchronous modes of operation.

Mode 1

Mode 1 is a full-duplex and asynchronous mode. The data frame consists of 10 bits: one start bit, eight data bits, and one stop bit. Serial data is transmitted on the TXD pin and received on the RXD pin. When a message is received, the stop bit is read in the RB8 bit in the SCON register. The baud rate is generated by overflow of timer 1 or timer 2.

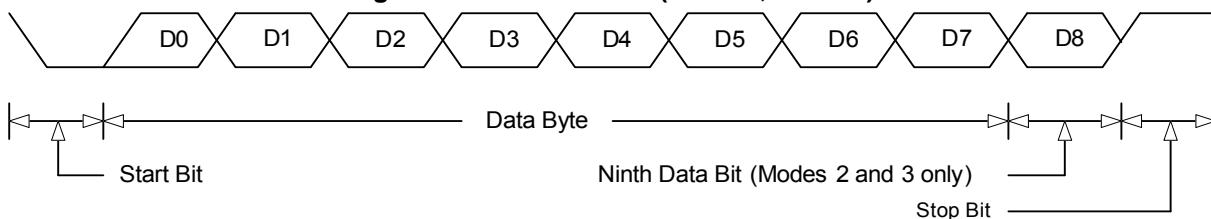
Mode 2 and 3

Mode 2 and 3 are full-duplex and asynchronous modes. The data frame consists of 11 bits: one start bit, eight data bits (transmitted and received LSB first), one programmable ninth data bit, and one stop bit which is read from the RB8 bit in the SCON register. On transmit, the ninth data bit is written to the TB8 bit in the SCON

register. Alternatively, you can use the ninth bit as a command/data flag.

- In mode 2, the baud rate is programmable to 1/32 or 1/64 of the oscillator frequency.
- In mode 3, the baud rate is generated by overflow of timer 1 or timer 2.

Figure 7-12. Data Frame (Mode 1, 2 and 3)



Transmission (Mode 1, 2, 3)

Follow these steps below to initiate a transmission:

1. Write to the SCON register. Select the mode with the SM0 and SM1 bits, and clear the REN bit. For mode 2 and 3, write the ninth bit to the TB8 bit.
2. Write the byte to be transmitted to the SBUF register. This write starts the transmission.

Reception (Mode 1, 2, 3)

To prepare for a reception, set the REN bit in the SCON register. The actual reception is then initiated by a detected high-to-low transition on the RXD pin.

Baud Rates

Baud Rates for Mode 2

Mode 2 has a two-baud rate, which is selected by the SMOD1 bit in the PCON register. The following expression defines the baud rate:

$$\text{Serial I/O Mode 2 Baud Rate} = (2^{\text{SMOD1}}) \times (\text{UCT_Freq} / 64)$$

UCT_Freq equals to EC Clock Frequency (listed in Table 10-2 on page 484).

Baud Rates for Mode 1 and 3

In mode 1 and 3, the baud rate is generated by overflow of timer (default) and/or timer 2. You may select either or both timers to generate the baud rate(s) for the transmitter and/or the receiver.

Timer 1 Generated Baud Rates (Mode 1 and 3)

Timer 1 is the default baud rate generator for the transmitter and the receiver in mode 1 and 3. The baud rate is determined by the timer 1 overflow rate and the value of SMOD1, as shown in the following formula:

$$\text{Serial I/O Mode 1 and 3 Baud Rate} = (2^{\text{SMOD1}}) \times (\text{Timer 1 Overflow Rate}) / 32$$

Selecting Timer 1 as the Baud Rate Generator

To select timer 1 as the baud rate generator:

- Disable the timer interrupt by clearing the IE0 register.
- Configure timer 1 as a timer or an event counter (set or clear the C/T bit in the TMOD register).

$$\text{Serial I/O Mode 1 and 3 Baud Rate} = (2^{\text{SMOD1}}) \times \text{UCT_Freq} / (32 \times 12 \times (256 - \text{TH1}))$$

Note: UCT_Freq equals to EC Clock Frequency (listed in Table 10-2 on page 484).

- Select timer mode 0-3 by programming the M1 and M0 bits in the TMOD register.

In most applications, timer 1 is configured as a timer in auto-reload mode (high nibble of TMOD = 0010B). The resulting baud rate is defined by the following expression:

Timer 1 can generate very low baud rates by the following setups:

- Enable the timer 1 interrupt by setting the ET1 bit in the IE register.
- Configure timer 1 to run as a 16-bit timer (high nibble of TMOD = 0001B).
- Use the timer 1 interrupt to initiate a 16-bit software reload.

Timer 2 Generated Baud Rates (Mode 1 and 3)

Timer 2 may be selected as the baud rate generator for the transmitter and/or receiver. The baud rate generator mode of timer 2 is similar to the auto-reload mode. A rollover in the TH2 register reloads registers TH2 and TL2 with the 16-bit value on registers RCAP2H and RCAP2L, which are presented by software.

The baud rate of timer 2 is expressed by the following formula:

$$\text{Serial I/O Mode 1 and 3 Baud Rate} = (\text{Timer 2 Overflow Rate}) / 16$$

Selecting Timer 2 as the Baud Rate Generator

To select timer 2 as the baud rate generator for the transmitter and/or receiver, program the RCLK and TCLK bits in the T2CON register. Setting RCLK and/or TCLK puts timer 2 into its baud rate generator mode. In this mode, a rollover in the TH2 register does not set the TF2 bit in the T2CON register. Besides, a high-to-low transition at the T2EX input signal sets the EXF2 bit in the T2CON register but does not cause a reload from (RCAP2H, RCAP2L) to (TH2, TL2). You can use the T2EX input signal as an additional external interrupt by setting the EXEN2 bit in T2CON.

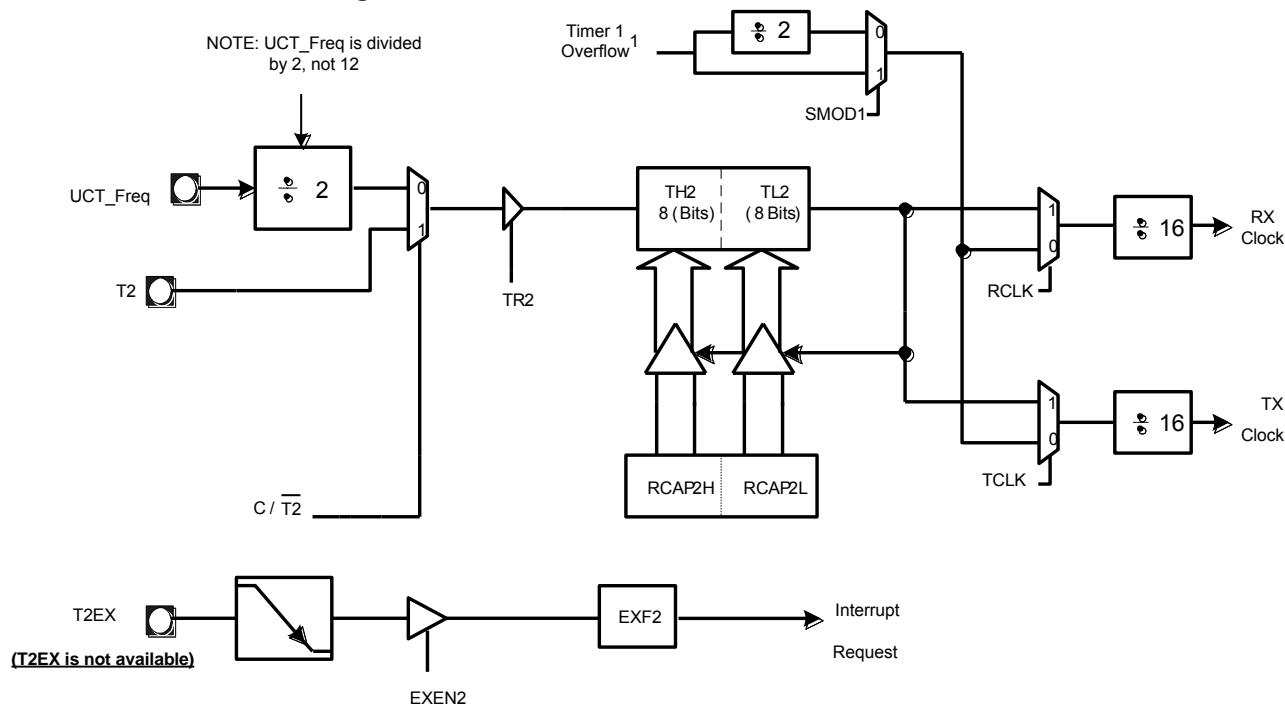
Note: T2EX is tied to logic high and is not available in IT8987.

Note: Turn off the timer (clear the TR2 bit in the T2CON register) before accessing registers TH2, TL2, RCAP2H and RCAP2L. You may configure timer 2 as a timer or a counter. In most applications, it is configured for timer operation (i.e., the C/T2 bit is cleared in the T2CON register).

Table 7-5. Selecting the Baud Rate Generator(s)

RCLK Bit	TCLK Bit	Receiver Baud Rate Generator	Transmitter Baud Rate Generator
0	0	Timer 1	Timer 1
0	1	Timer 1	Timer 2
1	0	Timer 2	Timer 1
1	1	Timer 2	Timer 2

Figure 7-13. Timer 2 in Baud Rate Generator Mode



Note availability of additional external interrupt

Note: T2EX is tied to logic high and is not available in IT8987.

Note that timer 2 increments every state time ($2T_{osc}$) when it is in the baud rate generator mode. In the baud rate formula that follows, "RCAP2H, RCAP2L" denoting the contents of RCAP2H and RCAP2L is taken as a 16-bit unsigned integer:

$$\text{Serial I/O Mode 1 and 3 Baud Rate} = \text{UCT_Freq} \times (32 \times [65536 - (\text{RCAP2H}, \text{RCAP2L})])$$

Note: UCT_Freq equals to EC Clock Frequency (listed in Table 10-2 on page 484).

When timer 2 is configured as a timer and is in baud rate generator mode, do not read or write the TH2 or TL2 registers. The timer is being incremented every state time, and the result of a read or write may not be accurate. In addition, you may read but not write to the RCAP2H/RCAP2L registers; a write may overlap a reload and cause write and/or reload errors.

7.1.8 Idle and Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep Mode

Idle Mode

When set IDL bit in PCON(87h), the 8032 will enter an Idle mode. In the Idle mode, the 8032 is idle while all the on-chip peripherals remain active. The internal RAM and SFRs registers remain unchanged during this mode. The Idle mode can be terminated by any enabled internal/external interrupt or by a hardware reset.

Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep Mode

When PD bit is set in PCON(87h), the 8032 will enter a Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode. In the Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode, the 8032 clock is stopped, and PLL may be alive or stopped depending on PLLCTRL. The Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode can be waked up by the hardware reset or by the external enabled interrupt with level trigger activation (ITx in register TCON is set to 0). The Program Counter, internal RAM and SFRs registers retain their values and will not be changed after the exiting Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode by external interrupt. The reset will restart the 8032, while the SFRs with initial values and the internal RAM retain their values.

7.1.9 EC Internal Register Description

The embedded 8032 internal memory space and special function registers (F0h-80h) are listed below.

Table 7-6. Internal RAM Map

7							0	Index
				Bank 0				07h-00h
				Bank 1				0Fh-08h
				Bank 2				17h-10h
				Bank 3				1Fh-18h
				Addressable Bits				2Fh-20h
				General Purpose RAM				7Fh-2Fh
				Indirect Addressing Register				FFh-80h
7							0	SFR Index
PCON	DPS	DPH1	DPL1	DPH	DPL	SP	P0	80h
	CKCON	TH1	TH0	TL1	TL0	TMOD	TCON	88h
							P1	90h
						SBUF	SCON	98h
							P2	A0h
							IE	A8h
							P3	B0h
							IP	B8h
		STATUS						C0h
		TH2	TL2	RCAP2H	RCAP2L	T2MOD	T2CON	C8h
							PSW	D0h
							WDTCO N	D8h
							ACC	E0h
MPREFC							B	E8h
								F0h
								F8h

7.1.9.1 Port 0 Register (P0R)

Address: 80h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	P0 Register Bit [7:0] (P0) This is the 8-bit 8032 port 0.

7.1.9.2 Stack Pointer Register (SPR)

Address: 81h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	07h	Stack Pointer Bit [7:0] (SP) This is the 8-bit stack pointer.

7.1.9.3 Data Pointer Low Register (DPLR)

Address: 82h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Data Pointer Low Bit [7:0] (DPL) This is the 8-bit data pointer low byte.

7.1.9.4 Data Pointer High Register (DPHR)

Address: 83h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Data Pointer High Bit [7:0] (DPH) This is the 8-bit data pointer high byte.

7.1.9.5 Data Pointer 1 Low Register (DP1LR)

Address: 84h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Data Pointer 1 Low Bit [7:0] (DPL1) This is the 8-bit data pointer 1 low byte.

7.1.9.6 Data Pointer 1 High Register (DP1HR)

Address: 85h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Data Pointer 1 High Bit [7:0] (DPH1) This is the 8-bit data pointer 1 high byte.

7.1.9.7 Data Pointer Select Register (DPSR)

Address: 86h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	00h	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	Data Pointer Select (DPS) Setting '1' selects the data pointer 1 (DPL1, DPH1) while setting '0' selects the data pointer (DPL, DPH).

7.1.9.8 Power Control Register (PCON)

Address: 87h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Serial Port Double Baud Rate (SMOD1) Setting '1' doubles the baud rate when timer 1 is used and mode 1, 2, or 3 is selected in SCON register.
6	-	0b	Reserved
5-2	-	0h	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Power Down Mode (PD) Set "1" to enter a Sleep (a.k.a. power-down) or Doze mode immediately. The Sleep or Doze mode is controlled by PPDC bit. Exit Sleep or Doze mode and clear this bit by external interrupt or hardware reset.
0	R/W	0b	Idle Mode (IDL) Set "1" to enter idle mode immediately. Exit idle mode and clear this bit by internal interrupt and external interrupt or hardware reset.

7.1.9.9 Timer Control Register (TCON)

Address: 88h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Overflow (TF1) This bit is set by hardware when timer 1 register overflows. This bit is cleared by hardware when the processor vectors to the interrupt service routine.
6	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Run Control (TR1) Setting '1' enables timer 1 operation and setting '0' disables timer 1.
5	R/W	0b	Timer 0 Overflow (TF0) This bit is set by hardware when timer 0 register overflows. This bit is cleared by hardware when the processor vectors to the interrupt service routine.
4	R/W	0b	Timer 0 Run Control (TR0) Setting '1' enables timer 0 operation and setting '0' disables the timer 0.
3	R/W	0b	Interrupt 1 Edge Detect (IE1) This bit is set by hardware when an edge or a level is detected on external INT1 (depends on the setting of IT1). This bit is cleared by hardware when the interrupt service routine is processed if an edge trigger is selected.
2	R/W	0b	Interrupt 1 Type Select (IT1) Setting '1' selects the edge-triggered for INT1. Setting '0' selects a level-triggered. Don't write 1 to this bit because interrupt triggered type is considered in INTC module and needs IT0 and IT1 to be set as level-low triggered.
1	R/W	0b	Interrupt 0 Edge Detect (IE0) Set by hardware when an edge or a level is detected on external INT0 (depends on the setting of IT0). Cleared by hardware when the interrupt service routine is processed if an edge trigger is selected.
0	R/W	0b	Interrupt 0 Type Select (IT0) Setting '1' selects the edge-triggered for INT0. Setting '0' selects a level-triggered. Don't write 1 to this bit because interrupt triggered type is considered in INTC module and needs IT0 and IT1 to be set as level-low triggered.

7.1.9.10 Timer Mode Register (TMOD)

Address: 89h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Gate (GATE1) 0: Timer 1 will clock when TR1=1, regardless of the state of INT1. 1: Timer 1 will clock only when TR1=1 and INT1 is deasserted.
6	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Source (C/T1#) 0: Timer 1 counts the divided-down EC clock. 1: Timer 1 counts negative transitions on T1 input of 8032 from TMRI0 pin.
5-4	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Mode (MODE1) 0h: 8-bit timer/counter (TH1) with 5-bit prescaler (TL1) 1h: 16-bit timer/counter 2h: 8-bit auto-reload timer/counter (TL1). Reload from TH1 at overflow. 3h: Timer 1 halted. Retains count.
3	R/W	0b	Timer 0 Gate (GATE0) 0: Timer 0 will clock when TR0=1, regardless of the state of INT0. 1: Timer 0 will clock only when TR0=1 and INT0 is deasserted.
2	R/W	0b	Timer 0 Source (C/T0#) 0: Timer 0 counts the divided-down EC clock. 1: Timer 0 counts negative transitions on T0 input of 8032 from GPE5.
1-0	R/W	0b	Timer 0 Mode (MODE0) 0h: 8-bit timer/counter (TH0) with 5-bit prescaler (TL0) 1h: 16-bit timer/counter 2h: 8-bit auto-reload timer/counter (TL0). Reload from TH0 at overflow. 3h: Timer 0 halted. Retains count.

7.1.9.11 Timer 0 Low Byte Register (TL0R)

Address: 8Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Timer 0 Low Byte Bit [7:0] (TL0) Timer 0 low byte register.

7.1.9.12 Timer 1 Low Byte Register (TL1R)

Address: 8Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Timer 1 Low Byte Bit [7:0] (TL1) Timer 1 low byte register.

7.1.9.13 Timer 0 High Byte Register (TH0R)

Address: 8Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Timer 0 High Byte Bit [7:0] (TH0) Timer 0 high byte register.

7.1.9.14 Timer 1 Low Byte Register (TH1R)

Address: 8Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Timer 1 High Byte Bit [7:0] (TH1) Timer 1 high byte register.

7.1.9.15 Clock Control Register (CKCON)

Address: 8Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	Watch Dog Time Out Counter Select (WD[1:0]) 0h: 17-bit counter 1h: 20-bit counter 2h: $(56/63) \times 2^{23}$ counter 3h: 26-bit counter
5	R/W	0b	Timer 2 Clock (T2M) 0: Timer 2 clock is EC clock / 12. 1: Timer 2 clock is EC clock / 4.
4	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Clock (T1M) 0: Timer 1 clock is EC clock / 12. 1: Timer 1 clock is EC clock / 4.
3	R/W	0b	Timer 0 Clock (T0M) 0: Timer 0 clock is EC clock / 12. 1: Timer 0 clock is EC clock / 4.
2	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Clock II (T1M2) 0: Timer 1 clock depends on T1M bit in this register. 1: Timer 1 clock is EC clock / 5.
1-0	-	-	Reserved

7.1.9.16 Port 1 Register (P1R)

Address: 90h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	P1 Register Bit [7:0] (P1) This is the 8-bit 8032 port 1.

7.1.9.17 Serial Port Control Register (SCON)**Address: 98h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Serial Port Mode 0 (SM0) Serial port mode control is set/cleared by software. Mode 1-3 are supported.
6	R/W	0b	Serial Port Mode 1 (SM1) Serial port mode control is set/cleared by software. Mode 1-3 are supported.
5	-	0b	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	Receive Enable (REN) Receiver enable bit. Setting '1' enables the serial data reception. Setting '0' disables the serial data reception.
3	R/W	0b	Transmit Bit 8 (TB8) Transmit bit 8, set/cleared by hardware to determine the state of the ninth data bit transmitted in 9-bit UART mode.
2	R/W	0b	Receive Bit 8 (RB8) Receive bit 8, set/cleared by hardware to determine the state of the ninth data bit received in 9-bit UART mode.
1	R/W	0b	Transmit Interrupt (TI) Transmit interrupt, set by hardware when the byte is transmitted and cleared by software after serving.
0	R/W	0b	Receive Interrupt (RI) Receive interrupt, set by hardware when the byte is received and cleared by software when data is processed.

7.1.9.18 Serial Port Buffer Register (SBUFR)**Address: 99h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Serial Port Buffer Bit [7:0] (SBUF) This is the 8-bit 8032 serial port data buffer. Writing to SBUF loads the transmit buffer to the serial I/O port. Reading SBUF reads the receive buffer of the serial port.

7.1.9.19 Port 2 Register (P2R)**Address: A0h**

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	P2 Register Bit [7:0] (P2) This is the 8-bit 8032 port 2.

7.1.9.20 Interrupt Enable Register (IE)

Address: A8h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Global Interrupt Enable (EA) Setting this bit enables all interrupts that are individually enabled by bit 0-6. Clearing this bit disables all interrupts.
6	R/W	0b	Serial Port 1 Interrupt Enable (ES1) Setting this bit enables the serial port 1 interrupt.
5	R/W	0b	Timer 2 Overflow Interrupt Enable (ET2) Setting this bit enables the timer 2 overflow interrupt.
4	R/W	0b	Serial Port 0 Interrupt Enable (ES0) Setting this bit enables the serial port 0 interrupt.
3	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Overflow Interrupt Enable (ET1) Setting this bit enables the timer 1 overflow interrupt.
2	R/W	0b	External Interrupt 1 Enable (EX1) Setting this bit enables the external interrupt 1.
1	R/W	0b	Timer 0 Overflow Interrupt Enable (ET0) Setting this bit enables the timer 0 overflow interrupt.
0	R/W	0b	External Interrupt 0 Enable (EX0) Setting this bit enables the external interrupt 0.

7.1.9.21 Port 3 Register (P3R)

Address: B0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	P3 Register Bit [7:0] (P3) This is the 8-bit 8032 port 3.

7.1.9.22 Interrupt Priority Register (IP)

Address: B8h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	0b	Reserved
6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Timer 2 Overflow Interrupt Priority (PT2) Setting this bit enables the timer 2 overflow interrupt.
4	R/W	0b	Serial Port 0 Interrupt Priority (PS0) Setting this bit enables the serial port 0 interrupt.
3	R/W	0b	Timer 1 Overflow Interrupt Priority (PT1) Setting this bit enables the timer 1 overflow interrupt.
2	R/W	0b	External Interrupt 1 Priority (PX1) Setting this bit enables the external interrupt 1.
1	R/W	0b	Timer01 Overflow Interrupt Priority (PT0) Setting this bit enables the timer 0 overflow interrupt.
0	R/W	0b	External Interrupt 0 Priority (PX0) Setting this bit enables the external interrupt 0.

7.1.9.23 Status Register (STATUS)

Address: C5h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	R/W	0b	High priority interrupt status (HIP)
5	R/W	0b	Low priority interrupt status (LIP)
4-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Serial Port 0 Transmit Activity Monitor (SPTA0)
0	R/W	0b	Serial Port 0 Receive Activity Monitor (SPRA0)

7.1.9.24 Timer 2 Control Register (T2CON)

Address: C8h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Timer 2 Overflow (TF2) Set by hardware when the timer 2 overflows. It has to be cleared by software. TF2 is not set if RCLK=1 or TCLK=1.
6	R/W	0b	Timer 2 External Flag (EXF2) If EXEN2=1, a capture or reload is caused by a negative transition on T2EX sets EXF2. EXF2 dose not cause an interrupt in up/down counter mode (DCEN=1).
5	R/W	0b	Receive Clock (RCLK) Selects timer 2 overflow pulses (RCLK=1) or timer 1 overflow pulses (RCLK=0) as the baud rate generator for port mode 1 and 3.
4	R/W	0b	Receive Clock (RCLK) Selects timer 2 overflow pulses (TCLK=1) or timer 1 overflow pulses (TCLK=0) as the baud rate generator for port mode 1 and 3.
3	R/W	0b	Timer 2 External Enable (EXEN2) Setting EXEN2 causes a capture or reload to occur as a result of a negative transition on T2EX unless timer 2 is being used as the baud rate generator for the serial port. Clearing EXEN2 causes timer 2 to ignore events at T2EX.
2	R/W	0b	Timer 2 Run Control (TR2) Setting this bit starts the timer.
1	R/W	0b	Timer/Counter 2 Select (C/T2#) 0: Timer 2 counts the divided-down EC clock. 1: Timer 2 counts negative transitions on T2 input of 8032 from TMRI1 pin.
0	R/W	0b	Capture/Reload (CP/RL2#) When this bit is set, captures occur on negative transitions at T2EX if EXEN2=1. When reloads occur o if EXEN2=1, the CP/RL2# bit is ignored and timer 2 is forced to auto-reload on timer 2 overflow if RCLK =1 or TCLK = 1.

7.1.9.25 Timer Mode Register (T2MOD)

Address: C9h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Timer 2 Output Enable (T2OE) In the timer 2 clock-out mode, this bit connects the programmable clock output to External signal T2.
0	R/W	0b	Down Count Enable (DCEN) This bit configures timer 2 as an up/down counter.

7.1.9.26 Timer 2 Capture Low Byte Register (RCAP2LR)

Address: CAh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Timer 2 Capture Low Byte Bit [7:0] (RCAP2L) Low byte of the timer2 reload/recapture register. This register stores 8-bit value to be loaded into or captured from the timer register TL2 in timer 2.

7.1.9.27 Timer 2 Capture High Byte Register (RCAP2HR)

Address: CBh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Timer 2 Capture High Byte Bit [7:0] (RCAP2H) High byte of the timer2 reload/recapture register. This register stores 8-bit value to be loaded into or captured from the timer register TH2 in timer 2.

7.1.9.28 Timer 2 Low Byte Register (TL2R)

Address: CCh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Timer 2 Low Byte Bit [7:0] (TL2) Timer 2 low byte register.

7.1.9.29 Timer 2 High Byte Register (TH2R)

Address: CDh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Timer 2 High Byte Bit [7:0] (TH2) Timer 2 high byte register.

7.1.9.30 Program Status Word Register (PSW)

Address: D0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Carry Flag (CY) CY is set if the operation result in a carry out of (during addition) or a borrow into (during subtraction) the high-order bit in the result; otherwise CY is cleared.
6	R/W	0b	Auxiliary Carry Flag (AC) AC is set if the operation result in a carry out of the low-order 4 bits of the result (during addition) or a borrow from the high-order bits into the low-order 4 bits (during subtraction); otherwise AC is cleared.
5	R/W	0b	User Flag 0 (F0) General-purpose flag.
4-3	R/W	0b	Register Bank Select Bit [1:0](RS1:0) 0h: bank 0, 00h-07h 1h: bank 1, 08h-0Fh 2h: bank 2, 10h-17h 3h: bank 3, 18h-1Fh
2	R/W	0b	Overflow Flag (OV) This bit is set if an addition or signed variables result in an overflow error (i.e., if the magnitude of the sum or difference is too great for the seven LSBs in 2's – complement representation). The overflow flag is also set if the multiplication product overflows one byte or if a division by zero is attempted.
1	R/W	0b	User Defined Flag (UD) General-purpose flag.
0	R/W	0b	Parity Flag (P) This bit indicates the parity of the accumulator. It is set if an odd number of bits in the accumulator is set. Otherwise, it is cleared. Not all instructions update the parity bit. The parity bit is set or cleared by instructions that change the contents to the accumulator.

7.1.9.31 Watch Dog Timer Control Register (WDTCON)

Address: D8h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Watch Dog Timer Enable (WDTEN) Setting '1' enables the watchdog timer.
0	R/W	0b	Watch Dog Timer Reset (WDTRST) Setting '1' resets the watchdog timer.

7.1.9.32 Accumulator Register (ACC)

Address: E0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Accumulator Bit [7:0] (ACC[7:0]) The instruction uses the accumulator as both source and destination for calculations and moves.

7.1.9.33 B Register (BR)

Address: F0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	-	00h	B Register (B[7:0]) The B Register is used as both a source and destination in multiply and divide operations.

7.1.9.34 Manual Prefetch Register (MPREFC)

Address: F7h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5-0	W	-	Manually Prefetch Count (MPREFCN) This register is dedicated to clear internal dynamic caches. Refer to section 7.1.10.5 Code snippet of Clearing Dynamic Caches on page 192.

7.1.10 Programming Guide

7.1.10.1 IT8987 Coding Consideration

Coding consideration is to speed up the 8032 code-fetch performance while fetching from serial flash. There are some recommendations for coding consideration.

- If a function contains only few bytes, consider replacing it with macro function.
- R8032TT code-fetch frequency is variable while fetching from serial flash. A delay routine which is formed by a loop routine can have a known delay time even code-fetch frequency is variable since the loop is fetched from loop or not. A delay routine can be implemented by WNCKR register. However, this is a simple way.

7.1.10.2 Code Snippet of Entering Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep Mode

```
; Power-down ADC/DAC analog circuit
; Disable unnecessary channel of INTC/WUC

mov      dptr, #1e03h          ; PLLCTRL register
mov      a, #01h               ; 00h for Doze mode
                                ; 01h for Sleep mode
                                ; 03h for Deep Doze mode

movx    @dptr, a

nop      pcon, #01h           ; Reserved
orl      ; #01h for Idle mode
                                ; #02h for Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode

; Repeat "nop" eight times immediately
; for internal bus turn-around
nop      ; 1st
nop      ; 2nd
nop      ; 3rd
nop      ; 4th
nop      ; 5th
nop      ; 6th
nop      ; 7th
nop      ; 8th
```

7.1.10.3 Code snippet of Copying Flash Content to Scratch ROM 0 (PIO)

; First copy data from code space to Scratch RAM in data space,
; then enable code space mapping of Scratch ROM

; copy 256 bytes from code space to scratch RAM
; code space: FF00h ~ FFFFh (byte)
; data space: 0700h ~ 07FFh (byte)

```

    mov      r6, #00h
copy_loop:
    mov      dptr, #0ff00h          ; read from code space from ff00h (byte)
    mov      a, r6
    movc    a, @a+dptr
    mov      dph, #07h            ; write to data space from 0700h (byte)
    mov      dpl, r6
    movx    @dptr, a

    inc      r6
    cjne   r6, #00h, copy_loop    ; copy 256 bytes

; enable mapping Scratch SRAM to Scratch ROM
    mov      dptr, #1042h          ; SCAR0H register
    mov      a, #03h              ; disable code space mapping first
    movx    @dptr, a

    mov      dptr, #1040h          ; SCAR0L register
    mov      a, #00h              ;
    movx    @dptr, a

    mov      dptr, #1041h          ; SCAR0 register
    mov      a, #0ffh              ;
    movx    @dptr, a

    mov      dptr, #1042h          ; SCAR0H register
    mov      a, #00h              ;
    movx    @dptr, a

```

7.1.10.4 Code snippet of Copying Flash Content to Scratch ROM (DMA)

```
; DMA copies 2048 bytes from code space to scratch RAM then
; enable code space mapping
;
; code space: F800h ~ FFFFh (byte)
; data space: 0000h ~ 07FFh (byte)

mov      dptr, #1042h          ; SCAR0H register
mov      a, #80h               ;
movx    @dptr, a

mov      dptr, #1040h          ; SCAR0L register
mov      a, #00h               ;
movx    @dptr, a

mov      dptr, #1041h          ; SCAR0 register
mov      a, #0f8h               ;
movx    @dptr, a

mov      dptr, #1042h          ; SCAR0H register
mov      a, #00h               ;
movx    @dptr, a              ; start DMA then enable code space mapping
```

7.1.10.5 Code snippet of Clearing Dynamic Caches

```
; after flash is modified by the host program, the dynamic caches have to be
; cleared since they contain old and invalid cache content
; uC should execute these lines if the program counter leaves Scratch ROM
```

```
mov      0f7h, #01h ; MPREFC reg
nop
```

7.1.10.6 Code snippet of EC Base Signature

```
org      40h                  ; available list: 40h, 50h
; ... E0h, F0h (interval 10h)

db      0A5h, 0A5h, 0A5h, 0A5h, 0A5h, 0A5h, 0A5h, 0A5h
db      085h, 012h, 05Ah, 05Ah, 0AAh, 0AAh, 055h, 055h
```

7.2 Interrupt Controller (INTC)

7.2.1 Overview

INTC mainly collects several interrupts from modules. Using interrupt driven design has a better performance than polling-driven.

It traps PWRFAIL#, ROM match interrupt and samples interrupt channels, then outputs to the INT0# and INT1# of 8032.

Both interrupts INT0# and INT1# to 8032 are generated by INTC, and don't write 1 to IT0 and IT1 bit in TCON because interrupt triggered type is considered in INTC and needs IT0 and IT1 to be set as level-low triggered.

Note INT0# and INT1# are external interrupts of 8032 and they are controlled by EA, EX0 and EX1 in IE register.

External interrupts can wakeup 8032 from Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode, but internal interrupts can wakeup 8032 from Idle mode only.

7.2.2 Features

- Configurable level-triggered and edge-triggered mode
- Configurable interrupt polarity of triggered mode
- Clear registers for edge-triggered interrupts
- Each interrupt source can be enabled/masked individually
- Special handler for power-fail (INT0# of 8032)

7.2.3 Functional Description

7.2.3.1 Power Fail Interrupt

The INTC collects interrupts sources from internal and external (through WUC) and provides two interrupt requests INT0# and INT1# to 8032. 8032 treats INT0# as a higher priority interrupt request than INT1#. INTC uses INT0# as a power-fail interrupt and INT1# as a maskable interrupt. The firmware should enable the IE0 and IE1 bit in TCON before all.

To implement a power-fail application, connect GPB7 to external circuit. Firmware puts the GPB7 in alternative function, enables the Schmitt Trigger of GPB7 to receive an asynchronous external input, and provides related INT0# interrupt routine.

There are two methods to trap a power-fail event: "Trap Enabled" and "Trap Enabled and Locked". Users select "Trap Enabled" by setting TREN bit in PFAILR and select "Trap Enabled and Locked" by setting TRENL bit in PFAILR. If both bits are selected, TREN bit is ignored. If "Trap Enabled" is used, power-fail event is detected by falling edge transition of PWRFAIL#, and INT0# to 8032 is asserted. After INT0# is set, TREN bit is cleared. "Trap Enabled and Locked" method is similar to "Trap Enabled" method but TRENL will not be cleared after INT0# is set.

7.2.3.2 ROM Match Interrupt

Refer to section 7.23 Debugger (DBGR) on page 455.

7.2.3.3 Programmable Interrupts

INTC also collects maskable interrupt sources and make a request on INT1 # of 8032 if triggered. Each channel can be individually enabled or masked by IERx. If an interrupt channel is masked and one interrupt request is triggered, the request is masked (inhibited, not canceled), and will be asserted the request on INT1# if it is enabled.

The ISR_x indicates the status of interrupt regardless of IER_x. In the level-triggered mode, ISR_x is affected by corresponding interrupt sources, and firmware should clear the interrupt status on interrupt sources after its request is handled. In edge-triggered mode, ISR_x is set by selected edge transition (determined by IELMR_x) of corresponding interrupts sources, and firmware should write 1 to clear to ISR_x after this request is handled.

Firmware may use the IVECT to determine which channel is to be serviced first or have its priority rule by reading ISR_x and IER_x. IVECT treats INT1 as the lowest priority interrupt.

The 8032 always wakes up from Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode when it detects an enabled external interrupt and it wakes up from Idle mode by internal interrupt, too. Firmware should disable unwanted interrupt sources to prevent from waking up unexpectedly.

Normally interrupts from WUC are high level-triggered. Note that interrupts from WUC are not always level-triggered interrupts since they may be just throughout WUC if the corresponding channels at WUC are disabled (bypassed). If an edge-triggered passes through WUC and INTC with WUC corresponding channel is disabled and INTC corresponding channel is level-trig mode, it may cause 8032 interrupt routine called but finds no interrupt source to service, or it may cause 8032 to wake up from Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode and enters interrupt routine but finds no interrupt source to service.

7.2.4 EC Interface Registers

The EC interface registers are listed below. The base address for INTC is 1100h.

Table 7-7. EC View Register Map, INTC

7	0	Offset
Interrupt Status Register 0 (ISR0)		00h
Interrupt Status Register 1 (ISR1)		01h
Interrupt Status Register 2 (ISR2)		02h
Interrupt Status Register 3 (ISR3)		03h
Interrupt Status Register 4 (ISR4)		14h
Interrupt Status Register 5 (ISR5)		18h
Interrupt Status Register 6 (ISR6)		1Ch
Interrupt Status Register 7 (ISR7)		20h
Interrupt Status Register 8 (ISR8)		24h
Interrupt Status Register 9 (ISR9)		28h
Interrupt Status Register 10 (ISR10)		2Ch
Interrupt Status Register 11 (ISR11)		30h
Interrupt Status Register 12 (ISR12)		34h
Interrupt Status Register 13 (ISR13)		38h
Interrupt Status Register 14 (ISR14)		3Ch
Interrupt Status Register 15 (ISR15)		40h
Interrupt Status Register 16 (ISR16)		44h
Interrupt Status Register 17 (ISR17)		48h
Interrupt Status Register 18 (ISR18)		4Ch
Interrupt Status Register 19 (ISR19)		50h
Interrupt Enable Register 0 (IER0)		04h
Interrupt Enable Register 1 (IER1)		05h
Interrupt Enable Register 2 (IER2)		06h
Interrupt Enable Register 3 (IER3)		07h
Interrupt Enable Register 4 (IER4)		15h
Interrupt Enable Register 5 (IER5)		19h
Interrupt Enable Register 6 (IER6)		1Dh
Interrupt Enable Register 7 (IER7)		21h
Interrupt Enable Register 8 (IER8)		25h

7

0

Offset
29h
2Dh
31h
35h
39h
3Dh
41h
45h
49h
4Dh
51h
08h
09h
0Ah
0Bh
16h
1Ah
1Eh
22h
26h
2Ah
2Eh
32h
36h
3Ah
3Eh
42h
46h
4Ah
4Eh
52h
0Ch
0Dh
0Eh
0Fh
17h
1Bh
1Fh
23h
27h
2Bh
2Fh
33h
37h
3Bh
3Fh
43h
47h
4Bh
4Fh
53h
10h
11h

Interrupt Enable Register 9 (IER9)	
Interrupt Enable Register 10 (IER10)	
Interrupt Enable Register 11 (IER11)	
Interrupt Enable Register 12 (IER12)	
Interrupt Enable Register 13 (IER13)	
Interrupt Enable Register 14 (IER14)	
Interrupt Enable Register 15 (IER15)	
Interrupt Enable Register 16 (IER16)	
Interrupt Enable Register 17 (IER17)	
Interrupt Enable Register 18 (IER18)	
Interrupt Enable Register 19 (IER19)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 0 (IELMR0)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 1 (IELMR1)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 2 (IELMR2)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 3 (IELMR3)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 4 (IELMR4)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 5 (IELMR5)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 6 (IELMR6)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 7 (IELMR7)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 8 (IELMR8)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 9 (IELMR9)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 10 (IELMR10)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 11 (IELMR11)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 12 (IELMR12)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 13 (IELMR13)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 14 (IELMR14)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 15 (IELMR15)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 16 (IELMR16)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 17 (IELMR17)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 18 (IELMR18)	
Interrupt Edge/Level-Trig Mode Register 19 (IELMR19)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 0 (IPOLR0)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 1 (IPOLR1)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 2 (IPOLR2)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 3 (IPOLR3)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 4 (IPOLR4)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 5 (IPOLR5)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 6 (IPOLR6)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 7 (IPOLR7)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 8 (IPOLR8)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 9 (IPOLR9)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 10 (IPOLR10)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 11 (IPOLR11)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 12 (IPOLR12)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 13 (IPOLR13)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 14 (IPOLR14)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 15 (IPOLR15)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 16 (IPOLR16)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 17 (IPOLR17)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 18 (IPOLR18)	
Interrupt Polarity Register 19 (IPOLR19)	
Interrupt Vector Register (IVECT)	
INT0# status (INT0ST)	

7	0	Offset 12h
Power Fail Register (PFAILR)		

7.2.4.1 Interrupt Status Register 0-19 (ISR0 - ISR19)

This register indicates which maskable interrupts are pending regardless of the state of the corresponding IERx bits.

ISR0 define in Group 0
 ISR1 define in Group 1
 ISR2 define in Group 2
 ISR3 define in Group 3
 ISR4 define in Group 4
 ISR5 define in Group 5 (Reserved)
 ISR6 define in Group 6
 ISR7 define in Group 7
 ISR8 define in Group 8
 ISR9 define in Group 9
 ISR10 define in Group 10
 ISR11 define in Group 11
 ISR12 define in Group 12
 ISR13 define in Group 13
 ISR14 define in Group 14
 ISR15 define in Group 15
 ISR16 define in Group 16
 ISR17 define in Group 17 (Reserved)
 ISR18 define in Group 18
 ISR19 define in Group 19

NOTE: Where Group 0-19 (Refer to Table 7-8 on page 202).

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	R/WC Or R	-	Interrupt Status Group 0 (ISGR0 7:1) It indicates the interrupt input status of INTx. INTST7 to INTST1 correspond to INT7 to INT1 respectively. Each bit is R/WC if the corresponding bit in IELMRx register indicates edge-triggered mode, while R if it indicates level-triggered mode. For each bit: Read 0: Interrupt input to INTC is not pending. Read 1: Interrupt input to INTC is pending. For each bit: Write 0: No action Write 1: Clear this bit when it is in the edge-triggered mode, and writing 1 is ignored when it is in the level-triggered mode.
0	R	0b	Reserved

Address Offset: 01h,02h,03h,14h,18h,1Ch,20h,24h,28h,2Ch,30h,34h,38h,3Ch,40h,44h,48h,4Ch,50h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/WC Or R	-	<p>Interrupt Status Group x (ISGRx 7:0) It indicates the interrupt input status of (INTn).(where n means 0 - 7 whether its corresponding Group x)</p> <p>The same as ISGR0</p> <p>NOTE: Where x means (1-19)</p>

7.2.4.2 Interrupt Enable Register 0-19 (IER0 - IER19)

IER0 define in Group 0
 IER1 define in Group 1
 IER2 define in Group 2
 IER3 define in Group 3
 IER4 define in Group 4
 IER5 define in Group 5 (Reserved)
 IER6 define in Group 6
 IER7 define in Group 7
 IER8 define in Group 8
 IER9 define in Group 9
 IER10 define in Group 10
 IER11 define in Group 11
 IER12 define in Group 12
 IER13 define in Group 13
 IER14 define in Group 14
 IER15 define in Group 15
 IER16 define in Group 16
 IER17 define in Group 17 (Reserved)
 IER18 define in Group 18
 IER19 define in Group 19

NOTE: Where Group 0-19 (Refer to Table 7-8 on page 202)

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	R/W	0h	<p>Interrupt Enable Group 0 (IEGR0 7:1) Each bit determines whether its corresponding interrupt channel (INT7-0) is masked or enabled. Note that it has no effect on INT0 0: Masked 1: Enabled</p>
0	-	0b	Reserved

Address Offset: 05h,06h,07h,15h,19h,1Dh,21h,25h,29h,2Dh,31h,35h,39h,3Dh,41h,45h,49h,4Dh,51h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>Interrupt Enable Group x (IEGRx 7:0)</p> <p>Each bit determines whether its corresponding interrupt channel (INTn) is masked or enabled. (where n means 0 - 7 whether its corresponding Group x)</p> <p>0: Masked 1: Enabled</p> <p>NOTE: Where x means (1-19)</p>

7.2.4.3 Interrupt Edge/Level-Trigged Mode Register 0-19 (IELMR0 - IELMR19)

It determines whether its corresponding interrupt channel is level-triggered or edge-triggered.

IELMR0 define in Group 0
 IELMR1 define in Group 1
 IELMR2 define in Group 2
 IELMR3 define in Group 3
 IELMR4 define in Group 4
 IELMR5 define in Group 5 (Reserved)
 IELMR6 define in Group 6
 IELMR7 define in Group 7
 IELMR8 define in Group 8
 IELMR9 define in Group 9
 IELMR10 define in Group 10
 IELMR11 define in Group 11
 IELMR12 define in Group 12
 IELMR13 define in Group 13
 IELMR14 define in Group 14
 IELMR15 define in Group 15
 IELMR16 define in Group 16
 IELMR17 define in Group 17 (Reserved)
 IELMR18 define in Group 18
 IELMR19 define in Group 19

NOTE: Where Group 0-19 (Refer to Table 7-8 on page 202)

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00000000b	<p>Interrupt Edge/Level-Trigged Mode Group 0 (IELMGR0 7:0)</p> <p>Each bit determines the triggered mode of the corresponding interrupt channel (INT7-0).</p> <p>0: Level-triggered 1: Edge-triggered</p> <p>Always write-1-clear to the corresponding bit in ISR register after modifying these bits if edge-triggered is selected.</p>

Address Offset: 09h,0Ah,0Bh,16h,1Ah,1Eh,22h,26h,2Ah,2Eh,32h,36h,3Ah,3Eh,42h,46h,4Ah,4Eh,52h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W (only for IELMR 1-3) R (only for IELMR 4-19)	Refer to Table 7-8 on page 202	Interrupt Edge/Level-Triggered Mode Group x (IELMGRx 7:0) Each bit determines the triggered mode of the corresponding interrupt channel (INTn). (where n means 0 - 7 whether its corresponding Group x) The same as IELMGR0 NOTE: Where x means (1-19)

7.2.4.4 Interrupt Polarity Register 0-19 (IPOLR0 - IPOLR19)

For level-triggered interrupt, it determines this interrupt is level-high-triggered or level-low-triggered.
For edge-triggered interrupt, it determines this interrupt is rising-edge-triggered or falling-edge-triggered.

IPOLR0 define in Group 0
IPOLR1 define in Group 1
IPOLR2 define in Group 2
IPOLR3 define in Group 3
IPOLR4 define in Group 4
IPOLR5 define in Group 5 (Reserved)
IPOLR6 define in Group 6
IPOLR7 define in Group 7
IPOLR8 define in Group 8
IPOLR9 define in Group 9
IPOLR10 define in Group 10
IPOLR11 define in Group 11
IPOLR12 define in Group 12
IPOLR13 define in Group 13
IPOLR14 define in Group 14
IPOLR15 define in Group 15
IPOLR16 define in Group 16
IPOLR17 define in Group 17 (Reserved)
IPOLR18 define in Group 18
IPOLR19 define in Group 19

NOTE: Where Group 0-19 (Refer to Table 7-8 on page 202)

Address Offset: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	Interrupt Polarity Group 0 (IPOLGR0 7:0) Each bit determines the active high/low of the corresponding interrupt channel (INT7-0). 0: level-high-triggered or rising-edge-triggered 1: level-low-triggered or falling-edge-triggered Always write-1-clear to the corresponding bit in ISR register after modifying these bits if edge-triggered is selected.

Address Offset: 0Dh,0Eh,0Fh,17h,1Bh,1Fh,23h,27h,2Bh,2Fh,33h,37h,3Bh,3Fh,43h,47h,4Bh,4Fh,53h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W (only for IPOLR 1-3)	0h	Interrupt Polarity Group x (IPOLGRx 7:0) Each bit determines the active high/low of the corresponding interrupt channel (INTn). (where n means 0 - 7 whether its corresponding Group x) The same as IPOLGR0 NOTE: Where x means (1-19)
	R (only for IPOLR 4-19)		

7.2.4.5 Interrupt Vector Register (IVCT)

Address Offset: 10h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00010000b	Interrupt Vector (IVECT) It contains the interrupt number, which is the highest priority, enabled and pending interrupt. The valid values range from 10h. Note that INT1 has the lowest priority. If no enabled interrupt is pending, it returns 10h.

7.2.4.6 8032 INT0# Status (INT0ST)

INT0PF is set when falling edge transition of PWRFail# with TREN or TRENL bit in PFAILR is set, and it is clear when being reset or read its content.

INT0RM is set when the trigger address matches the 8032 program counter.

Address Offset: 11h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	00h	Reserved
1	R	-	INT0# from ROM Match Status (INT0RM) 0: INT0# is deasserted by an 8032 ROM match. 1: INT0# is asserted by an 8032 ROM match.
0	R	-	INT0# from PWRFail# Status (INT0PF) 0: INT0# is deasserted by a power-fail. 1: INT0# is asserted by a power-fail.

7.2.4.7 Power Fail Register (PFAILR)

It provides two methods to trap the PWRFAIL# event.
This register can't be reset by WDT Reset.

Address Offset: 12h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	00h	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	PWRFAIL# Trap Enabled and Locked (TRENL) Firmware sets this bit to enable PWRFAIL# trap. When trap is enabled, INT0 bit in INT0ST will be set if the falling edge transition of PWRFAIL# is detected. This bit can't be cleared by writing 0 to it until reset. 0: No PWRFAIL# Trap 1: PWRFAIL# Trap
1	R	-	PWRFAIL# Status (PFAILST) 0: PWRFAIL# is low (asserted) 1: PWRFAIL# is high (deasserted)
0	R/W	0b	PWRFAIL# Trap Enabled (TREN) Firmware sets this bit to enable PWRFAIL# trap. When trap is enabled, INT0 bit in INT0ST will be set if the falling edge transition of PWRFAIL# is detected, and TREN will be cleared. This bit is ignored when TRENL bit is set. 0: No PWRFAIL# Trap 1: PWRFAIL# Trap

7.2.5 INTC Interrupt Assignments

Table 7-8. INTC Interrupt Assignments

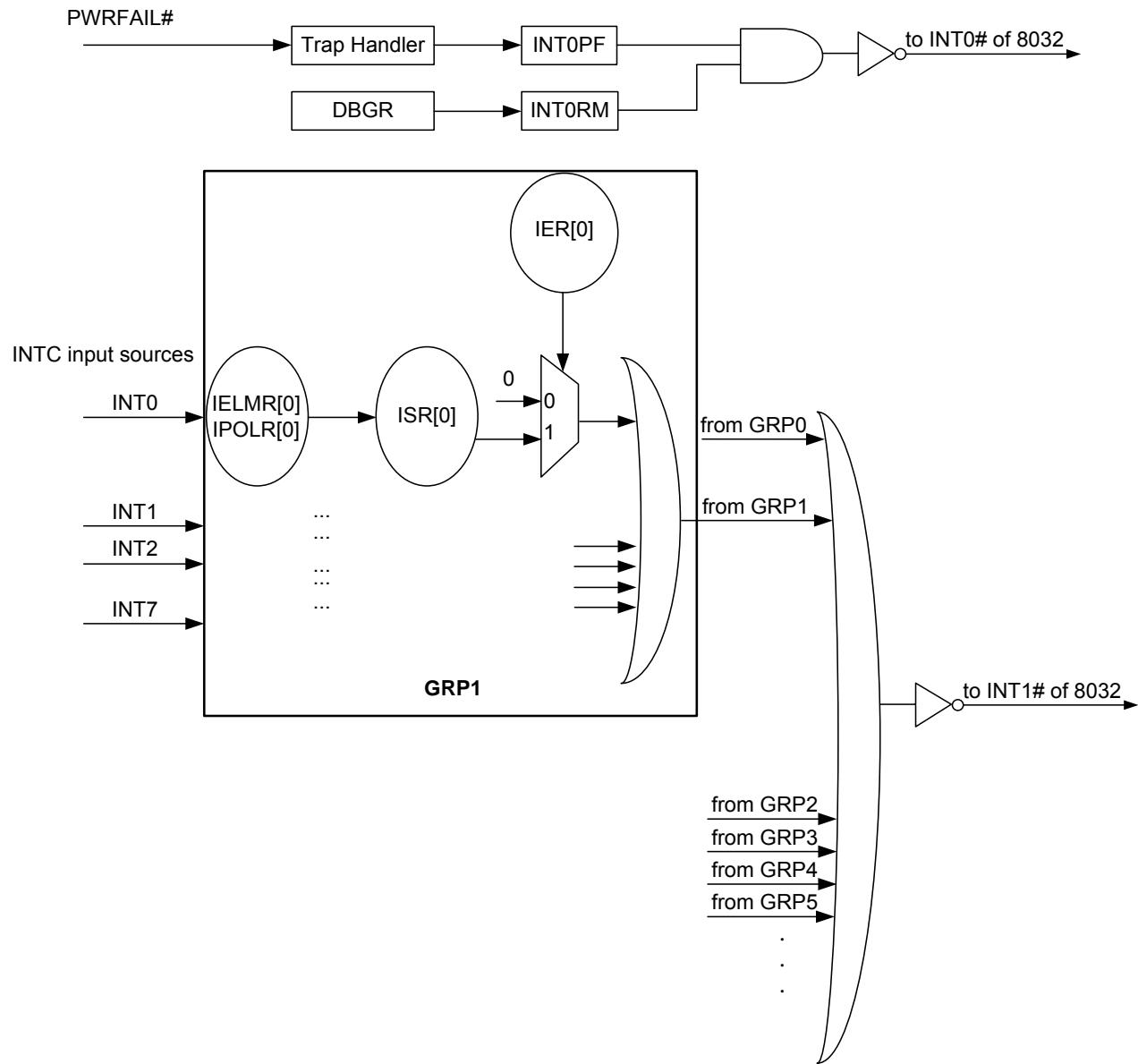
Group	Interrupt	Source	Default Type(Adjustable)	Description	Reference
0	INT0	Reserved	-	-	-
	INT1	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKO[20]	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT2	Internal	High-Level Trig	KBC Output Buffer Empty Interrupt	Section 6.5.3, p124
	INT3	Internal	High-Level Trig	PMC Output Buffer Empty Intr. PMC1 Output Buffer Empty Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131 Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT4	Internal	High-Level Trig	SMBus D Interrupt	Table 7-17 , p292
	INT5	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKINTAD (WKINTA or WKINTD)	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT6	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKO[23]	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT7	Internal	High-Level Trig	PWM Interrupt	Section 7.12.4.17, p362
1	INT8	Internal	High-Level Trig	ADC Interrupt	Section 7.11.3.1, p330
	INT9	Internal	High-Level Trig	SMBus A Interrupt	Table 7-17 , p292
	INT10	Internal	High-Level Trig	SMBus B Interrupt	Table 7-17 , p292
	INT11	Internal	High-Level Trig	KB Matrix Scan Interrupt	Section 7.4.2, p217
	INT12	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKO[26]	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT13	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKINTC	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT14	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKO[25]	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT15	Internal	High-Level Trig	CIR Interrupt	Section 7.20.5.3, p422
2	INT16	Internal	High-Level Trig	SMBus C Interrupt	Table 7-17 , p292
	INT17	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKO[24]	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT18	Internal	Rising-Edge Trig	PS/2 Interrupt 2	Section 7.9.2, p323
	INT19	Internal	Rising-Edge Trig	PS/2 Interrupt 1	Section 7.9.2, p323
	INT20	Internal	Rising-Edge Trig	PS/2 Interrupt 0	Section 7.9.2, p323
	INT21	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKO[22]	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT22	Internal	High-Level Trig	SMFI Semaphore Interrupt	Section 6.3.4.5, p90
	INT23	-	-	-	-
3	INT24	Internal	High-Level Trig	KBC Input Buffer Full Interrupt	Section 6.5.3, p124
	INT25	Internal	High-Level Trig	PMC Input Buffer Full Interrupt PMC1 Input Buffer Full Interrupt	Section 6.6.3.1, p131 Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT26	Internal	High-Level Trig	PMC2 Output Buffer Empty Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT27	Internal	High-Level Trig	PMC2 Input Buffer Full Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT28	External	High-Level Trig	GINT from function 1 of GPD5	Table 5-18, p17
	INT29	Internal	Rising-Edge Trig	EGPC Interrupt	Section 7.18.3, p411
	INT30	Internal	Rising-Edge Trig	External Timer 1 Interrupt	Section 7.16.3, p394
	INT31	External/WUC	High-Level Trig	WKO[21]	Figure 7-16, p215

Group	Interrupt	Source	Default Type(Adjustable)	Description	Reference
4	INT32	Internal	Rising-Edge Trig (Not Adjustable)	GPINT0	Section 6.2.13.10, p67
	INT33	Internal		GPINT1	Section 6.2.13.10, p67
	INT34	Internal		GPINT2	Section 6.2.13.10, p67
	INT35	Internal		GPINT3	Section 6.2.13.10, p67
	INT36	Internal		CIR GPINT	Section 7.20.5.18, p433
	INT37	Internal		SSPI Interrupt	Section 7.21.5.2, p437
	INT38	Internal		UART1 Interrupt	Section 7.22.5.3, p445
	INT39	Internal		UART2 Interrupt	Section 7.22.5.3, p445
	-	-		-	-
6	INT48	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[60]	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT49	External/WUC		WKO[61]	
	INT50	External/WUC		WKO[62]	
	INT51	External/WUC		WKO[63]	
	INT52	External/WUC		WKO[64]	
	INT53	External/WUC		WKO[65]	
	INT54	External/WUC		WKO[66]	
	INT55	External/WUC		WKO[67]	
	-	-		-	
7	INT56	Internal	Rising-Edge Trig (Not Adjustable)	RTCT Alarm 1	Section 6.7.3.3 p149
	INT57	Internal		RTCT Alarm 2	Section 6.7.3.3 p149
	INT58	Internal		External Timer 2 Interrupt	Section 7.16.3, p394
	INT59	-	-	-	-
	INT60	Internal	Rising-Edge Trig (Not Adjustable)	TMRINTA0	Section 7.13.3.6 , p376
	INT61	Internal		TMRINTA1	Section 7.13.3.6 , p376
	INT62	Internal		TMRINTB0	Section 7.13.3.6 , p376
	INT63	Internal		TMRINTB1	Section 7.13.3.6 , p376
8	INT64	Internal	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	PMC2EX Output Buffer Empty Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT65	Internal		PMC2EX Input Buffer Full Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT66	Internal		PMC3 Output Buffer Empty Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT67	Internal		PMC3 Input Buffer Full Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT68	Internal		PMC4 Output Buffer Empty Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131

Group	Interrupt	Source	Default Type(Adjustable)	Description	Reference
9	INT69	Internal	-	PMC4 Input Buffer Full Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT70	-		-	-
	INT71	Internal		I2BRAM Interrupt	Section 7.17.4.20, p409
9	INT72	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[70]	Figure 7-16, p215
	INT73	External/WUC		WKO[71]	
	INT74	External/WUC		WKO[72]	
	INT75	External/WUC		WKO[73]	
	INT76	External/WUC		WKO[74]	
	INT77	External/WUC		WKO[75]	
	INT78	External/WUC		WKO[76]	
	INT79	External/WUC		WKO[77]	
	INT80	-	Rising-Edge Trig	-	-
10	INT81	Internal		SMbus Clock Held intr.	Section 7.7.3.2 , p264
	INT82	Internal		CEC Interrupt	Section 7.14.1.1 , p384
	INT83	Internal	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	H2RAM LPC Trigger	Section 6.3.4.61 , p106
	INT84	Internal		KB Scan Data Valid Interrupt	Section 7.4.4.35 , p230
	INT85	External/WUC		WKO[88]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT86	External/WUC		WKO[89]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT87	External/WUC		WKO[90]	Figure 7-16 p215

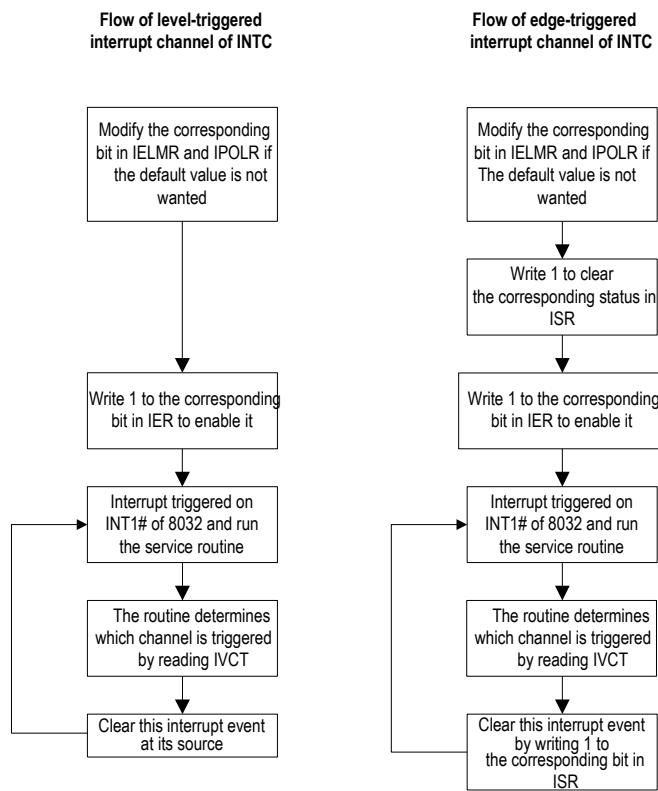
Group	Interrupt	Source	Default Type(Adjustable)	Description	Reference
11	INT88	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[80]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT89			WKO[81]	
	INT90			WKO[82]	
	INT91			WKO[83]	
	INT92			WKO[84]	
	INT93			WKO[85]	
	INT94			WKO[86]	
	INT95			WKO[87]	
	INT96			WKO[91]	
12	INT97	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[92]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT98			WKO[93]	
	INT99			WKO[94]	
	INT100			WKO[95]	
	INT101			WKO[96]	
	INT102			WKO[97]	
	INT103			WKO[98]	
13	INT104	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[99]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT105			WKO[100]	
	INT106			WKO[101]	
	INT107			WKO[102]	
	INT108			WKO[103]	
	INT109			WKO[104]	
	INT110			WKO[105]	
	INT111			WKO[106]	
14	INT112	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[107]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT113			WKO[108]	
	INT114			WKO[109]	
	INT115			WKO[110]	
	INT116			WKO[111]	
	INT117			WKO[112]	
	INT118			WKO[113]	
	INT119			WKO[114]	
15	INT120	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[115]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT121			WKO[116]	
	INT122			WKO[117]	
	INT123			WKO[118]	
	INT124			WKO[119]	
	INT125			WKO[120]	
	INT126			WKO[121]	
	INT127			WKO[122]	

Group	Interrupt	Source	Default Type(Adjustable)	Description	Reference
16	INT128	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[128]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT129			WKO[129]	
	INT130			WKO[130]	
	INT131			WKO[131]	
	INT132			WKO[132]	
	INT133			WKO[133]	
	INT134			WKO[134]	
	INT135	-	-	Reserved	-
17	-	-	-	Reserved	-
18	INT144	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT145	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT146	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT147	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT148	External/WUC	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	WKO[127]	Figure 7-16 p215
	INT149	Internal	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	PMC5 Output Buffer Empty Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT150	Internal	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	PMC5 Input Buffer Full Intr.	Section 6.6.3.1, p131
	INT151	Internal	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	Voltage Comparator Interrupt	Section 7.11.3.1, p330
19	INT152	Internal	High-Level Trig (Not Adjustable)	PECI Interrupt	Section 7.8, p314
	INT153	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT154	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT155	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT156	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT157	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT158	-	-	Reserved	-
	INT159	-	-	Reserved	-

Figure 7-14. INTC Simplified Diagram


7.2.6 Programming Guide

Figure 7-15. Program Flow Chart for INTC



Note: The routine may has its own interrupt priority by reading ISR register.

Note: If this channel source comes from WUC, the corresponding bit in WUESR needs to be cleared, too

7.3 Wake-Up Control (WUC)

7.3.1 Overview

WUC groups internal and external inputs, and asserts wake-up signals to INTC that allows 8032 to exit an Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode.

7.3.2 Features

- Supports internal and external interrupt inputs.
- Supports both the rising-edge and falling-edge triggered mode.
- Input can be connected to INTC directly.

7.3.3 Functional Description

Input sources of WUC are external inputs such as pins about PS/2, GPIO and KB Matrix Scan, or inputs from internal module such as SWUC, LPC and SMBus that handle external inputs.

Each channel can be selected to be rising or falling edge triggered mode. If one channel is disabled, the input bypasses WUC pending logic and is connected directly to INTC.

7.3.4 EC Interface Registers

The EC interface registers are listed below. The base address for WUC is 1B00h.

Table 7-9. EC View Register Map, WUC

7	0	Offset
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 1 (WUEMR1)	00h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 2 (WUEMR2)	01h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 3 (WUEMR3)	02h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 4 (WUEMR4)	03h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 6 (WUEMR6)	10h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 7 (WUEMR7)	14h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 8 (WUEMR8)	18h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 9 (WUEMR9)	1Ch
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 10 (WUEMR10)	20h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 11 (WUEMR11)	24h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 12 (WUEMR12)	28h
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 13 (WUEMR13)	2Ch
	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 14 (WUEMR14)	30h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 1 (WUESR1)	04h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 2 (WUESR2)	05h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 3 (WUESR3)	06h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 4 (WUESR4)	07h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 6 (WUESR6)	11h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 7 (WUESR7)	15h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 8 (WUESR8)	19h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 9 (WUESR9)	1Dh
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 10 (WUESR10)	21h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 11 (WUESR11)	25h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 12 (WUESR12)	29h
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 13 (WUESR13)	2Dh
	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 14 (WUESR14)	31h
	Wake-Up Enable Register 1 (WUENR1)	08h
	Wake-Up Enable Register 3 (WUENR3)	0Ah

7	0	Offset 0Bh
Wake-Up Enable Register 4 (WUENR4)		

7.3.4.1 Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 1-14 (WUEMR1-WUEMR14)

This register configures the trigger mode of input signals Group x. (Refer to Table 7-10 on page 212)

WUEMR1 define in Group 1
 WUEMR2 define in Group 2
 WUEMR3 define in Group 3
 WUEMR4 define in Group 4
 WUEMR6 define in Group 6
 WUEMR7 define in Group 7
 WUEMR8 define in Group 8
 WUEMR9 define in Group 9
 WUEMR10 define in Group 10
 WUEMR11 define in Group 11
 WUEMR12 define in Group 12
 WUEMR13 define in Group 13
 WUEMR14 define in Group 14

Address Offset: 00h-03h,10h,14h,18h,1Ch,20h,24h,28h,2Ch,30h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	<p>Wake-Up Edge Mode Group x (WUEMGRx 7:0)</p> <p>0: Rising-edge triggered is selected.(for Group 1-14) 1: Falling-edge triggered is selected.(for all Group,except Group 7,10,12) or Either-edge (rising-edge or falling-edge) triggered is selected. (only for Group 7,10,12)</p> <p>Always write-1-clear to the corresponding bit in WUESR register after modifying these bits.</p> <p>NOTE: Where x means (1 – 14)</p>

7.3.4.2 Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 1-14 (WUESR1-WUESR14)

This register indicates the occurrence of a selected trigger condition and is associated with input signals Group x. (Refer to Table 7-10 on page 212).

Note: Each bit cannot be set by software. Writing a 1 can clear these bits and writing a 0 has no effect.

WUESR1 define in Group 1
 WUESR2 define in Group 2
 WUESR3 define in Group 3
 WUESR4 define in Group 4
 WUESR6 define in Group 6
 WUESR7 define in Group 7
 WUESR8 define in Group 8
 WUESR9 define in Group 9
 WUESR10 define in Group 10
 WUESR11 define in Group 11
 WUESR12 define in Group 12
 WUESR13 define in Group 13
 WUESR14 define in Group 14

Address Offset: 04h-07h,11h,15h,19h,1Dh,21h,25h,29h,2Dh,31h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/WC	-	Wake-Up Sense Group x (WUSGRx 7:0) For each bit: Read 1: It indicates a trigger condition occurs on the corresponding input. Read 0: Otherwise For each bit: Write 1: Clear this bit Write 0: No action NOTE: Where x means (1 - 14)

7.3.4.3 Wake-Up Enable Register 1/3/4 (WUENR1, WUENR3, WUENR4)

This register enables a wake-up function of the corresponding input signal Group x. (Refer to Table 7-10 on page 212).

NOTE: Only for Group 1/3/4

WUENR1 define in Group 1
 WUENR3 define in Group 3
 WUENR4 define in Group 4

Address Offset: 08h,0Ah,0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0h	Wake-Up Enable Group x (WUENGRx 7:0) 1: A trigger condition on the corresponding input generates a wake-up signal to the power management control of EC. 0: A trigger condition on the corresponding input doesn't assert the wake-up signal; it is canceled but not pending. NOTE: Where x means (1 / 3 / 4)

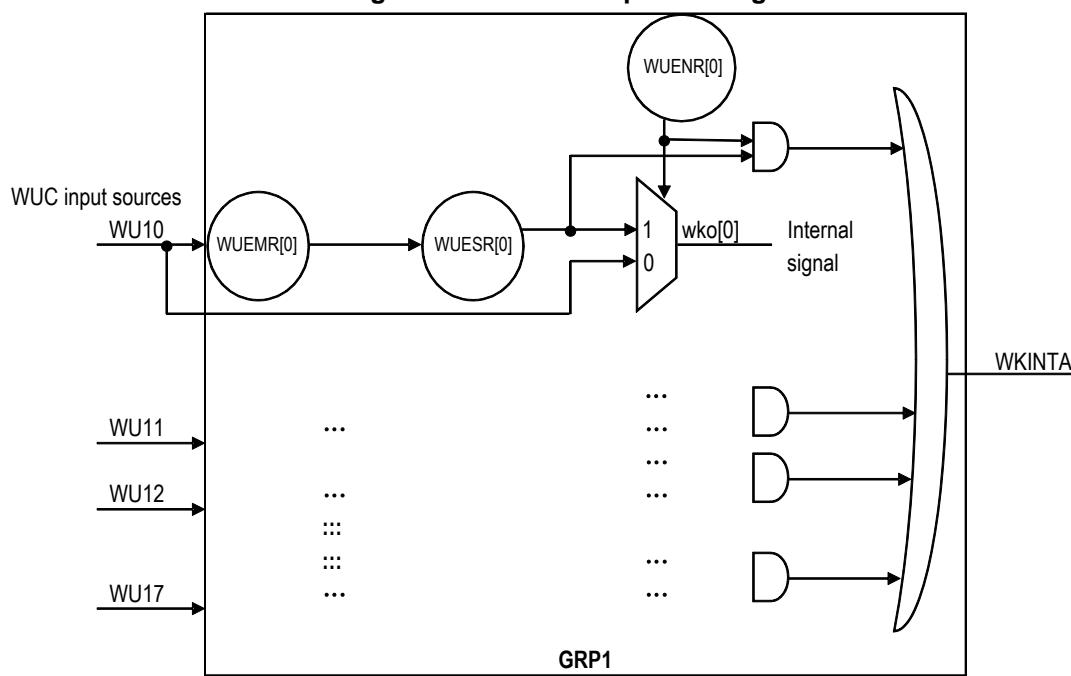
7.3.5 WUC Input Assignments

Table 7-10. WUC Input Assignments

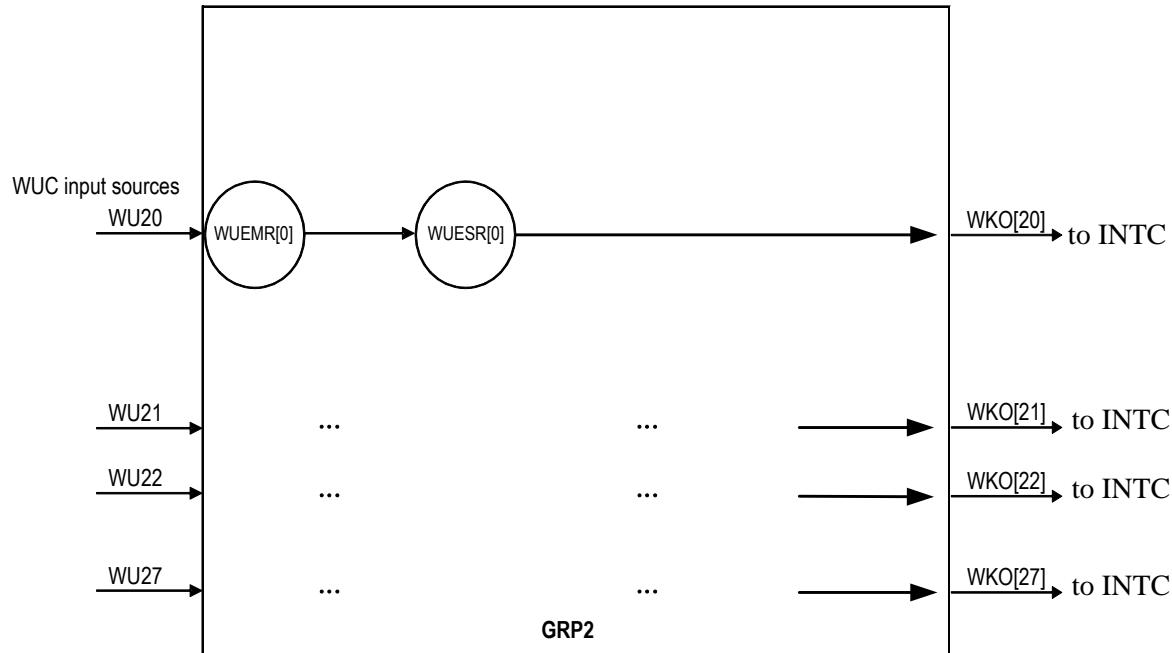
Group	WUC Input	Source	Description	Output to INTC	Default Type (Adjustable)
1	WU10	PS2CLK0	External Source from Pin	WKINTA, to INT5	Rising Edge Trig
	WU11	PS2DAT0	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU12	PS2CLK1	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU13	PS2DAT1	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU14	PS2CLK2	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU15	PS2DAT2	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU16	Reserved			
	WU17	Reserved			
2	WU20	WUI0	External Source from GPD0	WKO[20], to INT1	Rising Edge Trig
	WU21	WUI1	External Source from GPD1	WKO[21], to INT31	Rising Edge Trig
	WU22	WUI2	External Source from GPC4	WKO[22], to INT21	Rising Edge Trig
	WU23	WUI3	External Source from GPC6	WKO[23], to INT6	Rising Edge Trig
	WU24	WUI4	External Source from GPD2	WKO[24], to INT17	Rising Edge Trig
	WU25	PWRSSW	External Source from GPE4	WKO[25], to INT14	Rising Edge Trig
	WU26	SWUC Wake Up	From SWUC Module	WKO[26], to INT12	Rising Edge Trig
	WU27	Reserved			
3	WU30	KSI[0]	External Source from Pin	WKINTC, to INT13	Rising Edge Trig
	WU31	KSI[1]	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU32	KSI[2]	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU33	KSI[3]	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU34	KSI[4]	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU35	KSI[5]	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU36	KSI[6]	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU37	KSI[7]	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
4	WU40	WUI5	External Source from GPE5	WKINTD, to INT5	Rising Edge Trig
	WU41	CRX0/CRX 1	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU42	LPC Access	LPC Cycle with Address Recognized See also Section 6.1.6, p34		Rising Edge Trig
	WU43	SMDAT0	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU44	SMDAT1	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	WU45	WUI6	External Source from GPE6		Rising Edge Trig
	WU46	WUI7	External Source from GPE7		Rising Edge Trig
	WU47	SMDAT2	External Source from Pin		Rising Edge Trig
	-	-	-	-	-

Group	WUC Input	Source	Description	Output to INTC	Default Type (Adjustable)
6	WU60	WUI16	External Source from GPH0	WKO[60], to INT48	Rising Edge Trig
	WU61	WUI17	External Source from GPH1	WKO[61], to INT49	Rising Edge Trig
	WU62	WUI18	External Source from GPH2	WKO[62], to INT50	Rising Edge Trig
	WU63	WUI19	External Source from GPH3	WKO[63], to INT51	Rising Edge Trig
	WU64	WUI20	External Source from GPF4	WKO[64], to INT52	Rising Edge Trig
	WU65	WUI21	External Source from GPF5	WKO[65], to INT53	Rising Edge Trig
	WU66	WUI22	External Source from GPF6	WKO[66], to INT54	Rising Edge Trig
	WU67	WUI23	External Source from GPF7	WKO[67], to INT55	Rising Edge Trig
7	WU70	WUI24	External Source from GPE0	WKO[70], to INT72	Rising Edge Trig
	WU71	WUI25	External Source from GPE1	WKO[71], to INT73	Rising Edge Trig
	WU72	WUI26	External Source from GPE2	WKO[72], to INT74	Rising Edge Trig
	WU73	WUI27	External Source from GPE3	WKO[73], to INT75	Rising Edge Trig
	WU74	WUI28	External Source from GPI4	WKO[74], to INT76	Rising Edge Trig
	WU75	WUI29	External Source from GPI5	WKO[75], to INT77	Rising Edge Trig
	WU76	WUI30	External Source from GPI6	WKO[76], to INT78	Rising Edge Trig
	WU77	WUI31	External Source from GPI7	WKO[77], to INT79	Rising Edge Trig
8	WU80	WUI32	External Source from GPA3	WKO[80], to INT88	Rising Edge Trig
	WU81	WUI33	External Source from GPA4	WKO[81], to INT89	Rising Edge Trig
	WU82	WUI34	External Source from GPA5	WKO[82], to INT90	Rising Edge Trig
	WU83	WUI35	External Source from GPA6	WKO[83], to INT91	Rising Edge Trig
	WU84	WUI36	External Source from GPB2	WKO[84], to INT92	Rising Edge Trig
	WU85	WUI37	External Source from GPC0	WKO[85], to INT93	Rising Edge Trig
	WU86	WUI38	External Source from GPC7	WKO[86], to INT94	Rising Edge Trig
	WU87	WUI39	External Source from GPD7	WKO[87], to INT95	Rising Edge Trig
9	WU88	WUI40	External Source from GPH4	WKO[88], to INT85	Rising Edge Trig
	WU89	WUI41	External Source from GPH5	WKO[89], to INT86	Rising Edge Trig
	WU90	WUI42	External Source from GPH6	WKO[90], to INT87	Rising Edge Trig
	WU91	WUI43	External Source from GPA0	WKO[91], to INT96	Rising Edge Trig
	WU92	WUI44	External Source from GPA1	WKO[92], to INT97	Rising Edge Trig
	WU93	WUI45	External Source from GPA2	WKO[93], to INT98	Rising Edge Trig
	WU94	WUI46	External Source from GPB4	WKO[94], to INT99	Rising Edge Trig
	WU95	WUI47	External Source from GPC2	WKO[95], to INT100	Rising Edge Trig
10	WU96	WUI48	External Source from GPF0	WKO[96], to INT101	Rising Edge Trig
	WU97	WUI49	External Source from GPF1	WKO[97], to INT102	Rising Edge Trig
	WU98	WUI50	External Source from GPF2	WKO[98], to INT103	Rising Edge Trig
	WU99	WUI51	External Source from GPF3	WKO[99], to INT104	Rising Edge Trig
	WU100	WUI52	External Source from GPA7	WKO[100], to INT105	Rising Edge Trig
	WU101	WUI53	External Source from GPB0	WKO[101], to INT106	Rising Edge Trig
	WU102	WUI54	External Source from GPB1	WKO[102], to INT107	Rising Edge Trig
	WU103	WUI55	External Source from GPB3	WKO[103], to INT108	Rising Edge Trig

Group	WUC Input	Source	Description	Output to INTC	Default Type (Adjustable)
11	WU104	WUI56	External Source from GPB5	WKO[104], to INT109	Rising Edge Trig
	WU105	WUI57	External Source from GPB6	WKO[105], to INT110	Rising Edge Trig
	WU106	WUI58	External Source from GPB7	WKO[106], to INT111	Rising Edge Trig
	WU107	WUI59	External Source from GPC1	WKO[107], to INT112	Rising Edge Trig
	WU108	WUI60	External Source from GPC3	WKO[108], to INT113	Rising Edge Trig
	WU109	WUI61	External Source from GPC5	WKO[109], to INT114	Rising Edge Trig
	WU110	WUI62	External Source from GPD3	WKO[110], to INT115	Rising Edge Trig
	WU111	WUI63	External Source from GPD4	WKO[111], to INT116	Rising Edge Trig
12	WU112	WUI64	External Source from GPD5	WKO[112], to INT117	Rising Edge Trig
	WU113	WUI65	External Source from GPD6	WKO[113], to INT118	Rising Edge Trig
	WU114	WUI66	External Source from GPE4	WKO[114], to INT119	Rising Edge Trig
	WU115	WUI67	External Source from GPG0	WKO[115], to INT120	Rising Edge Trig
	WU116	WUI68	External Source from GPG1	WKO[116], to INT121	Rising Edge Trig
	WU117	WUI69	External Source from GPG2	WKO[117], to INT122	Rising Edge Trig
	WU118	WUI70	External Source from GPG6	WKO[118], to INT123	Rising Edge Trig
	WU119	WUI71	External Source from GPIO	WKO[119], to INT124	Rising Edge Trig
13	WU120	WUI72	External Source from GPI1	WKO[120], to INT125	Rising Edge Trig
	WU121	WUI73	External Source from GPI2	WKO[121], to INT126	Rising Edge Trig
	WU122	WUI74	External Source from GPI3	WKO[122], to INT127	Rising Edge Trig
	WU123	-	Reserved	-	-
	WU124	-	Reserved	-	-
	WU125	-	Reserved	-	-
	WU126	-	Reserved	-	-
	WU127	WUI79	External Source from GPH7	WKO[127], to INT148	Rising Edge Trig
14	WU128	WUI80	External Source from GPJ0	WKO[128], to INT128	Rising Edge Trig
	WU129	WUI81	External Source from GPJ1	WKO[129], to INT129	Rising Edge Trig
	WU130	WUI82	External Source from GPJ2	WKO[130], to INT130	Rising Edge Trig
	WU131	WUI83	External Source from GPJ3	WKO[131], to INT131	Rising Edge Trig
	WU132	WUI84	External Source from GPJ4	WKO[132], to INT132	Rising Edge Trig
	WU133	WUI85	External Source from GPJ5	WKO[133], to INT133	Rising Edge Trig
	WU134	WUI86	External Source from GPJ6	WKO[134], to INT134	Rising Edge Trig
	WU135	-	Reserved	-	-

Figure 7-16. WUC Simplified Diagram


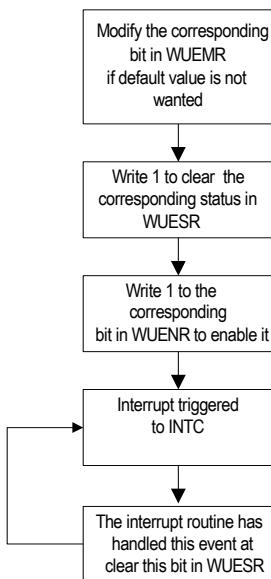
from GRP1 WKINTA to INTC
from GRP3 WKINTC to INTC
from GRP4 WKINTD to INTC



7.3.6 Programming Guide

Figure 7-17. Program Flow Chart for WUC

Flow of edge triggered
interrupt channel of WUC



7.4 Keyboard Matrix Scan Controller

7.4.1 Overview

The module provides control for keyboard matrix scan.

7.4.2 Features

- Supports 18 x scan output
- Supports 8 x scan input
- Supports Schmitt trigger input pin
- Supports programmable pull-up on all output/input pins
- Supports one interrupt (connected to INT11 of INTC) for any KSI inputs to go low to wake up the system
- Supports GPIO mode for all KBS pins (GPIO mode overrides EPP mode)

7.4.3 Functional Description

- **KSI/KSO Used as Keyboard Matrix**

Normal usage.

- **KSI/KSO Used as GPIO**

If the EC is applied to a platform without keyboard matrix, KSI/KSO pins can be used as GPIO. See also Figure 7-50. Parallel Port Female 25-Pin Connector on page 459.

Table 7-11. KSI/KSO as GPIO List

KSI0/STB#	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSI1/AFD#	Hardware strap	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSI2/INIT#	Hardware strap	EPP Constant Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSI3/SLIN#	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSI4	Hardware strap	—	Could be used as GPIO
KSI5	Hardware strap	—	Could be used as GPIO
KSI6	—	—	Could be used as GPIO
KSI7	—	—	Could be used as GPIO
KSO0/PD0	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO1/PD1	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO2/PD2	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO3/PD3	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO4/PD4	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO5/PD5	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO6/PD6	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO7/PD7	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO8/ACK#	—	EPP Constant Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO9/BUSY	—	EPP Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO10/PE	—	EPP Constant Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO11/ERR#	—	EPP Constant Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO12/SLCT	—	EPP Constant Signal	Could be used as GPIO
KSO13	—	—	Could be used as GPIO
KSO14	—	—	Could be used as GPIO
KSO15	—	—	Could be used as GPIO

7.4.4 EC Interface Registers

The keyboard matrix scan registers are listed below. The base address is 1D00h.

Table 7-12. EC View Register Map, KB Scan

7	0	Offset
	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] (KSOL)	00h
	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] (KSOH1)	01h
	Keyboard Scan Out Control (KSOCTRL)	02h
	Keyboard Scan Out [17:16] (KSOH2)	03h
	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] (KSI)	04h
	Keyboard Scan In Control (KSICTRLR)	05h
	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Control Register (KSIGCTRL)	06h
	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Ouput Enable Register (KSIGOEN)	07h
	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Data Register (KSIGDAT)	08h
	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSIGDMRR)	09h
	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Control Register (KSOHGCTRL)	0Ah
	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSOHGOEN)	0Bh
	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSOHGDMRR)	0Ch
	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Control Register (KSOLGCTRL)	0Dh
	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSOLGOEN)	0Eh
	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSOLGDMRR)	0Fh
	KSO0 Low Scan Data Register (KSO0LSDR)	10h
	KSO1 Low Scan Data Register (KSO1LSDR)	11h
	KSO2 Low Scan Data Register (KSO2LSDR)	12h
	KSO3 Low Scan Data Register (KSO3LSDR)	13h
	KSO4 Low Scan Data Register (KSO4LSDR)	14h
	KSO5 Low Scan Data Register (KSO5LSDR)	15h
	KSO6 Low Scan Data Register (KSO6LSDR)	16h
	KSO7 Low Scan Data Register (KSO7LSDR)	17h
	KSO8 Low Scan Data Register (KSO8LSDR)	18h
	KSO9 Low Scan Data Register (KSO9LSDR)	19h
	KSO10 Low Scan Data Register (KSO10LSDR)	1Ah
	KSO11 Low Scan Data Register (KSO11LSDR)	1Bh
	KSO12 Low Scan Data Register (KSO12LSDR)	1Ch
	KSO13Low Scan Data Register (KSO13LSDR)	1Dh
	KSO14Low Scan Data Register (KSO14LSDR)	1Eh
	KSO15 Low Scan Data Register (KSO15LSDR)	1Fh
	KSO16 Low Scan Data Register (KSO16LSDR)	20h
	KSO17 Low Scan Data Register (KSO17LSDR)	21h
	Scan Data Control1 Register (SDC1R)	22h
	Scan Data Control2 Register (SDC2R)	23h
	Scan Data Control3 Register (SDC3R)	24h
	Scan Data Status Register (SDSR)	25h

7.4.4.1 Keyboard Scan Out Low Byte Data Register (KSOL)

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Keyboard Scan Out Low Data [7:0] (KSOL) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan output register which controls the KSO[7:0] pins. In GPIO mode, this register is used as KSO[7:0] Data Register (refer to the related KSO GPIO registers).

7.4.4.2 Keyboard Scan Out High Byte Data 1 Register (KSOH1)

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Keyboard Scan Out High Data 1 [7:0] (KSOH1) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan output register which controls the KSO[15:8] pins. In GPIO mode, this register is used as KSO[15:8] Data Register (Refer to the related KSO GPIO registers).

7.4.4.3 Keyboard Scan Out Control Register (KSOCTRL)

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	KSO Pull Up (KSOPU) Setting 1 enables the internal pull-up of the KSO[15:0] pins. To pull up KSO[17:16], set the GPCR registers of their corresponding GPIO ports. In GPIO mode, the internal pull-up of the pins KSO[15:0] is always disabled even if this bit is set.
1	-	-	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	KSO Open Drain (KSOOD) Setting 1 enables the open-drain mode of the KSO[17:0] pins. Setting 0 selects the push-pull mode. In GPIO mode, the open-drain mode of the pins KSO[15:0] is always disabled even if this bit is set.

7.4.4.4 Keyboard Scan Out High Byte Data 2 Register (KSOH2)

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	Keyboard Scan Out High Data 2 [1:0] (KSOH2) This is the 2-bit keyboard scan output register which controls the KSO[17:16] pins.

7.4.4.5 Keyboard Scan In Data Register (KSIR)

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Keyboard Scan In High Data [7:0] (KSI) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan input register which shows the value of the KSI[7:0] pins.

7.4.4.6 Keyboard Scan In Control Register (KSICTRLR)

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	000b	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	Override PP from KBS (OVRPPK) This bit overrides PP function which is enabled by hardware strap in KBS interface and disables it.
3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	KSI Pull Up (KSIPU) Setting 1 enables the internal pull-up of the KSI[7:0] pins. In GPIO mode, the internal pull-up of the pins KSI[7:0] is always disabled even if this bit is set.
1	-	-	Reserved
0	-	-	Reserved

7.4.4.7 Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Control Register (KSIGCTRLR)

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	KSI7 GPIO Control (KSI7GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
6	R/W	0b	KSI6 GPIO Control (KSI6GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
5	R/W	0b	KSI5 GPIO Control (KSI5GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
4	R/W	0b	KSI4 GPIO Control (KSI4GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
3	R/W	0b	KSI3 GPIO Control (KSI3GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
2	R/W	0b	KSI2 GPIO Control (KSI2GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
1	R/W	0b	KSI1 GPIO Control (KSI1GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
0	R/W	0b	KSI0 GPIO Control (KSI0GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode

7.4.4.8 Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSIGOENR)

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	KSI7 GPIO Output Enable (KSI7GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
6	R/W	0b	KSI6 GPIO Output Enable (KSI6GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
5	R/W	0b	KSI5 GPIO Output Enable (KSI5GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
4	R/W	0b	KSI4 GPIO Output Enable (KSI4GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
3	R/W	0b	KSI3 GPIO Output Enable (KSI3GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
2	R/W	0b	KSI2 GPIO Output Enable (KSI2GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
1	R/W	0b	KSI1 GPIO Output Enable (KSI1GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
0	R/W	0b	KSI0 GPIO Output Enable (KSI0GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.

7.4.4.9 Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Data Register (KSIGDATR)

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	KSI7 GPIO Data (KSI7GDAT) In GPIO mode, KSI7 will output this bit if the corresponding Output Enable bit is enabled.
6	R/W	0b	KSI6 GPIO Data (KSI6GDAT) In GPIO mode, KSI6 will output this bit if the corresponding Output Enable bit is enabled.
5	R/W	0b	KSI5 GPIO Data (KSI5GDAT) In GPIO mode, KSI5 will output this bit if the corresponding Output Enable bit is enabled.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
4	R/W	0b	KSI4 GPIO Data (KSI4GDAT) In GPIO mode, KSI4 will output this bit if the corresponding Output Enable bit is enabled.
3	R/W	0b	KSI3 GPIO Data (KSI3GDAT) In GPIO mode, KSI3 will output this bit if the corresponding Output Enable bit is enabled.
2	R/W	0b	KSI2 GPIO Data (KSI2GDAT) In GPIO mode, KSI2 will output this bit if the corresponding Output Enable bit is enabled.
1	R/W	0b	KSI1 GPIO Data (KSI1GDAT) In GPIO mode, KSI1 will output this bit if the corresponding Output Enable bit is enabled.
0	R/W	0b	KSI0 GPIO Data (KSI0GDAT) In GPIO mode, KSI0 will output this bit if the corresponding Output Enable bit is enabled.

7.4.4.10 Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSIGDMRR)

Address Offset: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	KSI7 GPIO Data Mirror (KSI7GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSI7 status on reads.
6	R	0b	KSI6 GPIO Data Mirror (KSI6GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSI6 status on reads.
5	R	0b	KSI5 GPIO Data Mirror (KSI5GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSI5 status on reads.
4	R	0b	KSI4 GPIO Data Mirror (KSI4GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSI4 status on reads.
3	R	0b	KSI3 GPIO Data Mirror (KSI3GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSI3 status on reads.
2	R	0b	KSI2 GPIO Data Mirror (KSI2GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSI2 status on reads.
1	R	0b	KSI1 GPIO Data Mirror (KSI1GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSI1 status on reads.
0	R	0b	KSI0 GPIO Data Mirror (KSI0GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSI0 status on reads.

7.4.4.11 Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Control Register (KSOHGCTRLR)

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	KSO15 GPIO Control (KSO15GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
6	R/W	0b	KSO14 GPIO Control (KSO14GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
5	R/W	0b	KSO13 GPIO Control (KSO13GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
4	R/W	0b	KSO12 GPIO Control (KSO12GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
3	R/W	0b	KSO11 GPIO Control (KSO11GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
2	R/W	0b	KSO10 GPIO Control (KSO10GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
1	R/W	0b	KSO9 GPIO Control (KSO9GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
0	R/W	0b	KSO8 GPIO Control (KSO8GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode

7.4.4.12 Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSOHGOENR)

Address Offset: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	KSO15 GPIO Output Enable (KSO15GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
6	R/W	0b	KSO14 GPIO Output Enable (KSO14GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
5	R/W	0b	KSO13 GPIO Output Enable (KSO13GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
4	R/W	0b	KSO12 GPIO Output Enable (KSO12GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
3	R/W	0b	KSO11 GPIO Output Enable (KSO11GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
2	R/W	0b	KSO10 GPIO Output Enable (KSO10GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
1	R/W	0b	KSO9 GPIO Output Enable (KSO9GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
0	R/W	0b	KSO8 GPIO Output Enable (KSO8GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.

7.4.4.13 Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSOHGDMRRR)

Address Offset: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	KSO15 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO15GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO15 status on reads.
6	R	0b	KSO14 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO14GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO14 status on reads.
5	R	0b	KSO13 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO13GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO13 status on reads.
4	R	0b	KSO12 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO12GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO12 status on reads.
3	R	0b	KSO11 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO11GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO11 status on reads.
2	R	0b	KSO10 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO10GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO10 status on reads.
1	R	0b	KSO9 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO9GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO9 status on reads.
0	R	0b	KSO8 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO8GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO8 status on reads.

7.4.4.14 Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Control Register (KSOLGCTRLR)

Address Offset: 0Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	KSO7 GPIO Control (KSO7GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
6	R/W	0b	KSO6 GPIO Control (KSO6GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
5	R/W	0b	KSO5 GPIO Control (KSO5GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
4	R/W	0b	KSO4 GPIO Control (KSO4GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
3	R/W	0b	KSO3 GPIO Control (KSO3GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
2	R/W	0b	KSO2 GPIO Control (KSO2GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
1	R/W	0b	KSO1 GPIO Control (KSO1GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode
0	R/W	0b	KSO0 GPIO Control (KSO0GCTRL) 0: KBS mode 1: GPIO mode

7.4.4.15 Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSOLGOENR)

Address Offset: 0Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	KSO7 GPIO Output Enable (KSO7GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
6	R/W	0b	KSO6 GPIO Output Enable (KSO6GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
5	R/W	0b	KSO5 GPIO Output Enable (KSO5GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
4	R/W	0b	KSO4 GPIO Output Enable (KSO4GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
3	R/W	0b	KSO3 GPIO Output Enable (KSO3GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
2	R/W	0b	KSO2 GPIO Output Enable (KSO2GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
1	R/W	0b	KSO1 GPIO Output Enable (KSO1GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.
0	R/W	0b	KSO0 GPIO Output Enable (KSO0GOEN) 0: Disable GPIO output 1: Enable GPIO output In KBS mode, this bit has no effect.

7.4.4.16 Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSOLGDMRRR)

Address Offset: 0Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	KSO7 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO7GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO7 status on reads.
6	R	0b	KSO6 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO6GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO6 status on reads.
5	R	0b	KSO5 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO5GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO5 status on reads.
4	R	0b	KSO4 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO4GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO4 status on reads.
3	R	0b	KSO3 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO3GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO3 status on reads.
2	R	0b	KSO2 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO2GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO2 status on reads.
1	R	0b	KSO1 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO1GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO1 status on reads.
0	R	0b	KSO0 GPIO Data Mirror (KSO0GDMRR) In KBS mode, this bit always returns 0 on reads. In GPIO mode, this bit returns the pin KSO0 status on reads.

7.4.4.17 KSO0 Low Scan Data Register (KSO0LSDR)

Address Offset: 10h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO0 Low Scan Data Register (KSO0LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO0 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.18 KSO1 Low Scan Data Register (KSO1LSDR)

Address Offset: 11h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO1 Low Scan Data Register (KSO1LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO1 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.19 KSO2 Low Scan Data Register (KSO2LSDR)

Address Offset: 12h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO2 Low Scan Data Register (KSO2LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO2 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.20 KSO3 Low Scan Data Register (KSO3LSDR)

Address Offset: 13h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO3 Low Scan Data Register (KSO3LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO3 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.21 KSO4 Low Scan Data Register (KSO4LSDR)

Address Offset: 14h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO4 Low Scan Data Register (KSO4LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO4 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.22 KSO5 Low Scan Data Register (KSO5LSDR)

Address Offset: 15h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO5 Low Scan Data Register (KSO5LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO5 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.23 KSO6 Low Scan Data Register (KSO6LSDR)

Address Offset: 16h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO6 Low Scan Data Register (KSO6LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO6 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.24 KSO7 Low Scan Data Register (KSO7LSDR)

Address Offset: 17h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO7 Low Scan Data Register (KSO7LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO7 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.25 KSO8 Low Scan Data Register (KSO8LSDR)

Address Offset: 18h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO8 Low Scan Data Register (KSO8LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO8 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.26 KSO9 Low Scan Data Register (KSO9LSDR)

Address Offset: 19h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO9 Low Scan Data Register (KSO9LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO9 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.27 KSO10 Low Scan Data Register (KSO10LSDR)

Address Offset: 1Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO10 Low Scan Data Register (KSO10LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO10 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.28 KSO11 Low Scan Data Register (KSO11LSDR)

Address Offset: 1Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO11 Low Scan Data Register (KSO11LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO11 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.29 KSO12 Low Scan Data Register (KSO12LSDR)

Address Offset: 1Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO12 Low Scan Data Register (KSO12LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO12 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.30 KSO13 Low Scan Data Register (KSO13LSDR)

Address Offset: 1Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO13 Low Scan Data Register (KSO13LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO13 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.31 KSO14 Low Scan Data Register (KSO14LSDR)

Address Offset: 1Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO14 Low Scan Data Register (KSO14LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO14 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.32 KSO15 Low Scan Data Register (KSO15LSDR)

Address Offset: 1Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO15 Low Scan Data Register (KSO15LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO15 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.33 KSO16 Low Scan Data Register (KSO16LSDR)

Address Offset: 20h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO16 Low Scan Data Register (KSO16LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO16 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.34 KSO17 Low Scan Data Register (KSO17LSDR)

Address Offset: 21h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	0b	KSO17 Low Scan Data Register (KSO17LSDR) This is the 8-bit keyboard scan data at the KSO17 pin low. The Data Register is available for reading when Scan Data Valid is set.

7.4.4.35 Scan Data Control1 Register (SDC1R)

Address Offset: 22h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Scan Data Enable (SDEN) 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Scan Data Valid Enable (INTSDVEN) 0: Disable valid interrupt to INT84 1: Enable valid interrupt to INT84
4-3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	001b	Scan Loop Select (SLS) 000b: Reserved 001b: 2 round 010b: 3 round 011b: 4 round 100b: 5 round 101b: 6 round 110b: 7 round 111b: 8 round

7.4.4.36 Scan Data Control2 Register (SDC2R)

Address Offset: 23h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	KSO Pin Count Select (KSOPCS) 00: 8x16 01: 8x17 10: 8x18 11: Reserved
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0h	Wait KSO High Delay (WKSOHDLY) 0h: 23 us 1h: 31 us 2h: 39 us 3h: 47 us 4h: 55 us 5h: 63 us 6h: 71 us 7h: 79 us 8h: 87 us 9h: 95 us Other: Reserved

7.4.4.37 Scan Data Control3 Register (SDC3R)

Address Offset: 24h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	Wait KSO Low Delay (WKSOLDLY) 0h: 11 us 1h: 13 us 2h: 15 us 3h: 17 us 4h: 19 us 5h: 21 us 6h: 23 us 7h: 25 us 8h: 27 us 9h: 29 us Other: Reserved
3-0	R/W	0h	Spacing Delay Between Rounds (SDLYBR) 0h: 0 ms 1h: 1 ms 2h: 2 ms 3h: 3 ms 4h: 4 ms 5h: 5 ms 6h: 6 ms 7h: 7 ms 8h: 8 ms 9h: 9 ms Ah: 10 ms Bh: 11 ms Ch: 12 ms Dh: 13 ms Eh: 14 ms Fh: 15 ms

7.4.4.38 Scan Data Status Register (SDSR)

Address Offset: 25h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	R/WC	0b	Scan Data Valid (SDV) This bit is write cleared. 0: Data not available 1: Data valid

7.5 General Purpose I/O Port (GPIO)

7.5.1 Overview

The General Purpose I/O Port is composed of independent I/O pins controlled by registers.

There are also other available general purpose I/O such as External GPIO Control (EGPC) and hardware strap ID7-0

7.5.2 Features

- I/O pins individually configured as input, output or alternate function
- Supports 87-port GPIO with serial flash
- Configurable internal pull-up resistors
- Configurable internal pull-down resistors
- Supports Schmitt-Trigger input on all ports except group I and group J

7.5.3 EC Interface Registers

The EC interface registers are listed below. The base address for GPIO is 1600h.

Table 7-13. EC View Register Map, GPIO

7	0	Offset
		00h
General Control Register (GCR)		F0h
General Control 1 Register (GCR1)		F1h
General Control 2 Register (GCR2)		F2h
General Control 3 Register (GCR3)		F3h
General Control 4 Register (GCR4)		F4h
General Control 5 Register (GCR5)		F5h
General Control 6 Register (GCR6)		F6h
General Control 7 Register (GCR7)		F7h
General Control 8 Register (GCR8)		F8h
General Control 9 Register (GCR9)		F9h
General Control 10 Register (GCR10)		FAh
General Control 11 Register (GCR11)		FBh
General Control 12 Register (GCR12)		FCh
General Control 13 Register (GCR13)		FDh
General Control 14 Register (GCR14)		FEh
General Control 15 Register (GCR15)		E0h
General Control 16 Register (GCR16)		E1h
General Control 17 Register (GCR17)		E2h
General Control 18 Register (GCR18)		E4h
General Control 19 Register (GCR19)		E5h
General Control 20 Register (GCR20)		E6h
General Control 21 Register (GCR21)		E7h
General Control 22 Register (GCR22)		01h
Port Data Register (GPDR)		02h
Port Data Register (GPDRB)		...
		0Ah
Port Data Register (GPDRJ)		0Dh
Port Data Register (GPDRM)		10h
Port Control n Registers (GPCRA0)		11h
Port Control n Registers (GPCRA1)		...
		5Dh
Port Control n Registers (GPCRJ5)		

7	0	Offset
	Port Control n Registers (GPCRM0)	A0h

	Port Control n Registers (GPCRM6)	A6h
	Port Data Mirror Register (GPDMRA)	61h
	Port Data Mirror Register (GPDMRB)	62h

	Port Data Mirror Register (GPDMRJ)	6Ah
	Port Data Mirror Register (GPDMRM)	6Dh
	Output Type Register (GPOTA)	71h
	Output Type Register (GPOTB)	72h
	Output Type Register (GPOTD)	74h
	Output Type Register (GPOTE)	75h
	Output Type Register (GPOTF)	76h
	Output Type Register (GPOTH)	78h
	Output Type Register (GPOTJ)	7Ah

7.5.3.1 General Control Register (GCR)

This register individually controls the bus state of each port. The input gating and output floating control signals can be used to reduce power consumption in various system conditions.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0h	GPB5 Follow LPCRST# Enable (GFLE) 1: Refer to GFLES0 bit in this register 0: Otherwise Note that GA20 is function 1 of GPB5, LPCRST# is function 1 of GPD2 and WUI4 is function 2 of GPD2.
6	R/W	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Reserved
4-3	-	00b	Reserved
2-1	R/W	10b	LPC Reset Enable (LPCRSTEN) 00: Reserved 01: LPC Reset is enabled on GPB7. 10: LPC Reset is enabled on GPD2. 11: LPC Reset is disabled.
0	R/W	0b	GFLE Set (GFLES0) 1: GPDRB bit 5 will be set if WUI4 is level-low. 0: GPDRB bit 5 will be set immediately if there is a high-to-low transition on WUI4. If this “set” action occurs between a “reading from GPDRB” and “writing to GPDRB”, the GPDRB bit 5 is not writable in the “writing to GPDRB” action.

7.5.3.2 General Control 1 Register (GCR1)

Address Offset: F0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	R/W	0b	Support SSPI BUSY Pin (SSSPIBP) 0b: SSPI does not support BUSY pin 1b: SSPI supports BUSY pin
5-4	R/W	00b	SPI Control (SPICTRL) If this field is zero, the corresponding function 3 of SPI is disabled. Otherwise, partial of them will be set as function 3 if their corresponding GPCRn is 00b. 00b: SPI channel 0 and channel 1 are disabled. 10b: SSCK/SMOSI/SMISO/SSCE1# are enabled. 01b: SSCK/SMOSI/SMISO/SSCE0# are enabled. 11b: SSCK/SMOSI/SMISO/SSCE1#/SSCE0# are enabled.
3-2	R/W	00b	UART2 Control (U2CTRL) If this field is zero, the corresponding function 3 of UART2 is disabled. Otherwise, partial or all of them will be set as function 3 if their corresponding GPCRn is 00b. 00b: UART2 is disabled. 01b: SIN1/SOUT1 are enabled. 10b: SIN1/SOUT1/DSR1#/RTS1#/DTR1#/CTS1#/DCD1# are enabled. 11b: SIN1/SOUT1/DSR1#/RTS1#/DTR1#/CTS1#/DCD1#/RIG1# are enabled.
1-0	R/W	00b	UART1 Control (U1CTRL) If this field is zero, the corresponding function 3 of UART1 is disabled. Otherwise, partial or all of them are set as function 3 if their corresponding GPCRn is 00b. 00b: UART1 is disabled. 01b: SIN0/SOUT0 are enabled. 10b: SIN0/SOUT0/DSR0#/RTS0#/DTR0#/CTS0#/DCD0# are enabled. 11b: SIN0/SOUT0/DSR0#/RTS0#/DTR0#/CTS0#/DCD0#/RIG0# are enabled.

7.5.3.3 General Control 2 Register (GCR2)

Address Offset: F1h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	TACH2Enable (TACH2E) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
6	R/W	0b	CK32K Out Enable (CK32OE) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
5	R/W	0b	SMBus Channel 3 Enable (SMB3E) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
4	R/W	0b	PECI Enable (PECIE) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
3	R/W	0b	TMB1 Enabled (TMB1EN) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
2	R/W	0b	TMB0 Enabled (TMB0EN) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
1	R/W	0b	TMA1 Enabled (TMA1EN) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
0	R/W	0b	TMA0 Enabled (TMA0EN) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.

7.5.3.4 General Control 3 Register (GCR3)

If VCC power-down and I/O port pins have been configured as their respective alternative function mode, enabling these bits will turn off corresponding I/O port pins.

Address Offset: F2h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	R/W	1b	PECI VCC Power-down Gating (PECIPDG) 0b: Disable 1b: Turn off PECI related pins if VCC power-down.
5	R/W	0b	UART2 VCC Power-down Gating (UART2PDG) 0b: Disable 1b: Turn off UART2 related pins if VCC power-down.
4	R/W	0b	UART1 VCC Power-down Gating (UART1PDG) 0b: Disable 1b: Turn off UART1 related pins if VCC power-down.
3	R/W	0b	SSPI VCC Power-down Gating (SSPIPDG) 0b: Disable 1b: Turn off SSPI related pins if VCC power-down.
2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	ECSMI#/ECSCI# VCC Power-down Gating (EEPDG) 0b: Disable 1b: Turn off ECSMI#/ECSCI# related pins if VCC power-down. Please note that this feature is regardless of the GPMD field in GPCR register for EEPDG bit.
0	R/W	0b	CLKRUN#/GA20/KBRST# VCC Power-down Gating (CGKPDG) 0b: Disable 1b: Turn off CLKRUN#/GA20/KBRST# related pins if VCC power-down. Please note that this feature is regardless of the GPMD field in GPCR register for CGKPDG bit.

7.5.3.5 General Control 4 Register (GCR4)

Address Offset: F3h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	000b	Hardware Bypass Enable (HWBPE) 000b: Disable 001b: GPIO6 input will be directly bypassed to BAO. 010b: GPIO7 input will be directly bypassed to BBO. 011b: GPIO6/GPIO7 input will be directly bypassed to BAO/BBO. 101b: GPIO6 input will be directly bypassed to BAO and BBO. Others: Reserved.

7.5.3.6 General Control 5 Register (GCR5)

Address Offset: F4h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6-4	R/W	000b	Power Good Watch Delay Time (PLR2DLY) These bits control the delay time of Power Good Watch function. 000b: about 100 ms. 001b: about 500 ms. 010b: about 1000 ms. 011b: about 1500 ms. 100b: about 2000 ms. 101b: about 2500 ms. 110b: about 3000 ms. 111b: about 4000 ms.
3	R/W	0b	Power Good Drop Pin Select (PGDRPSEL) This bit controls the selection of the drop pins while power good watch condition occurs. 0b: GPB5-7, GPJ1, and GPH0-6 will be reset. 1b: GPB5-7 and GPJ1 will be reset.
2	R/W	0b	Power Good Watch Enable (PGOODEN) 0b: Power Good Watch function is disabled. 1b: Power Good Watch function is enabled. This bit will be cleared when power good watch condition is detected. Please note that whether GPH0-6 will be reset or not is controlled by the PGDRPSEL bit.
1	R/W	0b	TACH1B Enable (T1BEN) 0b: Disabled. 1b: GPJ3 will select TACH1B as its alternative function. Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
0	R/W	0b	TACH0B Enable (T0BEN) 0b: Disabled. 1b: GPJ2 will select TACH0B as its alternative function. Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.

7.5.3.7 General Control 6 Register (GCR6)

Address Offset: F5h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Power Good Watch Pin Select (PGWPSEL) This bit controls the selection of the watch pin in power good watch function. 0b: GPIOH4 is selected. 1b: GPIOE0 is selected.
4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	1b	UART SOUT1 Enable (SOUT1EN) This bit enables the transmitter of UART2 separately. 0b: SOUT1 is disabled. 1b: SOUT1 is enabled.
2	R/W	1b	UART SIN1 Enable (SIN1EN) This bit enables the receiver of UART2 separately. 0b: SIN1 is disabled. 1b: SIN1 is enabled.
1	R/W	1b	UART SOUT0 Enable (SOUT0EN) This bit enables the transmitter of UART1 separately. 0b: SOUT0 is disabled. 1b: SOUT0 is enabled.
0	R/W	1b	UART SIN0 Enable (SIN0EN) This bit enables the receiver of UART1 separately. 0b: SIN0 is disabled. 1b: SIN0 is enabled.

7.5.3.8 General Control 7 Register (GCR7)

Address Offset: F6h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	SMCLK2 Pin Switch (SMCLK2PS) 0b: SMCLK2 is located on GPF6. 1b: SMCLK2 is located on GPC7. Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
6-0	-	-	Reserved

7.5.3.9 General Control 8 Register (GCR8)

Address Offset: F7h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	CEC Enable (CECEN) Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250.
4	R/W	0b	PWRSW WDT 2 Enable 1 (PWSW2EN1) A timeout reset event will be asserted to reset EC after PWRSW has been pulled low for more than a determined period indicated by PWDT2CNTR on page 240. 0b: Disable. 1b: Dedicate PWRSW to timeout reset function. Once the bit is set, it cannot be disabled until VSTBY Power-Up Reset or Warm Reset.
3-2	R/W	00b	UART2 Control 2 (U2CTRL2) If this field is zero, the corresponding function 3 of UART2 is disabled when U2CTRL is set to 00b. Otherwise, partial or all of them will be set as function 3 if their corresponding GPCRn is 00b. 00b: UART2 is disabled when U2CTRL is set to 00b. 01b: SIN1/SOUT1/RTS1# are enabled. 10b: SIN1/SOUT1/RTS1#/CTS1# are enabled. 11b: SIN1/SOUT1/DSR1#/RTS1#/DTR1#/CTS1# are enabled.
1-0	R/W	00b	UART1 Control 2 (U1CTRL2) If this field is zero, the corresponding function 3 of UART1 is disabled when U1CTRL is set to 00b. Otherwise, partial or all of them are set as function 3 if their corresponding GPCRn is 00b. 00b: UART1 is disabled when U1CTRL is set to 00b. 01b: SIN0/SOUT0/RTS0# are enabled. 10b: SIN0/SOUT0/RTS0#/CTS0# are enabled. 11b: SIN0/SOUT0/DSR0#/RTS0#/DTR0#/CTS0# are enabled.

7.5.3.10 General Control 9 Register (GCR9)

Address Offset: F8h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5	WO	0b	PWRSW WDT 2 Enable 2 (PWSW2EN2) A timeout reset event will be asserted to reset EC after PWRSW has been pulled low for more than a determined period indicated by PWDT2CNTR on page 240. 0b: Disable. 1b: Dedicate PWRSW to timeout reset function. Writing 1 to this bit will enable WDT2. Writing data to this bit is ignored if PWSW2EN1 bit is set.
4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	PWRSW WDT 2 GPO Output Enable (PWSWDT2GPEN) A timeout reset event will be asserted to generate low pulse on GPI5 after PWRSW has been pulled low for more than a determined period. 0b: Disable 1b: Enable NOTE: GPI5 should be alternate function.
2	R/W	0b	PWRSW WDT 1 Enable 2 (PWSW1EN2) A timeout reset event will be asserted to reset EC after PWRSW has been pulled low for more than a determined period indicated by PWDT1CNTR on page 240. 0b: Disable. 1b: Dedicate PWRSW to timeout reset function . Writing 1 to this bit will enable or re-start WDT1. Writing data to this bit is ignored if PWSW1EN1 bit is set.
1	R/W	0b	PWRSW WDT 1 Enable 1 (PWSW1EN1) A timeout reset event will be asserted to reset EC after PWRSW has been pulled low for more than a determined period indicated by PWDT1CNTR on page 240. 0b: Disable. 1b: Dedicate PWRSW to timeout reset function . Once the bit is set, it cannot be disabled until VSTBY Power-Up Reset or Warm Reset.
0	R/W	0b	Check PWRSW (CHKPWRSW) 0: WDT1/2 counts only if PWRSW low, otherwise cleared. 1: WDT1/2 counts only if PWRSW low and GPE6 high, otherwise cleared.

7.5.3.11 General Control 10 Register (GCR10)

Address Offset: F9h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	000b	<p>PWRSW WDT 2 Counter Byte (PWDT2CNTR) Selective WDT 2 timeout periods. 000b: 10 sec 001b: 8 sec 010b: 12 sec 100b: 7.5 sec 111b: 15 sec Others: Reserved The register content is not writable if PWSW2EN1 is set. The register content is reloaded when counter state is from “clear” to “count”.</p>

7.5.3.12 General Control 11 Register (GCR11)

Address Offset: FAh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0000b	<p>PWRSW WDT 1 Counter Byte (PWDT1CNTR) Selective WDT 1 timeout periods. 0000b: 4 sec 0001b: 5 sec 0010b: 6 sec 0011b: 7 sec 0100b: 8 sec 0101b: 9 sec 0110b: 10 sec 0111b: 11 sec 1000b: 12 sec Others: Reserved The register content is reloaded when counter state is from “clear” to “count”.</p>

7.5.3.13 General Control 12 Register (GCR12)

Address Offset: FBh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>GPIO Lock Authentication Data (GLAD) The lock state is default off. Write: If the lock state is off, write Auth. Data will enable lock state. If the lock state is on, write the same Auth. Data will disable lock state. Read : 00h: The lock state is off. 01h: The lock state is on.</p>

7.5.3.14 General Control 13 Register (GCR13)

Address Offset: FCh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	GPIOJ0 Lock Enable (GPJ0LE) Enabling this bit will lock the output state of GPIOJ0. NOTE: This bit can be changed only when the lock state is off.
1	R/W	0b	GPIOD7 Lock Enable (GPD7LE) Enabling this bit will lock GPIOD7 output state. NOTE: This bit can be changed only when the lock state is off.
0	R/W	0b	GPIOD6 Lock Enable (GPD6LE) Enabling this bit will lock GPIOD6 output state. NOTE: This bit can be changed only when the lock state is off.

7.5.3.15 General Control 14 Register (GCR14)

Address Offset: FDh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	WUI Debounce Independent Enable (WUIDIE) Debounce Independent for WUI0, WUI1, WUI2, WUI3, WUI5, and PWRSW 0b: Disable 1b: Enable
2-0	R/W	0h	WUI Debounce Select (WUIDS) Debounce WUI inputs from WUI0, WUI1, WUI2, WUI3, WUI5, and PWRSW. 0h: Disable 1h: 16ms 2h: 64ms 3h: 1sec 4h: 2sec

7.5.3.16 General Control 15 Register (GCR15)

Address Offset: FEh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Comparator 2 GPIO Enable (CMP2GPEN) Comparator 2 output to GPJ5 0b: Disable 1b: Enable
1	R/W	0b	Comparator 1 GPIO Enable (CMP1GPEN) Comparator 1 output to GPJ4 0b: Disable 1b: Enable
0	R/W	0b	Comparator 0 GPIO Enable (CMP0GPEN) Comparator 0 output to GPJ3 0b: Disable 1b: Enable

7.5.3.17 General Control 16 Register (GCR16)

Address Offset: E0h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6-4	R/W	0h	WUI1 Debounce Select (WUI1DS) Debounce WUI inputs from WUI1. Only WUIDIE is enabled within GCR14. 0h: Disable 1h: 16ms 2h: 64ms 3h: 1sec 4h: 2sec
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	WUI0 Debounce Select (WUI0DS) Debounce WUI inputs from WUI0. Only WUIDIE is enabled within GCR14. 0h: Disable 1h: 16ms 2h: 64ms 3h: 1sec 4h: 2sec

7.5.3.18 General Control 17 Register (GCR17)

Address Offset: E1h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6-4	R/W	0h	WUI3 Debounce Select (WUI3DS) Debounce WUI inputs from WUI3. Only WUIDIE is enabled within GCR14. 0h: Disable 1h: 16ms 2h: 64ms 3h: 1sec 4h: 2sec
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	WUI2 Debounce Select (WUI2DS) Debounce WUI inputs from WUI2. Only WUIDIE is enabled within GCR14. 0h: Disable 1h: 16ms 2h: 64ms 3h: 1sec 4h: 2sec

7.5.3.19 General Control 18 Register (GCR18)

Address Offset: E2h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6-4	R/W	0h	WUI5 Debounce Select (WUI5DS) Debounce WUI inputs from WUI5. Only WUIDIE is enabled within GCR14. 0h: Disable 1h: 16ms 2h: 64ms 3h: 1sec 4h: 2sec
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	PWRSW Debounce Select (PWRSWDS) Debounce WUI inputs from PWRSW. Only WUIDIE is enabled within GCR14. 0h: Disable 1h: 16ms 2h: 64ms 3h: 1sec 4h: 2sec

7.5.3.20 General Control 19 Register (GCR19)

Address Offset: E4h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	GPB5 Input Voltage Selection (GPB5VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
6	R/W	0b	GPB6 Input Voltage Selection (GPB6VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
5	R/W	0b	GPC1 Input Voltage Selection (GPC1VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
4	R/W	0b	GPC2 Input Voltage Selection (GPC2VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
3	R/W	0b	GPC7 Input Voltage Selection (GPC7VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
2	R/W	0b	GPD0 Input Voltage Selection (GPD0VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
1	R/W	0b	GPD1 Input Voltage Selection (GPD1VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
0	R/W	0b	GPD2 Input Voltage Selection (GPD2VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.

7.5.3.21 General Control 20 Register (GCR20)

Address Offset: E5h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	GPD3 Input Voltage Selection (GPD3VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
6	R/W	0b	GPD4 Input Voltage Selection (GPD4VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
5	R/W	0b	GPE0 Input Voltage Selection (GPE0VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
4	R/W	0b	GPE6 Input Voltage Selection (GPE6VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
3	R/W	0b	GPE7 Input Voltage Selection (GPE7VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
2	R/W	0b	GPF2 Input Voltage Selection (GPF2VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
1	R/W	0b	GPF3 Input Voltage Selection (GPF3VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
0	R/W	0b	GPF4 Input Voltage Selection (GPF4VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.

7.5.3.22 General Control 21 Register (GCR21)

Address Offset: E6h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	GPF5 Input Voltage Selection (GPF5VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
6	R/W	0b	GPF6 Input Voltage Selection (GPF6VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
5	R/W	0b	GPF7 Input Voltage Selection (GPF7VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
4	R/W	0b	GPG1 Input Voltage Selection (GPG1VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
3	R/W	0b	GPG6 Input Voltage Selection (GPG6VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
2	R/W	0b	GPH0 Input Voltage Selection (GPH0VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
1	R/W	0b	GPH1 Input Voltage Selection (GPH1VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
0	R/W	0b	GPH2 Input Voltage Selection (GPH2VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.

7.5.3.23 General Control 22 Register (GCR22)

Address Offset: E7h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	1b	GPB3 Input Voltage Selection (GPB3VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.
0	R/W	1b	GPB4 Input Voltage Selection (GPB4VS) 0b: 3.3V. 1b: 1.8V. Do not enable internal pull-up if this bit is set to one.

7.5.3.24 Port Data Registers A-J,M (GPDRA-J,M)

The Port Data register (GPDR) is an 8-bit register. The pin function is controlled by Port Control Register
www.ite.com.tw

(GPCRn). When the pin function is set to be a general output pin, the value of the GPDRx bit is directly output to its corresponding pin. When the pin function is set to be a general input pin, the pin level status can be detected by reading the corresponding register bit. Each register contains one group which has eight ports at most.

Address Offset: 01h-0Ah, 0Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	GPDRG[0] : 1b Otherwise: 0b	Port Data Register (GPDRn[7:0]) When the pin function is set to be a general output pin, the value of this bit is directly output to its corresponding pin. In the output mode, reading returns the last written data to GPDRn. In other modes, reading this register returns the pin level status. For group I/J, the return data may have no meaningful in the function 1 mode.

7.5.3.25 Port Data Mirror Registers A-J,M (GPDMRA-J,M)
Address Offset: 61h-6Ah,6Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Port Data Mirror Register (GPDMRn[7:0]) Reading this register returns the pin level status. For group I/J, the return data may have no meaningful in the function 1 mode.

7.5.3.26 Port Control n Registers (GPCRn, n = A0-M6)

These registers are used to control the functions of each I/O port pin. Each register is responsible for the settings of one pin in the port.

If Operation Mode is “Alternate Function”, Function 1 and/or Function 2/3 will be enabled. Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function on page 250 for details.

Address Offset: Refer to Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function

Bit	R/W	Default	Description																				
7-6	R/W	Refer to Table 7-14 on page 250	<p>Port Pin Mode (GPMD[1:0]) These bits are used to select the GPIO operation Mode.</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>GPMD[1:0]</th> <th>Pin Status</th> <th>READ GPDRn</th> <th>WRITE GPDRn</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>00b</td> <td>Alternate Function</td> <td>Pin Status</td> <td>GPDR is writable but it has no effects on the pin status.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>01b</td> <td>Output</td> <td>Pin Status</td> <td>The value written to GPDR is output to pin.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10b</td> <td>Input</td> <td>Pin Status</td> <td>GPDR is writable but it has no effects on the pin status.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11b</td> <td>Reserved</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	GPMD[1:0]	Pin Status	READ GPDRn	WRITE GPDRn	00b	Alternate Function	Pin Status	GPDR is writable but it has no effects on the pin status.	01b	Output	Pin Status	The value written to GPDR is output to pin.	10b	Input	Pin Status	GPDR is writable but it has no effects on the pin status.	11b	Reserved	-	-
GPMD[1:0]	Pin Status	READ GPDRn	WRITE GPDRn																				
00b	Alternate Function	Pin Status	GPDR is writable but it has no effects on the pin status.																				
01b	Output	Pin Status	The value written to GPDR is output to pin.																				
10b	Input	Pin Status	GPDR is writable but it has no effects on the pin status.																				
11b	Reserved	-	-																				
5-3	-	-	Reserved																				
2	R/W	Refer to Table 7-14 on page 250	<p>Port Pin Pull Up (GPPU) This bit is used to pull the port. It is always valid regardless of GPMD, input or output. Enable this bit will increase power consumption. Note that if one port is operated in output mode, it should not enable this bit unless its output type is open-drain. For example, clear this bit when DAC0/GPJ0 is switched to alternative function.</p>																				
1	R/W	Refer to Table 7-14 on page 250	<p>Port Pin Pull Down (GPPD) This bit is used to pull the port. This bit is always valid regardless of GPMD, input or output. Never enable pull up/down of a port at the same time or it forms a DC path and has unnecessary leakage current.</p>																				
0	R/W	0	Reserved																				

7.5.3.27 Output Type Registers A/B/D/E/F/H/J (GPOT A/B/D/E/F/H/J)

The Output Type register (GPOT) is an 8-bit register. These registers control the output type of GPIO. Each register contains one group which has eight ports at most. Note that these bits are valid only when corresponding GPMD equals to 01 (Output mode).

Other GPIO pin(s) can support open-drain by setting its(their) GPDR register(s) as 0 and switch GPMD field in GPCR register between input and output mode.

Address Offset: 71h, 72h, 74h, 75h, 76h, 78h, 7Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>Output Type Register (GPOTn[7:0])</p> <p>The adjustable output types are only available on port GPA0-3, GPB0-B7, GPD0-D7, GPE0-E7 , GPF0-F7 , GPH0-H6 and GPJ0-J5.</p> <p>For each bit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0: Push-pull output 1: Open-drain output

7.5.4 Alternate Function Selection

The following lists function 1 and function 2 of each GPIO port. Notice that the GA20 function can be implemented by GPO or function 1 which is implemented at KBC module. Function 1 of GPB6 is KBRST# from KBC module through SWUC mode. LPCRST# is recommended to input from GPD2 port.

Table 7-14. GPIO Alternate Function

Group		Addr	Pin Loc	Func 1	Condition	Func 2	Condition	Func 3	Condition	Output Driving/sinking (mA)	Sch Trig	Pull Cap	Def Pull	5VT	1.8V in	Def Mode
GPIOA	0	1610h	24	PWM0	GPCRA0[7:6]=00	WUI43	Always			8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	1	1611h	25	PWM1	GPCRA1[7:6]=00	WUI44	Always			8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	2	1612h	28	PWM2	GPCRA2[7:6]=00	WUI45	Always			8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	3	1613h	29	PWM3	GPCRA3[7:6]=00	WUI32	Always			8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	4	1614h	30	PWM4	GPCRA4[7:6]=00	WUI33	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	5	1615h	31	PWM5	GPCRA5[7:6]=00	WUI34	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	6	1616h	32	PWM6	GPCRA6[7:6]=00	WUI35	Always	SSCK	GPCRA6[7:6]=00 / SPICTRL>0	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	7	1617h	34	PWM7	GPCRA7[7:6]=00	WUI52	Always	RIG1#	GPCRA7[7:6]=00 / U2CTRL=3	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
GPIOB	0	1618h	108	RXD	GPCRB0[7:6]=00	WUI53	Always	SIN0	GPCRB0[7:6]=00 / U1CTRL>0 / SIN0EN=1	8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	1	1619h	109	TXD	GPCRB1[7:6]=00	WUI54	Always	SOUT0	GPCRB1[7:6]=00 / U1CTRL>0 / SOUT0EN=1	8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	2	161Ah	123	CTX0	GPCRB2[7:6]=00	WUI36	Always	TMA0	GPCRB2[7:6]=00 TMA0EN = 1	8	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	3	161Bh	110	SMCLK0	GPCRB3[7:6]=00	WUI55	Always			4	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	Func1 1.8V in
	4	161Ch	111	SMDAT0	GPCRB4[7:6]=00	WUI46	Always			4	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	Func1 1.8V in
	5	161Dh	126	GA20	GPCRB5[7:6]=00	WUI56	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn			Y	GPI
	6	161Eh	4	KBRST#	GPCRB6[7:6]=00	WUI57	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn			Y	GPI
	7	161Fh	112	RING#	GPCRB7[7:6]=00	PWRFAIL #/ LPCRST#	GPCRB7[7:6] J=00 /LPCRSTEN =01	CK32KOUT	GPCRB7[7:6]=00 / CK32OE=1	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
						WUI58	Always									

EC Domain Functions

Group		Addr	Pin Loc	Func 1	Condition	Func 2	Condition	Func 3	Condition	Output Driving/sinking (mA)	Sch Trig	Pull Cap	Def Pull	5VT	1.8V in	Def Mode
GPIOC	0	1620h	113	CRX0	GPCRC0[7:6]=00	WUI37	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	1	1621h	115	SMCLK1	GPCRC1[7:6]=00	WUI59	Always			4	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	2	1622h	116	SMDAT1	GPCRC2[7:6]=00	WUI47	Always			4	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	3	1623h	56	KSO16	GPCRC3[7:6]=00	WUI60	Always	SMOSI	GPCRC3[7:6]=00 / SPICTRL>0	8	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	4	1624h	120	TMRI0	GPCRC4[7:6]=00	WUI2	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	5	1625h	57	KSO17	GPCRC5[7:6]=00	WUI61	Always	SMISO	GPCRC5[7:6]=00 / SPICTRL>0	8	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	6	1626h	124	TMRI1	GPCRC6[7:6]=00	WUI3	GPCRC6[7:6]=00			2	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	7	1627h	16	PWUREQ#	GPCRC7[7:6]=00	WUI38	Always	BBO	GPCRC7[7:6]=00 / HWBPE[2:1]>0	8/16	Y	Up/Dn			Y	GPI
GPIOD	0	1628h	18	RI1#	GPCRD0[7:6]=00	WUI0	Always			4	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	1	1629h	21	RI2#	GPCRD1[7:6]=00	WUI1	Always			4	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	2	162Ah	22	LPCRST#	LPCRSTEN=10	WUI4	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	Func1
	3	162Bh	23	ECSCI#	GPCRD3[7:6]=00	WUI62	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	4	162Ch	15	ECSMI#	GPCRD4[7:6]=00	WUI63	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn			Y	GPI
	5	162Dh	33	GINT	GPCRD5[7:6]=00	WUI64	Always	CTS0#	GPCRD5[7:6]=00 / U1CTRL>1	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	6	162Eh	47	TACH0A	GPCRD6[7:6]=00	WUI65	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	7	162Fh	48	TACH1A	GPCRD7[7:6]=00	WUI39	Always	TMA1	GPCRD7[7:6]=00 TMA1EN = 1	2	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
GPIOE	0	1630h	19	L80HLAT	GPCRE0[7:6]=00	WUI24	Always	BAO	GPCRE0[7:6]=00 / HWBPE[0]=1	8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	1	1631h	82	EGAD	GPCRE1[7:6]=00	WUI25	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	2	1632h	83	EGCS#	GPCRE2[7:6]=00	WUI26	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	3	1633h	84	EGCLK	GPCRE3[7:6]=00	WUI27	Always			8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	4	1634h	107	PWRSW	GPCRE4[7:6]=00	WUI66	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	5	1635h	35			WUI5	Always	RTS1#	GPCRE5[7:6]=00 / U2CTRL>1	2	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	6	1636h	17	LPCPD#	GPCRE6[7:6]=00	WUI6	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	7	1637h	20	L80LLAT	GPCRE7[7:6]=00	WUI7	Always			8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI

IT8987E/VG (For B Version)



Group		Addr	Pin Loc	Func 1	Condition	Func 2	Condition	Func 3	Condition	Output Driving/sinking (mA)	Sch Trig	Pull Cap	Def Pull	5VT	1.8V in	Def Mode
GPIOF	0	1638h	85	PS2CLK0	GPCRF0[7:6]=00	CEC	GPCRF0[7:6]=00 CECEN = 1 Always	TMB0	GPCRF0[7:6]=00 TMB0EN = 1	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	1	1639h	86	PS2DAT0	GPCRF1[7:6]=00	WUI49	Always	TMB1	GPCRF1[7:6]=00 TMB1EN = 1	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI
	2	163Ah	87	PS2CLK1	GPCRF2[7:6]=00	WUI50	Always	DTR0#	GPCRF2[7:6]=00 / U1CTRL>1	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	3	163Bh	88	PS2DAT1	GPCRF3[7:6]=00	WUI51	Always	RTS0#	GPCRF3[7:6]=00 / U1CTRL>1	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	4	163Ch	89	PS2CLK2	GPCRF4[7:6]=00	WUI20	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	5	163Dh	90	PS2DAT2	GPCRF5[7:6]=00	WUI21	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI
	6	163Eh	117	SMCLK2	GPCRF6[7:6]=00 / SMCLK2PS=0	WUI22	Always	PECI	GPCRF6[7:6]=00 / PECIE=1	4	Y	Up/Dn			Y	GPI
	7	163Fh	118	SMDAT2	GPCRF7[7:6]=00	WUI23	Always	PECIRQT#	GPCRF7[7:6]=00 / PECIE=1	4	Y	Up/Dn			Y	GPI
GPIOG	0	1640h	125			WUI67	Always	SSCE1#	GPCRG0[7:6]=00 / SPICTRL[0]>0	8	Y	Up/Dn				GPO,H
	1	1641h	122			WUI68	Always	DTR1#	GPCRG1[7:6]=00 / U2CTRL>1	8/16	Y	Up/Dn	Dn		Y	GPO,L /ID7
	2	1642h	100			WUI69	Always	SSCE0#	GPCRG2[7:6]=00 / SPICTRL[0]>0	4	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI Must pull down this.
	3	1643h	101	FSCE#	GPCRG3[7:6]=00 or SIFE=1					8 (output only)	Y					GPI Don't pull up this
	4	1644h	102	FMOSI	GPCRG4[7:6]=00 or SIFE=1					8 (output only)	Y					GPI Don't pull up this
	5	1645h	103	FMISO	GPCRG5[7:6]=00 or SIFE=1					(input only)	Y					GPI Don't pull up this
	6	1646h	119			WUI70	Always	DSR0#	GPCRG6[7:6]=00 / U1CTRL>1	4	Y	Up/Dn			Y	GPI Don't pull up this.
	7	1647h	105	FSCK	GPCRG7[7:6]=00 or SIFE=1					8 (output only)	Y					GPI Don't pull up this

EC Domain Functions

Group		Addr	Pin Loc	Func 1	Condition	Func 2	Condition	Func 3	Condition	Output Driving/sinking (mA)	Sch Trig	Pull Cap	Def Pull	5VT	1.8V in	Def Mode
GPIOH	0	1648h	93	CLKRUN#	GPCRH0[7:6]=00	WUI16	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI/ID0
	1	1649h	94	CRX1	GPCRH1[7:6]=00	WUI17	Always	SIN1	GPCRH1[7:6]=00 / U2CTRL>0 / SIN1EN=1	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI/ID1
	2	164Ah	95	CTX1	GPCRH2[7:6]=00	WUI18	Always	SMCLK3	GPCRH1[7:6]=00 / SMB3E=1							GPI/ID2
	3	164Bh	96			WUI19	Always	SOUT1	GPCRH2[7:6]=00 / U2CTRL>0 / SOUT1EN=1	8	Y	Up/Dn		Y	Y	GPI/ID3
	4	164Ch	97			WUI40	Always		GPCRH2[7:6]=00 / SMB3E=1		8/16	Y	Up/Dn		Y	GPI/ID4
	5	164Dh	98			WUI41	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI/ID5
	6	164Eh	99			WUI42	Always			8	Y	Up/Dn		Y		GPI/ID6
	7	164Fh	3			WUI79	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
GPIOI	0	1650h	66	ADC0	GPCRI0[7:6]=00	WUI71	Always			2	Y					GPI
	1	1651h	67	ADC1	GPCRI1[7:6]=00	WUI72	Always			2	Y					GPI
	2	1652h	68	ADC2	GPCRI2[7:6]=00	WUI73	Always			2	Y					GPI
	3	1653h	69	ADC3	GPCRI3[7:6]=00	WUI74	Always			2	Y					GPI
	4	1654h	70	ADC4	GPCRI4[7:6]=00	WUI28	Always			2	Y					GPI
	5	1655h	71	ADC5	GPCRI5[7:6]=00	WUI29	Always	DCD1#	GPCRI5[7:6]=00 / U2CTRL>1	2	Y					GPI
	6	1656h	72	ADC6	GPCRI6[7:6]=00	WUI30	Always	DSR1#	GPCRI6[7:6]=00 / U2CTRL>1	2	Y					GPI
	7	1657h	73	ADC7	GPCRI7[7:6]=00	WUI31	Always	CTS1#	GPCRI7[7:6]=00 / U2CTRL>1	2	Y					GPI

IT8987E/VG (For B Version)



Group		Addr	Pin Loc	Func 1	Condition	Func 2	Condition	Func 3	Condition	Output Driving/sinking (mA)	Sch Trig	Pull Cap	Def Pull	5VT	1.8V in	Def Mode
GPIOJ	0	1658h	76			WUI80	Always	TACH2	GPCRJ0[7:6]=00 / T0BEN=1	4	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	1	1659h	77			WUI81	Always			4	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	2	165Ah	78	DAC2	GPCRJ2[7:6]=00	WUI82	Always	TACH0B	GPCRJ2[7:6]=00 / T0BEN=1	4	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	3	165Bh	79	DAC3	GPCRJ3[7:6]=00	WUI83	Always	TACH1B	GPCRJ3[7:6]==00 / T1BEN=1	4	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	4	165Ch	80	DAC4	GPCRJ4[7:6]=00	WUI84	Always	DCD0#	GPCRJ4[7:6]=00 / U1CTRL>1	4	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	5	165Dh	81	DAC5	GPCRJ5[7:6]=00	WUI85	Always	RIG0#	GPCRJ5[7:6]=00 / U1CTRL=3	4	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	6	165Eh	128			WUI86	Always			2	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
	7	165Fh	2							2	Y	Up/Dn				GPI
GPIOM	0	16A0h	10	LAD0	GPCRM0[7:6]=00					8	Y	Up/Dn				Func1
	1	16A1h	9	LAD1	GPCRM1[7:6]=00					8	Y	Up/Dn				Func1
	2	16A2h	8	LAD2	GPCRM2[7:6]=00					8	Y	Up/Dn				Func1
	3	16A3h	7	LAD3	GPCRM3[7:6]=00					8	Y	Up/Dn				Func1
	4	16A4h	13	LPCCLK	GPCRM4[7:6]=00					2	Y	Up/Dn				Func1
	5	16A5h	6	LFRAME#	GPCRM5[7:6]=00					2	Y	Up/Dn				Func1
	6	16A6h	5	SERIRQ	GPCRM6[7:6]=00					8	Y	Up/Dn				Func1

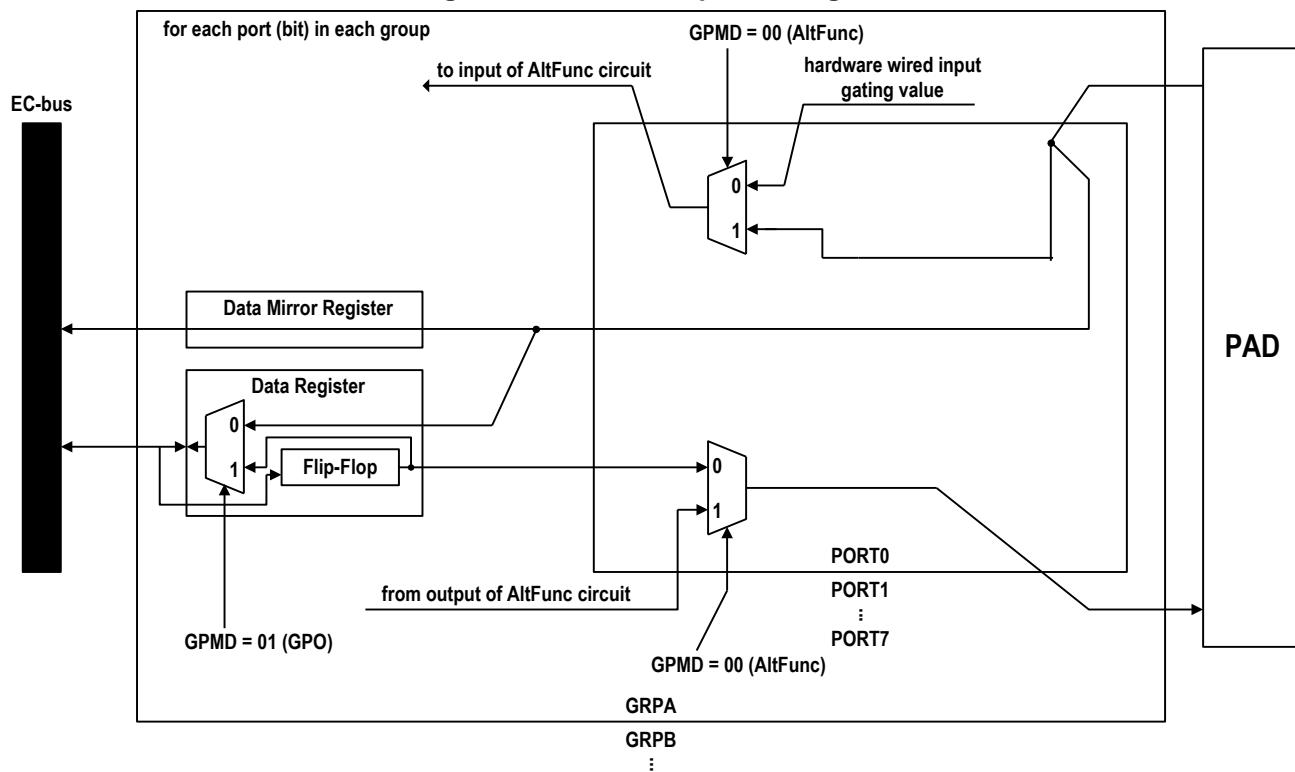
Note: Since all GPIO belong to VSTBY power plane, and there are some special considerations below:

- (1) If it is output to external VCC derived power plane circuit, this signal should be isolated by a diode such as KBRST# and GA20.
- (2) If it is input from external VCC derived power plane circuit, this external circuit must consider not floating the GPIO input.

Table 7-15. GPIO with some other function

Pin	Description	Note
GPC7(=BBO)	Hardware bypass: one of the following: GPIO6 bypass to GPC7. GPIO7 bypass to GPC7.	Refer to Section 7.5.3.5 General Control 4 Register (GCR4), page 236.
GPE0(=BAO)	Hardware bypass: GPIO6 bypass to GPE0.	
GPE4	A timeout reset event will be asserted to reset EC after GPE4 has been pulled low for more than 10 seconds. Reset also will output to GPIO5.	Refer to Section 7.5.3.9 General Control 8 Register (GCR8) , page 238.
In: GPH4, GPIO2, GPIO3 Out: The same as above GPB5-7, GPJ1, GPH0-6	Power Good Watch: Basically, it's an extention of above.	Refer to Section 7.5.3.6 General Control 5 Register (GCR5) , page 236. Refer to Section 7.5.3.7 General Control 6 Register (GCR6) , page 237 .
In: GPE0, GPIO2, GPIO3 Out: The same as above	Power Good Watch: It's alternative input of above.	Refer to Section 7.5.3.6 General Control 5 Register (GCR5) , page 236. Refer to Section 7.5.3.7 General Control 6 Register (GCR6) , page 237 .
GPD0 GPD1 GPC4 GPC6 GPE4 GPE5	Input Debounce circuit Debounce WUI inputs from WUI0, WUI1 ,WUI2 ,WUI3 ,WUI5 and PWRSW.	to Section 7.5.3.15 General Control 14 Register (GCR14) , page 241. Refer to Section 7.5.3.17 General Control 16 Register (GCR16), page 242. Refer to Section 7.5.3.18 General Control 17 Register (GCR17), page 242. Refer to Section 7.5.3.19 General Control 18 Register (GCR18), page 243.

Figure 7-18. GPIO Simplified Diagram



7.5.5 Programming Guide

The firmware should modify LPCRSTEN when it boots up if necessary.

7.6 EC Clock and Power Management Controller (ECPM)

7.6.1 Overview

The EC Clock and Power Management module provide the EC clock control and power management.

7.6.2 Features

- Supports programmable EC clock frequency
- Supported by module power-down mode control
- Supports PLL power-down when 8032 enters a Sleep mode

7.6.3 EC Interface Registers

The clock generation and power management registers are listed below. The base address is 1E00h.

Table 7-16. EC View Register Map, ECPM

7	0	Offset
	Reserved	
	Clock Gating Control 1 (CGCTRL1R)	00h
	Clock Gating Control 2 (CGCTRL2R)	01h
	Clock Gating Control 3 (CGCTRL3R)	02h
	PLL Control (PLLCTRL)	05h
	Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG)	03h
	PLL Frequency (PLLFREQR)	04h
	Reserved	06h
	Clock Gating Control 4 (CGCTRL4R)	07h
		09h

7.6.3.1 Clock Gating Control 1 Register (CGCTRL1R)

This register is reset by VSTBY Power-Up reset only.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	-	-	Reserved

7.6.3.2 Clock Gating Control 2 Register (CGCTRL2R)

This register is reset by VSTBY Power-Up reset only.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	R/W	0b	EGPC Clock Gating (EXGCG) 0: Operation 1: Clock to this module is gated
5	R/W	0b	CIR Clock Gating (CIRCG) 0: Operation 1: Clock to this module is gated
4	R/W	0b	SWUC Clock Gating (SWUCCG) 0: Operation 1: Clock to this module is gated
3	-	-	Reserved
2	-	-	Reserved
1	-	-	Reserved
0	-	-	Reserved

7.6.3.3 Clock Gating Control 3 Register (CGCTRL3R)

This register is reset by VSTBY Power-Up reset only.

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	W	1b	Reserved Always write 1 to this bit.
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	PECI Clock Gating (PECICG) 0: Operation 1: Clocks to PECI module is gated.
2	R/W	0b	UART Clock Gating (UART12CG) 0: Operation 1: Clocks to UART1/UART2 modules are gated.
1	R/W	0b	SSPI Clock Gating (SSPICG) 0: Operation 1: Clock to this module is gated.
0	R/W	1b	DBG Clock Gating (DBGRCG) 0: Operation 1: Clock to this module is gated.

7.6.3.4 PLL Control (PLLCTRL)

This register is reset by VSTBY Power-Up reset only.

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Deep Doze Mode Control (DDMC) 0 : PLL will be disabled 1 : PLL will not be disabled (Deep Doze Mode)
0	R/W	1b	PLL Power Down Control (PPDC) 0: PLL will not be powered down by software until VSTBY is not supplied. Setting PD bit in PCON will enter an EC Doze mode. 1: PLL will be powered down after setting PD bit in PCON and enter an EC power-down mode.

7.6.3.5 Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG)

This register is reset by VSTBY Power-Up reset only.

For the PS/2 module, normally it can not be accomplished to gate the clock of PS/2 module in the Idle/Doze mode if it's clock-gated by PS2CG bit since the clock of PS/2 module should be released immediately after an activity on PS/2 interface. However, it can be accomplished by setting APS2CG bit with enabling its interrupt path.

APS2CG required interrupt path: (corresponding WU10~15) -> INT5 -> 8032 INT1#

For SMB and CIR modules, they are similar.

ASMBCG required interrupt path: (corresponding WU43,44,47) -> INT5 -> 8032 INT1#

CIR required interrupt path: WU41 -> INT5 -> 8032 INT1#

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	R/W	1b	Auto UART1 Clock Gating (AUART1CG) 1: The UART1 clock will be automatically gated if the corresponding port of GPIO is not in its alternative function. It also overrides UART12CG bit in CGCTRL3R register. If UART1SD bit in RSTDMMC register is 1, the clock will also be gated if the chip is in the Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode. If UART1SD bit in RSTDMMC register is 0, the clock will also be gated if VCC is off. 0: The UART1 clock is gated by UART12CG bit in CGCTRL3R register.
5	R/W	1b	Auto UART2 Clock Gating (AUART2CG) 1: The UART2 clock will be automatically gated if the corresponding port of GPIO is not in its alternative function. It also overrides UART12CG bit in CGCTRL3R register. If UART2SD bit in RSTDMMC register is 1, the clock will also be gated if the chip is in the Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode. If UART2SD bit in RSTDMMC register is 0, the clock will also be gated if VCC is off. 0: The UART2 clock is gated by UART12CG bit in CGCTRL3R register.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
4	R/W	1	Auto SSPI Clock Gating (ASSPICG) 1: The SSPI clock will be automatically gated if the corresponding port of GPIO is not in its alternative function. It also overrides SSPICG bit in CGCTRL3R register. If SSPISD bit in RSTDMMC register is 1, the clock will also be gated if the chip is in the Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode. If SSPISD bit in RSTDMMC register is 0, the clock will also be gated if VCC is off. 0: The SSPI clock is gated by SSPICG bit in CGCTRL3R register.
3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Auto CIR Clock Gating (ACIRCG) 1: The CIR clock will be automatically gated by channel if the chip is in the Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode. It also overrides CIRCG bit in CGCTRL2R register. 0: The CIR clock is gated by CIRCG bit in CGCTRL2R register.
1	-	-	Reserved
0	-	-	Reserved

7.6.3.6 PLL Frequency (PLLREQR)

This register is reset by VSTBY Power-Up reset only.

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0001b	PLL Frequency (PLLREQ) 0001b: Select 18.4MHz as PLL frequency. Otherwise: Reserved Read returns the current PLL frequency setting. Writing to this register doesn't change PLL frequency immediately until wakeup from the Sleep mode. SCEMINHW field in FLHCTRL2R register may be required before the PLL frequency is changed.

7.6.3.7 Clock Gating Control 4 Register (CGCTRL4R)

This register is reset by VSTBY Power-Up reset only.

Address Offset: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
0	R/W	1b	CEC Clock Gating (CECCG) 0: Operation 1: Clock to this module is gated.

7.7 SMBus Interface (SMB)

7.7.1 Overview

The SMBus interface includes four SMBus channels. The module can maintain bi-directional communication with the external devices through the interface SMCLK0/SMDAT0, SMCLK1/SMDAT1, SMCLK2/SMDAT2 and SMCLK3/SMDAT3 pins. It is compatible with ACCESS BUS and I2C BUS.

7.7.2 Features

- Supports SMBus 2.0
- Supports four SMBus channels
- Performs SMBus messages with packet error checking (PEC) either enabled or disabled.
- Compatible with I2C cycles
- SMBus master also supports two 32-byte FIFOs for read/write (FIFO Mode). Besides, master FIFO supports threshold function as well.
- Two SMBus slaves on channel A and B. Slave channel A also supports 16-byte FIFO for read/write (FIFO Mode). Besides, slave FIFO supports threshold function as well.
- Two user-defined Slave addresses for each slave
- Supports pre-defined command (dedicated pre-defined slave address) for Slave channel A
- Supports Bridge function; SMBus interface can bridge signal from Slave A to Master C
- Independently select SMCLK frequency for each channel

7.7.3 Functional Description

The SMBus Channel A contains one SMBus master and one SMBus slave.

The SMBus Channel B contains one SMBus master and one SMBus slave.

The SMBus Channel C contains one SMBus master.

The SMBus Channel D contains one SMBus master.

The default interface of the SMBus slave in Channel A is located at SMCLK0/SMDAT0. The default interface of the SMBus slave in Channel B is located at SMCLK1/SMDAT1. The interface of the SMBus slave can be switched to SMCLK1/SMDAT1 or SMCLK2/SMDAT2 or SMCLK3/SMDAT3.

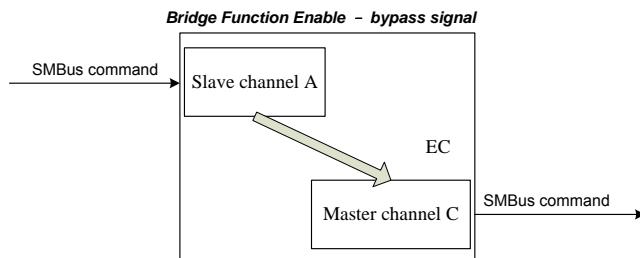
The master supports seven command protocols of the SMBus (see System Management Bus Specification): Quick Command, Send Byte, Receive Byte, Write Byte/Word, Read Byte/Word, Process Call, and Block Read/Write. The master also supports the I2C-compatible cycles (see The I2C-Bus Specification). Furthermore, SMBus master supports 32 Byte FIFO for following commands, Block Write (FIFO Mode), Block Read (FIFO Mode), I2C-compatible Write (FIFO Mode), I2C-compatible Read (FIFO Mode) and I2C Write to Read (FIFO Mode). For Crystal-Free case, SMBus master hardware will continue to complete the transmission of FIFO data to the slave device after EC enters the sleep mode. Master FIFO also supports threshold function. Threshold function lets software process part of FIFO data before FIFO becomes empty and it can improve the transmission performance of the bus.

The slave supports three types of messages: Byte Write, Byte Read, and Host Notify.

Slave channel A also supports pre-defined command. It supports protocol such as I2EC Read/Write, Flash Read and Follow mode command for each SPI instruction.

SMBus interface also supports Bridge function. Whether function is enabled or not is controlled by writing 1 to SBF bit of SLVISELR register. Then write 1 to SMHEN bit of HOCTL2_C to enable Master channel C and write 1 to SLVEN bit of HOCTL2_A to enable slave channel A. Besides, set SCLKS of SCLKTS_C to select SMCLK rate for channel C. Bridge function will bypass slave channel A signal to Master channel C. The data in the bridge mode will be bridged by byte if it is the slave address; otherwise it will be bridged by bit.

Figure 7-19. Diagram of SMBus Bridge Bypass Function



7.7.3.1 SMBus Master Interface

When an interrupt to INTC (INT9, INT10, INT16 and INT4 for channel A, B, C, and D respectively) is detected, software can read the Host Status Register to know the interrupt source. There are 5 interrupt conditions: Byte Done, Failed, Bus Error, Device Error, and Finish.

Quick Command:

In the Quick Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register is sent. Software should force the PEC_EN bit in Host Control Register and I2C_EN bit in Host Control 2 Register to 0 when this command is run.

Send Byte/ Receive Byte:

In the Send Byte command, the Transmit Slave Address and Host Command Registers are sent.

In the Receive Byte command, the Transmit Slave Address Register is sent. The received data is stored in the Host DATA 0 register. Software must force the I2C_EN bit in Host control 2 Register to 0 when this command is run.

Write Byte/ Write Word

In the Write Byte command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, and Host Data 0 Registers are sent.

In the Write Word command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, Host Data 0, and Host Data 1 Registers are sent.

In these commands, software must force the I2C_EN bit in Host Control 2 Register to 0.

Read Byte/ Read Word

In the Read Byte command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register are sent. Data is received into the Host Data 0 Register.

In the Read Word command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register are sent. The returned 2 bytes of data are received into the Host Data 0 Register and Host Data 1 Register.

In these commands, software must force the I2C_EN bit in Host Control 2 Register to 0.

Process Call

In the Process Call command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, Host Data 0 Register, and Host Data1 registers are sent. The returned 2 bytes of data are received into the Host Data 0 Register and Host Data 1 Register. When the I2C_EN bit in Host Control 2 Register is set to 1, the Host Command Register will not be sent.

Note: The Process Call command with I2C_EN bit set and the PEC_EN bit set produce undefined results.

Block Write/ Block Read

In the Block Write command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, and Host Data 0 (byte count) register are sent. Data is then sent from the Host Block Data Byte register.

In the Block Read Commands, the Transmit Slave Address Register, and Host Command Register are sent. The first byte (byte count) received is stored in the Host Data 0 register, and the remaining bytes are stored in the Host Block Data Byte register.

The Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register will be set 1 when the master has received a byte (for Block Read commands) or if it has completed transmission of a byte (for Block Write commands).

Note: On the block read command, software shall write 1 to LAST BYTE bit in Host Control Register when the next byte will be the last byte to be received.

I2C Block Read

This command allows the SMBus logic to perform block reads to I2C devices in a 10-bit addressing mode. In I2C Block Read Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, Host Data 0 Register, and Host Data 1 Register are sent. Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0. The received data is stored in the Host Block Data Byte register.

I2C-compatible Write Command

In I2C-compatible Write Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Block Data Byte Register are sent and the transmitted data is set in the Host Block Data Byte Register. The Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register will be set to 1 when the host has completed transmission of a byte.

Note: Software shall write 0 to I2C_EN bit in Host Control Register 2 when the cycle is decided to be finished.

I2C-compatible Read Command

In I2C-compatible Read Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register is sent and the received data is stored in the Host Block Data Byte Register. The Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register will be set to 1 when the host has received a byte.

Note: Software shall write 1 to LABY bit in the Host Control Register when the next byte to be received is the last one.

I2C-compatible Combined Command

This command allows the SMBus logic to perform direction switch from I2C Write Command to I2C Read Command or from I2C Read Command to I2C Write Command in I2C-compatible cycles. In I2C-compatible Combined Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Block Data Byte Register are sent. Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register is set to decide the direction of the cycle and the received data is also stored in the Host Block Data Byte Register. The Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register will be set 1 when the host has completed transmission of a byte or received a byte.

Note: Software shall control the I2C_SW_EN bit and I2C_SW_WAIT bit in Host Control Register 2 when the direction switch is decided to be performed.

Block Write Command (FIFO Mode)

In the Block Write command(FIFO Mode), the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, and Host Data 0 Register (byte count, if I2C_EN = 0) are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0. The data is then sent from FIFO. (Software shall write data to the Host Block Data Byte Register depending on byte count set in Data 0 Register). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

Note: The I2C_EN bit and PEC_EN bit can't be set high at the same time. It will produce the undefined results.

Block Read Command (FIFO Mode)

In the Block Read commands(FIFO Mode), the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1. When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt. Software read the data from the Host Data 0 Register to get the byte count, and read the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register to get the received data bytes. If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software can read the PEC value from the Packet Error Check Register.

I2C-compatible Write Command (FIFO Mode)

In I2C-compatible Write Command(FIFO Mode), the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Block Data Byte Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address

Register has to be 0. When the datas in the FIFO have been transmitted, an interrupt will be generated. If byte count is less than 32, Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt(Finish interrupt is 1) or check FIFO Block Done status when this transmission is over 32 data bytes(byte count > 32). Software writes the data to the Host Block Data Byte Register, and writes one to clear the Block Done Status bit in the FIFO Control Register, then HW would transmit the successive bytes from FIFO. When the cycle is completed, a Finish interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

I2C-compatible Read Command (FIFO Mode)

In I2C-compatible Read Command(FIFO Mode), the Transmit Slave Address Register is sent (Software shall write data to this register). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1 and the received data byte is stored in the Host Block Data Byte Register. When the datas have been received to FIFO, an interrupt will be generated. If byte count is less than 32, Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt(Finish interrupt is 1). Software can get FIFO datas through Host Block Data Byte Register or check FIFO Block Done status when this transmission is over 32 data bytes(byte count > 32). Software reads the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register, and writes one to clear the Block Done Status bit in the FIFO Control Register, then HW would receive the successive bytes into FIFO. When the cycle is completed, a Finish interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

7.7.3.2 SMBus Slave Interface

The slave supports the following three types of messages: Byte Write, Byte Read, and Host Notify. Furthermore, Slave channel A also supports 16-byte FIFO for read/write (FIFO Mode). Slave FIFO also supports threshold function. Threshold function lets software process part of FIFO data before FIFO becomes empty and it can improve the transmission performance of the bus.

When an interrupt to INTC (INT9 for SMBus slave) is detected, software can read the Slave Status Register to know the interrupt source. There are 4 interrupt conditions: STOP Condition Detect Status, Slave Timeout Status, Slave Data Status, and Host Notify Status. In the Byte Write/Byte Read command, software must write/read data in the Slave Data Register twice to release the SMCLK line. For the first time, software would set/get data in the Slave Data Register, but the SMCLK line would not be released. The SMCLK line would be held low until software writes/reads data in the Slave Data Register for the second time, after which the SMCLK line would be released.

SMBus Slave will issue INT81 for the occurrence of Clock Held event.

Here are the steps Software shall follow:

1. Check SCIS bit of slave status register before enabling slave stretch clock low bit of HOCTL2_A or HOCTL2_B register. SMBus Slave will hold Smbus clock to low after the start bit is received. If the control bit is set, this register required to be set before entering the sleep mode.
2. When INT81 is generated, the software shall check SSSLB bit of SLSTA_A and SLSTA_B Register to know which slave side is stretching SMBCLK low.
3. Software can disable slave stretch clock low function to release clock by writing the slave stretch clock low bit to zero.
4. After the above steps, SMBus Master side will get bus control and continually send data bit to Slave side.

Byte Write

In the byte write command, the value of the first received byte (Slave Address) must match the value in Receive Slave Address Register. If the value of the first received byte matches, the second byte (Command Data) will be received and stored in the Slave Data Register and waiting for the software to read the data (for the first time). The SMCLK line will be held low until the data is read (for the second time). After the data is read, the third byte (Data) is received and stored in the Slave Data Register and waiting for the software to read the data (for the first time). The SMCLK line will be held low until the data is read (for the second time).

Byte Read

In the byte read command, the value of the first received byte (Slave Address) must match the value in Receive Slave Address Register. If the value of the first received byte matches, the second byte (Command Data) will be

received and stored in the Slave Data Register and waiting for the software to read the data (for the first time). The SMCLK line will be held low until the data is read (for the second time). After the Repeated Start and Slave Address cycle, the software shall write the data to the Slave Data Register (for the first time) and this register will be sent during the Data Byte Cycle. The SMCLK line will be held low until the data is set in the Slave Data Register for the second time, after which the SMCLK line would be released.

Host Notify Command

In the host notify command, the first received byte must be 0001000b. The second received byte is stored in the Notify Device Address Register. The next two bytes are stored in the Notify Data Low Byte Register and Notify Data High Byte Register.

7.7.3.3 SMBus Porting Guide

(1).SMBus Master Interface:

The SMBus controller requires that various data and command registers be setup for the message to be sent. When the START bit in the Host Control Register is set, the SMBus controller will perform the requested transaction. Any register values needed for computation purposes should be saved prior to issuing of a new command.

The “Timing Registers” (22h~28h, 33h) should be programmed before the transaction starts. In addition, the SMCLK frequency of channel A~D can be switched independently to 50 kHz, 100 kHz, or 400 kHz by setting the registers 40h~43h, which means SMCLK timing doesn’t relate to “Timing Register (22h~28h, 33h).” Besides the 25ms Register, all of the other count numbers are based on EC clock. For example, write the 1Bh (37 / FreqEC ≈ 4.0us) into the 4.0us register.

(FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484 and this example assumes FreqEC = 9.2 MHz.)

The IT8987 SMBus Interface can perform SMBus messages with either packet error checking (PEC) enabled or disabled (PEC_EN bit = 1 or 0 in the Host Control Register). The actual PEC calculation and checking is performed in software.

Here is the steps the software shall follow to program the registers for various command.

1. Quick Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In Quick Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register is sent (Software shall write data to the Transmit Slave Address Register).
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 41h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Quick Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the data transmission was completed, an interrupt is generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

Note: After reading the Status Register, the software must write 1 to clear it.

2. Send Byte Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In Send Byte Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register are sent (Software shall write data to the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register) (Host Command Register is used for transmitting data here). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 45h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Send Byte/Receive Byte Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

3. Receive Byte Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In Receive Byte Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register is sent (Software shall write data to the Transmit Slave Address Register). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 45h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Send Byte/Receive Byte Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the data transmission was completed, an interrupt was generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.
- (5). In Receive Byte Command, the received data is stored in the Host Data 0 Register. Software can read this register to get the data.

4. Write Byte Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In Write Byte Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, and Host Data 0 Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0.
If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software shall write the PEC value to the Packet Error Check Register and this register will be sent, too.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 49h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Write Byte/Read Byte Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the data transmission was completed, an interrupt was generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

5. Write Word Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In Write Word Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, Host Data 0 Register, and Host Data 1 Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0.
If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software shall write the PEC value to the Packet Error Check Register. And this register will be sent, too.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 4dh to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Write Word/Read Word Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

6. Read Byte Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In Read Byte Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 49h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Write Byte/Read Byte Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.
- (5). In Read Byte Command, the data received is stored in the Host Data 0 Register. Software can read this register to get the data.
If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software can read the PEC value from the Packet Error Check Register.

7. Read Word Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In Read Word Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 4dh to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Write Word/Read Word Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.
- (5). In Read Word Command, the received data is stored in the Host Data 0 Register and Host Data 1 Register. Software can read these registers to get the data.
If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software can read the PEC value from the Packet Error Check Register.

8. Process Call Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Set the I2C_EN bit (in Host Control Register 2) to 1 or force it to 0. When the I2C_EN bit is set, the SMBus logic will instead be set to communicate with I2C device. The Process Call Command will skip the command code.
- (3). In Process Call Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register (if I2C_EN = 0), Host Data 0 Register, and Host Data 1 Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0.
- (4). Start the transaction (Write 51h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Process Call Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (5). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.
- (6). In Process Call Command, the received data is stored in the Host Data 0 Register and Host Data 1 Register. Software can read these registers to get the data.
If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software can read the PEC value from the Packet Error Check Register.

Note: The I2C_EN bit and PEC_EN bit can't be set high at the same time. It will produce the undefined results.

9. Block Write Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Set the I2C_EN bit (in Host Control Register 2) to 1 or force it to 0. When the I2C_EN bit is set, the SMBus logic will instead be set to communicate with I2C device. The Block Write Command will skip sending the byte count (Host Data 0 Register).
- (3). In Block Write Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, and Host Data 0 Register (byte count, if I2C_EN = 0) are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0. The data is then sent from the Host Block Data Byte Register (Software shall write data to this register).
- (4). Start the transaction (Write 55h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Block Read/Block Write Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (5). When the data in Host Block Data Byte Register is sent, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Byte Done Status is 1).
- (6). Software writes the data to the Host Block Data Byte Register, then the data is sent from this register by SMBus logic.
- (7). Repeat step (5) and (6) for the other data byte until all of the data were sent.
If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software shall write the PEC value to the Packet Error Check Register and this register will be sent, too.
- (8). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host

Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

Note: The I2C_EN bit and PEC_EN bit can't be set high at the same time. It will produce the undefined results.

10. Block Read Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In Block Read Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 55h to the Host Control Register, which will select the "Block Read/Block Write Command", enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the byte count and the first byte data are received, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Byte Done Status is 1).
- (5). Software read the data from the Host Data 0 Register to get the byte count, and read the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register to get the first data byte.
- (6). When the next data is received, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Byte Done Status is 1).
- (7). Software read the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register to get the data.
- (8). Repeat step (6) and (7) until the last byte.
- (9). Set the LAST BYTE bit in the Host Control Register to indicate that the next byte will be the last byte to be received.
- (10). Get an interrupt and receive the last byte.

If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software can read the PEC value from the Packet Error Check Register.

11. I2C Block Read Command

This command allows the SMBus logic to perform block reads to I2C devices in a 10-bit addressing mode.

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). In I2C Block Read Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, Host Data 0 Register, and Host Data 1 Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 59h to the Host Control Register, which will select the "I2C Block Read Command", enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (4). When the data is received, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Byte Done Status is 1).
- (5). Software can read the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register to get the data.
- (6). Repeat step (4) and (5) until the last byte.
- (7). Set the LAST BYTE bit in the Host Control Register to indicate that the next byte will be the last byte to be received.
- (8). Get an interrupt and receive the last byte.

12. I2C-compatible Write Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMHEN bit in the Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Set the I2C_EN bit in the Host Control Register 2 to 1.
- (3). In I2C-compatible Write Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Block Data Byte Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0.
- (4). Start the transaction (Write 5Dh to the Host Control Register, which will select the "Extend Command", enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (5). When the data in the Host Block Data Byte Register has been transmitted, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Byte Done Status is 1).
- (6). Software writes the data to the Host Block Data Byte Register, and writes one to clear the Byte Done

Status bit in the Host Status Register. Then, the data is transmitted from this register by the SMBus logic.

- (7). Repeat step (5) and (6) for the other data bytes until software wants to finish the cycle.
- (8). If software wants to finish the cycle, set I2C_EN bit in the Host Control Register 2 to 0 after the last transmitted data byte has been sent (Byte Done interrupt is generated).
- (9). Software shall write one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register.
- (10). When the cycle is completed, a Finish interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Finish interrupt is 1).

13. I2C-compatible Read Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMHEN bit in the Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Set the I2C_EN bit in the Host Control Register 2 to 1.
- (3). In I2C-compatible Read Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register is sent (Software shall write data to this register). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1 and the received data byte is stored in the Host Block Data Byte Register.
- (4). Start the transaction (Write 5Dh to the Host Control Register, which will select the "Extend Command", enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (5). When the data has been received from the Host Block Data Byte Register, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Byte Done Status is 1).
- (6). Software reads the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register, and writes one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register.
- (7). Repeat step (5) and (6) for the other data bytes until the last byte is going to be received.
- (8). Set the LABY bit in the Host Control Register after the Byte Done interrupt is generated to indicate that the next byte will be the last to be received.
- (9). Get the Byte Done interrupt of the last byte, and receive the last data byte from the Host Block Data Byte Register. Software shall write one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register.
- (10). When the cycle is completed, a Finish interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Finish interrupt is 1).

14. I2C-compatible Combined Command

This command allows the SMBus logic to perform direction switch from I2C Write Command to I2C Read Command or from I2C Read Command to I2C Write Command in the I2C-compatible cycles.

From I2C Write Command to I2C Read Command:

- (1). In the I2C Write Command mentioned above, software can control the I2C_SW_EN bit and I2C_SW_WAIT bit in the Host Control Register 2 to switch the direction to the I2C Read Command.
- (2). After the last transmitted data byte has been sent in the I2C Write Command, the Byte Done interrupt will be generated. Then, software can set 1 to the I2C_SW_EN bit and I2C_SW_WAIT bit in the Host Control Register 2 to make the SMBus logic wait for the setting by software for the I2C Read Command.
- (3). Software shall write one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register.
- (4). Set 0 to the I2C_SW_WAIT bit in the Host Control Register 2 to start the I2C Read Command.
- (5). When the data has been received and stored in the Host Block Data Byte Register, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Byte Done Status is 1).
- (6). Software reads the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register, and writes one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register.
- (7). Repeat step (5) and (6) for the other data bytes until the last byte is going to be received.
- (8). Set the LABY bit in the Host Control Register after the Byte Done interrupt is generated to indicate that the next byte will be the last to be received.
- (9). Get the Byte Done interrupt of the last byte, and receive the last data byte from the Host Block Data Byte Register. Software shall write one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register.
- (10). When the cycle is completed, a Finish interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Finish interrupt is 1).

From I2C Read Command to I2C Write Command:

- (1). In the I2C Read Command mentioned above, software can control the I2C_SW_EN bit and I2C_SW_WAIT bit in the Host Control Register 2 to switch the direction to the I2C Write Command.
- (2). In the I2C Read Command, after setting the LABY bit in the Host Control Register, software can set 1 to the I2C_SW_EN bit and I2C_SW_WAIT bit in the Host Control Register 2 to make the SMBus logic wait for the setting by software for the I2C Write Command.
- (3). Get the Byte Done interrupt of the last byte, and receive the last byte from the Host Block Data Byte Register. Software shall write one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register.
- (4). Software writes the transmitted data byte in the Host Block Data Byte Register.
- (5). Set 0 to the I2C_SW_WAIT bit in the Host Control Register 2 to start the I2C Write Command.
- (6). When the data in the Host Block Data Byte Register has been sent, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Byte Done Status is 1).
- (7). Software writes the data to the Host Block Data Byte Register, and writes one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register. Then, the data is sent from this register by the SMBus logic.
- (8). Repeat step (6) and (7) for the other data bytes until software wants to finish the cycle.
- (9). If software wants to finish the cycle, set I2C_EN bit in the Host Control Register 2 to 0 after the last transmitted data byte has been sent (Byte Done interrupt is generated).
- (10). Software shall write one to clear the Byte Done Status bit in the Host Status Register.
- (11). When the cycle is completed, a Finish interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Finish interrupt is 1).

15. Block Write Command (FIFO Mode)

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Enable Master FIFO Mode.
- (3). Set the I2C_EN bit (in Host Control Register 2) to 1 or force it to 0. When the I2C_EN bit is set, the SMBus logic will instead be set to communicate with I2C device. The Block Write Command will skip sending the byte count (Host Data 0 Register).
- (4). In Block Write Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register, Host Command Register, and Host Data 0 Register (byte count, if I2C_EN = 0) are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0. The data is then sent from FIFO. (Software shall write data to the Host Block Data Byte Register depending on byte count set in Data 0 Register).
- (5). Start the transaction (Write 55h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Block Read/Block Write Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (6). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.

Note: The I2C_EN bit and PEC_EN bit can't be set high at the same time. It will produce the undefined results.

16. Block Read Command (FIFO Mode)

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMBus Host Enable bit in Host Control Register 2 is set to 1). I2C_EN bit has to be 0 in this command.
- (2). Enable Master FIFO Mode
- (3). In Block Read Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Command Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1.
- (4). Start the transaction (Write 55h to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Block Read/Block Write Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (5). When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt.
- (6). Software reads the data from the Host Data 0 Register to get the byte count, and read the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register to get the received data bytes. If the Packet Error Checking (PEC) is enabled, software can read the PEC value from the Packet Error Check Register.

17. I2C-compatible Write Command (FIFO Mode)

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMHEN bit in the Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Set the I2C_EN bit in the Host Control Register 2 to 1.
- (3). Enable Master FIFO Mode.
- (4). Write byte count value to Data 0 register to indicate HW how many bytes will (should) be transmitted.
- (5). In I2C-compatible Write Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register and Host Block Data Byte Register are sent (Software shall write data to these registers). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 0.
- (6). Write data bytes to FIFO through Host Block Data Byte Register.
- (7). Start the transaction (Write 5Dh to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Extend Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (8). When the datas in the FIFO have been transmitted, an interrupt will be generated. If the byte count is less than 32, Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Finish interrupt is 1).
- (9). Or check FIFO Block Done status when this transmission is over 32 data bytes (byte count > 32).
- (10). Software writes the data to the Host Block Data Byte Register, and writes one to clear the Block Done Status bit in the FIFO Control Register, then HW will transmit the successive bytes from FIFO.
- (11). When the cycle is completed, a Finish interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Finish interrupt is 1). If this cycle is not completed yet, then go to step (9) again.

18. I2C-compatible Read Command (FIFO Mode)

- (1). Enable the SMBus Host Controller (SMHEN bit in the Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Set the I2C_EN bit in the Host Control Register 2 to 1.
- (3). Enable Master FIFO Mode.
- (4). Write byte count value to Data 0 register to indicate HW how many bytes will (should) be received.
- (5). In I2C-compatible Read Command, the Transmit Slave Address Register is sent (Software shall write data to this register). Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register has to be 1 and the received data byte is stored in the Host Block Data Byte Register.
- (6). Start the transaction (Write 5Dh to the Host Control Register, which will select the “Extend Command”, enable the interrupts, and start the transaction).
- (7). When the datas have been received to FIFO, an interrupt will be generated. If byte count is less than 32, Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Finish interrupt is 1).
- (8). Software can get FIFO datas through Host Block Data Byte Register.
- (9). Or check FIFO Block Done status when this transmission is over 32 data bytes (byte count > 32).
- (10). Software reads the data from the Host Block Data Byte Register, and writes one to clear the Block Done Status bit in the FIFO Control Register, then HW will receive the successive bytes into FIFO.
- (11). When the cycle is completed, a Finish interrupt will be generated. Software can read the Host Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (Finish interrupt is 1). If this cycle is not completed yet, then go to step (9) again.

(2).SMBus Slave Interface:

The slave supports three types of messages: Byte Write, Byte Read, and Host Notify.
Here are the steps the software shall follow to program the registers for various commands.

1. Byte Write

- (1). Enable the SMBus Slave Device (SLVEN bit in the Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Enable the interrupts (Write 03h to Slave Interrupt Control Register).
- (3). Write a slave address to Receive Slave Address Register. Now the SMBus logic is ready to respond the data transmission from the external SMBus device.
- (4). When an interrupt is generated, the software can read the Slave Status Register to know the source of

- the interrupt (It shall be 02h for Byte Write Command).
- (5). Software can read the data from the Slave Data Register for the first time. (This data byte is the command code.) The SMCLK line would be held low until software reads the data for the second time.
- (6). When the next interrupt is generated, the software can read the Slave Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (It shall be 02h for Byte Write Command).
- (7). Software can read the data from the Slave Data Register for the first time. (This data byte is the Data Byte in SMBus Protocol.) The SMCLK line would be held low until software reads the data for the second time, after which the SMCLK line would be released.

2. Byte Read

- (1). Enable the SMBus Slave Device (SLVEN bit in the Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Enable the interrupts (Write 03h to Slave Interrupt Control Register).
- (3). Write a slave address to Receive Slave Address Register. Now the SMBus logic is ready to respond the data transmission from the external SMBus device.
- (4). When an interrupt is generated, the software can read the Slave Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (It shall be 02h for Byte Read Command).
- (5). Software can read the data from the Slave Data Register for the first time. (This data byte is the command code.) The SMCLK line would be held low until software reads the data for the second time, after which the SMCLK line would be released.
- (6). When the next interrupt is generated, the software can read the Slave Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (It shall be 0Ah for Byte Read Command).
- (7). Software can write the data to the Slave Data Register for the first time. (This data will be sent to the external device.) The SMCLK line would be held low until software reads the data for the second time, after which the SMCLK line would be released.

3. Host Notify Command

- (1). Enable the SMBus Slave Device (SLVEN bit in the Host Control Register 2 is set to 1).
- (2). Enable the interrupts (Write 03h to Slave Interrupt Control Register).
- (3). When an interrupt is generated, the software can read the Slave Status Register to know the source of the interrupt (It shall be 01h for Host Notify Command).
- (4). Software can read the data from the Notify Device Address Register, Notify Data Low Byte Register, and Notify Data High Byte Register.

Furthermore, Slave channel A also supports 16-byte FIFO for read/write (FIFO Mode). Slave FIFO also supports threshold function. Threshold function lets software process part of FIFO data before FIFO becomes empty and it can improve the transmission performance of the bus.

For slave 16-byte FIFO mode, software needs to enable the slave FIFO mode (Write 01h to Slave FIFO Control Register (SLVFFCTL)Register). If the master wants to write any data to the slave, the slave side INT9 is generated and the software can read the Slave Status Register to know the source of the interrupt as well as read the slave FIFO status register to know the length of FIFO bytecnt. Software can read data from the Slave Data Register continuously according to the bytecnt. If the master wants to read any data from the slave, the slave side INT9 is generated and the software can read the Slave Status Register to know the source of the interrupt as well as write data to the Slave Data Register continuously.

(3). Pre-defined Command:

Slave channel A also supports pre-defined command. Whether function is enabled or not is controlled by writing 1 to HSPE bit of SFFCTL register and the dedicated pre-defined slave address is 0x5B. The supported protocols are listed below.

1. Reset through I2C:

Reset

S	5bh	[W A]	5ah	[A]	a5h	[A P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-----	-----	-------

Assert reset to EC.

2. I2EC through I2C:

I2EC Address Write

S	5bh	[W A]	10h	[A]	EC Address[15:8]	[A]	EC Address[7:0]	[A P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-----	------------------	-----	-----------------	-------

I2EC Address Read

S	5bh	[W A]	10h	[A S]	5bh	[R A]	EC Address[15:8]	[A]	EC Address[7:0]	[A P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------	------------------	-----	-----------------	-------

I2EC Data Write

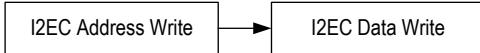
S	5bh	[W A]	11h	[A]	EC Data[7:0]	[P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-----	--------------	-----

I2EC Data Read

S	5bh	[W A]	11h	[A S]	5bh	[R A]	EC Data[7:0]	[A P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------	--------------	-------

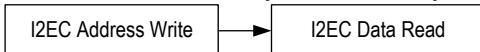
(1). I2EC Write:

- Specify the targeted address of EC memory through “I2EC Address Write”.
- Write EC memory addressed by the targeted address through “I2EC Data Write”.



(2). I2EC Read:

- Specify the targeted address of EC memory through “I2EC Address Write”.
- Read EC memory addressed by the targeted address through “I2EC Data Read”.



3. IO Read through I2C:

IO Address Write

S	5bh	[W A]	12h	[A]	IO Address[15:8]	[A]	IO Address[7:0]	[A P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-----	------------------	-----	-----------------	-------

IO Address Read

S	5bh	[W A]	12h	[A S]	5bh	[R A]	IO Address[15:8]	[A]	IO Address[7:0]	[A P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------	------------------	-----	-----------------	-------

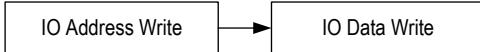
IO Data Write

S	5bh	[W A]	13h	[A]	IO Data[7:0]	[A P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-----	--------------	-------

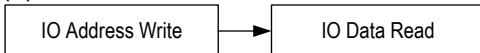
IO Data Read

S	5bh	[W A]	13h	[A S]	5bh	[R A]	IO Data[7:0]	[A P]
---	-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------	--------------	-------

(1). IO Write:



(2). IO Read:



4. Flash Read through I²C:

Flash Address Write

S	5bh	W A	14h	A	Flash Address[23:16]	A	Flash Address[15:8]	A	Flash Address[7:0]	A P
---	-----	-----	-----	---	----------------------	---	---------------------	---	--------------------	-----

Flash Address Read

S	5bh	W A	14h	A S	5bh	R A	Flash Address[23:16]	A	Flash Address[15:8]	A	Flash Address[7:0]	A P
---	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	----------------------	---	---------------------	---	--------------------	-----

Flash Data Read

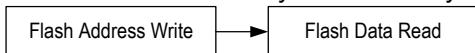
S	5bh	W A	15h	A S	5bh	R A	Flash Data[7:0]	A P
---	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----------------	-----

Flash Data Read (auto increase address)

S	5bh	W A	16h	A S	5bh	R A	Flash Data[7:0]	A	Flash Data[7:0]	A P
(Flash Address)	(Flash Address + 1)	P							

(1). Flash Read:

- Specify the targeted address of Flash memory through “Flash Address Write”.
- Read Flash memory addressed by the targeted address through “Flash Data Read”.



5. Follow Mode for SPI Bus through I²C:

Set CS# of SPI Bus High

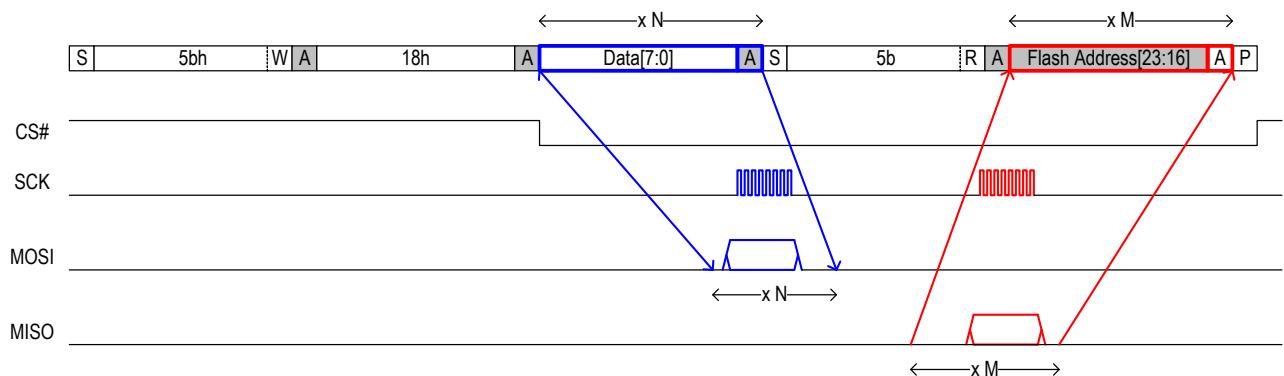
S	5bh	W A	17h	P
---	-----	-----	-----	---

Transfer Write/Read Cycle to SPI Bus

S	5bh	W A	18h	A	Data[7:0]	A S	5b	R A	Flash Address[23:16]	A P
CS#	x N	x M

(1). Always execute “Set CS# of SPI Bus high” first.

(2). Use “Transfer Write/Read Cycle to SPI Bus” to generate the SPI cycle.



6. Fast AAIW:

- (1). Use “Follow Mode for SPI Bus through I²C” to construct the AAIW cycle with addresses. That is
 - a. Let CS# of SPI Bus high
 - b. Write adh
 - c. Write address[23:16]
 - d. Write address[15:8]
 - e. Write address[7:0]
 - f. Write Data 0
 - g. Write Data 1
 - h. Let CS# of SPI Bus high

- (2). Use “Follow Mode for SPI Bus through I²C” to construct the RDSR cycle. That is

- a. Let CS# of SPI Bus high
- b. Write 05h
- c. Polling status until flash returns non-busy

d. Let CS# of SPI Bus high

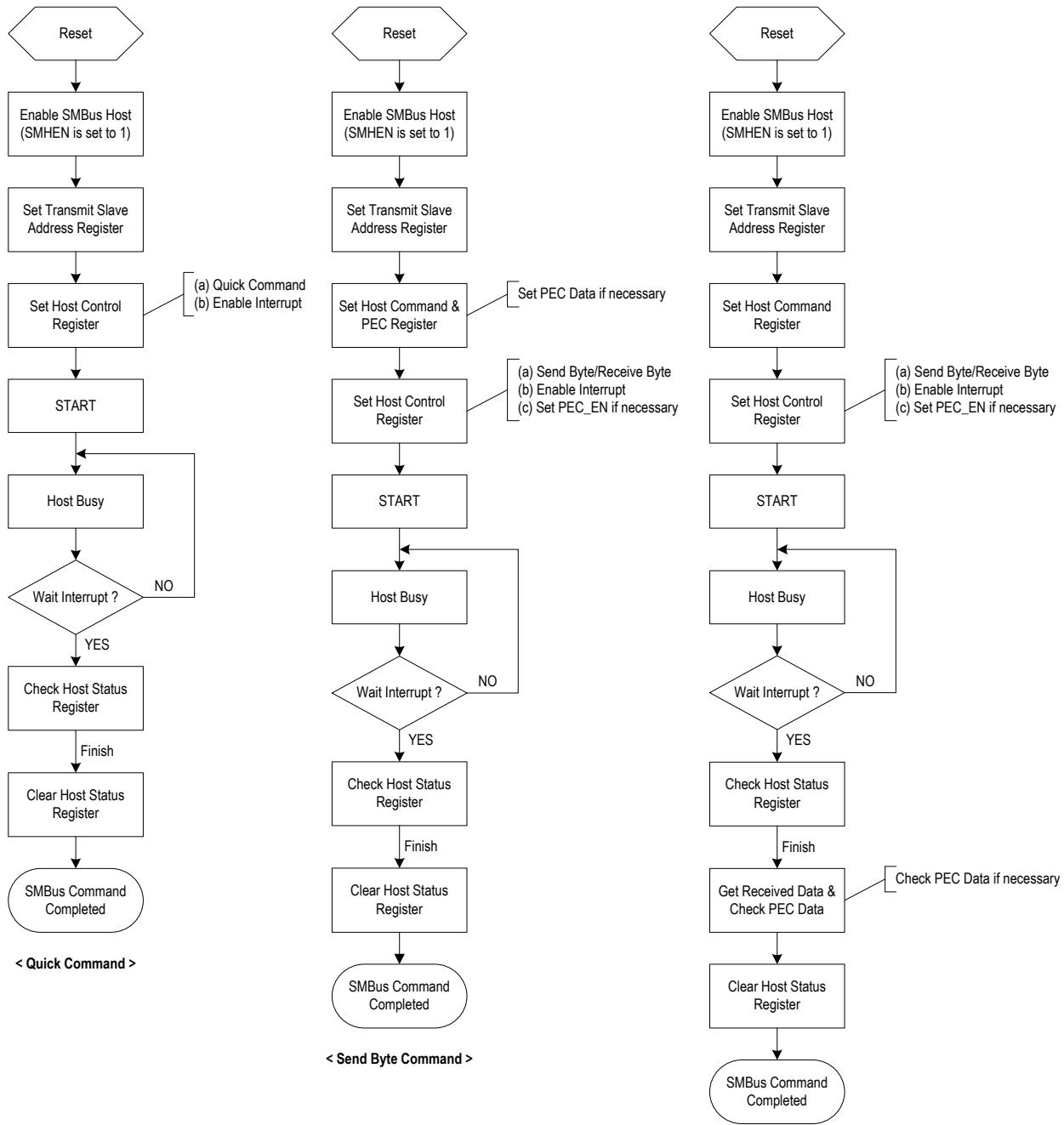
(3). Use “Fast data-insertion for AAIW” to write remaine data.

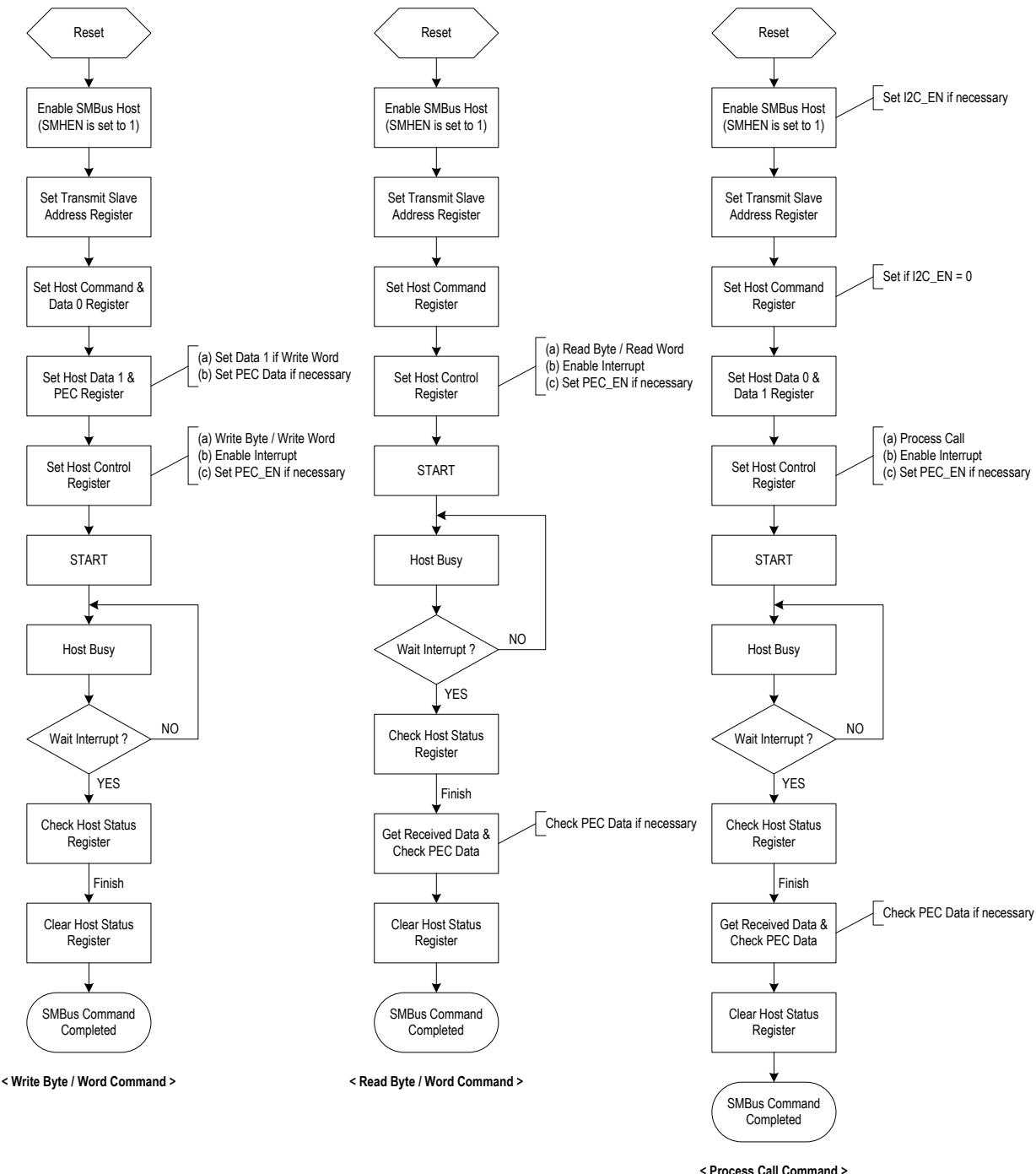
Fast data-insertion for AAIW

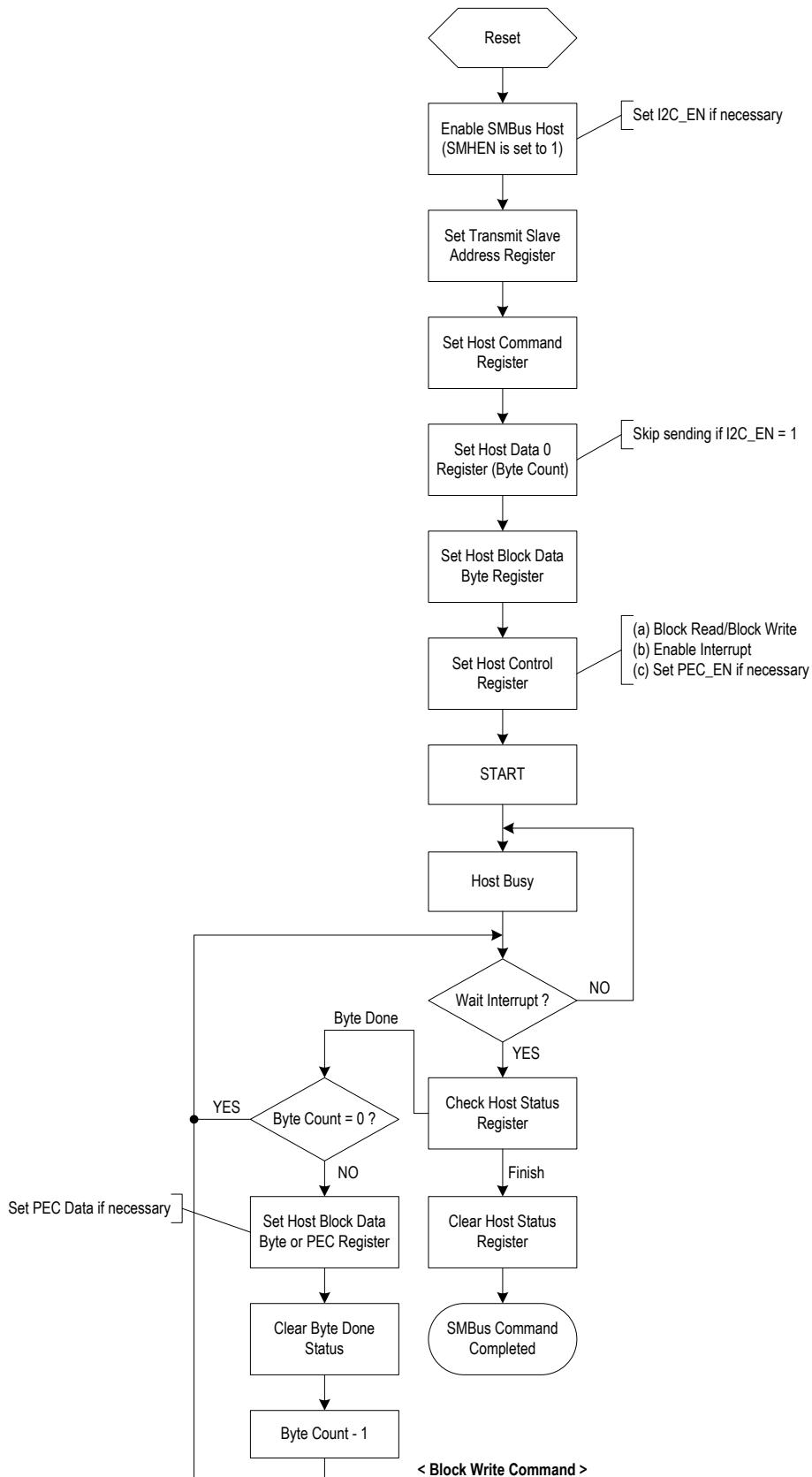
S	5bh	:W A	adh	A	Data 2	A	Data 3	A	...	Data N	A P
---	-----	------	-----	---	--------	---	--------	---	-----	--------	-----

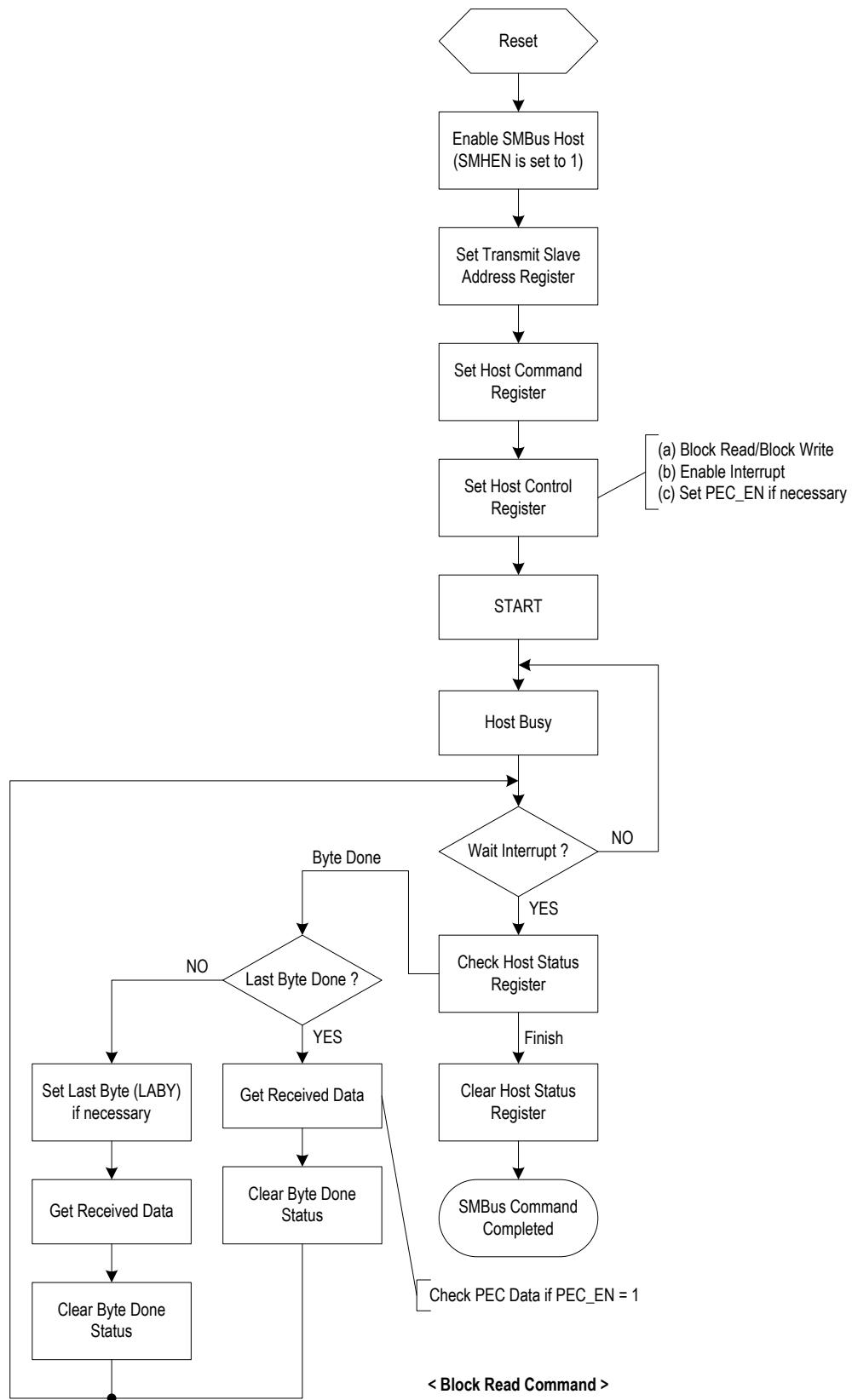
7.7.3.4 SMBus Master Programming Guide

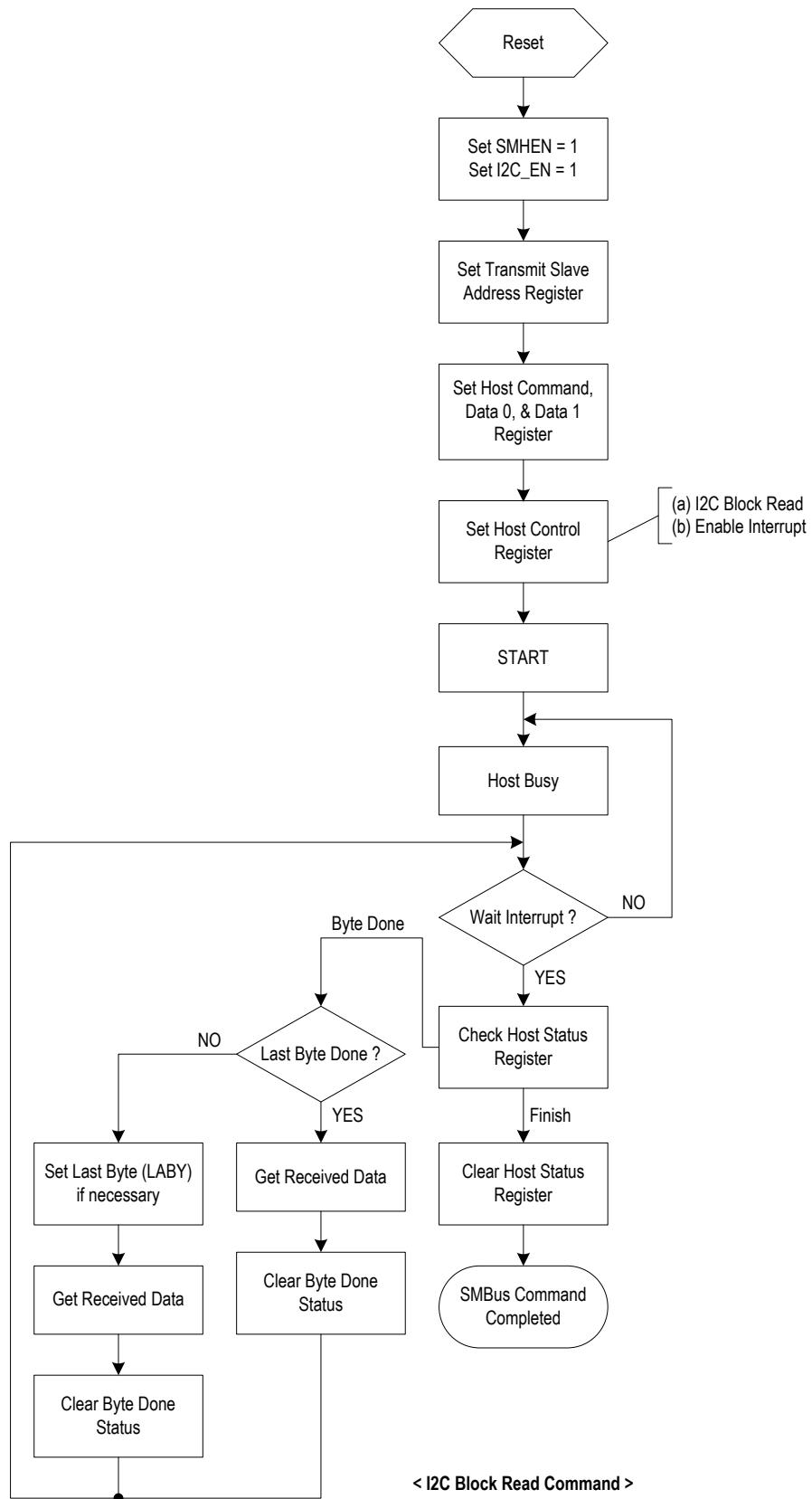
Figure 7-20. Program Flow Chart of SMBus Master Interface

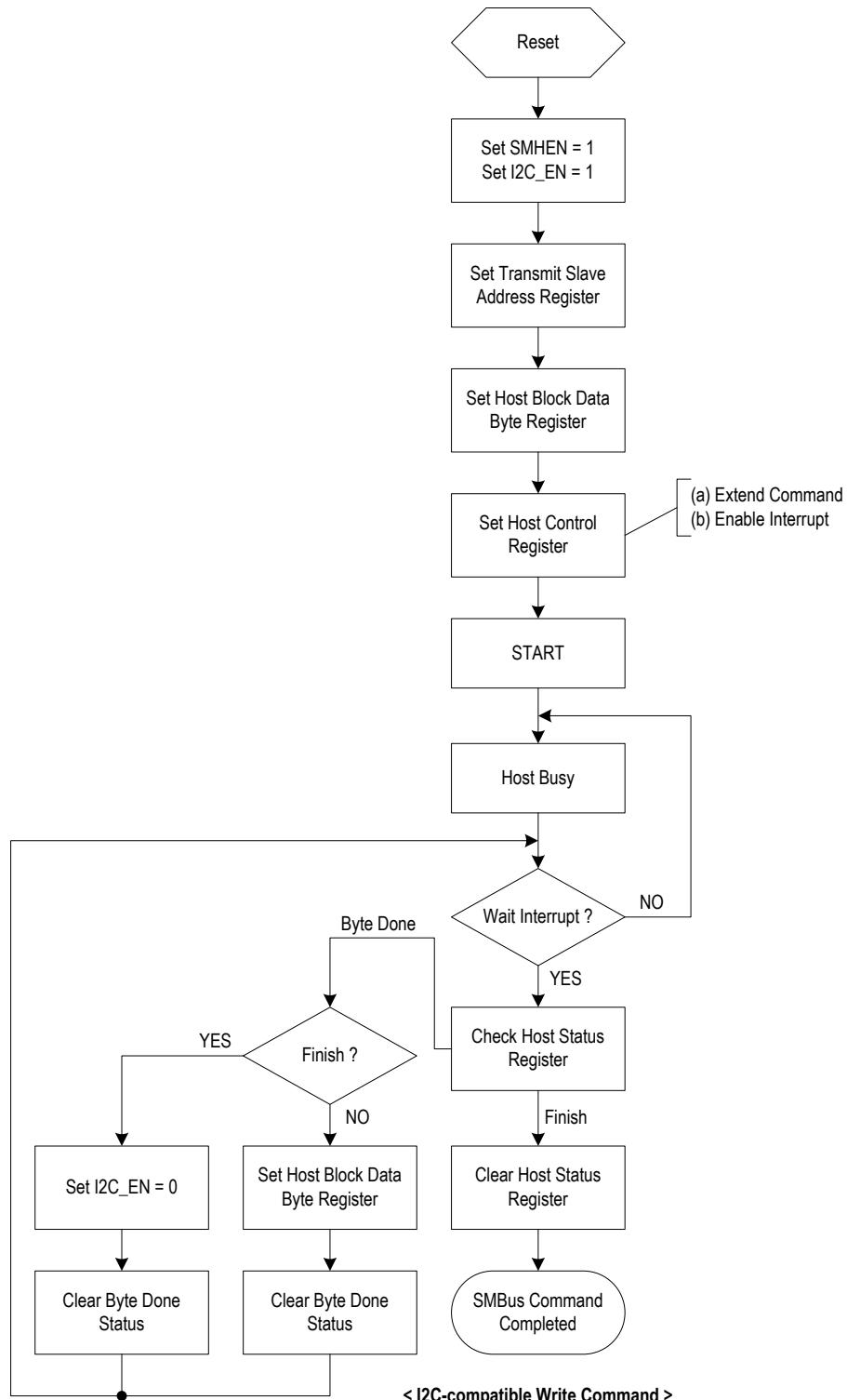


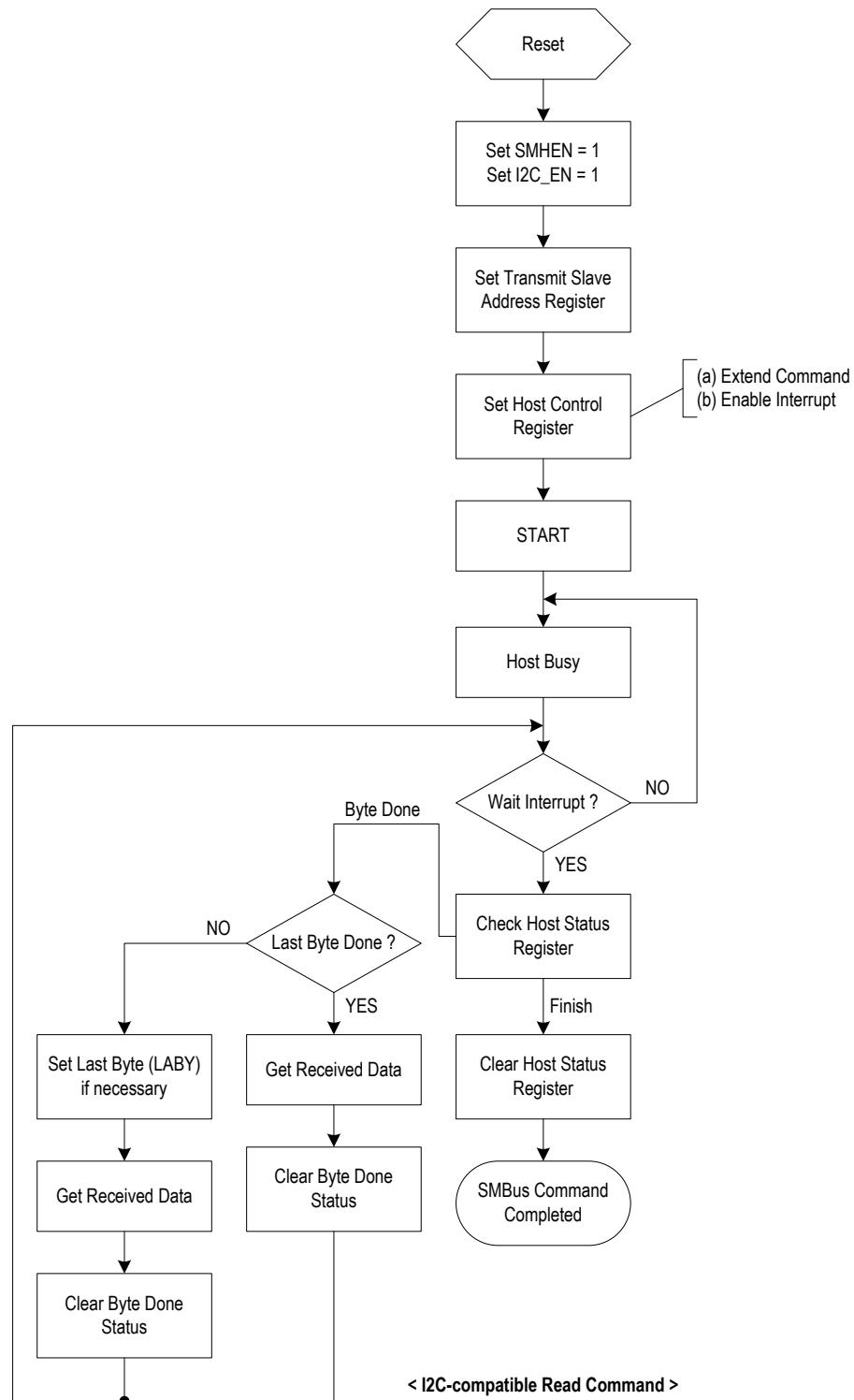


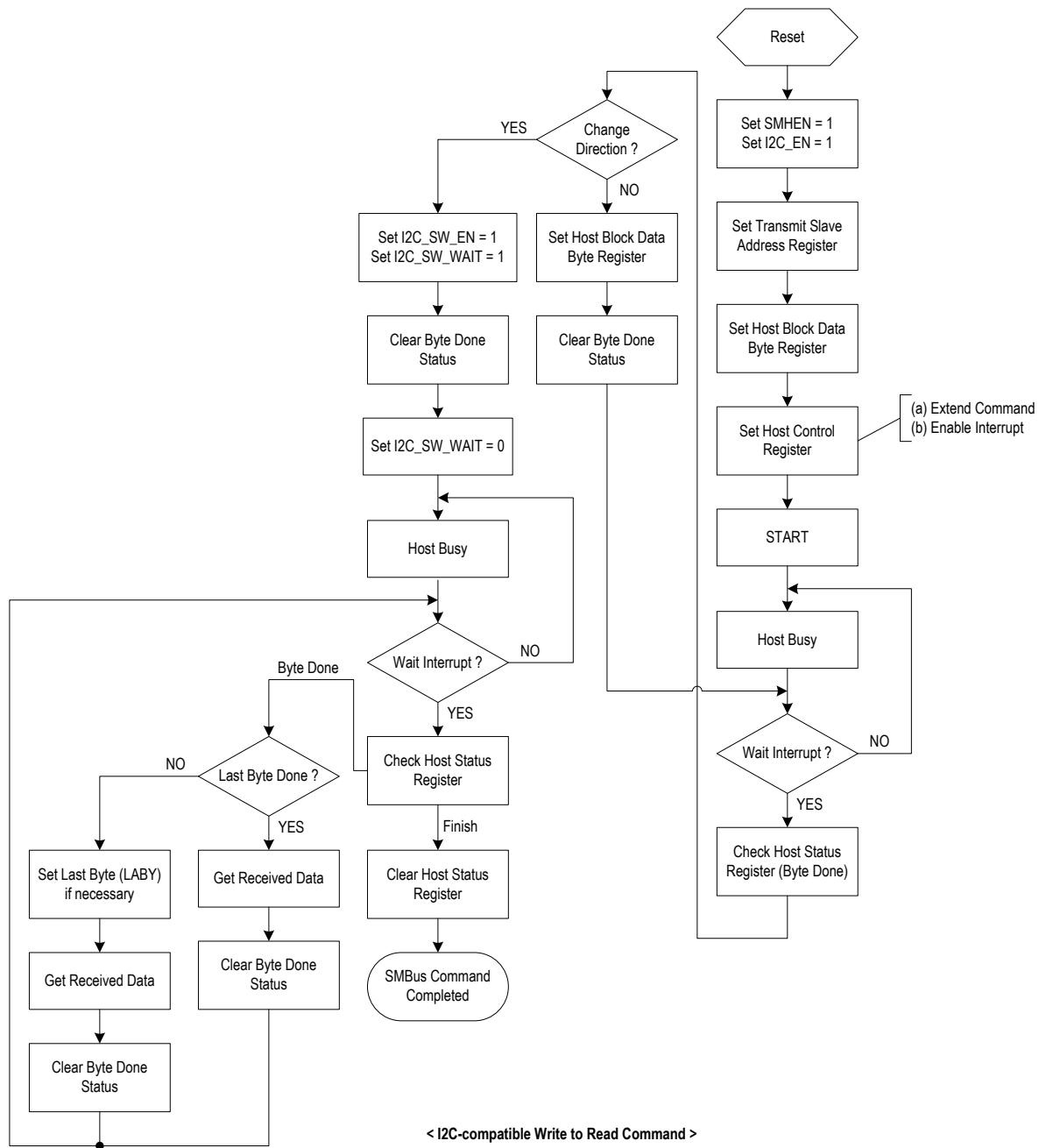


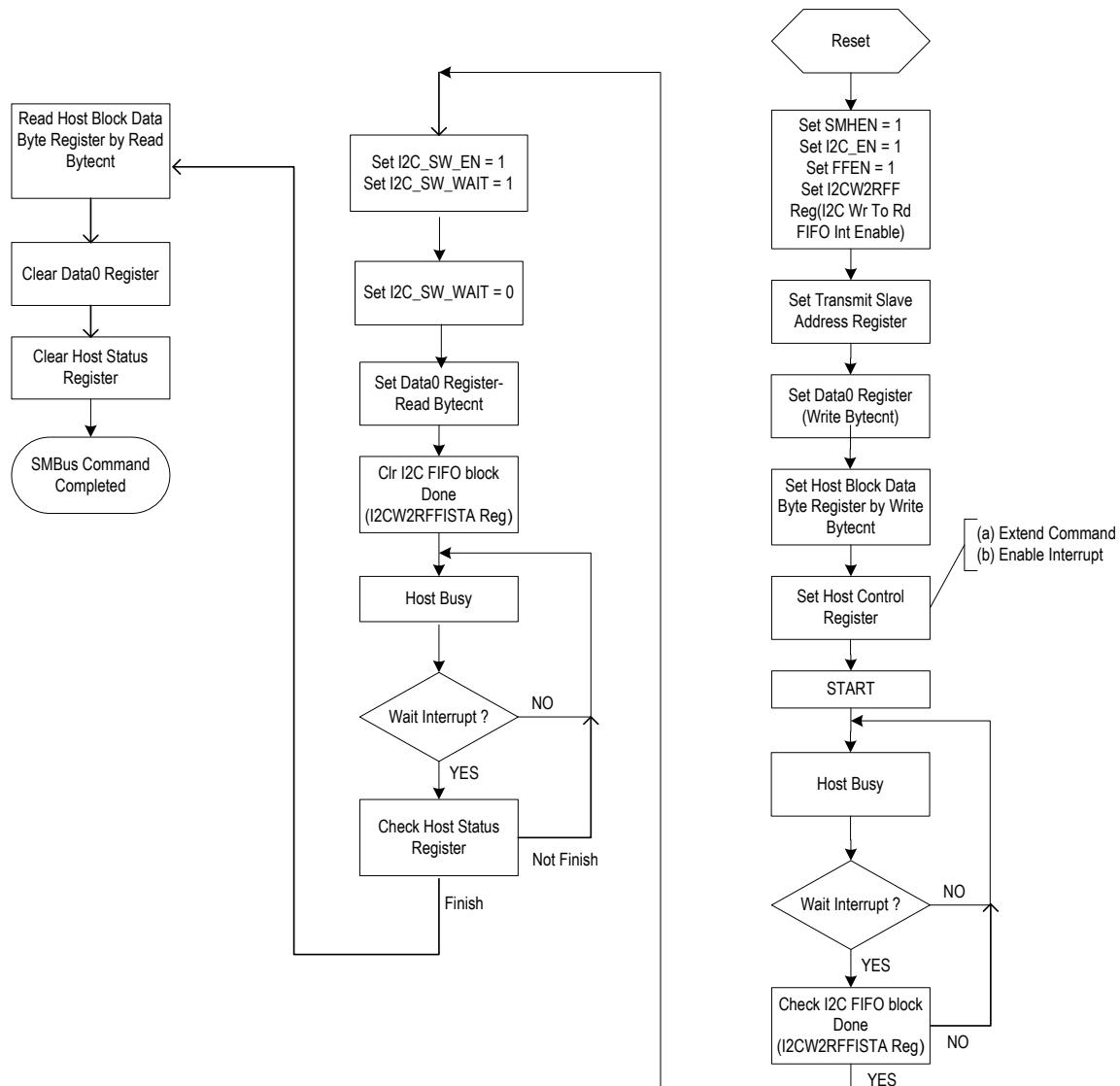




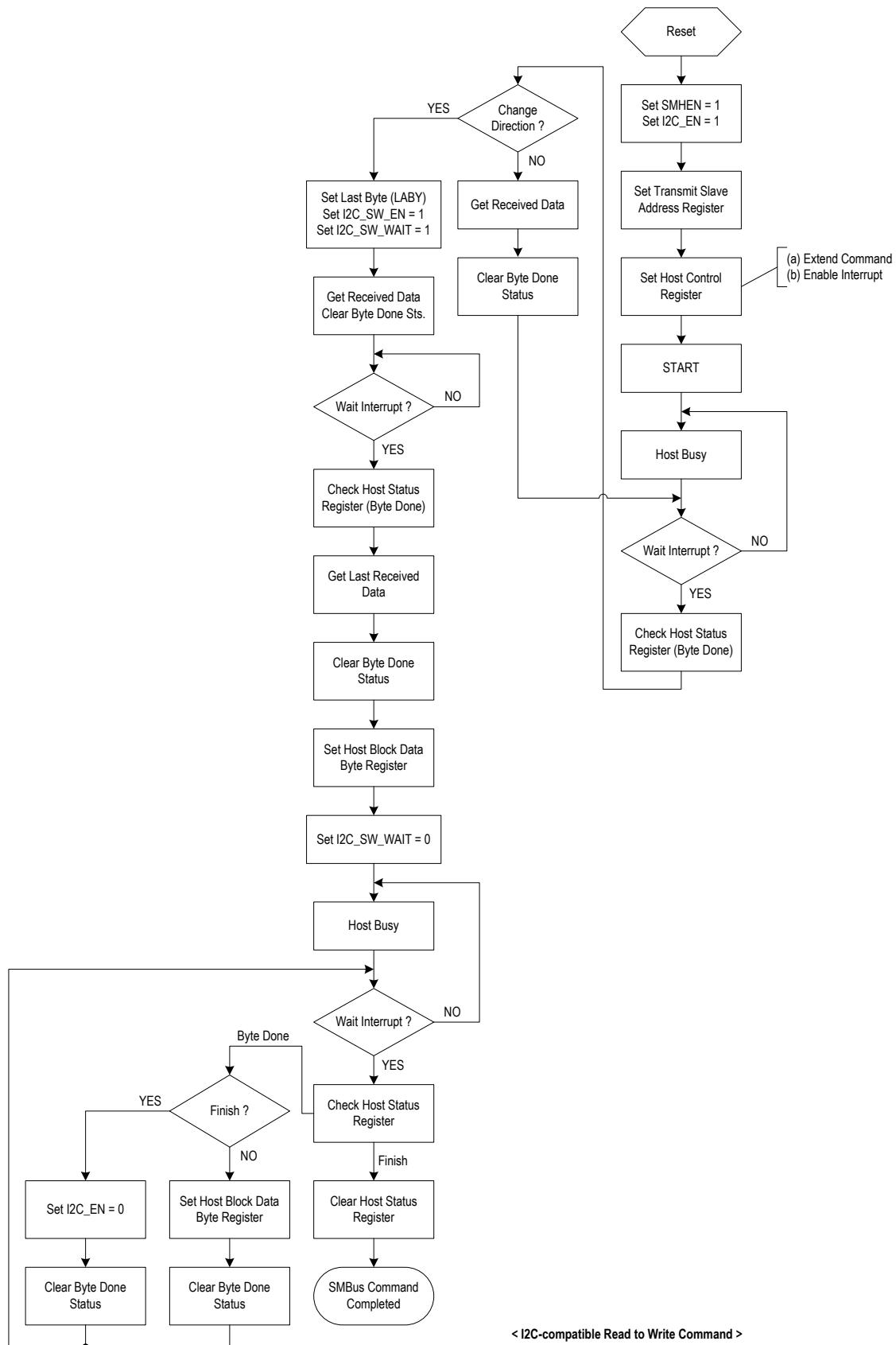




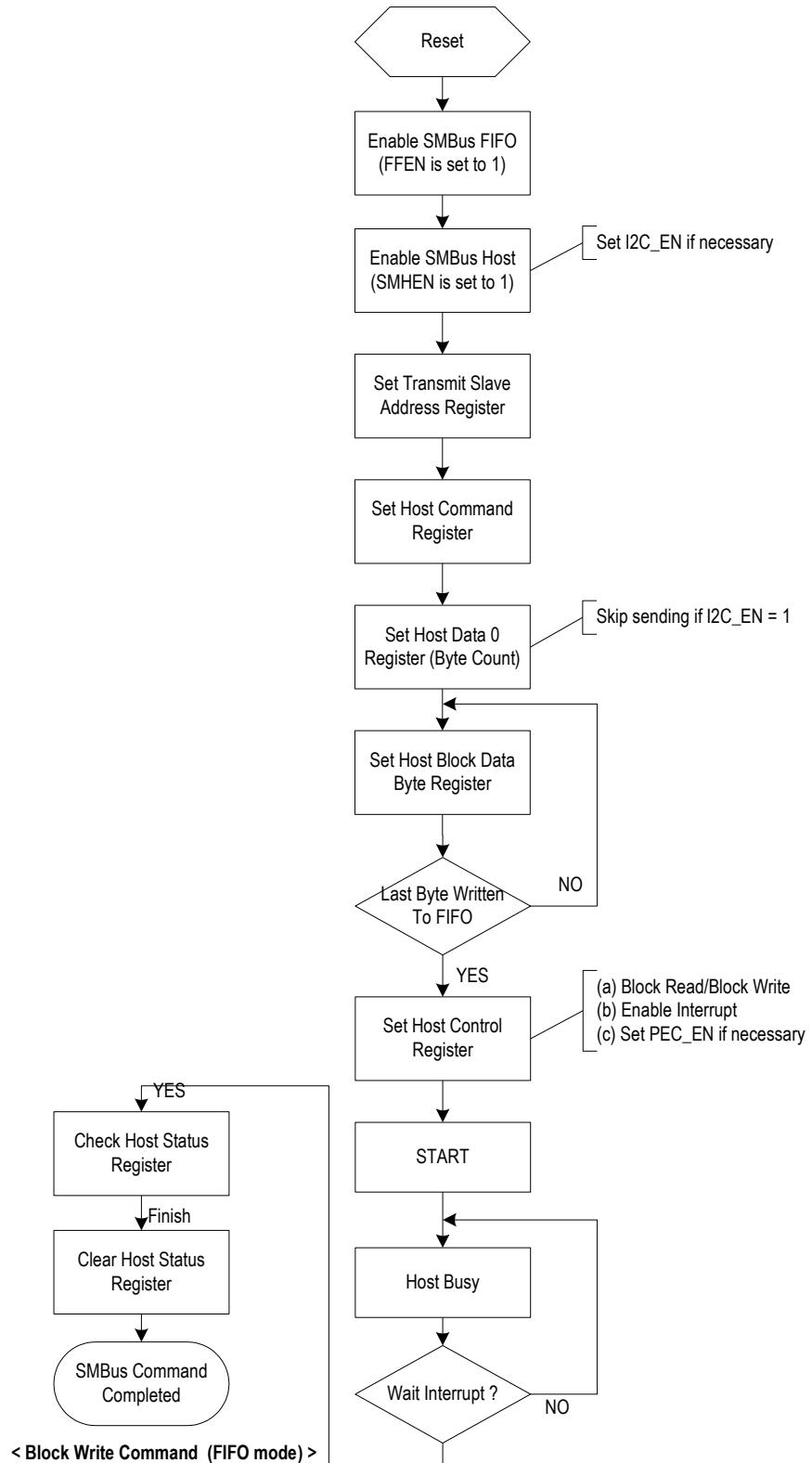


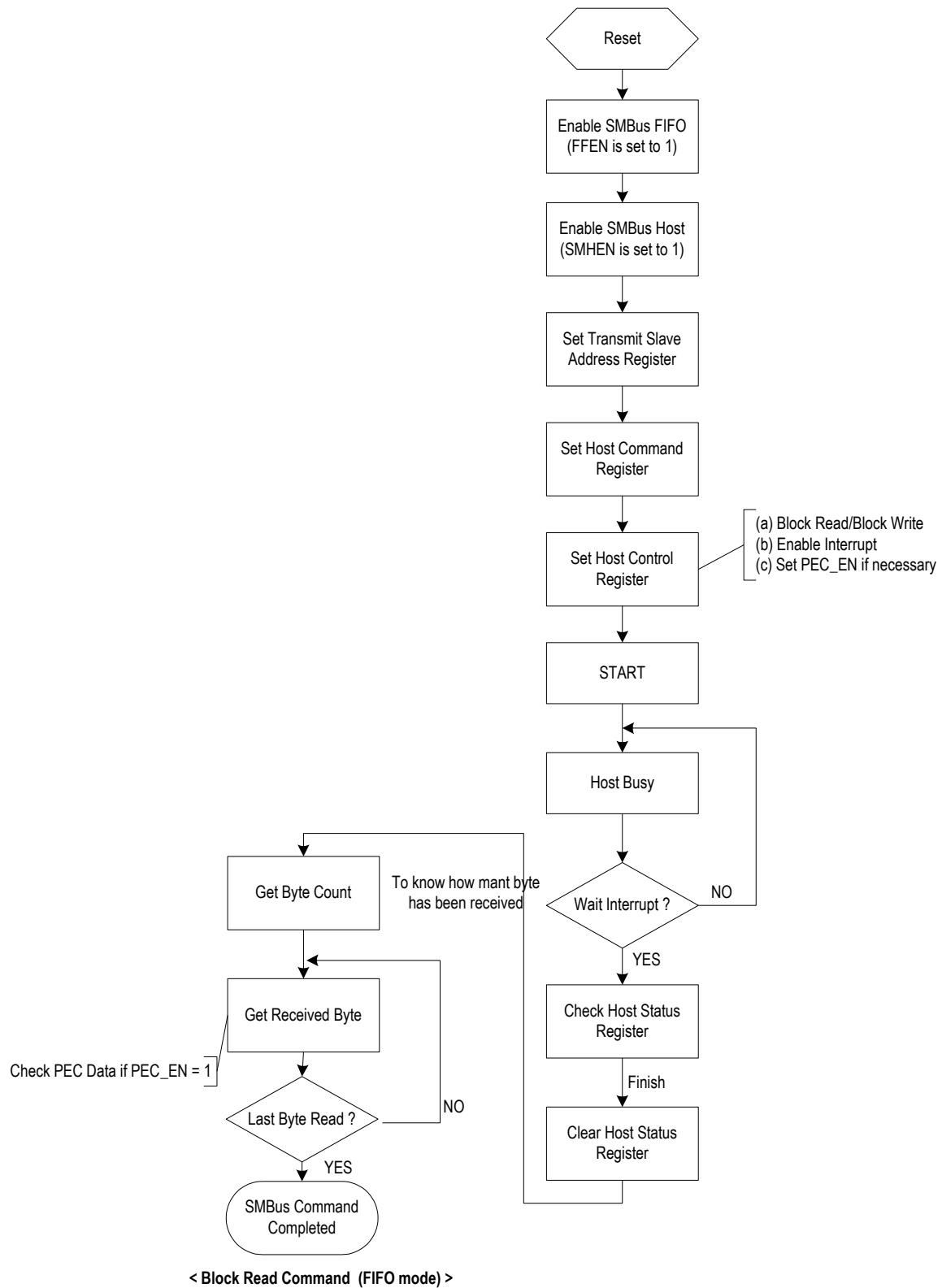


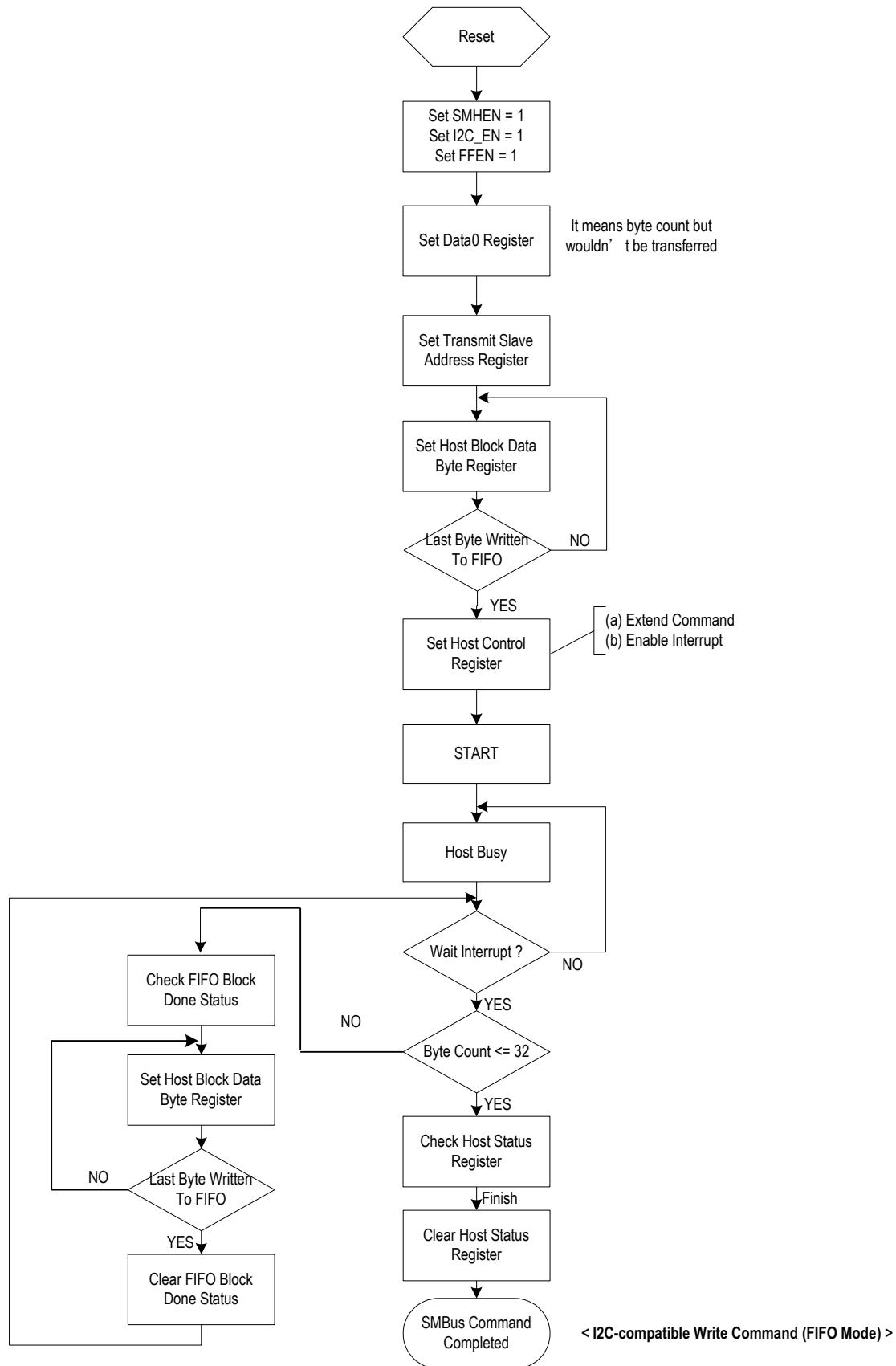
< I2C-compatible Write to Read Command
(FIFO Mode) >

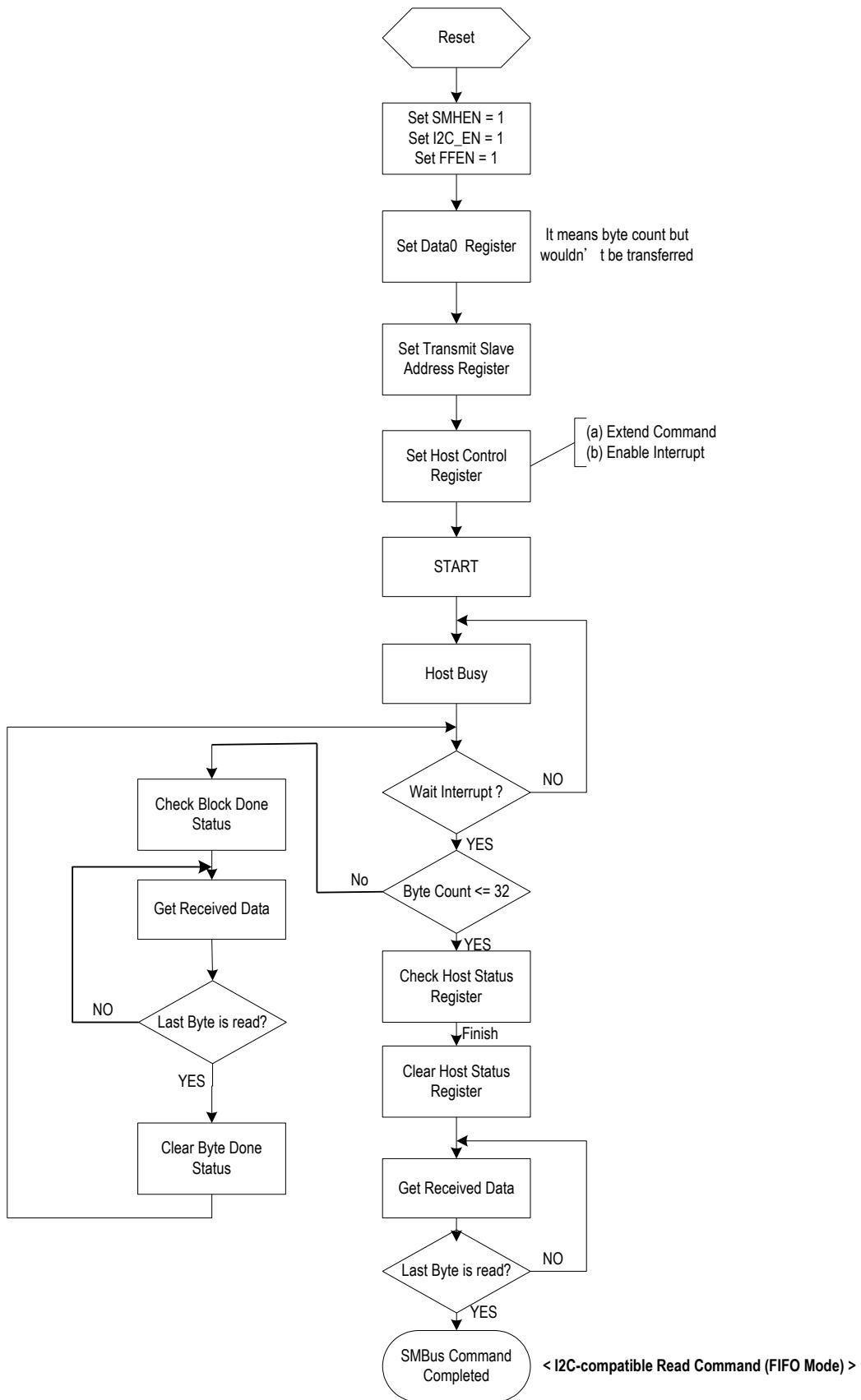


< I2C-compatible Read to Write Command >









7.7.3.5 Description of SMCLK and SMDAT Line Control in Software Mode

- (1) Control the SMCLK and SMDAT line by setting SCLCTL bit, SDACTLE bit, and SDACTL bit in SMBus Pin Control register (a.k.a., in software mode).
- (2) When the SMCLK and SMDAT line are controlled in software mode, the hardware's SMBus logic will be reset, so the hardware will release the SMCLK and SMDAT line.
- (3) The hardware's mechanism of 25 ms time-out will not work in software mode.

Note: It is recommended that SMCLK and SMDAT line should not be controlled in software mode and hardware mode simultaneously.

7.7.3.6 Description of SMBus Slave Interface Select

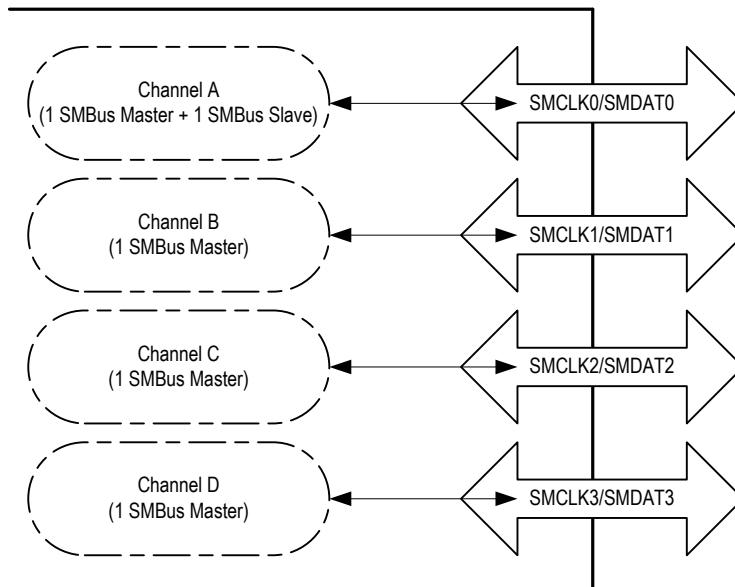
The interface of the SMBus slave can be switched from SMCLK0/SMDAT0 (default) to SMCLK1/SMDAT1 or SMCLK2/SMDAT2 or SMCLK3/SMDAT3 by setting the SLVISEL bits in the Slave Interface Select Register. Followings are the detailed description:

- (1) When the interface of the SMBus slave is switched to SMCLK1/SMDAT1 (set the SLVISEL bits to 01b), it represents that the interface of Channel A and Channel B are exchanged, as shown in Figure 7-21.
- (2) When the interface of the SMBus slave is switched to SMCLK2/SMDAT2 (set the SLVISEL bits to 10b), it represents that the interface of Channel A and Channel C are exchanged, as shown in Figure 7-21.
- (3) When the interface of the SMBus slave is switched to SMCLK3/SMDAT3 (set the SLVISEL bits to 11b), it represents that the interface of Channel A and Channel D are exchanged, as shown in Figure 7-21.
- (4) When the interface of the SMBus slave in channel B is switched to SMCLK2/SMDAT2 (set the SLVISEL[3:2] to 10b), it represents that the interfaces of Channel B and Channel C are exchanged, as shown in Figure 7-20.
- (5) When the interface of the SMBus slave in channel B is switched to SMCLK3/SMDAT3 (set the SLVISEL[3:2] to 11b), it represents that the interfaces of Channel B and Channel D are exchanged, as shown in Figure 7-20.

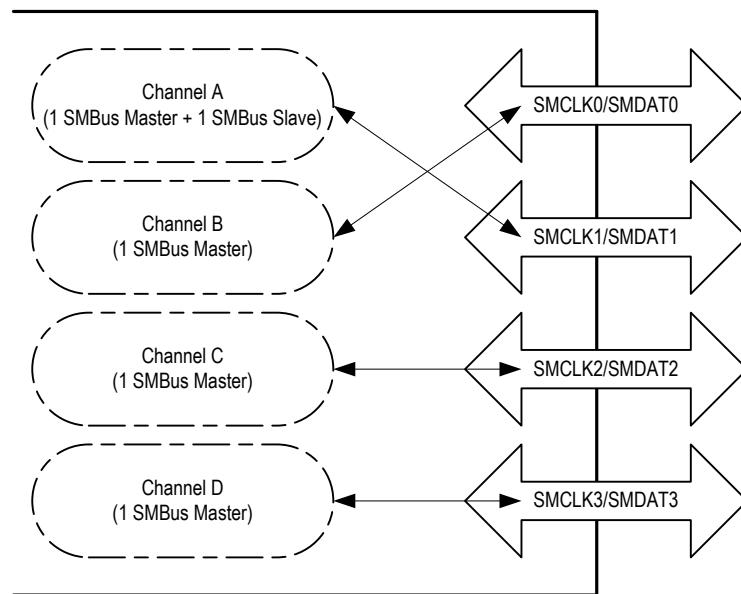
Note: If the interface of the SMBus slave in channel A is switched to SMCLK1/SMDAT1 (the default interface of SMBus slave in channel B), the interface of the SMBus slave in channel B will be automatically switched to SMCLK0/SMDAT0.

Note: Switching the interfaces of the two slaves to the same interface is invalid.

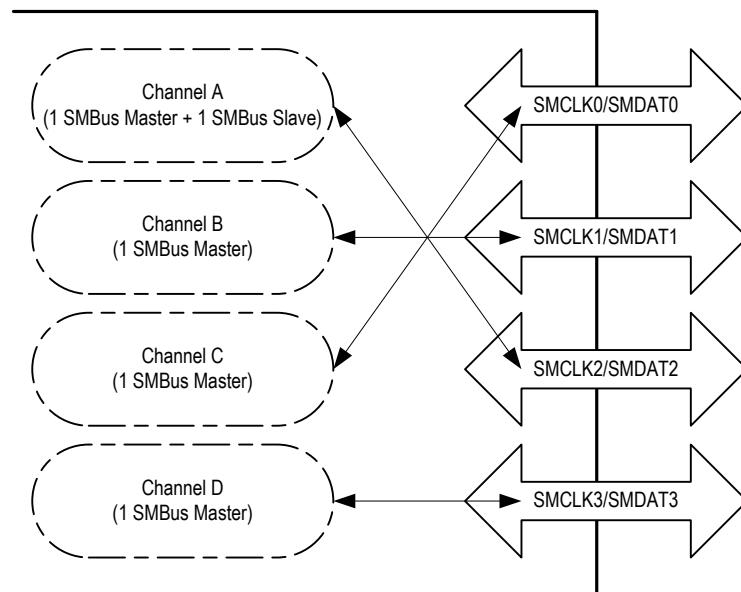
Figure 7-21. Schematic Diagram of SMBus Slave Interface Select



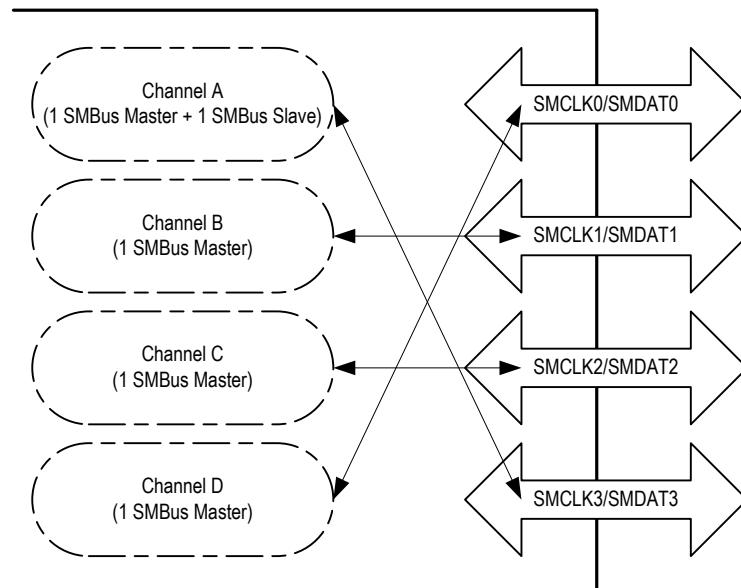
The interface of the SMBus slave is switched to SMCLK0/SMDAT0 (Default).



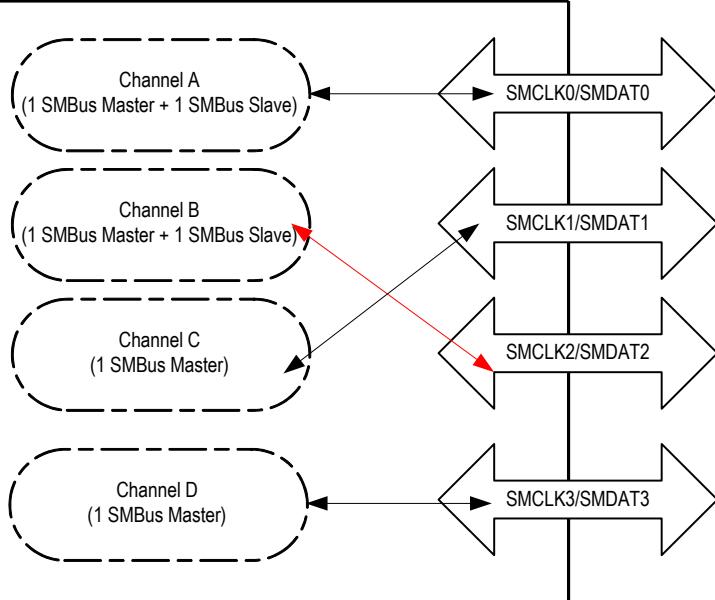
The interface of the SMBus slave is switched to SMCLK1/SMDAT1.



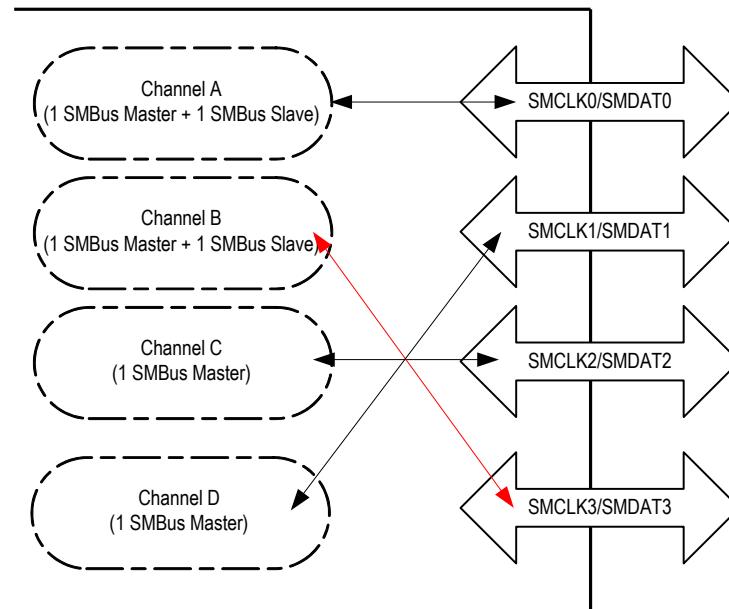
The interface of the SMBus slave is switched to SMCLK2/SMDAT2.



The interface of the SMBus slave is switched to SMCLK3/SMDAT3.



The interface of the SMBus slave in channel B is switched to SMCLK2/SMDAT2.



The interface of the SMBus slave in channel B is switched to SMCLK3/SMDAT3.

7.7.3.7 Expression of SMBus Interrupt Events

Table 7-17. SMBus Interrupt Events Expression

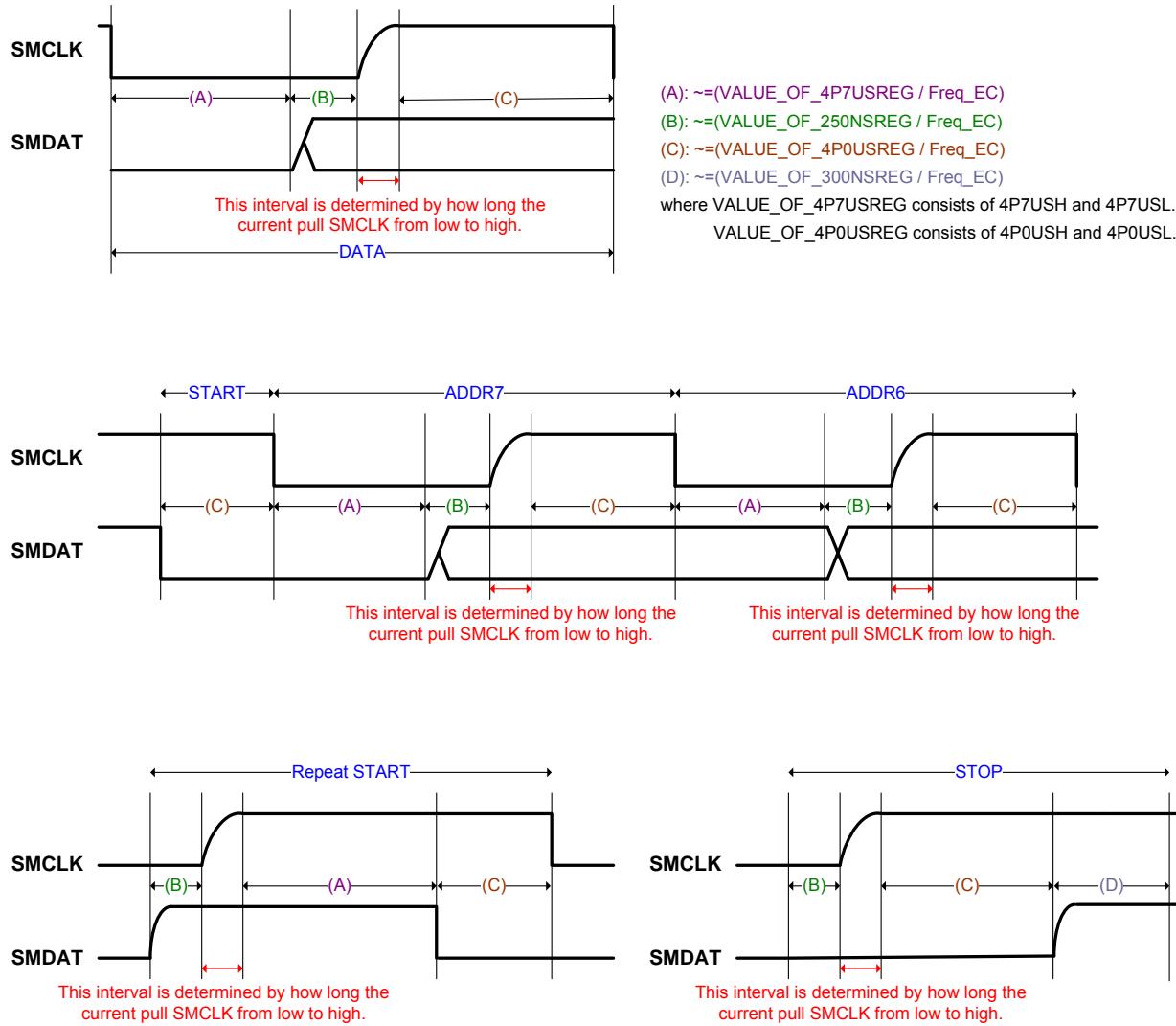
SMBus Interrupt Events	Interrupt Register	Description	
SMBus A Interrupt (Master)	b4@1C45h[MSTFCTRL1] & b0@1C01h[HOCTL]	Block Done Status 1	
	b7@1C00h[HOSTA] & b0@1C01h[HOCTL]	Byte Done Status	
	b6@1C00h[HOSTA] & b0@1C01h[HOCTL]	Time-out Error	
	b5@1C00h[HOSTA] & b0@1C01h[HOCTL]	Not Response ACK	
	b4@1C00h[HOSTA] & b0@1C01h[HOCTL]	Fail	
	b3@1C00h[HOSTA] & b0@1C01h[HOCTL]	Bus Error	
	b2@1C00h[HOSTA] & b0@1C01h[HOCTL]	Device Error	
	b1@1C00h[HOSTA] & b0@1C01h[HOCTL]	Finish Interrupt	
	b0@1C0Bh[SLSTA] & b0@1C0Ch[SICR]	Host Notify Status	
	b7@1C51h[MFTISTA]	Master A RX Interrupt Detected (for FIFO threshold)	
SMBus A Interrupt (Slave)	b3@1C51h[MFTISTA]	Master A TX Interrupt Detected (for FIFO threshold)	
	b0@1C6Ah[IWRFISTA] & b0@1C69h[I2CW2RF]	Master A I2C FIFO Interrupt Detected	
	b1@1C0Bh[SLSTA] & b5@1C10h[HOCTL2] & b1@1C0Ch[SICR]	Slave Data Status	
	b2@1C0Bh[SLSTA] & b5@1C10h[HOCTL2] & b1@1C0Ch[SICR]	Slave Timeout Status	
	b5@1C0Bh[SLSTA] & b3@1C0Ch[SICR] & b5@1C10h[HOCTL2] & b1@1C0Ch[SICR]	Stop Condition Detect Status	
	b1@1C59h[SFTISTA] & b1@1C58h[SFTHEN] & b5@1C10h[HOCTL2] & b1@1C0Ch[SICR]	RX Interrupt Detected for Slave A (for FIFO threshold)	

SMBus Interrupt Events	Interrupt Register	Description
	b0@1C59h[SFTISTA] & b0@1C58h[SFTHEN] & b5@1C10h[HOCTL2] & b1@1C0Ch[SICR]	TX Interrupt Detected for Slave A (for FIFO threshold)
SMBus B Interrupt (Master)	b4@1C47h[MSTFCTRL2] & b0@1C12h[HOCTL] & (b1-0@1C47h[MSTFCTRL2] = 00b)	Block Done Status 2
	b7@1C11h[HOSTA] & b0@1C12h[HOCTL]	Byte Done Status
	b6@1C11h[HOSTA] & b0@1C12h[HOCTL]	Time-out Error
	b5@1C11h[HOSTA] & b0@1C12h[HOCTL]	Not Response ACK
	b4@1C11h[HOSTA] & b0@1C12h[HOCTL]	Fail
	b3@1C11h[HOSTA] & b0@1C12h[HOCTL]	Bus Error
	b2@1C11h[HOSTA] & b0@1C12h[HOCTL]	Device Error
	b1@1C11h[HOSTA] & b0@1C12h[HOCTL]	Finish Interrupt
	b0@1C1Ch[HOCTL] & b0@1C1Dh[HOCTL]	Host Notify Status
	b6@1C51h[MFTISTA]	Master B RX Interrupt Detected (for FIFO threshold)
SMBus B Interrupt (Slave)	b2@1C51h[MFTISTA]	Master B TX Interrupt Detected (for FIFO threshold)
	b1@1C6Ah[IWRFISTA] & b1@1C69h[I2CW2RF]	Master B I2C FIFO Interrupt Detected
	b1@1C1Ch[I2CW2RF] & b5@1C21h[HOCTL2] & b1@1C1Dh[HOCTL2]	Slave Data Status
SMBus C Interrupt (Master)	b2@1C1Ch[HOCTL2] & b5@1C21h[HOCTL2] & b1@1C1Dh[HOCTL2]	Slave Timeout Status
	b5@1C1Ch[HOCTL2] & b3@1C1Dh[HOCTL2] & b5@1C21h[HOCTL2] & b1@1C1Dh[HOCTL2]	Stop Condition Detect Status
	b4@1C47h[MSTFCTRL2] & b0@1C2Ah[HOCTL] & (b1-0@1C47h[MSTFCTRL2] = 01b)	Block Done Status 2
SMBus D Interrupt (Master)	b7@1C29h[HOSTA] & b0@1C2Ah[HOCTL]	Byte Done Status
	b6@1C29h[HOSTA] & b0@1C2Ah[HOCTL]	Time-out Error
	b5@1C29h[HOSTA] & b0@1C2Ah[HOCTL]	Not Response ACK
	b4@1C29h[HOSTA] & b0@1C2Ah[HOCTL]	Fail
	b3@1C29h[HOSTA] & b0@1C2Ah[HOCTL]	Bus Error
	b2@1C29h[HOSTA] & b0@1C2Ah[HOCTL]	Device Error
	b1@1C29h[HOSTA] & b0@1C2Ah[HOCTL]	Finish Interrupt
	b5@1C51h[MFTISTA]	Master C RX Interrupt Detected (for FIFO threshold)
	b1@1C51h[MFTISTA]	Master C TX Interrupt Detected (for FIFO threshold)
	b2@1C6Ah[IWRFISTA] & b2@1C69h[I2CW2RF]	Master C I2C FIFO Interrupt Detected

SMBus Interrupt Events	Interrupt Register	Description
b3@1C35h[HOSTA] & b0@1C36h[HOCTL]		Bus Error
b2@1C35h[HOSTA] & b0@1C36h[HOCTL]		Device Error
b1@1C35h[HOSTA] & b0@1C36h[HOCTL]		Finish Interrupt
b4@1C51h[MFTISTA]		Master D RX Interrupt Detected (for FIFO threshold)
b0@1C51h[MFTISTA]		Master D TX Interrupt Detected (for FIFO threshold)
b3@1C6Ah[IWRFISTA] & b3@1C69h[I2CW2RF]		Master D I2C FIFO Interrupt Detected

7.7.3.8 SMBus Waveform

Figure 7-22. SMBus Waveform versus SMBus Timing Registers



7.7.4 EC Interface Registers

The SMBus I/O registers are listed below. The base address for SMBus is 1C00h. A, B, C, and D are for channel A, B, C, and D respectively.

Table 7-18. EC View Register Map, SMBus

7	0	Offset
Host Status (HOSTA)(A,B,C,D)		00h,11h,29h,35h
Host Control (HOCTL)(A,B,C,D)		01h,12h,2Ah,36h
Host Command (HOCMD)(A,B,C,D)		02h,13h,2Bh,37h
Transmit Slave Address (TRASLA)(A,B,C,D)		03h,14h,2Ch,38h
Host Data 0 (D0REG)(A,B,C,D)		04h,15h,2Dh,39h
Host Data 1 (D1REG)(A,B,C,D)		05h,16h,2Eh,3Ah
Host Block Data Byte (HOBDB)(A,B,C,D)		06h,17h,2Fh,3Bh
Packet Error Check (PECERC)(A,B,C,D)		07h,18h,30h,3Ch
Receive Slave Address (RESLADR) (A) (B)		08h, 19h
Receive Slave Address 2 (RESLADR_2) (A) (B)		3Fh, 44h
Slave Data (SLDA) (A) (B)		09h, 1Ah
SMBus Pin Control (SMBPCTL)(A,B,C,D)		0Ah,1Bh,31h,3Dh
Slave Status (SLSTA) (A) (B)		0Bh, 1Ch
Slave Interrupt Control (SICR) (A) (B)		0Ch, 1Dh
Notify Device Address (NDADR) (A) (B)		0Dh, 1Eh
Notify Data Low Byte (NDLB) (A) (B)		0Eh, 1Fh
Notify Data High Byte (NDHB) (A) (B)		0Fh, 20h
Host Control2 (HOCTL2)(A,B,C,D)		10h,21h,32h,3Eh
4.7 μ s Low Register (4P7USL)		22h
4.0 μ s Low Register (4P0USL)		23h
300 ns Register (300NS)		24h
250 ns Register (250NS)		25h
25 ms Register (25MS)		26h
45.3 μ s Low Register (45P3USL)		27h
45.3 μ s High Register (45P3USH)		28h
4.7 μ s and 4.0 μ s High Register (4P7A4P0H)		33h
Slave Interface Select Register (SLVISEL)		34h
SMCLK Timing Setting Register A (SCLKTS_A)		40h
SMCLK Timing Setting Register B (SCLKTS_B)		41h
SMCLK Timing Setting Register C (SCLKTS_C)		42h
SMCLK Timing Setting Register D (SCLKTS_D)		43h
Master FIFO Control 1 Register (MSTFCTRL1)		45h
Master FIFO Status 1 Register (MSTFSTS1)		46h
Master FIFO Control 2 Register (MSTFCTRL2)		47h
Master FIFO Status 2 Register (MSTFSTS2)		48h
Host Nack Source (HONACKSRC) (A)(B)(C)(D)		49h,4Ah,4Bh,4Ch
Slave FIFO Threshold (SLVFTH)		4Dh
Master FIFO Threshold (MSTFTH)		4Fh
Master FIFO Threshold Enable (MFTHEN)		50h
Master FIFO Threshold Interrupt Status (MFTISTA)		51h
Slave FIFO Threshold Enable (SFTHEN)		58h
Slave FIFO Threshold Interrupt Status (SFTISTA)		59h
Slave FIFO Control Register (SFFCTL)		5Eh
Slave FIFO Status (SFFSTA)		5Fh
I2C Wr To Rd FIFO Register (I2CW2RF)		69h

7

0

Offset
6Ah

I2C Wr To Rd FIFO Interrupt Status (IWRFISTA)

7.7.4.1 Host Status Register (HOSTA)

All status bits are set by hardware and cleared by writing a one to the particular bit position by the software. Software can read this register to know the source of the interrupt (Master Interface).

Address Offset:

- Channel A: 00h
- Channel B: 11h
- Channel C: 29h
- Channel D: 35h

	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Byte Done Status (BDS) This bit will be set to 1 when the host controller has received a byte (for Block Read commands and I2C-compatible cycles) or if it has completed the transmission of a byte (for Block Write commands and I2C-compatible cycles).
6	R/WC	0b	Time-out Error (TMOE) 0: This bit is cleared by writing a 1 to its position. 1: This bit is set when 25ms time-out error occurs.
5	R/WC	0b	Not Response ACK (NACK) 0: This bit is cleared by writing a 1 to its position. 1: This bit is set when the device does not respond ACK.
4	R/WC	0b	Fail (FAIL) 0: This bit is cleared by writing a 1 to the bit position. 1: Reading this bit will return 1 if KILL is set and a processing transmission is successfully killed.
3	R/WC	0b	Bus Error (BSER) 0: This bit is cleared by writing a 1 to the bit position. 1: The source of the interrupt is that the SMBus has lost arbitration.
2	R/WC	0b	Device Error (DVER) 0: This bit is cleared by writing a 1 to this bit's position. 1: This bit is set in one of the following conditions: (1) 25ms Time-out Error. (2) Not response ACK.
1	R/WC	0b	Finish Interrupt (FINTR) This bit will be set by termination of a command. 0: This bit is cleared by writing 1 to this position. 1: The source of the interrupt is the stop condition detected.
0	R	0b	Host Busy (HOBY) 0: This bit is cleared when the current transaction is completed. 1: This bit is set while the command is in operation.

7.7.4.2 Host Control Register (HOCTL)

Address Offset: Channel A: 01h

Channel B: 12h

Channel C: 2Ah

Channel D: 36h

	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	PEC Enable (PEC_EN) 0: The transaction without the PEC (Packet Error Checking) phase0 appended 1: The transaction with the PEC phase appended.
6	W	0b	Start (SRT) 0: This bit will always return 0 on reads. 1: When this bit is set, the SMBus host controller will perform the requested transaction.
5	W	0b	Last Byte (LABY) This bit is used for Block Read command and I2C-compatible read cycle. Read returns 1 if the next byte is the last byte to be received for the block read command and I2C-compatible read cycle. The firmware shall write 1 to this bit when the next byte will be the last byte to be received for the block read command and I2C-compatible cycle.
4-2	R/W	000b	SMBus Command (SMCD) These bits indicate which command will be performed. Bit 0 of the Transmit Slave Address Register determines if this is a read or write command. 000:Quick Command 001:Send Byte/ Receive Byte 010:Write Byte/ Read Byte 011:Write Word/ Read Word 100:Process Call 101:Block Read/ Block Write 110:I2C Block Read 111:Extend Command
1	R/W	0b	Kill (KILL) 0: Normal SMBus Host controller functionality. 1: When this bit is set, kill the current host transaction. This bit, once set, has to be cleared by software to allow the SMBus Host controller to function normally.
0	R/W	0b	Host Interrupt Enable (INTREN) 0: Disable. 1: Enable the generation of an interrupt for the master interface

7.7.4.3 Host Command Register (HOCMD)

Address Offset: Channel A: 02h

Channel B: 13h

Channel C: 2Bh

Channel D: 37h

	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host Command Register (HCREG) These bits are transmitted in the command field of the SMBus protocol.

7.7.4.4 Transmit Slave Address Register (TRASLA)

Address Offset: Channel A: 03h
 Channel B: 14h
 Channel C: 2Ch
 Channel D: 38h

	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	R/W	00h	Address (ADR) Address of the targeted slave.
0	R/W	0b	Direction (DIR) Direction of the host transfer. 0: Write 1: Read

7.7.4.5 Data 0 Register (D0REG)

Address Offset: Channel A: 04h
 Channel B: 15h
 Channel C: 2Dh
 Channel D: 39h

	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Data 0 (D0) These bits contain the data sent in the DATA0 (The first transaction date byte) field of the SMBus protocol. For block write commands, this register reflects the number (from 1 to 32) of bytes to transfer.

7.7.4.6 Data 1 Register (D1REG)

Address Offset: Channel A: 05h
 Channel B: 16h
 Channel C: 2Ah
 Channel D: 3Ah

	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Data 1 (D1) These bits contain the data sent in the DATA1 (Data Byte High) field of the SMBus protocol.

7.7.4.7 Host Block Data Byte Register (HOBDB)

Address Offset: Channel A: 06h
 Channel B: 17h
 Channel C: 2Fh
 Channel D: 3Bh

	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Block Data (BLDT) For a block write command, data is sent from this register. On block read command, the received data is stored in this register.

7.7.4.8 Packet Error Check Register (PECERC)

Address Offset: Channel A: 07h
 Channel B: 18h
 Channel C: 30h
 Channel D: 3Ch

	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	PEC Data (PECD) These bits are written with the 8-bit CRC value that is used as the SMBus PEC data prior to a write transaction. For read transactions, the PEC data is loaded from the SMBus into this register and is then read by software.

7.7.4.9 Receive Slave Address Register (RESLADR)

Address Offset: 08h (Only for Channel A)
 19h (Only for Channel B)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	0b	Reserved
6-0	R/W	00h	Slave Address (SADR) These bits are the slave address decoded for read and write cycles.

7.7.4.10 Receive Slave Address Register 2 (RESLADR2)

Address Offset: 3Fh (Only for Channel A)
 44h (Only for Channel B)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Slave Address 2 Enable 0: SADR2 field is ignored. 1: SADR2 field holds a valid address and enables the function to decode SADR2 for comparison with the received address.
6-0	R/W	00h	Slave Address 2 (SADR2) These bits are the slave address 2 decoded for read and write cycles.

7.7.4.11 Slave Data Register (SLDA)

Address Offset: 09h (Only for Channel A)
 1Ah (Only for Channel B)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Slave Data Byte0 (SDB0) This register stores the data received from the external master. When this register is served, software must write/read data stored in this register twice to release the SCL line. (See also section 7.7.3.3 SMBus Porting Guide on page 265)

7.7.4.12 SMBus Pin Control Register (SMBPCTL)

Address Offset: Channel A: 0Ah
 Channel B: 1Bh
 Channel C: 31h
 Channel D: 3Dh

	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	0h	Reserved
4	W	0b	SMDAT Control Enable (SDACTLE) This bit is used to enable the SMDAT Control (SDACTL) bit setting. It is write-only, and always returns 0 on reads.
3	R/W	1b	SMDAT Control (SDACTL) Only when the SMDAT Control Enable (SDACTLE) bit is set to 1 at the same time, this bit can be written as the following: 0: The SMDAT0/1/2 pin will be driven low regardless of the other SMBus logic. 1: The SMDAT0/1/2 pin will not be driven low. The other SMBus logic controls this pin.
2	R/W	1b	SMCLK Control (SCLCTL) 0: The SMCLK0/1/2 pin will be driven low regardless of the other SMBus logic. 1: The SMCLK0/1/2 pin will not be driven low. The other SMBus logic controls this pin.
1	R	-	SMDAT Current State (SMBDCS) This bit returns the value of the SMDAT0/1/2 pin. 0: Low 1: High
0	R	-	SMCLK Current State (SMBCS) This bit returns the value of the SMCLK0/1/2 pin. 0: Low 1: High

7.7.4.13 Slave Status Register (SLSTA)

Software can read this register to know the source of the interrupt (Slave Interface).

Address Offset: 0Bh (Only for Channel A)
 1Ch (Only for Channel B)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Slave Stretch SMBCLK Low Status (SSSLS) 1: SMB Slave A is stretching SMBCLK low. 0: This bit will be auto-cleared if SSCL bit is disabled. Refer to the above, if offset is 1Ch, Slave A is replaced with Slave B.
6	-	1b	Reserved
5	R/WC	0b	Stop Condition Detect Status (SPDS) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Indicate Stop Condition detected.
4	R	0b	Match Slave Address 2 (MSLA2) 0: The received address is matched with SADR. 1: The received address is matched with SADR2. Don't care when Host notify command.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
3	R	0b	Read Cycle Status (RCS) Direction of the slave transfer. 0: Write. 1: Read.
2	R/WC	0b	Slave Timeout Status (STS) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Timeout status occurs.
1	R/WC	0b	Slave Data Status (SDS) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Slave Data Register is waiting for read or write. When this bit is set and the Read Cycle Status (RCS) bit is low, the software shall read the data from the Slave Data Register. When this bit is set and the Read Cycle Status (RCS) bit is high, the software shall write the data to the Slave Data Register.
0	R/WC	0b	Host Notify Status (HONOST) This bit will be set to a 1 when a Host Notify Command has been completely received. Software can read this bit to determine that the source of the interrupt is the reception of the Host Notify Command.

Note: The firmware is required to check **SCIS** before enable bit **SSCL** and after "CLR EA".

7.7.4.14 Slave Interrupt Control Register (SICR)

Address Offset: **0Ch (Only for Channel A)**
1Dh (Only for Channel B)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	00h	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	Slave Detect STOP Condition Interrupt Enable (SDSEN) 0: Disable 1: Enable the generation of an interrupt for STOP detected by slave
2	R/W	0b	Slave SMDAT Low Timeout Enable (SDLTOEN) This bit controls the reset mechanism of SMBus Slave to handle the SMDAT line low if 25ms timeout. 0: SMCLK will be released if timeout. 1: SMCLK/SMDAT will be released if timeout.
1	R/W	0b	Slave Interrupt Enable (SITEN) 0: Disable. 1: Enable the generation of an interrupt for the slave interface.
0	R/W	0b	Host Notify Interrupt Enable (HONOIN) 0: Disable. 1: Enable the generation of an interrupt when Host Notify Status is set and it dose not affect the setting of the Host Notify Status bit.

7.7.4.15 Notify Device Address Register (NDADR)

Address Offset: **0Dh (Only for Channel A)**
1Eh (Only for Channel B)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	R	00h	Device Address (DVADR) These bits contain the 7-bit device address received during the Host Notify protocol of the SMBus 2.0 Specification.
0	-	0b	Reserved

7.7.4.16 Notify Data Low Byte Register (NDLB)

Address Offset: **0Eh (Only for Channel A)**
1Fh (Only for Channel B)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Data Low Byte (DALB) These bits contain the first (low) byte of data received during the Host Notify protocol of the SMBus 2.0 Specification.

7.7.4.17 Notify Data High Byte Register (NDHB)

Address Offset: **0Fh (Only for Channel A)**
20h (Only for Channel B)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Data High Byte (DAHB) These bits contain the second (high) byte of data received during the Host Notify protocol of the SMBus 2.0 Specification.

7.7.4.18 Host Control Register 2 (HOCTL2)

Address Offset: **Channel A: 10h**
Channel B: 21h
Channel C: 32h
Channel D: 3Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	W	0b	Slave Stretch Clock Low (SSCL) 1: Enable “SMBus slave hold clock after the start bit received”. 0: Disable “SMBus slave hold clock after the start bit received”. Only for 10h and 21h (Slave A and Slave B)
6	-	0h	Reserved
5	W	0b	SMBus Slave Enable (SLVEN) 0: Disable the SMBus Slave Device. 1: Enable the SMBus Slave Device. The SMBus Host Controller is disabled when this bit is set. This bit only exists in address offset 10h and 21h.
4	R/W	0b	SMDAT Timeout Enable (SMD_TO_EN) This bit controls the reset mechanism of SMBus Master to handle the SMDAT line low if 25ms timeout. 0: SMCLK will be released if timeout. 1: SMCLK/SMDAT will be released if timeout.
3	R/W	0b	I2C Switch Direction Enable (I2C_SW_EN) 0: Disable I2C Switch Direction. 1: Enable I2C Switch Direction.
2	R/W	0b	I2C Switch Direction Wait (I2C_SW_WAIT) 0: Disable I2C Switch Direction Wait. 1: Enable I2C Switch Direction Wait.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
1	R/W	0b	<p>I2C Enable (I2C_EN) 0: SMBus behavior. 1: Enable to communicate with I2C device and support I2C-compatible cycles.</p> <p>When this bit is set, the SMBus logic will instead be set to communicate with I2C devices and support I2C-compatible cycles. This forces the following changes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The Process Call command will skip the Command code. (2) The Block Write command will skip sending the Byte Count. (3) The Extend command can be used to support I2C-compatible cycles.
0	R/W	0b	<p>SMBus Host Enable (SMHEN) 0: Disable the SMBus Host Controller. 1: The SMBus Host interface is enabled to execute commands.</p>

7.7.4.19 Slave Interface Select Register (SLVISELR)

Address Offset: 34h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	0h	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	<p>Slave Bridge Function (SBF) 0b: Disable 1b: Enable</p>
4	R/W	0b	<p>Override Debug Mode through SMBus (OVRSMDBG) This bit overrides Debug Mode function enabled by hardware strap in SMBus interface and disables it.</p>
3-2	R/W	01b	<p>SMBus Slave B Interface Select (SLVBISEL) These bits are to decide which interface the slave B is located at. 00b: Slave B interface is located at SMCLK0/SMDAT0. 01b: Slave B interface is located at SMCLK1/SMDAT1. 10b: Slave B interface is located at SMCLK2/SMDAT2. 11b: Slave B interface is located at SMCLK3/SMDAT3. (Data can be written to SLVBISEL bits when SLVEN bit of HOCTL2 is 1.)</p>
1-0	R/W	00b	<p>SMBus Slave A Interface Select (SLVAISEL) These bits are to decide which interface the slave A is located at. 00b: Slave A interface is located at SMCLK0/SMDAT0. 01b: Slave A interface is located at SMCLK1/SMDAT1. 10b: Slave A interface is located at SMCLK2/SMDAT2. 11b: Slave A interface is located at SMCLK3/SMDAT3.</p>

7.7.4.20 4.7 μs Low Register (4P7USL)

The following registers (22h-28h, 33h) define the SMCLK0/1/2 and SMDAT0/1/2 timing.

Address Offset: 22h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>4.7 μs Low Register (4P7USL) This 4.7 μs Low Register and 4.7 μs high bit (in the 4.7 μs and 4.0 μs High Register) define the count number for the 4.7 μs counter. The 4.7 μs is (count number / FreqEC). (FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)</p>

7.7.4.21 4.0 μ s Low Register (4P0USL)

Address Offset: 23h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>4.0 μs Low Register (4P0USL)</p> <p>This 4.0 μs Low Register and 4.0 μs high bit (in the 4.7 μs and 4.0 μs High Register) define the count number for the 4.0 μs counter.</p> <p>The 4.0 μs is (count number / FreqEC).</p> <p>(FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)</p>

7.7.4.22 300 ns Register (300NSREG)

Address Offset: 24h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>300ns Register (300NS)</p> <p>This field defines the SMDAT0/1/2 hold time.</p> <p>This byte is the count number of the counter for 300 ns.</p> <p>The 300 ns is calculated by (count number / FreqEC).</p> <p>(FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)</p>

7.7.4.23 250 ns Register (250NSREG)

Address Offset: 25h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>250ns Register (250NS)</p> <p>This field defines the SMDAT0/1/2 setup time.</p> <p>This byte is the count number of the counter for 250 ns.</p> <p>The 250 ns is calculated by (count number / FreqEC).</p> <p>(FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)</p>

7.7.4.24 25 ms Register (25MSREG)

Address Offset: 26h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>25 ms Register (25MS)</p> <p>This field defines the SMCLK0/1/2 clock low timeout.</p> <p>This byte is the count number of the counter for 25 ms.</p> <p>The 25 ms is calculated by (count number *1.024 kHz).</p>

7.7.4.25 45.3 μ s Low Register (45P3USLREG)

Address Offset: 27h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>45.3 μs Low Register (45P3USLOW)</p> <p>This 45.3 μs Low Register, 45.3 μs High Register, 4.7us Low Register and 4.7us high bit (in the 4.7μs And 4.0 μs High Register) define the SMCLK0/1/2 high periodic (maximal). (45.3μs + 4.7μs=50μs)</p> <p>This byte is the count number bits [7:0] of the counter for 45.3 μs.</p> <p>The 45.3 μs is calculated by (count number[15:0] / FreqEC).</p> <p>(FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)</p>

7.7.4.26 45.3 μ s High Register (45P3USHREG)

Address Offset: 28h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	45.3 μs High Register (45P3USHGH) This 45.3 μ s Low Register, 45.3 μ s High Register, 4.7us Low Register and 4.7us high bit (in the 4.7 μ s And 4.0 μ s High Register) define the SMCLK0/1/2 high periodic (maximal). (45.3 μ s + 4.7 μ s=50 μ s). This byte is the count number bits [15:8] of the counter for 45.3 μ s. The 45.3 μ s is calculated by (count number[15:0] / FreqEC). (FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)

7.7.4.27 4.7 μ s And 4.0 μ s High Register (4p7A4P0H)

Address Offset: 33h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	4.0 μs High Bit (4P0USH) This bit is bit 8 of the count number for the 4.0 μ s counter. This 4.0 μ s Low Register and 4.0 μ s High Bit define the count number for the 4.0 μ s counter.
0	R/W	0b	4.7 μs High Bit (4P7USH) This bit is bit 8 of the count number for the 4.7 μ s counter. This 4.7 μ s Low Register and 4.7 μ s High Bit define the count number for the 4.7 μ s counter.

7.7.4.28 SMCLK Timing Setting Register A (SCLKTS_A)

Address Offset: 40h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	Fix Repeat Start Setup Time (FRSST) 0: Repeat Start period (A) will not be fixed. 1: Repeat Start period (A) will be fixed for around 5us. Please refer to Figure 7-22 on page 294 for Repeat Start period (A).
3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	1b	SMCLK 1MHz Setting (SCLKA1M) 0b: Disable. 1b: 1MHz for Channel A.
1-0	R/W	00b	SMCLK Setting (SCLKS) These bits are to determine which SMCLK rate is for channel A. If Disable, the SMCLK rate depends on the setting of original timing registers. 00b: Disable. 01b: 50 kHz. 10b: 100 kHz. 11b: 400 kHz.

7.7.4.29 SMCLK Timing Setting Register B (SCLKTS_B)

Address Offset: 41h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	Fix Repeat Start Setup Time (FRSST) 0: Repeat Start period (A) will not be fixed. 1: Repeat Start period (A) will be fixed for around 5us. Please refer to Figure 7-22 on page 294 for Repeat Start period (A).
3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	1b	SMCLK 1MHz Setting (SCLKB1M) 0b: Disable. 1b: 1MHz Channel B.
1-0	R/W	00b	SMCLK Setting (SCLKS) These bits are to determine which SMCLK rate is for channel B. If Disable, the SMCLK rate depends on the setting of original timing registers. 00b: Disable. 01b: 50 kHz. 10b: 100 kHz. 11b: 400 kHz.

7.7.4.30 SMCLK Timing Setting Register C (SCLKTS_C)

Address Offset: 42h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	Fix Repeat Start Setup Time (FRSST) 0: Repeat Start period (A) will not be fixed. 1: Repeat Start period (A) will be fixed for around 5us. Please refer to Figure 7-22 on page 294 for Repeat Start period (A).
3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	SMCLK 1MHz Setting (SCLKC1M) 0b: Disable. 1b: 1MHz Channel C.
1-0	R/W	00b	SMCLK Setting (SCLKS) These bits are to decide which SMCLK rate for the channel C. If Disable, the SMCLK rate depends on the setting of original timing registers. 00b: Disable. 01b: 50 kHz. 10b: 100 kHz. 11b: 400 kHz.

7.7.4.31 SMCLK Timing Setting Register D (SCLKTS_D)

Address Offset: 43h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	Fix Repeat Start Setup Time (FRSST) 0: Repeat Start period (A) will not be fixed. 1: Repeat Start period (A) will be fixed for around 5us. Please refer to Figure 7-22 on page 294 for Repeat Start period (A).
3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	SMCLK 1MHz Setting (SCLKD1M) 0b: Disable. 1b: 1MHz Channel D.
1-0	R/W	00b	SMCLK Setting (SCLKS) These bits are to decide which SMCLK rate for the channel D. If Disable, the SMCLK rate depends on the setting of original timing registers. 00b: Disable. 01b: 50 kHz. 10b: 100 kHz. 11b: 400 kHz.

7.7.4.32 Master FIFO Control 1 Register (MSTFCTRL1)

Address Offset: 45h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	R/WC	0b	Block Done Status 1 (BLKDS1) This bit will be set to 1 when the host controller has received or transmitted one block of 32 bytes while the byte count is set larger than 32 for I2C-compatible FIFO Mode cycles. Write to clear, then HW automatically do the successive read/write cycle. (This is for channel A dedicated FIFO)
3	R/W	0b	FIFO 1 Enable (FF1EN) 0: Disable SMB channel A in FIFO Mode. 1: Enable SMB channel A in FIFO Mode. (This is for channel A dedicated FIFO)
2-0	R/W	000b	Reserved

7.7.4.33 Master FIFO Status 1 Register (MSTFSTS1)

Address Offset: 46h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	1b	FIFO 1 Empty (This is for channel A dedicated FIFO)
6	R	0b	FIFO 1 Full (This is for channel A dedicated FIFO)
5-0	R	00h	FIFO 1 Byte Count (This is for channel A dedicated FIFO)

7.7.4.34 Master FIFO Control 2 Register (MSTFCTRL2)

Address Offset: 47h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	R/WC	0b	Block Done Status 2 (BLKDS2) This bit will be set to 1 when the host controller has received or transmitted one block of 32 bytes while the byte count is set larger than 32 for I2C-compatible FIFO Mode cycles. Write to clear, then HW automatically do the successive read/write cycle. (This is for the second FIFO, which can be used by channel B, channel C or channel D.)
3	R/W	0b	FIFO 2 Enable (FFEN2) 0: Disable FIFO 2. 1: Enable FIFO 2. (This is for the second FIFO, which can be used by channel B, channel C or channel D.)
2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	FIFO 2 Channel Select (FFCHSEL2) 00b: Switch FIFO to Channel B. 01b: Switch FIFO to Channel C. 10b: Switch FIFO to Channel D. 11b: no action

7.7.4.35 Master FIFO Status 2 Register (MSTFSTS2)

Address Offset: 48h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	1b	FIFO 2 Empty (This is for the second FIFO, which can be used by channel B, channel C or channel D.)
6	R	0b	FIFO 2 Full (This is for the second FIFO, which can be used by channel B, channel C or channel D.)
5-0	R	00h	FIFO 2 Byte Count (This is for the second FIFO, which can be used by channel B, channel C or channel D.)

7.7.4.36 Host Nack Source (HONACKSRC) (A)(B)(C)(D)

Address Offset: Channel A: 49h
 Channel B: 4Ah
 Channel C: 4Bh
 Channel D: 4Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/WC	00h	Host Nack Source (HNACKS) 000: No nack_error 001: Slave address nack error 010: Command nack error 011: Slave address read nack error 100: Data low byte nack error (DL) 101: Data high byte nack error (DH) 110: Data nack error (for block write) 111: PEC nack error (Writing 111b can be cleared.)

7.7.4.37 Slave FIFO Threshold (SLVFTH)

Address Offset: 4Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	01h	Slave FIFO Threshold (SFTH) 00: The threshold is 4 bytes. 01: The threshold is 8 bytes. 10: The threshold is 12 bytes.

7.7.4.38 Master FIFO Threshold (MSTFTH)

Address Offset: 4Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	01h	Master FIFO Threshold (MFTH) 00: The threshold is 8 bytes. 01: The threshold is 16 bytes. 10: The threshold is 24 bytes.

7.7.4.39 Master FIFO Threshold Enable (MFTHEN)

Address Offset: 50h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0	Master A Receive Data Available Function (MARDA) 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	R/W	0	Master B Receive Data Available Function (MBRDA) 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	R/W	0	Master C Receive Data Available Function (MCRDA) 0: Disable 1: Enable
4	R/W	0	Master D Receive Data Available Function (MDRDA) 0: Disable 1: Enable
3	R/W	0	Master A Transmitter Data Available Function (MATDA) 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	R/W	0	Master B Transmitter Data Available Function (MBTDA) 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	R/W	0	Master C Transmitter Data Available Function (MCTDA) 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	R/W	0	Master D Transmitter Data Available Function (MDTDA) 0: Disable 1: Enable

7.7.4.40 Master FIFO Threshold Interrupt Status (MFTISTA)

Address Offset: 51h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0	Master A RX Interrupt Detected (MARID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Master A Receive Data Available Interrupt Detected
6	R/WC	0	Master B RX Interrupt Detected (MBRID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Master B Receive Data Available Interrupt Detected
5	R/WC	0	Master C RX Interrupt Detected (MCRID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Master C Receive Data Available Interrupt Detected
4	R/WC	0	Master D RX Interrupt Detected (MDRID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Master D Receive Data Available Interrupt Detected
3	R/WC	0	Master A TX Interrupt Detected (MATID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Master A Transmitter Data Available Interrupt Detected
2	R/WC	0	Master B TX Interrupt Detected (MBTID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Master B Transmitter Data Available Interrupt Detected
1	R/WC	0	Master C TX Interrupt Detected (MCTID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Master C Transmitter Data Available Interrupt Detected
0	R/WC	0	Master D TX Interrupt Detected (MDTID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Master D Transmitter Data Available Interrupt Detected

7.7.4.41 Slave FIFO Threshold Enable (SFTHEN)

Address Offset: 58h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0	Receive Data Available Function (RDAF) 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	R/W	0	Transmitter Data Available Function (TDAF) 0: Disable 1: Enable

7.7.4.42 Slave FIFO Threshold Interrupt Status (SFTISTA)

Address Offset: 59h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/WC	0	RX Interrupt Detected for Slave A (RIDSA) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Receive data available interrupt detected for Slave A
0	R/WC	0	TX Interrupt Detected for Slave A (TXIDSA) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: Transmitter data available interrupt detected for Slave A

7.7.4.43 Slave FIFO Control Register (SFFCTL)

Address Offset: 5Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0	Hardware Slave (for Pre-defined) Enable (HSPE) 1: Enable 0: Disable
0	R/W	0	Slave A FIFO Enable (SAFE) 1: Enable 0: Disable

7.7.4.44 Slave FIFO Status (SFFSTA)

Address Offset: 5Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	1	FIFO Empty
6	R	0	FIFO Full
5	-	-	Reserved
4-0	R	0	FIFO Byte Count

7.7.4.45 I2C Wr To Rd FIFO Register (I2CW2RF)

Address Offset: 69h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0	Master A I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Function (MAIF) 1: Enable 0: Disable
6	R/W	0	Master BCD I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Function (MBCDIF) 1: Enable 0: Disable
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0	Master D I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Interrupt (MDIFI) 1: Enable 0: Disable
2	R/W	0	Master C I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Interrupt (MCIFI) 1: Enable 0: Disable
1	R/W	0	Master B I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Interrupt (MBIFI) 1: Enable 0: Disable
0	R/W	0	Master A I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Interrupt (MAIFI) 1: Enable 0: Disable

7.7.4.46 I2C Wr To Rd FIFO Interrupt Status (IWRFISTA)

Address Offset: 6Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/WC	0	Master D I2C FIFO Interrupt Detected (MDIFID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Interrupt Detected for Master D
2	R/WC	0	Master C I2C FIFO Interrupt Detected (MCIFID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Interrupt Detected for Master C
1	R/WC	0	Master B I2C FIFO Interrupt Detected (MBIFID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Interrupt Detected for Master B
0	R/WC	0	Master A I2C FIFO Interrupt Detected (MAIFID) 0: Cleared by writing a 1 to this bit. 1: I2C Wr->Rd FIFO Interrupt Detected for Master A

7.8 Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI)

7.8.1 Overview

The Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI) can maintain bi-directional communication with external devices through the PECI pin. It is compatible with the PECI 2.0/3.0 specification.

7.8.2 Features

- Supports both Host and EC side.
- Supports PECI 2.0/3.0
- Supports 16-byte write/read length
- Supports FCS checking mechanism
- Supports AW_FCS hardwired mechanism
- Supports adjustable V_T level

7.8.3 Functional Description

The PECI module can maintain bi-directional communication with PECI devices (e.g. Intel processor). The PECI host controller supports all command protocols as listed in the PECI 2.0/3.0 specification, including Ping(), GetDIB(), GetTemp() and so on. In addition, it supports FCS checking mechanism and PECI Assured Write Message as well.

7.8.3.1 PECI Porting Guide

The PECI host controller requires that target address, write length, read length, command, and write data be setup for various commands to be sent out. Based on the PECI 2.0/3.0 specification, software must setup data and command (as mentioned above) before START. When the START bit in the Host Control Register is set, the PECI host controller will perform the requested transaction. Any register values needed for computation purposes should be saved prior to issuing a new command.

Here are the steps the software shall follow to program the registers for various commands.

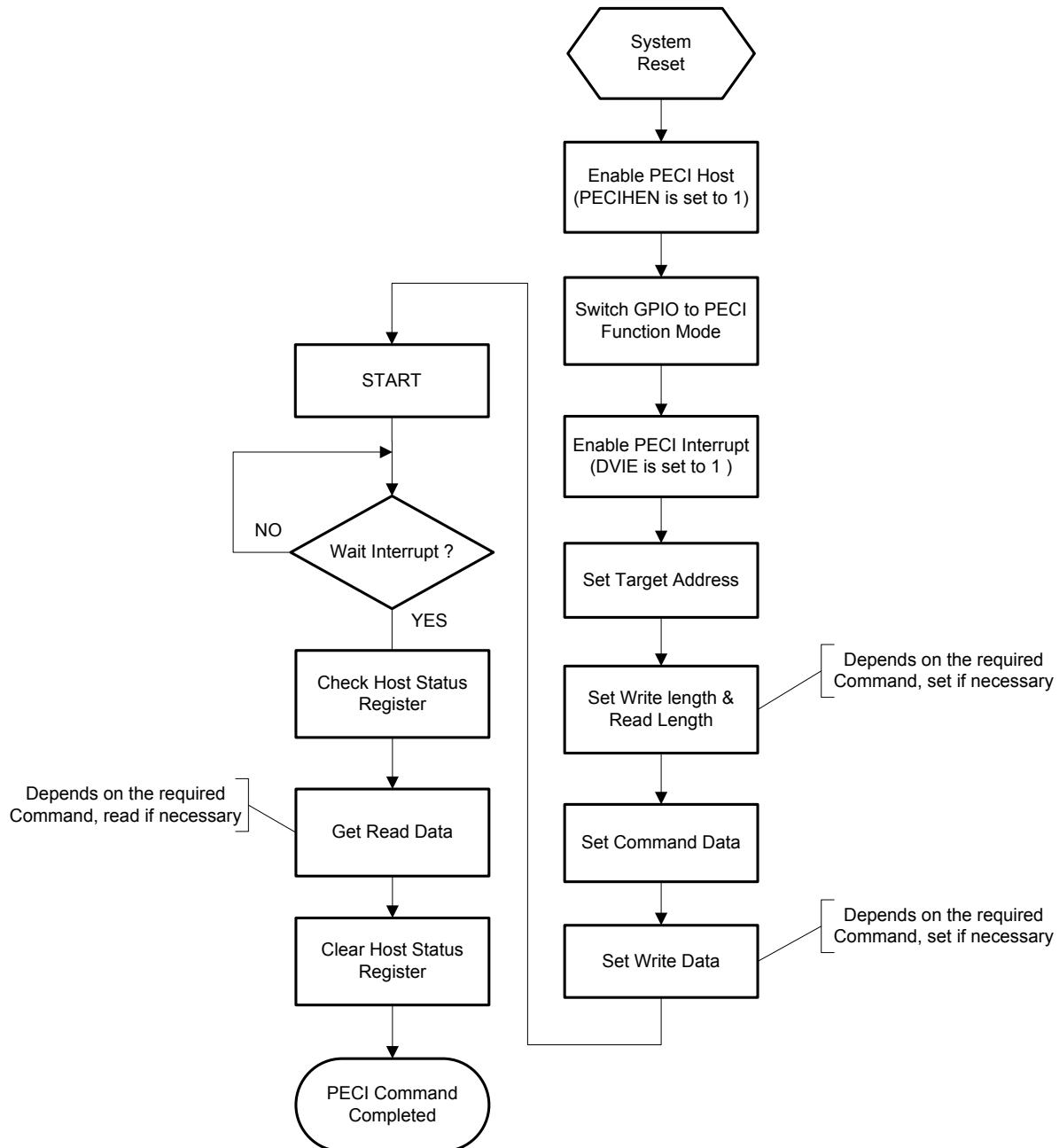
- (1). After system resets, switch the related GPIO to the PECI function mode, and then enable the PECI Host Controller (the PECIHEN bit in Host Control Register is set to 1).
- (2). Depending on the desired command, software shall write data to the Host Target Address Register, Host Write Length Register, Host Read Length Register, Host Command Register, and Host Write Data Register.
- (3). Start the transaction (Write 09h to the Host Control Register, which will enable the PECI Host, and start the transaction).
- (4). During the transaction, software shall read the Host Status Register to check whether the transaction is being performed or not (the Host Busy bit in the Host Status Register will be set during the transaction).
- (5). For polling mode, software continues reading the Host Status Register to check whether the transaction is completed or not (the Finish bit in the Host Status Register will be set when the transaction is completed). For interrupt mode, the Host Status Register will be available after data-valid event occurs resulting from PECI interrupt.
- (6). When the transaction is completed, software can read the Host Read Data Register to get the received data if necessary.
- (7). If the programmer requires that hardware support the AW_FCS calculation in the commands supporting the Assured Write Message during the transaction, the AWFCS_EN or AWFCS_FRC_CTRL bit in the Host Control Register shall be set before START.

7.8.3.2 PECI Programming Guide

Figure 7-23. Program Flow Chart for Polling Mode



Figure 7-24. Program Flow Chart for Interrupt Mode



7.8.4 Host Interface Registers

The registers of PECL can be treated as Host Interface Registers or EC Interface Registers. This section lists the host interface registers. These registers can only be accessed by the host processor. The PECL resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. These registers are listed below:

Table 7-19. Host View Register Map, PECL

7	0	Offset
Host Status Register (HOSTAR)		00h
Host Control Register (HOCTRL)	HHRAE = 0	01h
Host Command Register (HOCMDR)		02h
Host Target Address Register (HOTRADDR)		03h
Host Write Length Register (HOWRLR)		04h
Host Read Length Register (HORDLR)		05h
Host Write Data Register (HOWRDR)		06h
Host Read Data Register (HORDDR)		07h
Host Control 2 Register (HOCTL2R)	HHRAE = 1	01h
Pad Control Register (PADCTRL)	HHRAE = 1	07h
Received Write FCS Value (RWFCV)	HHRAE = 1	02h
Received Read FCS Value (RRFCV)	HHRAE = 1	03h
Write FCS Value (WFCSV)	HHRAE = 1	04h
Read FCS Value (RFCV)	HHRAE = 1	05h
Assured Write FCS Value (AWFCV)	HHRAE = 1	06h

All registers are double mapped into the host and EC side; however, the PECL function should be controlled by a side only.

The definition of all registers are the same as their identical register names in the EC side except HHRAE (Host Side High Range Address Enable) bit. HHRAE bit is located in bit 7 in the registers with offset 01h (HOCTRL or HOCTL2R). HHRAE bit is used to select different registers if they have the same offset number.

7.8.5 EC Interface Registers

The register map of EC interface is listed below. The base address for PECL is 3000h.

Table 7-20. EC View Register Map, PECL

7	0	Offset
Host Status Register (HOSTAR)		00h
Host Control Register (HOCTRL)		01h
Host Command Register (HOCMDR)		02h
Host Target Address Register (HOTRADDR)		03h
Host Write Length Register (HOWRLR)		04h
Host Read Length Register (HORDLR)		05h
Host Write Data Register (HOWRDR)		06h
Host Read Data Register (HORDDR)		07h
Host Control 2 Register (HOCTL2R)		08h
Pad Control Register (PADCTRL)		0Eh
Received Write FCS Value (RWFCV)		09h
Received Read FCS Value (RRFCV)		0Ah
Write FCS Value (WFCSV)		0Bh
Read FCS Value (RFCV)		0Ch
Assured Write FCS Value (AWFCV)		0Dh

Other related register(s):

- General Control 2 Register (GCR2), PECIE bit
-
- General Control 3 Register (GCR3), PECIPDG bit

7.8.5.1 Host Status Register (HOSTAR)

All status bits are set by hardware and cleared by writing a one to the particular bit position by the software. Software can read this register to know the status of the command.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	PECI GetTemp() Command Receive Error Code (RCV_ERRCODE) This bit reports the status of receiving the error code (8000h ~ 81FFh). 0: No error. 1: The error code in the GetTemp() command is received.
6	R/WC	0b	PECI Bus Abnormal/Contention Error (BUSERR) This bit reports the PECI line status. 0: No error. 1: Abnormal/Contention error occurs.
5	R/WC	0b	PECI Slave Message Phase t-bit Extend over Error (EXTERR) This bit reports the PECI line status. 0: No error 1: T-bit extend over error occurs.
4	-	0b	Reserved
3	R/WC	0b	Write_FCS Error (WR_FCS_ERR) This bit reports if the write FCS error occurs in the communication or not. 0: No error. 1: Write_FCS error occurs.
2	R/WC	0b	Read_FCS Error (RD_FCS_ERR) This bit reports if the read FCS error occurs in the communication or not. 0: No error. 1: Read_FCS error occurs.
1	R/WC	0b	Finish (FINISH) 0: This bit is cleared by writing 1 to this position. 1: The bit is set by termination of a command.
0	R	0b	Host Busy (HOBY) 0: This bit is cleared when the current transaction is completed. 1: This bit is set while the command is in operation.

7.8.5.2 Host Control Register (HOCTRL)

Address Offset: Host: 01h (HHRAE = 0) / EC: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Host Side High Range Address Enable (HHRAE) This bit is only available in host side. 0: Host Side High Range Address is disabled. 1: Host Side High Range Address is enabled.
6	R/W	0b	AW_FCS Force Control (WFCS_FRC_CTRL) This bit forces the AW_FCS hardwired mechanism no matter what PECL command (except the Ping() command) is issued. When this bit is set, the hardware will handle the calculation of AW_FCS. The programmer should set this bit based on the command to be issued. This bit will be cleared when the command is finished or aborted. 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
5	W	0b	Data FIFO Pointer Clear (FIFOCLR) Writing a 1 to this bit clears the Write/Read Data FIFO pointers. 0: No action; it always returns 0 when reading it. 1: Both Write and Read Data FIFO pointers will be cleared. Write Data pointer will point to Write Data 2, and Read Data pointer will point to Read Data 1.
4	R/W	0b	PECI Host Auto-abort at FCS_Error (FCSERR_ABT) This bit enables the PECL host to abort the transaction when FCS error occurs. 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
3	R/W	0b	PECI Host Enable (PECIHEN) This bit enables the PECL host controller. 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
2	R/W	0b	PECI Contention Control (CONCTRL) This bit enables the contention mechanism of the PECL bus. When this bit is set, the host will abort the transaction if the PECL bus is contentious. 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
1	R/W	0b	Assured Write FCS Enable (WFCS_EN) This bit enables the AW_FCS hardwired mechanism based on the PECL command. This bit is functional only when the AW_FCS supported command of PECL 2.0/3.0 is issued. When this bit is set, the hardware will handle the calculation of AW_FCS. 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
0	W	0b	Start (START) This bit is write-only. Writing a 1 to it during the NOT Host Busy state will start a transaction. Writing a 1 to it during the Host Busy state will not issue any transaction. So, the programmer should check the Host Busy state before issuing a transaction. 0: This bit always returns 0 on reads. 1: When this bit is set, the PECL host controller will perform the desired transaction.

7.8.5.3 Host Command (Write Data 1) Register (HOCMDR)

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host Command Register (HCMD[7:0]) This register is the command field of the PECL protocol. In the PECL protocol, it is the command (Write Data 1) byte. If the host controller is busy, the programmer should not change the value of this register, or the PECL host controller will send the wrong command. If the value of the register is out of definition, the host will transfer it as the normal value and no error will be detected by the PECL host controller.

7.8.5.4 Host Target Address Register (HOTRADDR)

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host Target Address (HAddr[7:0]) This register is the Target Address field of the PECL protocol.

7.8.5.5 Host Write Length Register (HOWRLR)

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host Write Length Register (HW_Length[7:0]) This register is the Write Length field of the PECL protocol.

7.8.5.6 Host Read Length Register (HORDLR)

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Host Read Length Register (HR_Length[7:0]) This register is the Read Length field of the PECL protocol.

7.8.5.7 Host Write Data (2-16) Register (HOWRDR)

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Write Data (2-16) (WR_DAT[7:0]) These are 15-byte FIFO registers, which are the Write Data field of the PECL protocol.

7.8.5.8 Host Read Data (1-16) Register (HORDDR)

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Read Data (1-16) (RD_DAT[7:0]) These are 16-byte FIFO registers, which are the Read Data field of the PECL protocol.

7.8.5.9 Host Control 2 Register (HOCTL2R)

Address Offset: Host: 01h (HHRAE = 1) / EC: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Host Side High Range Address Enable (HHRAE) This bit is only available in host side. 0: Host Side High Range Address is disabled. 1: Host Side High Range Address is enabled.
6-3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	000b	Host Optimal Transfer Rate Setting (HOPTTRS) These bits are used to set PECL host's optimal transfer rate. 000b: 1.8MHz. 001b: 1MHz. 100b: 1.5MHz. Otherwise: Reserved.

7.8.5.10 Pad Control Register (PADCTRLR)

Address Offset: Host: 07h (HHRAE = 1) / EC: 0Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Data Valid Interrupt Enable (DVIE) Enable to the PECL Interrupt generated by Data Valid event from PECL. This bit is only available in EC side. 0: Disable (default). 1: Enable.
1-0	R/W	00b	Host V_{TT} Setting (HOVTTS) These bits are used to set PECL V _{TT} level. 00b: 1.10V. 01b: 1.05V. 10b: 1.00V. Otherwise: Reserved.

7.8.5.11 Received Write FCS Value (RWFCSV)

Address Offset: Host: 02h (HHRAE = 1) / EC: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00b	Received Write FCS Value (RWFCSV) RWFCSV is used in storing the Write FCS generated by the PECL client. A new received Write FSC will automatically update this field.

7.8.5.12 Received Read FCS Value (RRFCSV)

Address Offset: Host: 03h (HHRAE = 1) / EC: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00b	Received Read FCS Value (RRFCSV) RRFCSV is used in storing the Read FCS generated by the PECL client. A new received Read FSC will automatically update this field.

7.8.5.13 Write FCS Value (WFCSV)

Address Offset: Host: 04h (HHRAE = 1) / EC: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00b	Write FCS Value (WFCSV) WFCSV is used in storing the Write FCS generated by EC. This field will be automatically updated while WRFC CSV is updated.

7.8.5.14 Read FCS Value (RFC CSV)

Address Offset: Host: 05h (HHRAE = 1) / EC: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00b	Read FCS Value (RFC CSV) RFC CSV is used in storing the Read FCS generated by EC. This field will be automatically updated while RRFC CSV is updated.

7.8.5.15 Assured Write FCS Value (AWFCSV)

Address Offset: Host: 06h (HHRAE = 1) / EC: 0Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00b	Assured Write FCS Value (AWFCSV) AWFCSV is used in storing the Assured Write FCS generated by EC. This field will be automatically updated while WRFC CSV is updated.

7.9 PS/2 Interface

7.9.1 Overview

The PS/2 device uses a two-wire bi-directional interface for data transmission. The device consists of three identical channels. Each of the three channels provides two signals (CLK and DATA line) to communicate with the auxiliary device. The PS/2 interface also connects the CLK line and DATA line to the WUC (WU10-WU17) to wake-up the 8032 when these lines are toggled.

CLK line and DATA line are the same as PS2CLKn and PS2DATn (n=0,1 or 2) pins. Refer to Table 5-7 on page 14 for the details.

7.9.2 Features

- Supports three PS/2 channels.
- Supports hardware/software mode selection.
- Three interrupt features are available: Start Interrupt, Transaction Done Interrupt, and Software Mode Interrupt (INT18, INT19 and INT20).

7.9.3 Functional Description

The PS/2 Interface has two operation methods: Hardware mode and software mode. When the hardware mode is enabled, the PS/2 interface can perform automatic reception or transmission depending on the TRMS bit in the PSCTLn register. When the hardware mode is disabled (software mode is enabled), the PS/2 CLK line and DATA line are controlled by the firmware via the CCLK bit and CDAT bit in the PSCTLn register. The following sections will describe how to use the PS/2 interface.

7.9.3.1 Hardware Mode Selected

Receive Mode

Here are the steps the host shall follow to receive data from a PS/2 device.

1. Enable the hardware mode, select the receive mode, and release the CLK line and DATA line (Write 07h to the PS/2 Control Register).
2. Enable the interrupts. (TDIE bit in PS/2 Interrupt Control Register has to be set to 1 because when the data transmission is completed, the data in PS/2 Data Register needs to be read.)

After these steps, the PS/2 interface is ready to receive data. When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt signal is set high (Transaction Done interrupt). The status (Transaction Done Status) can be read from PS/2 Status Register and the received data can be read from the PS/2 Data Register. The PS/2 CLK line will be held low until the PS/2 Data Register is read.

Transmit Mode

Here are the steps the host shall follow to send data to a PS/2 device.

1. Enable the hardware mode, select the transmit mode, and pull the CLK line low and DATA line high (Write 0Dh to the PS/2 Control Register).
2. Enable the interrupts. (TDIE bit in PS/2 Interrupt Control Register has to be set to 1 because when the data transmission is completed, the data in PS/2 Status Register needs to be read.)
3. Write the data to be transmitted to the PS/2 Data Register.
4. Pull the DATA line low (Write 0Ch to the PS/2 Control Register).
5. Pull the CLK line high (Write 0Eh to the PS/2 Control Register).

After these steps, the PS/2 interface is ready to transmit data. When the data transmission is completed, an interrupt signal is set high (Transaction Done interrupt). The status (Transaction Done Status) can be read from PS/2 Status Register. The CLK line will be held low until the PS/2 Status Register is read.

Input Signal Debounce

This PS/2 Interface performs a debounce operation on the CLK input signal before determining its logical value. When this operation is enabled (DCEN bit in the PS/2 Control Register is set to 1), the CLK input signal has to be stable for at least 4 clock cycles.

7.9.3.2 Software Mode Selected**Software Control PS/2 CLK line and DATA line**

When the Software Mode is selected (PSHE=0 in PS/2 Control Register), the software can control the PS/2 CLK line and DATA line. The CCLK bit and CDAT bit in the PS/2 Control Register control the CLK line and DATA line. When one of these bits is cleared, the relevant pin is held low. When one of these bits is set, the relevant pin is pulled high.

Software Control the Interrupt

When the PS/2 Hardware Enable bit is cleared (PSHE=0 in PS/2 Control Register) and the Software Mode Interrupt Enable bit is set (SMIE=1 in PS/2 Interrupt Control Register), the software can control the PS/2 interrupt. The interrupt is set high when the CCLK bit in PS/2 Control Register is set high. If such an interrupt is not desired, clear the Software Mode Interrupt Enable bit (SMIE=0 in PS/2 Interrupt Control Register).

7.9.4 EC Interface Registers

The PS/2 interface registers are listed below. The base address for PS/2 is 1700h.

Table 7-21. EC View Register Map, PS/2

7	0	Offset
PS/2 Control Register 1 (PSCTL1)		00h
PS/2 Control Register 2 (PSCTL2)		01h
PS/2 Control Register 3 (PSCTL3)		02h
PS/2 Interrupt Control Register 1 (PSINT1)		04h
PS/2 Interrupt Control Register 2 (PSINT2)		05h
PS/2 Interrupt Control Register 3 (PSINT3)		06h
PS/2 Status Register 1 (PSSTS1)		08h
PS/2 Status Register 2 (PSSTS2)		09h
PS/2 Status Register 3 (PSSTS3)		0Ah
PS/2 Data Register 1 (PSDAT1)		0Ch
PS/2 Data Register 2 (PSDAT2)		0Dh
PS/2 Data Register 3 (PSDAT3)		0Eh

7.9.4.1 PS/2 Control Register 1-3 (PSCTL1-3)

This register controls the operation of the PS/2 interface. PS/2 Control Register 1-3 are for channel 1-3 respectively.

Address Offset: 00h~02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	000b	Reserved
4	R/W	0b	Debounce Circuit Enable (DCEN) 0: The debounce circuit is disabled. 1: The debounce circuit is enabled.
3	R/W	0b	Transmit / Receive Mode Selection (TRMS) 0: Receive mode is selected. 1: Transmit mode is selected.
2	R/W	0b	PS/2 Hardware Enable (PSHE) When this bit is set to 1, the PS/2 channel can perform automatic reception or transmission. When this bit is 0, the channel's CLK and DATA lines are controlled by the CCLK and CDAT bits in this register. 0: PS/2 hardware mode is disabled (Software mode is enabled). 1: PS/2 hardware mode is enabled.
1	R/W	0b	Control CLK Line (CCLK) This bit can control the CLK line. 0: The CLK line is held low. 1: The CLK line is pulled high.
0	R/W	1b	Control DATA Line (CDAT) This bit can control the DATA line. 0: The DATA line is held low. 1: The DATA line is pulled high.

7.9.4.2 PS/2 Interrupt Control Register 1-3 (PSINT1-3)

This register enables or disables various interrupt sources. PS/2 Interrupt Control Register 1-3 are for channel 1-3 respectively.

Address Offset: 04h~06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	00000b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	Timeout Interrupt Enable (TOIE) Enable Timeout timer and the generation of an interrupt for timeout events to activate. Timeout events: (a) Request to send and wait over 15ms during transmission (b) Data transfer over 2ms during transmission and reception 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	R/W	0b	Transaction Done Interrupt Enable (TDIE) Enable or disable the interrupt generation when the Transaction Done status occurs. 0: Disable the interrupt. 1: Enable the interrupt.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
1	R/W	0b	Start Interrupt Enable (SIE) Enable or disable the interrupt generation when the Start status occurs. 0: Disable the interrupt. 1: Enable the interrupt.
0	R/W	0b	Software Mode Interrupt Enable (SMIE) Enable or disable the interrupt generation when the PS/2 hardware is disabled. The CCLK bit in PSCTLn register can control the interrupt output when this bit is set to 1 and PS/2 hardware is disabled. 0: Disable the interrupt. 1: Enable the interrupt.

7.9.4.3 PS/2 Status Register 1-3 (PSSTS1-3)

This register contains the status information on the data transfer on the PS/2. Status Register 1-3 are for channel 1-3 respectively.

Address Offset: 08h~0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	00b	Reserved
6	R/W1C	0b	Timeout Error(TOER) This bit is 1 when the timeout event occurs and cleared by write 1 to this bit.
5	R	0b	Frame Error (FER) This bit is 1 when the stop bit in a received frame was detected low.
4	R	0b	Parity Error (PER) This bit is 1 when a parity error condition occurs.
3	R	0b	Transaction Done Status (TDS) This bit is 1 when a PS/2 data transfer is done.
2	R	0b	Start Status (SS) This bit is 1 when a start bit is detected.
1	R	-	CLK Line Status (CLS) Reading this bit returns the current status of the PS/2 CLK line.
0	R	-	DATA Line Status (DLS) Reading this bit returns the current status of the PS/2 DATA line.

7.9.4.4 PS/2 Data Register 1-3 (PSDAT1-3)

In receive mode, this register holds the data received from the PS/2 device. In transmit mode, the data in this register is transmitted to the PS/2 device. Data Register 1-3 are for channel 1-3 respectively.

Address Offset: 0Ch~0Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Data (DAT) Holds the data received from the PS/2 device in the receive mode or the data which will be transmitted in the transmit mode.

7.10 Digital to Analog Converter (DAC)

7.10.1 Overview

The DAC interface is used as a communication interface between the embedded controller and DAC.

7.10.2 Feature

- Supports 4-channel D/A converter
- 8-bit resolution
- Independent enable signals for each channel
- Power-down function

7.10.3 Functional Description

The DAC interface has four channels. Each channel generates an output in the range of 0V to AVCC with eight-bit resolution. When a DAC channel is enabled, its output is defined by the value written to its DACDAT register. DACDAT 2-5 control channel 2-5 respectively. The 0V output is obtained for a value of 00h in the DACDAT register. The AVCC output is obtained for a value of FFh in the DACDAT register. In power-down mode (POWDNx=1 in DAC Power Down Register), the DAC output is 0V.

DAC analog circuit has less power consumption if it is power-down. POWDNx bit in DAC Power Down Register controls this and it's cleared during EC domain reset.

7.10.4 EC Interface Registers

The DAC interface registers are listed below. The base address for DAC is 1A00h.

Table 7-22. EC View Register Map, DAC

7	0	Offset
		01h
		04h
		05h
		06h
		07h
DAC Power Down Register (DACPDRREG)		
DAC Data Channel 2 (DACDAT2)		
DAC Data Channel 3 (DACDAT3)		
DAC Data Channel 4 (DACDAT4)		
DAC Data Channel 5 (DACDAT5)		

7.10.4.1 DAC Power Down Register (DACPDRREG)

When the bit in this register is set, the respective DAC channels will be power-down.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	1b	DAC Channel 5 Power Down (POWDN5) 0: The DAC channel 5 is not power-down. 1: The DAC channel 5 is power-down.
4	R/W	1b	DAC Channel 4 Power Down (POWDN4) 0: The DAC channel 4 is not power-down. 1: The DAC channel 4 is power-down.
3	R/W	1b	DAC Channel 3 Power Down (POWDN3) 0: The DAC channel 3 is not power-down. 1: The DAC channel 3 is power-down.
2	R/W	1b	DAC Channel 2 Power Down (POWDN2) 0: The DAC channel 2 is not power-down. 1: The DAC channel 2 is power-down.
1-0	-	-	Reserved

7.10.4.2 DAC Data Channel 2~5 Register (DACDAT2~5)

The data in these registers will be loaded into channel 2~5.

Address Offset:
Channel 2: 04h
Channel 3: 05h
Channel 4: 06h
Channel 5: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	DAC Data Register (DACDAT) 8 bit data will be loaded to the DAC for D/A operation.

7.11 Analog to Digital Converter (ADC)

7.11.1 Overview

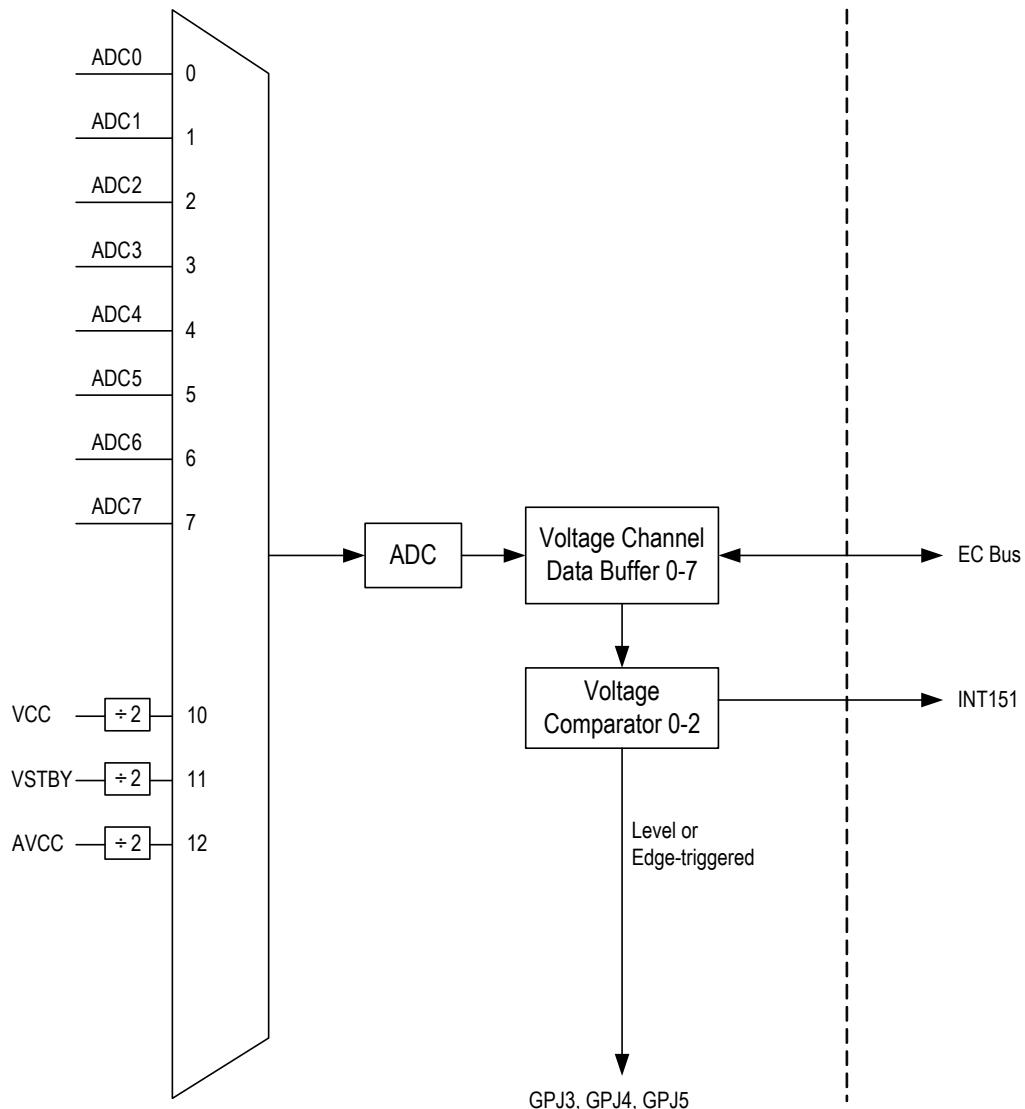
The ADC (analog to digital converter) provides an accurate method for measuring slow changing voltages. The module can measure the channel up to eleven-voltage with 10-bit resolution.

7.11.2 Features

- Supports 10-bit resolution and 0 to 3V input voltage range
- Supports 8 voltage buffers
- Supports fast AD conversion of 11 channels
- Supports 3 voltage comparators, even EC in sleep mode.
- Polling or interrupt-driven interface

7.11.3 Functional Description

Figure 7-25. ADC Channels Control Diagram



7.11.3.1 ADC General Description

Inputs

The ADC has 11 inputs (ADC0-7, ADC10-12) divided into two groups described as the following:

- External Voltage (ADC0-7):
These are for DC voltage sources.

- Internal Voltage (ADC10-12):

These are connected to the internal supply voltages of the device (VCC, VSTBY and AVCC).
The input voltages of ADC10-12 are divided by 2 before being input to analog multiplexer.

A/D Converter

The high-resolution A/D converter receives the selected input with a 16 to 1 analog multiplier and converts it. The result of the conversion is a 10-bit unsigned integer.

ADC Cycle

The ADC has 8 output buffers, which are for the voltage channel. The buffer for voltage measurement channels holds the current data until the next same volt channel measurement is completed after one ADC cycle is finished. An ADC cycle includes measurements of all active channels. If all 8 channels are enabled, the first measurement is a voltage channel 0 and followed by voltage channel 1, 2, 3, ... 7. After an A/D conversion is completed for a certain active channel, its related bit in the Data Valid (DATVAL bit in VCH0CTL - VCH7CTL) flag is set, which represents the channel of data is available and EC can read out.

Channel Conversion Time

The channel conversion time of ADC is listed below.

Table 7-23. ADC Channel Conversion Time

{ADCCTS1, ADCCTS0}	= 11b	= 01b	= 00b or 10b
Conversion Time (μ s)	200*(SCLKDIV + 1)	103.2*(SCLKDIV + 1)	30.8*(SCLKDIV + 1)

Interrupt to INTC

ADC interrupt (INT8) will be active if end-of-cycle or voltage channel 0-7 data valid is true. See also INTECEN and INTDVEN.

The voltage comparator interrupt (INT151) will be active if the value stored in the selected voltage channel data buffer reaches the threshold level of the comparator.

7.11.3.2 Voltage Measurement and Automatic Hardware Calibration

The ADC converts the input voltage signal ranging from 0V to 3V into a 10-bit unsigned integer. This 10-bit integer then will be stored in data buffer VCHiDATL and VCHiDATM.

Some examples of the input voltage versus the unsigned 10-bit integer is listed below:

3.0V is converted into 3FFh.

1.5V is converted into 200h.

0.0V is converted into 000h.

Changing the input selection for a new measurement channel (voltage), the software needs to set a delay time to prevent the result of an unintended ADC operation. The ADC waits for a programmable delay time between the selection of the input to be measured and the beginning of the A/D conversion.

7.11.3.3 ADC Operation

Reset

The ADC is disabled, and all interrupt is masked and all event status bits reset. The selected input for all four-voltage channels is disabled (Bit4-0 of the VCHiCTL register is set to 0Fh).

Initializing the ADC

The ADC has to be initialized before ADC is enabled (ADCEN in the ADCCFG register is set to 1). The followings need to be done before the ADC is enabled.

1. Set AINITB@ADCSTS = 1 then clear it (only once after VSTBY power on)
2. Channel Select in VCHiCTL register
3. ADCEN bit in ADCCFG register is cleared.

Enabling the ADC

After the ADC is enabled, the voltage channel is measured as long as the ADCEN is set 1 and when the voltage channel is selected. The measurement operations may be enabled or disabled individually.

Disabling the ADC

ADC analog circuit has less power consumption if it is disabled. ADCEN bit in ADCCFG register controls this and it's cleared at EC Domain Reset.

The firmware should clear ADCEN bit before entering Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode.

7.11.4 EC Interface Registers

The ADC control/status and data out registers set interfaces with the EC through the EC Dedicated bus. These registers are mapped in the address space of the EC. The registers are listed below and the base address is 1900h.

Table 7-24. EC View Register Map, ADC

7	0	Offset
	ADC Status (ADCSTS)	00h
	ADC Configuration (ADCCFG)	01h
	ADC Clock Control (ADCCTL)	02h
	ADC General Control Register (ADCGCR)	03h
	Voltage Channel 0 Channel Control (VCH0CTL)	04h
	Calibration Data Control Register (KDCTL)	05h
	Voltage Channel 1 Control (VCH1CTL)	06h
	Voltage Channel 1 Data Buffer LSB (VCH1DATL)	07h
	Voltage Channel 1 Data Buffer MSB (VCH1DATM)	08h
	Voltage Channel 2 Control (VCH2CTL)	09h
	Voltage Channel 2 Data Buffer LSB (VCH2DATL)	0Ah
	Voltage Channel 2 Data Buffer MSB (VCH2DATM)	0Bh
	Voltage Channel 3 Control (VCH3CTL)	0Ch
	Voltage Channel 3 Data Buffer LSB (VCH3DATL)	0Dh
	Voltage Channel 3 Data Buffer MSB (VCH3DATM)	0Eh
	Voltage Channel 0 Data Buffer LSB (VCH0DATL)	18h
	Voltage Channel 0 Data Buffer MSB (VCH0DATM)	19h
	Voltage Compare Scan Period (VCMPSCP)	37h
	Voltage Channel 4 Control (VCH4CTL)	38h
	Voltage Channel 4 Data Buffer MSB (VCH4DATM)	39h
	Voltage Channel 4 Data Buffer LSB (VCH4DATL)	3Ah
	Voltage Channel 5 Control (VCH5CTL)	3Bh
	Voltage Channel 5 Data Buffer MSB (VCH5DATM)	3Ch
	Voltage Channel 5 Data Buffer LSB (VCH5DATL)	3Dh
	Voltage Channel 6 Control (VCH6CTL)	3Eh
	Voltage Channel 6 Data Buffer MSB (VCH6DATM)	3Fh
	Voltage Channel 6 Data Buffer LSB (VCH6DATL)	40h
	Voltage Channel 7 Control (VCH7CTL)	41h
	Voltage Channel 7 Data Buffer MSB (VCH7DATM)	42h
	Voltage Channel 7 Data Buffer LSB (VCH7DATL)	43h
	ADC Data Valid Status (ADCDVSTS)	44h
	Voltage Compare Status (VCMPSTS)	45h
	Voltage Compare 0 Control (VCMP0CTL)	46h
	Voltage Compare 0 Data Buffer MSB (VCMP0DATM)	47h
	Voltage Compare 0 Data Buffer LSB (VCMP0DATL)	48h
	Voltage Compare 1 Control (VCMP1CTL)	49h
	Voltage Compare 1 Data Buffer MSB (VCMP1DATM)	4Ah
	Voltage Compare 1 Data Buffer LSB (VCMP1DATL)	4Bh
	Voltage Compare 2 Control (VCMP2CTL)	4Ch
	Voltage Compare 2 Data Buffer MSB (VCMP2DATM)	4Dh
	Voltage Compare 2 Data Buffer LSB (VCMP2DATL)	4Eh
	Voltage Comparator Output Type Register (VCMPOTR)	4Fh
	Voltage Comparator Lock Register (VCMPLR)	52h

For a summary of the abbreviations used for register type, see “Register Abbreviations and Access Rules”

7.11.4.1 ADC Status Register (ADCSTS)

This register indicates the global status of the ADC module. ADCSTS is cleared (00h) on VSTBY Power-Up reset; on other resets, bit 2 is unchanged and other bits are cleared.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	1b	ADC Conversion Time Select 1 (ADCCTS1) Change this bit to increase or decrease the ADC conversion time.
6	-	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Clock Source Select (SDIVSRC) This bit provides selection of the clock source of ADC clock. See also SCLKDIV field in ADCCTL register. 0: Select EC Clock (frequency = FreqEC) 1: Select PLL Clock (frequency = FreqPLL) FreqPLL/FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484.
4	-	0b	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	Analog Accuracy Initialization Bit (AINITB) Write 1 to this bit and write 0 to this bit immediately once and only once during the firmware initialization and do not write 1 again after initialization since IT8987 takes much power consumption if this bit is set as 1. Writing steps about this bit should be done before ADCEN bit is set in ADCCFG register. 1: Start ADC accuracy initialization. 0: Stop ADC accuracy initialization.
2	R/W	0b	ADC Power Statement (ADCPS) This bit remains zero when ADC power is in a normal state. When ADC power shuts down or failure occurs, the software must program this bit to one. The program has to be waited at least 200usec for ADC internal initialization after power on. 0: Indicate the ADC power in a normal state. 1: Indicate the ADC power in a shut-down or failure state.
1	R/WC	0b	Data Overflow Event (DOVE) Measurement data from the previous cycle was overwritten with data from the current cycle before being read. In the event of a data overflow, the DATVAL bit remains set and new data is placed in Channel Data Buffer register. This bit is cleared by writing 1 to it; writing 0 is ignored. 0: No overflow (default) 1: Overflow
0	R/WC	0b	End-of-Cycle Event (EOCE) End of ADC cycle; all enabled measurements (up to four) are completed. For each of the enabled channels, the DATVAL bit is set to 1 and the data stored in Channel Data Buffer register respectively. 0: Cycle in progress (default) 1: End of ADC cycle

7.11.4.2 ADC Configuration Register (ADCCFG)

This register controls the operation and global configuration of the ADC module.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	10b	Reserved
5	-	0b	ADC Conversion Time Select 0 (ADCCTS0) Change this bit to increase or decrease the ADC conversion time.
4-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Interrupt from End-of-Cycle Event Enable (INTECEN) Enables an ADC interrupt generated by End-of ADC-cycle event (EOCE in ADCSTS register). 0: Disabled (default) 1: Enabled interrupt by EOCE event
1	R/W	0b	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	ADC Module Enable (ADCEN) Controls ADC operation or not 0: ADC disabled (default), power-down 1: ADC enabled

7.11.4.3 ADC Clock Control Register (ADCCTL)

This register controls the EC clock to ADC clock division.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	0h	Reserved
5-0	R/W	15h	Select Clock Division Factor (SCLKDIV) This field is used in selecting the divisor for the ADC clock divider. NOTE: SCLKDIV has to be equal to or greater than 1h.

7.11.4.4 ADC General Control Register (ADCGCR)

This register controls the ADC Data kept in VCHxDATL/VCHxDATM.

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	ADC Data Buffer Keep Enable (ADCDBKEN) Enable this bit, and VCHxDATL/VCHxDATM will be kept until DATVAL is cleared (write 1 clear) especially for that conversion time is short. 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable
6-3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	2h	Reserved NOTE: Do not modify this default value.

7.11.4.5 Voltage Channel 0 Control Register (VCH0CTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of the Voltage channel.

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid (DATVAL) The VCH0DATL/VCH0DATM is available for reading when DATVAL is set. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled (ADCEN in ADCCFG register is cleared) or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH0DATL/VCH0DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – new data is available in VCH0DATL/VCH0DATM
6	R/W	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Data Valid Enable (INTDVEN) Enabled to the ADC Interrupt generated by Data valid event of voltage channel 0. 0: Disabled (default) 1: Enabled – ADC Interrupt from local DATVAL
4-0	R/W	11111b	Selected Input (SELIN) Indicates which Volt channel input is selected for measurement. The channel selection has to be programmed before the channel is measured. Bits 43210 Description 00000: Channel 0 00001: Channel 1 01010: Channel 10 01100: Channel 12 Others: Reserved 11111: Channel Disabled (default)

7.11.4.6 Calibration Data Control Register (KDCTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of the Calibration channel.

Address Offset: 05h

B it	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Automatic Hardware Calibration Enable(AHCE) 0: Disable automatic hardware calibration. 1: Enable automatic hardware calibration .
6-0	-	0000000b	Reserved

7.11.4.7 Voltage Channel 1 Control Register (VCH1CTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of Voltage Channel 1.

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid (DATVAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH1DATL/VCH1DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available.
6	R/W	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Data Valid Enable (INTDVEN) Enabled to the ADC Interrupt for Data valid event of Volt channel 1. 0: Disabled (default) 1: Enabled – ADC Interrupt from local DATVAL
4-0	R/W	11111b	Selected Input (SELIN) Indicates which Volt channel input is selected for measurement. The channel selection has to be programmed before the channel is measured. Bits 43210 Description 00000: Channel 0 00001: Channel 1 01010: Channel 10 01100: Channel 12 Others: Reserved 11111: Channel Disabled (default)

7.11.4.8 Volt Channel 1 Data Buffer LSB (VCH1DATL)

This register (buffer) holds the data(LSB 8bits) measured by the Volt Channel 1.

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT7-0) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 1. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after read data.

7.11.4.9 Volt Channel 1 Data Buffer MSB (VCH1DATM)

This register (buffer) holds the data(MSB 6bits) measured by the Volt Channel 1.

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT9-8) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 1. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after read data.

7.11.4.10 Voltage Channel 2 Control Register (VCH2CTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of Voltage Channel 2.

Address Offset: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid (DATVAL) The same as Volt channel 1.
6	R/W	0b	Reserved The same as Volt channel 1.
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Data Valid Enable (INTDVEN) The same as Volt channel 1.
4-0	R/W	11111b	Selected Input (SELIN) The same as Volt channel 1.

7.11.4.11 Volt Channel 2 Data Buffer LSB (VCH2DATL)

This register (buffer) holds the data(LSB 8bits) measured by the Volt Channel 2.

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT7-0) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 2. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after read data.

7.11.4.12 Volt Channel 2 Data Buffer MSB (VCH2DATM)

This register (buffer) holds the data(MSB 6bits) measured by the Volt Channel 2.

Address Offset: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT9-8) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 2. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after read data.

7.11.4.13 Voltage Channel 3 Control Register (VCH3CTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of Voltage Channel 3.

Address Offset: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid (DATVAL) The same as Volt channel 1.
6	R/W	0b	Reserved The same as Volt channel 1.
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Data Valid Enable (INTDVEN) The same as Volt channel 1.
4-0	R/W	11111b	Selected Input (SELIN) The same as Volt channel 1.

7.11.4.14 Volt Channel 3 Data Buffer LSB (VCH3DATL)

This register (buffer) holds the data(LSB 8bits) measured by the Volt Channel 3.

Address Offset: 0Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT7-0) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 3. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after read data.

7.11.4.15 Volt Channel 3 Data Buffer MSB (VCH3DATM)

This register (buffer) holds the data(MSB 6bits) measured by the Volt Channel 3.

Address Offset: 0Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2		-	Reserved
1-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT9-8) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 3. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after read data.

7.11.4.16 Voltage Channel 0 Data Buffer LSB (VCH0DATL)

This register (buffer) holds the data (LSB 7-0) measured by the Voltage Channel 0.

Address Offset: 18h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Voltage Channel Data (VCHDAT7-0) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 0. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after read data.

7.11.4.17 Voltage Channel 0 Data Buffer MSB (VCH0DATM)

This register (buffer) holds the data (MSB 6 bits) measured by the Voltage Channel 0.

Address Offset: 19h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1-0	R	-	Voltage Channel Data (VCHDAT9-8) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 0. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after read data.

7.11.4.18 Voltage Compare Scan Period (VCMPSCP)

This register defines the scan period of Voltage Comparator 0 ~ 2.

Address Offset: 37h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0110b	Comparator 0/1/2 Scan Period (CMPSNP) 0001b : 100 uS 0010b : 200 uS 0011b : 400 uS 0100b : 600 uS 0101b : 800 uS 0110b : 1mS 0111b : 1.5 mS 1000b : 2 mS 1001b : 2.5 mS 1010b : 3 mS 1011b : 4 mS 1100b : 5 mS
3-0	-	-	Reserved

7.11.4.19 Voltage Channel 4 Control Register (VCH4CTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of Voltage Channel 4.

Address Offset: 38h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid (DATVAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH4DATL/VCH4DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available.
6	R/W	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Data Valid Enable (INTDVEN) Enabled to the ADC Interrupt for Data valid event of Volt channel 4. 0: Disabled (default) 1: Enabled – ADC Interrupt from local DATVAL
4	R/W	0b	Voltage Channel Enable (VCHEN) NOTE: Only for ADC Input Channel 4 0 : Disabled (Default) 1 : Enabled
3-0	R/W	0000b	Reserved

7.11.4.20 Volt Channel 4 Data Buffer MSB (VCH4DATM)

This register (buffer) holds the data(MSB 2bits) measured by the Volt Channel 4.

Address Offset: 39h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT9-8) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 4. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after data is read.

7.11.4.21 Volt Channel 4 Data Buffer LSB (VCH4DATL)

This register (buffer) holds the data(LSB 8bits) measured by the Volt Channel 4.

Address Offset: 3Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT7-0) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 4. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after data is read.

7.11.4.22 Voltage Channel 5 Control Register (VCH5CTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of Voltage Channel 5.

Address Offset: 3Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid (DATVAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH5DATL/VCH5DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available.
6	R/W	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Data Valid Enable (INTDVEN) Enabled to the ADC Interrupt for Data valid event of Volt channel 5. 0: Disabled (default) 1: Enabled – ADC Interrupt from local DATVAL
4	R/W	0b	Voltage Channel Enable (VCHEN) NOTE: Only for ADC Input Channel 5 0 : Disabled (Default) 1 : Enabled
3-0	R/W	0000b	Reserved

7.11.4.23 Volt Channel 5 Data Buffer MSB (VCH5DATM)

This register (buffer) holds the data(MSB 2bits) measured by the Volt Channel 5.

Address Offset: 3Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT9-8) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 5. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after data is read.

7.11.4.24 Volt Channel 5 Data Buffer LSB (VCH5DATL)

This register (buffer) holds the data(LSB 8bits) measured by the Volt Channel 5.

Address Offset: 3Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT7-0) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 5. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after data is read.

7.11.4.25 Voltage Channel 6 Control Register (VCH6CTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of Voltage Channel 6.

Address Offset: 3Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid (DATVAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH6DATL/VCH6DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available.
6	R/W	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Data Valid Enable (INTDVEN) Enabled to the ADC Interrupt for Data valid event of Volt channel 6. 0: Disabled (default) 1: Enabled – ADC Interrupt from local DATVAL
4	R/W	0b	Voltage Channel Enable (VCHEN) NOTE: Only for ADC Input Channel 6 0 : Disabled (Default) 1 : Enabled
3-0	R/W	0000b	Reserved

7.11.4.26 Volt Channel 6 Data Buffer MSB (VCH6DATM)

This register (buffer) holds the data(MSB 2bits) measured by the Volt Channel 6.

Address Offset: 3Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT9-8) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 6. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after data is read.

7.11.4.27 Volt Channel 6 Data Buffer LSB (VCH6DATL)

This register (buffer) holds the data(LSB 8bits) measured by the Volt Channel 6.

Address Offset: 40h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT7-0) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 6. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after data is read.

7.11.4.28 Voltage Channel 7 Control Register (VCH7CTL)

This register both controls the operation and indicates the status of Voltage Channel 7.

Address Offset: 41h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid (DATVAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH7DATL/VCH7DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available.
6	R/W	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Interrupt from Data Valid Enable (INTDVEN) Enabled to the ADC Interrupt for Data valid event of Volt channel 7. 0: Disabled (default) 1: Enabled – ADC Interrupt from local DATVAL
4	R/W	0b	Voltage Channel Enable (VCHEN) NOTE: Only for ADC Input Channel 7 0 : Disabled (Default) 1 : Enabled
3-0	R/W	0000b	Reserved

7.11.4.29 Volt Channel 7 Data Buffer MSB (VCH7DATM)

This register (buffer) holds the data(MSB 2bits) measured by the Volt Channel 7.

Address Offset: 42h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT9-8) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 7. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after data is read.

7.11.4.30 Volt Channel 7 Data Buffer LSB (VCH7DATL)

This register (buffer) holds the data(LSB 8bits) measured by the Volt Channel 7.

Address Offset: 43h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Volt Channel Data (VCHDAT7-0) Volt channel data is measured by the volt channel 7. The data may be available only when DATVAL is set. DATVAL has to be cleared after data is read.

7.11.4.31 ADC Data Valid Status (ADCDVSTS)

This register indicates the data valid status of Voltage Channel 0 ~ 7.

Address Offset: 44h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Data Valid of Channel 7 (DAT7VAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH7DATL/VCH7DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available. NOTE: The same as DATVAL in VCH7CTL
6	R/WC	0b	Data Valid of Channel 6 (DAT6VAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH6DATL/VCH6DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available. NOTE: The same as DATVAL in VCH6CTL
5	R/WC	0b	Data Valid of Channel 5 (DAT5VAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH5DATL/VCH5DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available. NOTE: The same as DATVAL in VCH5CTL
4	R/WC	0b	Data Valid of Channel 4 (DAT4VAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH4DATL/VCH4DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available. NOTE: The same as DATVAL in VCH4CTL

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
3	R/WC	0b	Data Valid of Channel 3 (DAT3VAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH3DATL/VCH3DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available. NOTE: The same as DATVAL in VCH3CTL
2	R/WC	0b	Data Valid of Channel 2 (DAT2VAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH2DATL/VCH2DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available. NOTE: The same as DATVAL in VCH2CTL
1	R/WC	0b	Data Valid of Channel 1 (DAT1VAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH1DATL/VCH1DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available. NOTE: The same as DATVAL in VCH1CTL
0	R/WC	0b	Data Valid of Channel 0 (DAT0VAL) The data may be read immediately when this bit is set to 1. This bit is cleared when the ADC module is disabled or by writing 1 to it. 0: No valid data in VCH0DATL/VCH0DATM register (default) 1: End of conversion – New data is available. NOTE: The same as DATVAL in VCH0CTL

7.11.4.32 Voltage Compare Status (VCMPSTS)

This register indicates the status of Voltage Comparator 0 - 2.

Address Offset: 45h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	R/WC	0b	Comparator 2 reach threshold GPIO Status(CMP2RTGPS) This bit indicates the GPIO(GPJ5) status of comparator 2 reach voltage threshold. This bit is cleared when writing 1 to it. 0: Not reach the voltage threshold 1: Reach the voltage threshold.
5	R/WC	0b	Comparator 1 reach threshold GPIO Status(CMP1RTGPS) This bit indicates the GPIO(GPJ4) status of comparator 1 reach voltage threshold. This bit is cleared when writing 1 to it. 0: Not reach the voltage threshold 1: Reach the voltage threshold.
4	R/WC	0b	Comparator 0 reach threshold GPIO Status(CMP0RTGPS) This bit indicates the GPIO(GPJ3) status of comparator 0 reach voltage threshold. This bit is cleared when writing 1 to it. 0: Not reach the voltage threshold 1: Reach the voltage threshold.
3	-	-	Reserve

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
2	R/WC	0b	Comparator 2 reach threshold Interrupt Status(CMP2RTIS) This bit indicates the interrupt status of comparator 2 reach voltage threshold. This bit is cleared when writing 1 to it. 0: Not reach the voltage threshold 1: Reach the voltage threshold.
1	R/WC	0b	Comparator 1 reach threshold Interrupt Status (CMP1RTIS) This bit indicates the interrupt status of comparator 1 reach voltage threshold. This bit is cleared when writing 1 to it. 0: Not reach the voltage threshold 1: Reach the voltage threshold.
0	R/WC	0b	Comparator 0 reach threshold Interrupt Status (CMP0RTIS) This bit indicates the interrupt status of comparator 0 reach voltage threshold. This bit is cleared when writing 1 to it. 0: Not reach the voltage threshold 1: Reach the voltage threshold.

7.11.4.33 Voltage Compare 0 Control Register (VCMP0CTL)

This register controls the operation of Voltage Comparator 0.

Address Offset: 46h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Comparator 0 enable (CMP0EN) 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	R/W	0b	Comparator 0 interrupt enable (CMP0INTEN) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
5	R/W	0b	Comparator 0 Trigger Mode (CMP0TMOD) Select the trigger condition. 0: Less then or equal to CMP0THRDAT [9:0] 1: Greater then CMP0THRDAT [9:0]
4	R/W	0b	Comparator 0 Edge/Level Sense Mode (CMP0ELSM) Determines the sensed mode of the comparator 0. 0: Level-sensed 1: Edge-sensed
3	R/W	0b	Comparator 0 GPIO Polarity (CMP0GPOL) Determines the GPIO(GPJ3) active high/low of the comparator 0. 0: Active-high 1: Active-low
2-0	R/W	000b	Comparator 0 Channel Select (CMP0CSEL) Select ADC channel for comparator 0. 000b : ADC0 001b : ADC1 010b : ADC2 011b : ADC3 100b : ADC4 101b : ADC5 110b : ADC6 111b : ADC7

7.11.4.34 Voltage Comparator 0 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP0THRDATM)

Address Offset: 47h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	Comparator 0 Threshold Data (CMP0THRDATA9-8) The MSB (2 Bits) of CMP0THRDATA.

7.11.4.35 Voltage Comparator 0 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP0THRDATL)

Address Offset: 48h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Comparator 0 Threshold Data (CMP0THRDATA7-0) The LSB (8 Bits) of CMP0THRDATA.

7.11.4.36 Voltage Compare 1 Control Register (VCMP1CTL)

This register controls the operation of Voltage Comparator 1.

Address Offset: 49h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Comparator 1 Enable (CMP1EN) 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	R/W	0b	Comparator 1 Interrupt Enable (CMP1INTEN) 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	R/W	0b	Comparator 1 Trigger Mode (CMP1TMOD) Select the trigger condition. 0: Less then or equal to CMP1THRDATA [9:0] 1: Greater than CMP1THRDATA [9:0]
4	R/W	0b	Comparator 1 Edge/Level Sense Mode (CMP1ELSM) Determines the sensed mode of the comparator 1. 0: Level-sensed 1: Edge-sensed
3	R/W	0b	Comparator 1 GPIO Polarity (CMP1GPOL) Determines the GPIO(GPJ4) active high/low of the comparator 1. 0: Active-high 1: Active-low
2-0	R/W	000b	Comparator 1 channel select (CMP1CSEL) Select ADC channel for comparator 1. 000b : ADC0 001b : ADC1 010b : ADC2 011b : ADC3 100b : ADC4 101b : ADC5 110b : ADC6 111b : ADC7

7.11.4.37 Voltage Comparator 1 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP1THRDATM)

Address Offset: 4Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	Comparator 1 Threshold Data (CMP1THRDATA9-8) The MSB (2 Bits) of CMP1THRDATA.

7.11.4.38 Voltage Comparator 1 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP1THRDLT)

Address Offset: 4Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Comparator 1 Threshold Data (CMP1THRDATA7-0) The LSB (8 Bits) of CMP1THRDATA.

7.11.4.39 Voltage Compare 2 Control Register (VCMP2CTL)

This register controls the operation of Voltage Comparator 2.

Address Offset: 4Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Comparator 2 enable (CMP2EN) 0: Disable 1: Enable
6	R/W	0b	Comparator 2 interrupt enable (CMP2INTEN) 0: Disable 1: Enable
5	R/W	0b	Comparator 2 Trigger Mode (CMP2TMOD) Select the trigger condition. 0: Less then or equal to CMP2THRDATA [9:0] 1: Greater than CMP2THRDATA [9:0]
4	R/W	0b	Comparator 2 Edge/Level Sense Mode (CMP2ELSM) Determines the sensed mode of the comparator 1. 0: Level-sensed 1: Edge-sensed
3	R/W	0b	Comparator 2 GPIO Polarity (CMP2GPOL) Determines the GPIO(GPJ5) active high/low of the comparator 2. 0: Active-high 1: Active-low
2-0	R/W	000b	Comparator 2 Channel Select (CMP2CSEL) Select ADC channel for comparator 2. 000b : ADC0 001b : ADC1 010b : ADC2 011b : ADC3 100b : ADC4 101b : ADC5 110b : ADC6 111b : ADC7

7.11.4.40 Voltage Comparator 2 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP2THRDATM)

Address Offset: 4Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	Comparator 2 Threshold Data (CMP2THRDAT9-8) The MSB (2 Bits) of CMP2THRDAT.

7.11.4.41 Voltage Comparator 2 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP2THRDLT)

Address Offset: 4Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00b	Comparator 2 Threshold Data (CMP2THRDAT7-0) The LSB (8 Bits) of CMP2THRDAT.

7.11.4.42 Voltage Comparator Output Type Register (VCMPOTR)

This register controls the output type of voltage comparator .

Address Offset: 4Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Comparator 2 Output Type (CMP2OT) Determines the output type of the comparator 2. 0: Push-pull 1: Open-drain
1	R/W	0b	Comparator 1 Output Type (CMP1OT) Determines the output type of the comparator 1. 0: Push-pull 1: Open-drain
0	R/W	0b	Comparator 0 Output Type (CMP0OT) Determines the output type of the comparator 0. 0: Push-pull 1: Open-drain

7.11.4.43 Voltage Comparator Lock Register (VCMPLR)

This register lock the control register of the voltage comparator.

Address Offset: 52h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Comparator 2 Lock Enable (CMP2LE) Lock the control register of the comparator 2 (except CMP2INTEN). 0: Disable 1: Enable Once the bit is set, it cannot be disabled until VSTBY Power-Up Reset or Warm Reset.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
1	R/W	0b	Comparator 1 Lock Enable (CMP1LE) Lock the control register of the comparator 1 (except CMP1INTEN). 0: Disable 1: Enable Once the bit is set, it cannot be disabled until VSTBY Power-Up Reset or Warm Reset.
0	R/W	0b	Comparator 0 Lock Enable (CMP0LE) Lock the control register of the comparator 0 (except CMP0INTEN). 0: Disable 1: Enable Once the bit is set, it cannot be disabled until VSTBY Power-Up Reset or Warm Reset.

7.11.5 ADC Programming Guide

Table 7-25. Detail Step of ADC Channel Conversion

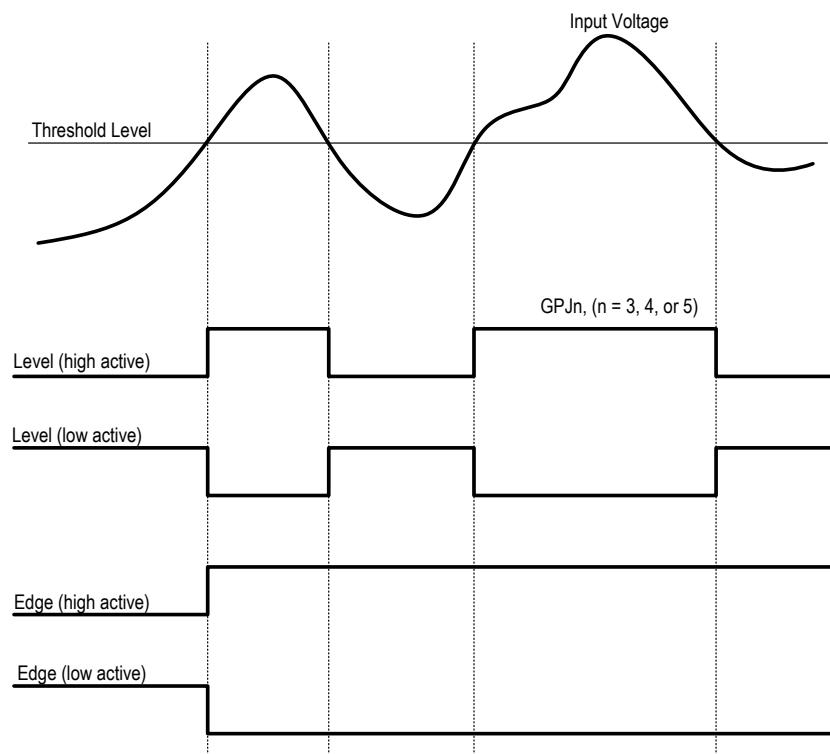
Step	Description
1	Set AINITB@ADCSTS = 1 then clear it (only once after VSTBY power on)
2	Start ADC conversion by adjusting ADCEN@ADCCFG = 1
3	Enable VCHiCTL for measuring desired channels; n = 0, 1, 2, or 3
4	For example; To measure ADC0 voltage on voltage buffer 1 Set SELIN@VCH1CTL = 0
5	Start ADC channel conversion by setting ADCEN@ADCCFG = 1
6	Waiting for DATVAL@VCH1CTL = 1 IGet ADC0 output data D[9:0] by reading VCH1DATM and VCH1DATL D[9:0] = {VCH1DATM [1:0], VCH1DATL[7:0]}
7	Disable ADC to reduce power consumption by setting ADCEN@ADCCFG = 0

7.11.6 Voltage Comparator Programming Guide

Table 7-26. Detail Step of Voltage Comparator Programming

Step	Description
1	Set voltage comparator threshold level buffer: Program CMP0THRDATA[9:0] to select the threshold level for voltage comparator 0. The equivalent threshold voltage is $(3V * CMP0THRDATA/1023)$.
2	Select the voltage input channel: Program CMP0CSEL to select one of the voltage input channels AD0-AD7. This set voltage comparator 0 to monitor the selected voltage input channel. Notice, the selected channel must be set to its alternate function for ADC application.
3	Set voltage comparator trigger mode: If CMP0TMOD is set 0, an event is produced while the voltage of the selected channel is lower than or equal to the threshold level. If CMP0TMOD is set 1, an event is produced while the voltage of the selected channel is higher than the threshold level.
4	Set the scan period of voltage comparator: Set CMPSNP @ VCMPPSCP to determine the interval per comparing operation for voltage comparator.
5	Set event response: Set CMP0INTEN = 1, the event in Step 3 would be propagated to INT151. or Set CMP0GPEN @ GCR15 and GPCRJ3 = 0x00, the event in Step 3 would be propagated to GPJ3
6	Start voltage comparator conversion CMP0EN @ VCMP0CTL = 1
7	Wait for input voltage's reaching threshold level If the input voltage reaches the threshold level, CMP0RTGPS @ VCMPPSTS will be set to 1, and corresponding GPJ3 will change the output status if this function is enabled in Step 5. In Level-sensed mode, the input voltage far away from the threshold level, CMP0RTGPS / GPJ3 will be reset immediately. In Edge-sensed mode, the input voltage is far away from the threshold level, CMP0RTGPS / GPJ3 only be reset when write 1 to CMP0RTGPS. If CMP0INTEN = 1, the input voltage reaches the threshold level, then generates INT151, and CMP0RTIS @ VCMPPSTS will be set to 1. Write 1 to clear this bit and only the input voltage is far away from the threshold level. (Refer to Figure 7-26, on page 351)

Figure 7-26. Voltage Comparator Operation Time



7.12 PWM

7.12.1 Overview

The PWM module generates eight 8-bit PWM outputs; each PWM output may have a different duty cycle. The fan speed is controlled by software.

7.12.2 Features

- Supports eight PWM outputs.
- Supports two sets tachometers; each set tachometer can be switched from two external pins.
- Supports PWM open-drain output.
- Supports two channels to control LEDs in dimming mode.

7.12.3 Functional Description

7.12.3.1 General Description

Figure 7-27. PWM Diagram

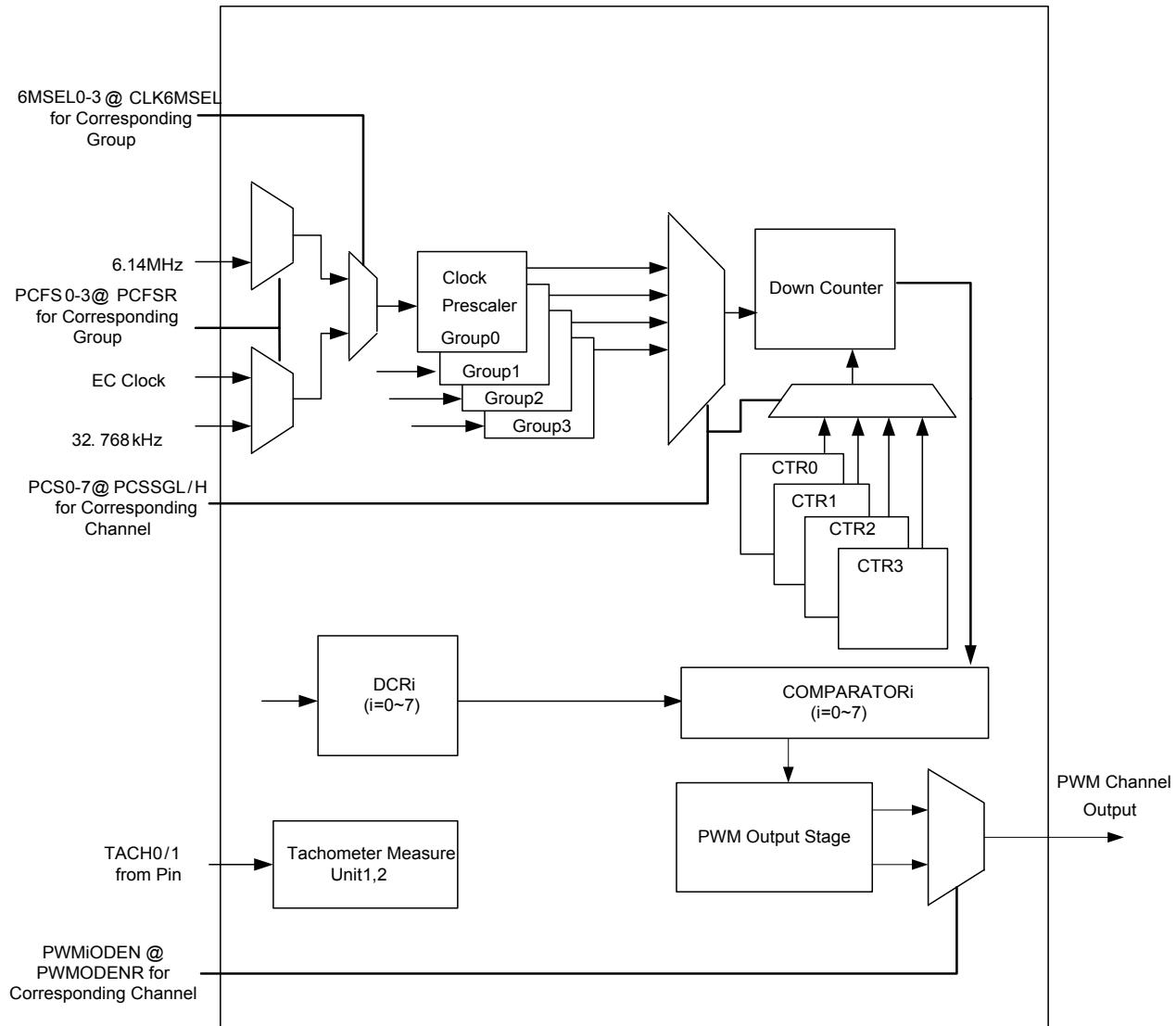
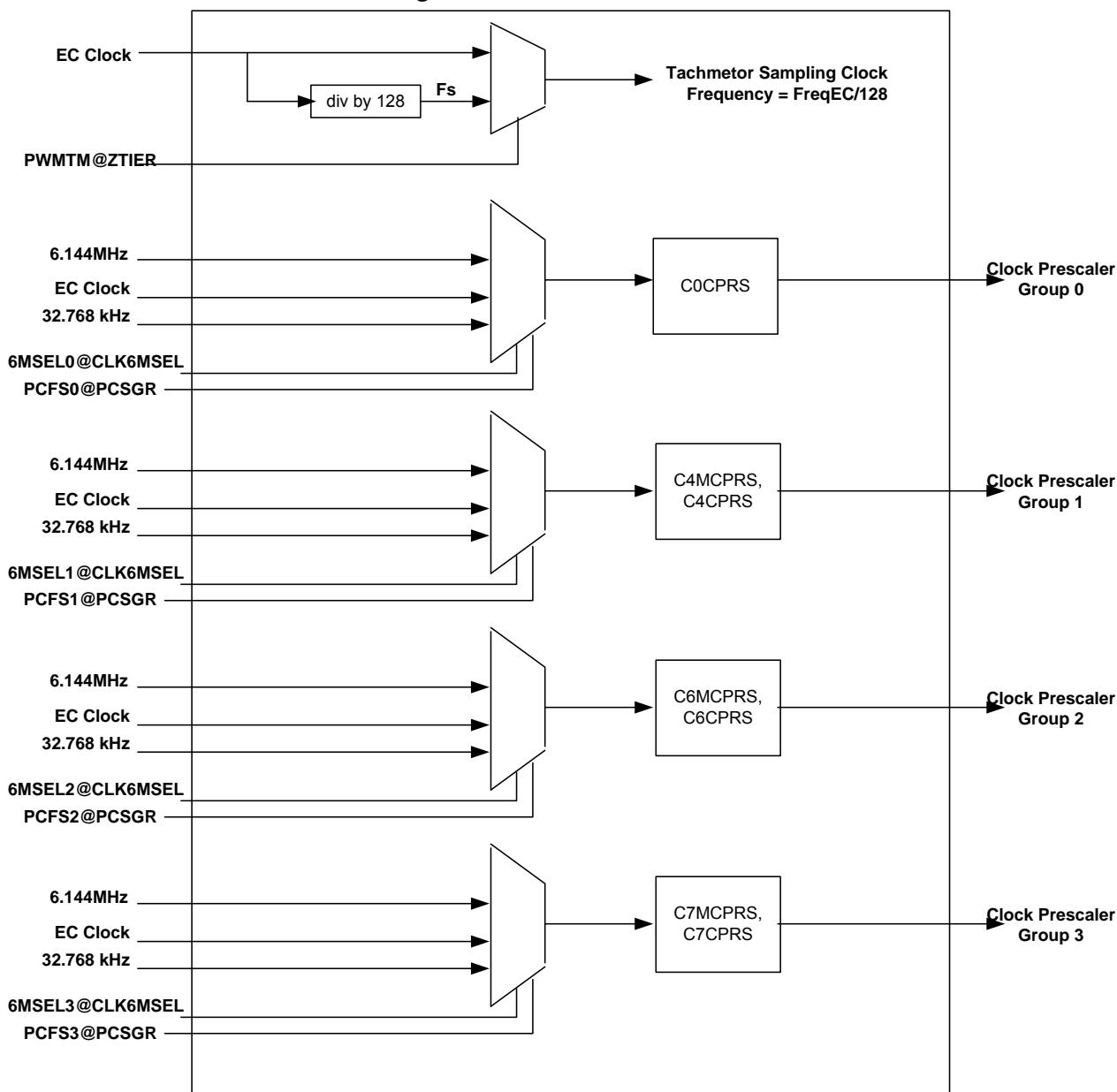


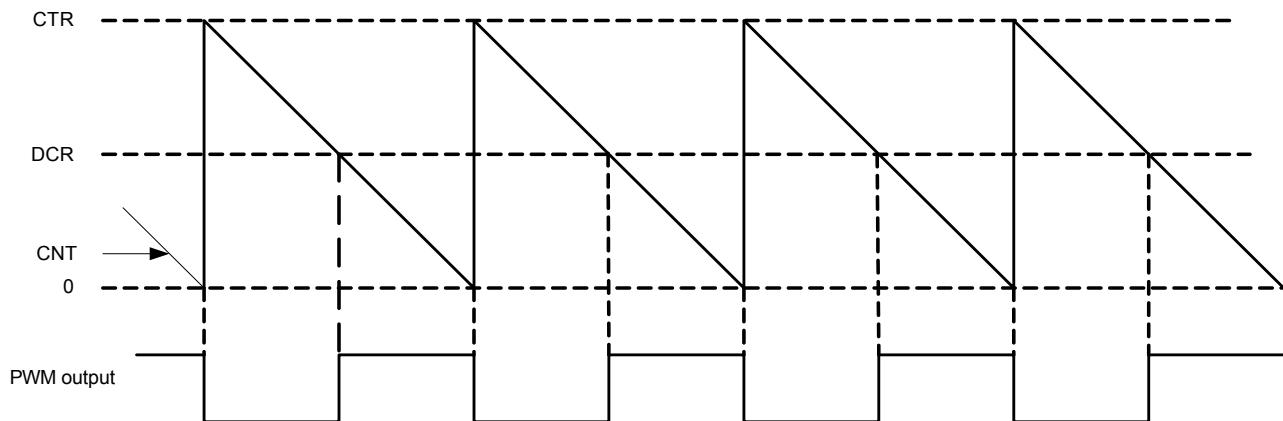
Figure 7-28. PWM Clock Tree


The PWM uses the 32.768 kHz Clock, EC Clock or 6.14 MHz Clock as a reference for its PWM output. The prescaler divider values in CiCRPS register which divides the PWM input clock into its working clock respectively. Each channel can select their prescaler divider by {PCSSGH, PCSSGL} register. The prescaler divider C0CPRS register has 8-bit counter value; and the {CiMCRPS, CiCRPS}(i=4,6,7) has 16-bit counter value. The PWM provides eight 8-bit PWM outputs, which are PWM0 to PWM7. Each PWM output is controlled by its Duty Cycle registers (DCR*i*, *i* =0 to 7). All PWM output is controlled by a Cycle Time register (CTR). When PWM working clock is enabled, the PWM cycle output is high when the value in the DCR*i* register is greater than the value in CTR down-counter. When the value of DCR*i* register is not greater than the value in CTR down-counter, the PWM*i* cycle output is on LOW and PWM*i* cycle output polarity can be inversed by INV*i* register.

When the value in CTR counter down-counter reaches 0, the value in CTR counter will be reloaded then start down-counter until the PWM working clock is disabled.

Cycle Time and Duty Cycle

Figure 7-29. PWM Output Waveform



The PWM module supports duty cycles ranging from 0% to 100%.

The PWMi output signal cycle time is:

$$n(CiCPRS + 1) \times (CTR + 1) \times T_{clk}$$

Where:

- T_{clk} is the period of PWM input clock = $(1 / 32.768 \text{ kHz})$ or $(1 / \text{FreqEC})$, which is selected by PCFS3-0 in PCFSR register. (FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)
- The PWMi output signal duty cycle (in %, when INVPI is 0) is:

$$(DCR_i) / (CTR + 1) \times 100.$$

In the following cases, the PWMi output is hold at a state(low or high):

- PWMi output is still low when the content of DCRi is greater than the CTR value.
- PWMi output is still high when the content of DCRi is equal to the CTR value.
- PWMi output is still low when the content of DCRi = 0 & INVPI = 0 is in PWMPOL register.

PWM Inhibit Mode

The PWM is in an inhibit mode when PCCE in ZTIER Register is 0. In this mode, the PWM input clock is disabled (stopped). The PWMi signal is 0 when INVPI bit is 0; it is 1 when INVPI bit is 1. It is recommended the PRSC and CTR registers should be updated in a PWM inhibit mode.

7.12.3.2 Manual Fan Control Mode

The content of the Tachometer Reading Register is still updated according to the sampling counter that samples the tachometer input (TACH0A/B pin for FAN1 of the local sensor zone and TACH1A/B pin for FAN2 of the remote sensor zone). The sampling rate (fs) is FreqEC / 128. (FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)

Fan Speed (R.P.M.) = $60 / (1/fs \text{ sec} * \{\text{FnTMRR}, \text{FnTLRR}\} * P)$

n denotes 1 or 2

P denotes the numbers of square pulses per revolution.

And $\{\text{FnTMRR}, \text{FnTLRR}\} = 0000\text{h}$ denotes Fan Speed is zero.

7.12.3.3 Manual Color Frequency Control Mode

In this mode, the software may monitor the Frequency Reading Register to control the frequency of the input signal.

The content of the Color Frequency Reading Register keeps being updated every 31.25 ms, and the sample counter is the input signal from GPIOJ0.

Color Frequency = 16 * {CFMRR, CFLRR}

The Frequency range is from 0Hz to 1.04MHz, but the Result is less precise if the frequency of the input signal is smaller.

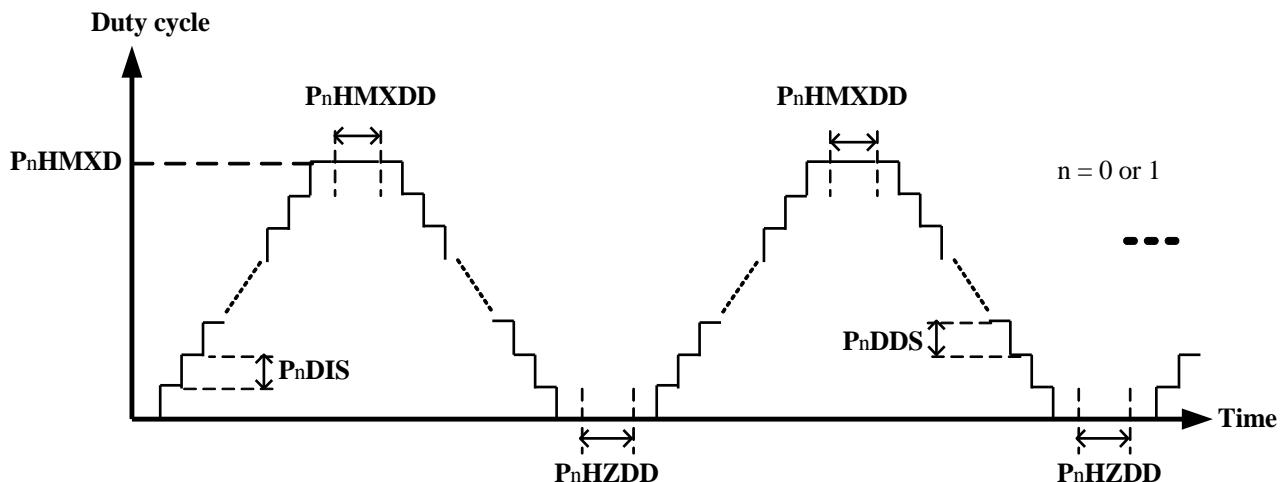
7.12.3.4 PWM Dimming Mode

Two PWM channels can operate in dimming mode to control LED light. In this mode, PWM generates a modulation signal with its duty cycle gradually increasing and decreasing which depends on the setting of the related PWM_n {n = 0 or 1} LED control registers. With LED light connecting to such PWM signal, it shows a dimming-like light.

PWM Dimming Mode should be used with 32K clock input. Before dimming mode starts, user should decide LED dimming behavior first by setting LED control registers, otherwise LED would show a unpredictable behavior. Once heartbeat mode is enabled by register 50h or 53h, PWM cycle time will be auto set FFh. Due to 32K clock and FFh cycle time, each PWM cycle take 8ms. {1/32K * (FFh+1) }.

Figure 7-30. shows the behavior of the PWM duty cycle controlled by the related LED control registers.

Figure 7-30. PWM LED Dimming Mode Waveform



As the illustrated waveform above, in PWM dimming mode, duty cycle increases or decreases step by step with each PWM cycle. The increasing or decreasing track are linear and can be decided individually by PnDIS and PnDDS. The maximum duty cycle is also selective by PnHMXD. When duty cycle increase to the maximum value, PWM can keep the maximum duty cycle a period of time decided by PnHMXDD. On the contrary, PWM can keep the zero duty cycle a period of time decided by PnHZDD. Note that n = 0 or 1 represents PWM0 or PWM1.

7.12.4 EC Interface Registers

These registers are mapped in the address space of EC. The registers are listed below and the base address is 1800h.

Table 7-27. EC View Register Map, PWM

7	0	Offset
Channel 0 Clock Prescaler Register (C0CPRS)		00h
Cycle Time 0 (CTR0)		01h
PWM Duty Cycle (DCR0-7)		02h-09h
PWM Polarity (PWMPOL)		0Ah
Prescaler Clock Frequency Select Register (PCFSR)		0Bh
Prescaler Clock Source Select Group Low (PCSSGL)		0Ch
Prescaler Clock Source Select Group High (PCSSGH)		0Dh
Prescaler Clock Source Gating Register (PCSGR)		0Fh
Fan 1 Tachometer LSB Reading (F1TLRR)		1Eh
Fan 1 Tachometer MSB Reading (F1TMRR)		1Fh
Fan 2 Tachometer LSB Reading (F2TLRR)		20h
Fan 2 Tachometer MSB Reading (F2TMRR)		21h
Zone Interrupt Status Control (ZINTSCR)		22h
PWM Clock Control Register (ZTIER)		23h
Channel 4 Clock Prescaler Register (C4CPRS)		27h
Channel 4 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C4MCPRS)		28h
Channel 6 Clock Prescaler Register (C6CPRS)		2Bh
Channel 6 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C6MCPRS)		2Ch
Channel 7 Clock Prescaler Register (C7CPRS)		2Dh
Channel 7 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C7MCPRS)		2Eh
PWM Clock 6MHz Select Register (CLK6MSEL)		40h
Cycle Time 1 (CTR1)		41h
Cycle Time 2 (CTR2)		42h
Cycle Time 3 (CTR3)		43h
PWM5 Timeout Control Register (PWM5TOCTRL)		44h
Color Frequency LSB Register (CFLRR)		45h
Color Frequency MSB Register (CFMRR)		46h
Color Frequency Interrupt Control Register (CFINTCTRL)		47h
Tachometer Switch Control Register (TSWCTRL)		48h
PWM Output Open-Drain Enable Register (PWMODENR)		49h
PWM0 LED Dimming Enable Register (PWM0LHE)		50h
PWM0 LED Dimming Control Register 1(PWM0LCR1)		51h
PWM0 LED Dimming Control Register 2(PWM0LCR2)		52h
PWM1 LED Dimming Enable Register (PWM1LHE)		53h
PWM1 LED Dimming Control Register 1(PWM1LCR1)		54h
PWM1 LED Dimming Control Register 2(PWM1LCR2)		55h

Other related register(s):

- General Control 2 Register (GCR2), TACH2E bit
- General Control 5 Register (GCR5), T0BEN bit
- General Control 5 Register (GCR5), T1BEN bit

For a summary of the abbreviations used for register types, see “Register Abbreviations and Access Rules”

7.12.4.1 Channel 0 Clock Prescaler Register (C0CPRS)

This register controls the cycle time and the minimal pulse width of channel 0~3.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Prescaler Divider Value (PSDV) PWM input clock is divided by the number of (C0CPRS+ 1). For example, the value of 01h results in a divide by 2. The value of FFh results in a divide by 256. The contents of this register may be changed only when the PWM module is in the PWM inhibit mode.

7.12.4.2 Cycle Time Register 0 (CTR0)

This register controls the cycle time 0 and duty cycle steps.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	Cycle Time Value 0 (CTV0) The Prescaler output clock is divided by the number of (CTR0 + 1). For example, the value of 00h results in a divide by 1. The value of FFh results in a divide by 256. The contents of this register may be changed only when the PWM module is in the PWM inhibit mode.

7.12.4.3 Cycle Time Register 1 (CTR1)

This register controls the cycle time 1 and duty cycle steps.

Address Offset: 41h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	Cycle Time Value 1 (CTV1) The Prescaler output clock is divided by the number of (CTR1 + 1). For example, the value of 00h results in a divide by 1. The value of FFh results in a divide by 256. After writing data to the register, system will be changed to the 4-CTR mode. The contents of this register may be changed only when the PWM module is in the PWM inhibit mode.

7.12.4.4 Cycle Time Register 2 (CTR2)

This register controls the cycle time 2 and duty cycle steps.

Address Offset: 42h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	Cycle Time Value 2 (CTV2) The function of this register is the same as that of CTR1.

7.12.4.5 Cycle Time Register 3 (CTR3)

This register controls the cycle time 2 and duty cycle steps.

Address Offset: 43h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	Cycle Time Value 3 (CTV3) The function of this register is the same as that of CTR1.

7.12.4.6 PWM Duty Cycle Register 0 to 7(DCRi)

This register (DCRi; I=0 to 7) controls the duty cycle of PWMi output signal.

Address Offset: 02h(ch0), 03h(ch1), 04h(ch2), 05h(ch3), 06h(ch4), 07h(ch5), 08h(ch6), 09h(ch7);

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Duty Cycle Value (DCV) DCRi register decides the number of clocks for which PWMi is high when INVPi bit is 0 in PWMPOL register. The PWMi Duty Cycle output = (DCRi)/(CTR+1) If the DCRi value > CTR value, PWMi signal is still low. If DCRi value = CTR value, PWMi signal is still high. When Inverse PWMi bit is 1, the value of PWMi is inversed.

7.12.4.7 PWM Polarity Register (PWMPOL)

This register controls the polarity of PWM0 to PWM7.

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Inverse PWM Outputs (INVP7-0) Bit 7 to 0 control the polarity of PWM7 to PWM0 respectively. 0: Non-inverting. 1: Inverting.

7.12.4.8 Prescaler Clock Frequency Select Register (PCFSR)

This register Bit 3~0 is used to select prescaler clock frequency for four channel group 3~0. Each of them includes 1 set prescaler registers. See the following table.

Channel Group	Prescaler Channels
0	C0CPRS
1	C4MCPRS,C4CPRS
2	C6MCPRS,C6CPRS
3	C7MCPRS,C7CPRS

Address Offset: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0000b	<p>Prescaler Clock Frequency Select (PCFS3-0)</p> <p>The clock source of the prescaler of group 0 consists of G6MSEL0 and PCFS0 bit.</p> <p>G6MSEL0 bit is in CLK6MSEL register. PCFS0 bit is in this register.</p> <p>{G6MSEL0, PCFS0}:</p> <p>00b: Select 32.768 kHz. 01b: Select FreqEC (EC Clock). 10b: Select FreqEC*2/3 (6.14 MHz) 11b: Reserved</p> <p>(FreqEC and FreqPLL are listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)</p> <p>So are group 1, 2 and 3.</p>

7.12.4.9 Prescaler Clock Source Select Group Low (PCSSGL)

This register is used to select prescaler clock source for four channels. Each channel uses 2 bits to select one from four prescaler clock sources.

Address Offset: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	<p>Prescaler Clock Select 3 (PCS3)</p> <p>The bits select prescaler clock for channel 3. The bits 7-6 are the same as bit 1-0.</p>
5-4	R/W	00b	<p>Prescaler Clock Select 2 (PCS2)</p> <p>The bits select prescaler clock for channel 2. The bits 5-4 are the same as bit 1-0.</p>
3-2	R/W	00b	<p>Prescaler Clock Select 1 (PCS1)</p> <p>The bits select prescaler clock for channel 1. The bits 3-2 are the same as bit 1-0.</p>

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
1-0	R/W	00b	<p>Prescaler Clock Select 0 (PCS0) Default as below : 00: select prescaler clock divided by C0CPRS and select CTR0 01: select prescaler clock divided by {C4MCPRS,C4CPRS} and select CTR0 10: select prescaler clock divided by {C6MCPRS,C6CPRS} and select CTR0 11: select prescaler clock divided by {C7MCPRS,C7CPRS} and select CTR0</p> <p>After writing data to CTR1,CTR2 or CTR3 register 00: select prescaler clock divided by C0CPRS and select CTR0 01: select prescaler clock divided by {C4MCPRS,C4CPRS} and select CTR1 10: select prescaler clock divided by {C6MCPRS,C6CPRS} and select CTR2 11: select prescaler clock divided by {C7MCPRS,C7CPRS} and select CTR3</p>

7.12.4.10 Prescaler Clock Source Select Group High (PCSSGH)

This register is used to select prescaler clock source for four channels. Each channel uses 2 bits to select one from four prescaler clock sources.

Address Offset: 0Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	01b	<p>Prescaler Clock Select 7 (PCS7) The bits select prescaler clock for channel 7. The bits 7-6 are the same as bit 1-0.</p>
5-4	R/W	01b	<p>Prescaler Clock Select 6 (PCS6) The bits select prescaler clock for channel 6. The bits 5-4 are the same as bit 1-0.</p>
3-2	R/W	01b	<p>Prescaler Clock Select 5 (PCS5) The bits select prescaler clock for channel 5. The bits 3-2 are the same as bit 1-0.</p>
1-0	R/W	01b	<p>Prescaler Clock Select 4 (PCS4) The bits select prescaler clock for channel 4.</p> <p>Default as below : 00: select prescaler clock divided by C0CPRS and select CTR0 01: select prescaler clock divided by {C4MCPRS,C4CPRS} and select CTR0 10: select prescaler clock divided by {C6MCPRS,C6CPRS} and select CTR0 11: select prescaler clock divided by {C7MCPRS,C7CPRS} and select CTR0</p> <p>After writing data to CTR1,CTR2 or CTR3 register 00: select prescaler clock divided by C0CPRS and select CTR0 01: select prescaler clock divided by {C4MCPRS,C4CPRS} and select CTR1 10: select prescaler clock divided by {C6MCPRS,C6CPRS} and select CTR2 11: select prescaler clock divided by {C7MCPRS,C7CPRS} and select CTR3</p>

7.12.4.11 Prescaler Clock Source Gating Register (PCSGR)

Address Offset: 0Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Prescaler Clock Source Gating (PCSG) Bits 7-0 are used to gate prescaler clock source for PWM channels 7-0 respectively. 0: no gating clock source 1: gating clock source; PWM channel output is 0 when INVP bit is set to 0 respectively

7.12.4.12 Fan 1 Tachometer LSB Reading Register (F1TLRR)

This register reflects the LSB value of the current tachometer of the Fan. The value is represented for each fan in a 16 bits. The tachometer input of Fan 1 corresponds to TACH0A/TACH0B, and it can be switched by controlling the T0CHSEL bit.

Reading F1TLRR and F1TMRR registers should be in pairs to get the correct 16-bit tachometer value.

Reading these two registers via D2EC/I2EC is not guaranteed to get the correct value.

After switching the input TACH0A/TACH0B, these two registers should be read in pairs after the data-valid status (T0DIS or T0DVS bit) is set.

Address Offset: 1Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Current Tachometer LSB Value (CTACHLV) The value of bit 7-0 denotes LSB Tachometer speed.

7.12.4.13 Fan 1 Tachometer MSB Reading Register (F1TMRR)

This register reflects the MSB value of the current tachometer of the Fan. The value is represented for each fan in a 16 bits. The tachometer input of Fan 1 corresponds to TACH0A/TACH0B, and it can be switched by controlling the T0CHSEL bit.

Address Offset: 1Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Current Tachometer MSB Value (CTACHMV) The value of bits 7-0 denotes MSB Tachometer speed.

7.12.4.14 Fan 2 Tachometer LSB Reading Register (F2TLRR)

This register reflects the LSB value of the current tachometer of the Fan. The value is represented for each fan in a 16 bits. The tachometer input of Fan 2 corresponds to TACH1A/TACH1B, and it can be switched by controlling the T1CHSEL bit.

Reading F2TLRR and F2TMRR registers should be in pairs to get the correct 16-bit tachometer value.

Reading these two registers via D2EC/I2EC is not guaranteed to get the correct value.

After switching the input TACH1A/TACH1B, these two registers should be read in pairs after the data-valid status (T1DIS or T1DVS bit) is set.

Address Offset: 20h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Current Tachometer LSB Value (CTACHLV) The value of bits 7-0 denotes the LSB Tachometer speed.

7.12.4.15 Fan 2 Tachometer MSB Reading Register (F2TMRR)

This register reflects the MSB value of the current tachometer of the Fan. The value is represented for each fan in a 16-bit binary digits. The tachometer input of Fan 2 corresponds to TACH1A/TACH1B, and it can be switched by controlling the T1CHSEL bit.

Address Offset: 21h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Current Tachometer MSB Value (CTACHMV) The value of bits 7-0 denotes MSB Tachometer speed.

7.12.4.16 Zone Interrupt Status Control Register (ZINTSCR)

Address Offset: 22h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	TACH0A/TACH0B Data-valid Interrupt Enable (T0DIE) 1: Enable interrupt to R8032TT when fan 1 tachometer data is valid. 0: Disable interrupt to R8032TT when fan 1 tachometer data is valid.
4	R/WC	0b	TACH0A/TACH0B Data-valid Interrupt Clear (T0DIC) Write one to clear the Interrupt status, which is caused when fan 1 tachometer data is valid; writing zero is ignored.
3	R	0b	TACH0A/TACH0B Data-valid Interrupt Status (T0DIS) 1: Fan 1 tachometer data-valid event occurs. 0: No fan 1 tachometer data-valid event occurs.
2	R/W	0b	TACH1A/TACH1B Data-valid Interrupt Enable (T1DIE) 1: Enable interrupt to R8032TT when fan 2 tachometer data is valid. 0: Disable interrupt to R8032TT when fan 2 tachometer data is valid.
1	R/WC	0b	TACH1A/TACH1B Data-valid Interrupt Clear (T1DIC) Write one to clear the Interrupt status, which is caused when fan 2 tachometer data is valid; writing zero is ignored.
0	R	0b	TACH1A/TACH1B Data-valid Interrupt Status (T1DIS) 1: Fan 2 tachometer data-valid event occurs. 0: No fan 2 tachometer data-valid event occurs.

7.12.4.17 PWM Clock Control Register (ZTIER)

Address Offset: 23h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	-	-	Reserved
5-2	-	0b	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	PWM Clock Counter Enable (PCCE) 1: Enable PWMs clock counter. Set this bit to 1 after all other registers have been set. 0: Disable PWMs clock counter
0	R/W	0b	PWM Test Mode (PWMTM) 1: PWM switches to a test mode 0: PWM works on a normal mode

7.12.4.18 Channel 4 Clock Prescaler Register (C4CPRS)

This register controls the cycle time and the minimal pulse width of PWM channel.
The setting of the prescaler channel is based on the value of PCSSGL and PCSSGH registers.

Address Offset: 27h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>Prescaler Divider Value (PSDV7-0)</p> <p>PWM input clock is divided by the number of PSDV15-0 + 1 except 0 value. For example, the value of 0001h results in a divide by 2 and the value of FFFFh results in a divide by 65536 except 0 value. Set value 0 to disable clock prescaler divider.</p> <p>The contents of this register may be changed only when the PWM module is in a PWM inhibit mode.</p> <p>This register defines the low byte and the next register C4MCPRS defines the high byte.</p>

7.12.4.19 Channel 4 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C4MCPRS)

This register controls the cycle time and the minimal pulse width of PWM channel.
The setting of the prescaler channel is based on the value of PCSSGL and PCSSGH registers.

Address Offset: 28h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00b	<p>Prescaler Divider Value (PSDV15-8)</p> <p>Refer to the previous register for the details.</p>

7.12.4.20 Channel 6 Clock Prescaler Register (C6CPRS)

This register controls the cycle time and the minimal pulse width of PWM channel.
The setting of the prescaler channel is based on the value of PCSSGL and PCSSGH registers.

Address Offset: 2Bh

	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>Prescaler Divider Value (PSDV7-0)</p> <p>PWM input clock is divided by the number of PSDV15-0 + 1 except 0 value. For example, the value of 0001h results in a divide by 2 and the value of FFFFh results in a divide by 65536 except 0 value. Set value 0 to disable clock prescaler divider.</p> <p>The contents of this register may be changed only when the PWM module is in a PWM inhibit mode.</p> <p>This register defines the low byte and the next register C6MCPRS defines the high byte.</p>

7.12.4.21 Channel 6 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C6MCPRS)

This register controls the cycle time and the minimal pulse width of PWM channel.
The setting of the prescaler channel is based on the value of PCSSGL and PCSSGH registers.

Address Offset: 2Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	<p>Prescaler Divider Value (PSDV15-8)</p> <p>Refer to the previous register for the details.</p>

7.12.4.22 Channel 7 Clock Prescaler Register (C7CPRS)

This register controls the cycle time and the minimal pulse width of PWM channel.
 The setting of the prescaler channel is based on the value of PCSSGL and PCSSGH registers.

Address Offset: 2Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Prescaler Divider Value (PSDV7-0) PWM input clock is divided by the number of PSDV15-0 + 1 except 0 value. For example, the value of 0001h results in a divide by 2 and the value of FFFFh results in a divide by 65536 except 0 value. Set value 0 to disable clock prescaler divider. The contents of this register may be changed only when the PWM module is in a PWM inhibit mode. This register defines the low byte and the next register C7MCPRS defines the high byte.

7.12.4.23 Channel 7 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C7MCPRS)

This register controls the cycle time and the minimal pulse width of PWM channel.
 The setting of the prescaler channel is based on the value of PCSSGL and PCSSGH registers.

Address Offset: 2Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Prescaler Divider Value (PSDV15-8) Refer to the previous register for the details.

7.12.4.24 PWM Clock 6MHz Select Register (CLK6MSEL)

This register controls the group clock.

Address Offset: 40h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	R	0b	Cycle Time Register Mode (CTRMODE) 0: 1 cycle time mode. 1: 4 cycle time mode. After writing data to CTR1, CTR2, or CTR3, the bit will be set to 1 and system will be changed to the 4-CTR mode.
3-0	R/W	0000b	Clock Group 6MHz Selection (G6MSEL3-0) Refer to PCFS3-0 field in PCFSR register.

7.12.4.25 PWM5 Timeout Control Register (PWM5TOCTRL)

This register controls the PWM5 Timeout Period.

Address Offset: 44h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	000b	PWM5 Timeout Period Selection (PWM5TOSEL3-0) If PWM5 Timeout is enabled, PWM5 output would be held 100% duty when the DCR of PWM5 is not updated during the specified time selected in Timeout Control Register. 000h: disable 001h: 1 sec 010h: 1.5 sec 011h: 2 sec 100h: 2.5 sec 101h: 3 sec 110h: 3.5 sec 111h: 4 sec

7.12.4.26 Color Frequency LSB Register (CFLRR)

This register reflects the LSB value of the current Frequency of the Color Sensor from Tach2. The value is shown in 16-bit format.

Reading CFLRR and CFMRR registers should be in pairs to get the correct 16-bit frequency value. Reading these two registers via D2EC/I2EC is not guaranteed to get the correct value.

Address Offset: 45h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Current Color Frequency LSB Value (CCFLV) The value of bit 7-0 denotes the LSB Color Frequency.

7.12.4.27 Color Frequency MSB Register (CFMRR)

This register reflects the MSB value of the current Frequency of the Color Sensor from Tach2. The value is shown in 16-bit format.

Address Offset: 46h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	-	Current Color Frequency MSB Value (CCFMV) The value of bit 7-0 denotes the MSB Color Frequency.

7.12.4.28 Color Frequency Interrupt Control Register (CFINTCTRL)

This register controls the interrupt of the color frequency register.

Address Offset: 47h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Color Frequency Data-valid Interrupt Enable (CFDIE) 1: Enable interrupt to R8032 when Color Frequency data is valid. 0: Disable interrupt to R8032 when Color Frequency data is valid.
1	R/WC	0b	Color Frequency Data-valid Interrupt Clear (CFDIC) Write one to clear the interrupt status, which is caused when fan 2 tachometer data is valid; writing zero is ignored.
0	R	0b	Color Frequency Data-valid Interrupt Status (CFDIS) 1: Color Frequency data-valid event occurs. 0: No Color Frequency data-valid event occurs.

7.12.4.29 Tachometer Switch Control Register (TSWCTRLR)

Address Offset: 48h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/WC	0b	TACH0A/TACH0B Data-valid Status (T0DVS) Write one to clear the status, which is caused when TACH0A/TACH0B data is valid; writing zero is ignored. This bit will be cleared when the input is switched by controlling the T0CHSEL bit. 0: TACH0A/TACH0B data is not valid. 1: TACH0A/TACH0B data is valid.
2	R/W	0b	TACH0A/TACH0B Channel Selection (T0CHSEL) This bit controls the channel switch of TACH0A and TACH0B. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: Fan 1 tachometer input is set to select TACH0A. 1b: Fan 1 tachometer input is set to select TACH0B.
1	R/WC	0b	TACH1A/TACH1B Data-valid Status (T1DVS) Write one to clear the status, which is caused when TACH1A/TACH1B data is valid; writing zero is ignored. This bit will be cleared when the input is switched by controlling the T1CHSEL bit. 0: TACH1A/TACH1B data is not valid. 1: TACH1A/TACH1B data is valid.
0	R/W	0b	TACH1A/TACH1B Channel Selection (T1CHSEL) This bit controls the channel switch of TACH1A and TACH1B. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: Fan 2 tachometer input is set to select TACH1A. 1b: Fan 2 tachometer input is set to select TACH1B.

7.12.4.30 PWM Output Open-Drain Enable Register (PWMODENR)

Address Offset: 49h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	PWM7 Output Open-Drain Enable (PWM7ODEN) This bit controls the output open-drain function of PWM7. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: PWM7 output is set to push-pull mode. 1b: PWM7 output is set to open-drain mode.
6	R/W	0b	PWM6 Output Open-Drain Enable (PWM6ODEN) This bit controls the output open-drain function of PWM6. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: PWM6 output is set to push-pull mode. 1b: PWM6 output is set to open-drain mode.
5	R/W	0b	PWM5 Output Open-Drain Enable (PWM5ODEN) This bit controls the output open-drain function of PWM5. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: PWM5 output is set to push-pull mode. 1b: PWM5 output is set to open-drain mode.
4	R/W	0b	PWM4 Output Open-Drain Enable (PWM4ODEN) This bit controls the output open-drain function of PWM4. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: PWM4 output is set to push-pull mode. 1b: PWM4 output is set to open-drain mode.
3	R/W	0b	PWM3 Output Open-Drain Enable (PWM3ODEN) This bit controls the output open-drain function of PWM3. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: PWM3 output is set to push-pull mode. 1b: PWM3 output is set to open-drain mode.
2	R/W	0b	PWM2 Output Open-Drain Enable (PWM2ODEN) This bit controls the output open-drain function of PWM2. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: PWM2 output is set to push-pull mode. 1b: PWM2 output is set to open-drain mode.
1	R/W	0b	PWM1 Output Open-Drain Enable (PWM1ODEN) This bit controls the output open-drain function of PWM1. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: PWM1 output is set to push-pull mode. 1b: PWM1 output is set to open-drain mode.
0	R/W	0b	PWM0 Output Open-Drain Enable (PWM0ODEN) This bit controls the output open-drain function of PWM0. Notice that the related GPIO ports should be set to the function mode. 0b: PWM0 output is set to push-pull mode. 1b: PWM0 output is set to open-drain mode.

7.12.4.31 PWM0 LED Dimming Enable (PWM0LHE)

Address Offset: 50h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	PWM0 Dimming Enable (PWM0HE) 0: Disable 1: Enable It is recommended that set PWM0LCR1 and PWM0LCR2 first before enable dimming mode

7.12.4.32 PWM0 LED Dimming Control Register 1 (PWM0LCR1)

Address Offset: 51h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5-4	R/W	00b	PWM0 Dimming Maximum Duty Cycle Select (P0HMXD) 00b: 40h 01b: 80h 10b: C0h 11b: FFh
3-2	R/W	00b	PWM0 Duty Decreasing Step (P0DDS) 00b: 1h 01b: 2h 10b: 4h 11b: 8h
1-0	R/W	00b	PWM0 Duty Increasing Step (P0DIS) 00b: 1h 01b: 2h 10b: 4h 11b: 8h

7.12.4.33 PWM0 LED Dimming Control Register 2 (PWM0LCR2)

Address Offset: 52h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6-4	R/W	0h	PWM0 Dimming Maximum Duty Cycle Delay Period (P0HMXDD) 0h: 1/64 s 1h: 1/8 s 2h: 1/4 s 3h: 1/2 s 4h: 1 s 5h: 2 s 6h: 4 s The above time period is calculated by selecting 32.768K clock and no prescaler.
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	PWM0 Dimming Zero Duty Cycle Delay Period (P0HZDD) 0h: 1/64 s 1h: 1/8 s 2h: 1/4 s 3h: 1/2 s 4h: 1 s 5h: 2 s 6h: 4 s The above time period is calculated by selecting 32.768K clock and no prescaler.

7.12.4.34 PWM1 LED Dimming Enable (PWM1LHE)

Address Offset: 53h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	PWM1 Dimming Enable (PWM0HE) 0: Disable 1: Enable It is recommended that set PWM1LCR1 and PWM1LCR2 first before enable dimming mode

7.12.4.35 PWM1 LED Dimming Control Register 1 (PWM1LCR1)

Address Offset: 54h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5-4	R/W	00b	PWM1 Dimming Maximum Duty Cycle Select (P1HMXD) 00b: 40h 01b: 80h 10b: C0h 11b: FFh
3-2	R/W	00b	PWM1 Duty Decreasing Step (P1DDS) 00b: 1h 01b: 2h 10b: 4h 11b: 8h
1-0	R/W	00b	PWM1 Duty Increasing Step (P1DIS) 00b: 1h 01b: 2h 10b: 4h 11b: 8h

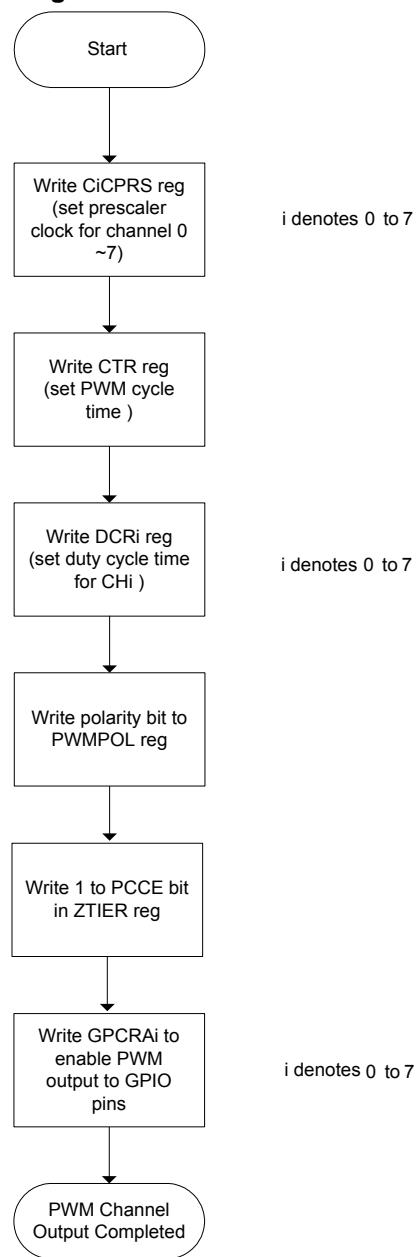
7.12.4.36 PWM1 LED Dimming Control Register 2 (PWM1LCR2)

Address Offset: 55h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6-4	R/W	0h	PWM1 Dimming Maximum Duty Cycle Delay Period (P1HMXDD) 0h: 15.6 ms 1h: 125 ms 2h: 250 ms 3h: 0.5 s 4h: 1 s 5h: 2 s 6h: 4 s The above time period is derived from selecting 32.768K clock and no prescaler.
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	R/W	0h	PWM1 Dimming Zero Duty Cycle Delay Period (P1HZDD) 0h: 15.6 ms 1h: 125 ms 2h: 250 ms 3h: 0.5 s 4h: 1 s 5h: 2 s 6h: 4 s The above time period is derived from selecting 32.768K clock and no prescaler.

7.12.5 PWM Programming Guide

Figure 7-31. Program Flow Chart for PWM Channel Output



7.13 8-bit Timer (TMR)

7.13.1 Overview

This module is an on-chip 8-bit timer (TMA0, TMA1, TMB0, and TMB1) with four channels operating on the basis of an 8-bit counter. The 8-bit timer module can be used as a multi-function timer in a variety of applications, such as generation of counter reset, interrupt requests, and pulse output with an arbitrary duty cycle using a compare-match signal with registers.

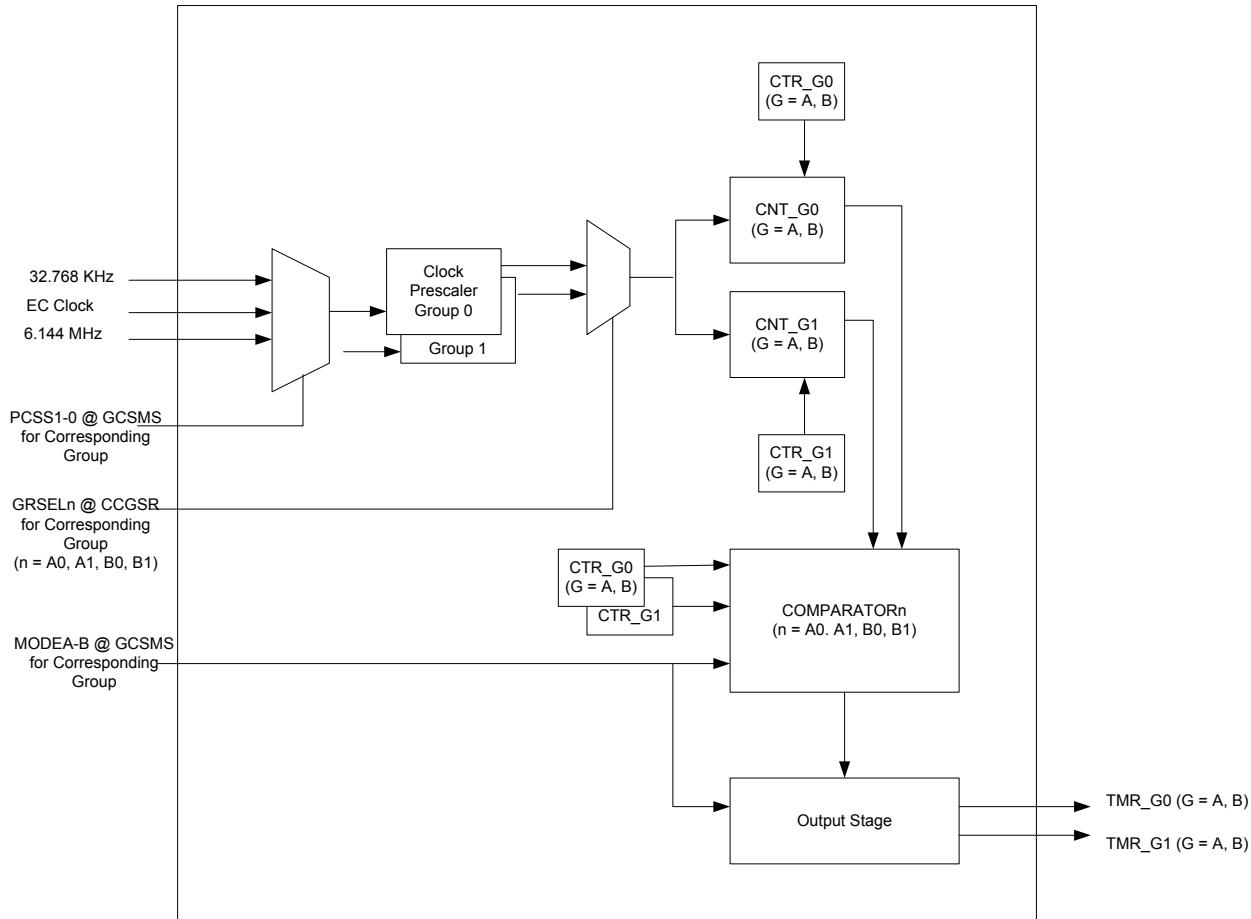
7.13.2 Features

- Supports four channels.
- Supports four Counters, Cycle Time registers and Duty Cycle registers for each channel.
- Supports four clock sources and two clock prescalers.
- Supports 8-bit pulse mode, 16-bit pulse mode, and toggle mode.
- Supports interrupt enable and interrupt disable for cycle time match and duty cycle match respectively.

7.13.3 Functional Description

7.13.3.1 General Description

Figure 7-32. TMR Block Diagram



The TMR uses the 32.768 kHz Clock, EC Clock, or 6.14 MHz Clock as a reference for its TMR output. The

prescaler divider values in PRSC register divides the TMR input clock into its working clock respectively. Each channel can select their prescaler divider by CCGSR register. The TMR provides four TMR outputs, TMA0 , TMA1, TMB0, and TMB1. Each TMR output is controlled by its Duty Cycle registers and Cycle Time register.

TMR module consists of three modes, 8-bit mode, 16-bit mode, and toggle mode.

7.13.3.2 TMR Counter (CNT)

Each CNT is an 8-bit up-counter. CNT_A0 and CNT_A1 (or CNT_B0 and CNT_B1) comprise a single 16-bit counter in toggle mode or 16-bit pulse mode. CNT can be cleared by writing data to Duty Cycle register or by compare-match Cycle Time signal. Note that CNT is disabled when DCR is 00h and CNT is initialized to 00h.

7.13.3.3 TMR Duty Cycle (DCR)

DCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register. DCR_A0 and DCR_A1 (or DCR_B0 and DCR_B1) comprise a single 16-bit register in toggle mode or 16-bit pulse mode. DCR is continually compared with the value in CNT. When a match is detected, the corresponding TMR output polarity will be changed and the corresponding interrupt will be set if the interrupt is enabled. DCR is initialized to 00h.

7.13.3.4 TMR Cycle Time (CTR)

CTR is an 8-bit readable/writable register. CTR_A0 and CTR_A1 (or CTR_B0 and CTR_B1) comprise a single 16-bit register in toggle mode or 16-bit pulse mode. CTR is continually compared with the value in CNT. When a match is detected, the corresponding TMR output polarity will be changed and the corresponding interrupt will be set if the interrupt is enabled and the value in CNT will be changed to 00h. CTR is initialized to H'FF.

7.13.3.5 TMR Mode

8-bit Pulse Mode

In 8-bit pulse mode, each TMR_N output is controlled by its Duty Cycle register and Cycle Time register.(N = A0, A1, B0, and B1)

When the TMR working clock is enabled, the TMR_N output is high when the value in the DCR_N register is greater than the value in the counter. When the value of DCR_N register is not greater than the value in the counter, the TMR_N cycle output is low. When the value in the counter reaches the value in the CTR_N register, the counter will be reset then start counting until the TMR working clock is disabled.

The TMR_N output signal cycle time is:

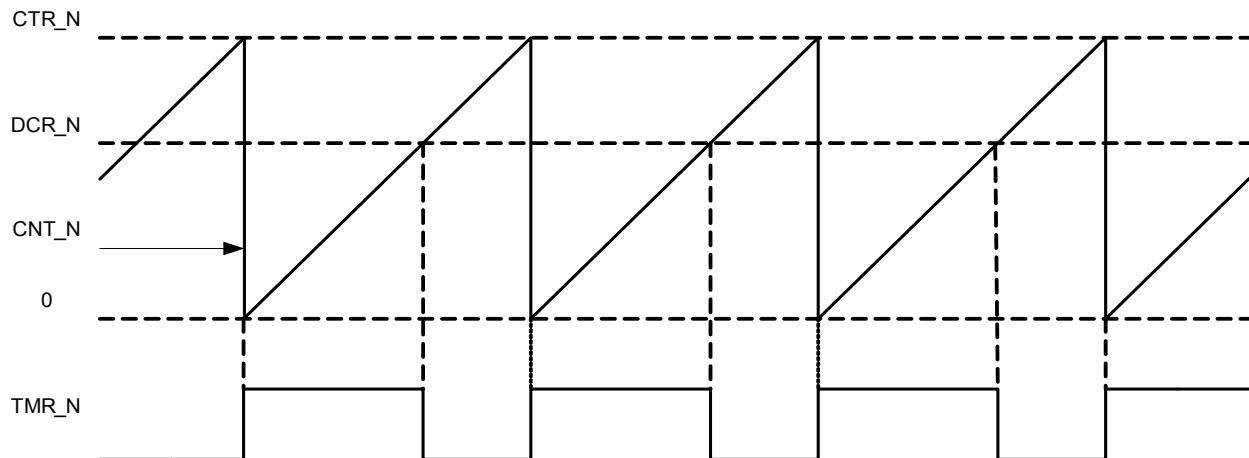
$$T_{clk} \times PRSC0/PRSC1 \times (CTR_N + 1)$$

Where Tclk is the period of TMR input clock = (1/ 32.768 kHz), (1/ FreqEC) or (1/ 6.14 MHz), which is selected by PCSS1-0 in GCSMS register.

The TMR_N output signal duty cycle (in %) is:

$$(DCR_N) / (CTR_N + 1) \times 100$$

Figure 7-33. 8-bit Mode Waveform of Channel N

**16-bit pulse mode**

In 16-bit pulse mode, TMR output is controlled by the cascading of two Duty Cycle registers and two Cycle Time registers.

Operation of a 16-bit counter can be performed by using CNT_G1 as the upper half and CNT_G0 as the lower half, and operation of 16-bit Duty Cycle register (DCR_G) and 16-bit Cycle Time register (CTR_G) is performed in the same way as that of 16-bit counter (CNT_G). (G = A, B)

When the TMR working clock is enabled, the TMR_G1 output is high when the value in the DCR_G register is greater than the value in the CNT_G register. When the value of the DCR_G register is not greater than the value in the CNT_G register, the TMR_G1 output is low. When the value in the CNT_G register reaches the value in the CTR_G register, the CNT_G counter will be reset then start counting until the TMR working clock is disabled. But TMR_G0 output is always low in 16-bit pulse mode.

The TMR_G1 output signal cycle time is:

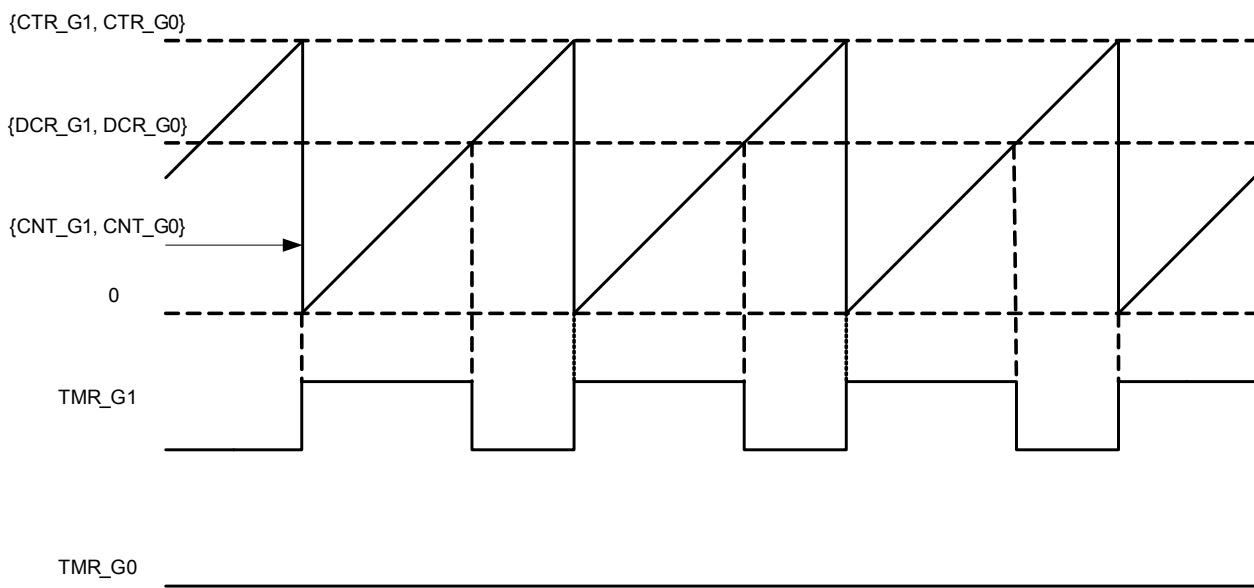
$$\text{Tclk} \times \text{PRSC0/PRSC1} \times (\text{CTR}_G + 1)$$

Where Tclk is the period of TMR input clock = (1/ 32.768 kHz), (1/ FreqEC) or (1/ 6.14 MHz), which is selected by PCSS1-0 in GCSMS register.

The TMR_G1 output signal duty cycle (in %) is:

$$(DCR_G) / (\text{CTR}_G + 1) \times 100$$

Figure 7-34. 16-bit Mode Waveform of Group G



Toggle mode

The Counter, Duty Cycle register, and Cycle Time register are cascaded in the same way as that in 16-bit pulse mode.

When TMR working clock is enabled, the TMR_G1 output polarity will be changed at the moment that the value in the CNT_G counter reaches the value in the DCR_G register and the TMR_G0 output polarity will be changed at the moment that the value in the CNT_G counter reaches the value in the CTR_G register. When the value in the CNT_G register reaches the value in the CTR_G register, the CNT_G counter will be reset then start counting until the TMR working clock is disabled.

The TMR_G1 and TMR_G0 output signal cycle time is:

$$\text{Tclk} \times \text{PRSC0/PRSC1} \times (\text{CTR}_G + 1)$$

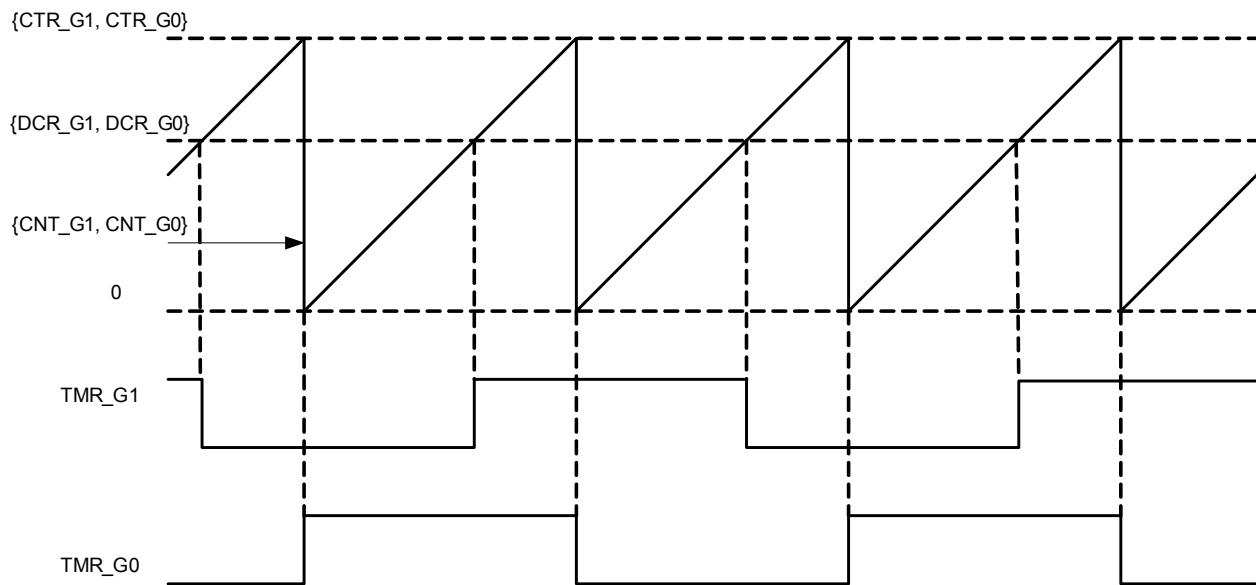
Where Tclk is the period of TMR input clock = (1/ 32.768 kHz), (1/ FreqEC) or (1/ 6.14 MHz), which is selected by PCSS1-0 in GCSMS register.

The TMR_G1 and TMR_G0 output signal duty cycle (in %) is 50 %.

The phase differential of TMR_G1 and TMR_G0 (in %) is:

$$(\text{DCR}_G) / (\text{CTR}_G + 1) \times 100$$

Figure 7-35. 16-bit Mode Waveform of Group N



7.13.3.6 TMR Interrupt

Each TMR output can generate two types of interrupts, Cycle Time compare-match interrupt and Duty Cycle compare-match interrupt. Each interrupt source can be enabled or disabled independently by interrupt enable bits in TMRIE register. Independent signals are sent to the interrupt controller for each interrupt.

For the following three TMR modes, each of the four interrupts, TMRINTA0, TMRINTA1, TMRINTB0, TMRINTB1, has its own specific interrupt sources.

$$\text{CTR}_A = \text{CTR}_A1 * 100h + \text{CTR}_A0$$

$$\text{DCR}_A = \text{DCR}_A1 * 100h + \text{DCR}_A0$$

$$\text{CTR}_B = \text{CTR}_B1 * 100h + \text{CTR}_B0$$

$$\text{DCR}_B = \text{DCR}_B1 * 100h + \text{DCR}_B0$$

8-bit Pulse Mode

TMRINTA0: CTR_A0 compare-match and DCR_A0 compare-match sources.

TMRINTA1: CTR_A1 compare-match and DCR_A1 compare-match sources.

TMRINTB0: CTR_B0 compare-match and DCR_B0 compare-match sources.

TMRINTB1: CTR_B1 compare-match and DCR_B1 compare-match sources.

16-bit Pulse Mode

TMRINTA0: No interrupt.

TMRINTA1: CTR_A compare-match and DCR_A compare-match sources.

TMRINTB0: No interrupt.

TMRINTB1: CTR_B compare-match and DCR_B compare-match sources.

Toggle mode

TMRINTA0: CTR_A compare-match source.

TMRINTA1: DCR_A compare match source.

TMRINTB0: CTR_B compare-match source.

TMRINTB1: DCR_B compare match source.

7.13.4 EC Interface Registers

These registers are mapped in the address space of EC. The registers are listed below and the base address is 2900h.

Table 7-28. EC View Register Map, TMR

7	0	Offset
	TMR Prescaler Register (PRSC)	00h
	Group Clock Source and Mode Select Register (GCSMS)	01h
	A0 Cycle Time Register (CTR_A0)	02h
	A1 Cycle Time Register (CTR_A1)	03h
	B0 Cycle Time Register (CTR_B0)	04h
	B1 Cycle Time Register (CTR_B1)	05h
	A0 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_A0)	06h
	A1 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_A1)	07h
	B0 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_B0)	08h
	B1 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_B1)	09h
	Channel Clock Group Select Register (CCGSR)	0Ah
	TMR Clock Enable Register (TMRCE)	0Bh
	TMR Interrupt Enable Register (TMRIE)	0Ch

Other related register(s):

- General Control 2 Register (GCR2), TMB1EN bit
- General Control 2 Register (GCR2), TMB0EN bit
- General Control 2 Register (GCR2), TMA1EN bit
- General Control 2 Register (GCR2), TMA0EN bit

For a summary of the abbreviations of register types, refer to “Register Abbreviations and Access Rules”

7.13.4.1 TMR Prescaler Register (PRSC)

This register controls the cycle time and the minimal pulse width of TMR channel.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0000b	TMR Prescaler Divider Value 1 (PRSC1) PWM input clock is divided by the number of PRSC1. 0000: clk disabled. 1000: clk/128. 0001: clk. 1001: clk/256. 0010: clk/2. 1010: clk/512. 0011: clk/4. 1011: clk/1024. 0100: clk/8. 1100: clk/2048. 0101: clk/16. 1101: clk/4096. 0110: clk/32. 1110: clk/8192. 0111: clk/64. 1111: clk/16384. Where clk is the clock source selected by PCSS1 field in GCSMS register.
3-0	R/W	0000b	TMR Prescaler Divider Value 0 (PRSC0) Bit 3-0 are the same as bit 7-4

7.13.4.2 Group Clock Source and Mode Select Register (GCSMS)

This register selects the clock source and mode.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00b	Group B Mode (MODEB) Select the mode of TMB0 and TMB1. 00: 8-bit pulse mode. 01: 16-bit pulse mode. 10: Toggle mode. 11: The same as 10.
5-4	R/W	00b	Group A Mode (MODEA) Select the mode of TMA0 and TMA1. Bit 5-4 are the same as bit 7-6.
3-2	R/W	00b	Prescaler 1 Clock Source Select (PCSS1) 00b: Select 32.768 kHz. 01b: Select FreqEC (EC Clock). 10b: Select FreqEC*2/3 (6.14 MHz) 11b: Reserved (FreqEC and FreqPLL are listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)
1-0	R/W	00b	Prescaler 0 Clock Source Select (PCSS0) Bit 1-0 are the same as bit 3-2

7.13.4.3 A0 Cycle Time Register (CTR_A0)

This register controls the cycle time of channel A0.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	Cycle Time Value A0 (CTVA0) The Prescaler output clock is divided by the number of (CTR_A0 +1). For example, the value of 00h results in a divide by 1. The value of FFh results in a divided by 256.

7.13.4.4 A1 Cycle Time Register (CTR_A1)

This register controls the cycle time of channel A1.

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	Cycle Time Value A1 (CTVA1) The function of this register is the same as that of CTR_A0.

7.13.4.5 B0 Cycle Time Register (CTR_B0)

This register controls the cycle time of channel B0.

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	Cycle Time Value B0 (CTVB0) The function of this register is the same as that of CTR_A0.

7.13.4.6 B1 Cycle Time Register (CTR_B1)

This register controls the cycle time of channel B1.

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	Cycle Time Value B1 (CTVB1) The function of this register is the same as that of CTR_A0.

7.13.4.7 A0 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_A0)

This register controls the duty cycle of channel A0.

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Duty Cycle Value A0 (DCVA0) DCR_A0 register decides the number of clocks for the waveform of the corresponding TMR output.

7.13.4.8 A1 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_A1)

This register controls the duty cycle of channel A1.

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Duty Cycle Value A1 (DCVA1) The function of this register is the same as that of DCR_A0.

7.13.4.9 B0 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_B0)

This register controls the duty cycle of channel B0.

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Duty Cycle Value B0 (DCVB0) The function of this register is the same as that of DCR_A0.

7.13.4.10 B1 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_B1)

This register controls the duty cycle of channel B1.

Address Offset: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Duty Cycle Value B1 (DCVB1) The function of this register is the same as that of DCR_A0.

7.13.4.11 Channel Clock Group Select Register (CCGSR)

This register selects the clock group of TMR output.

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	TMR B1 Reading Register (RDB1) Read Channel B1 if TMR output pins are used by other modules.
6	R	0b	TMR B0 Reading Register (RDB0) Bit 6 is the same as bit 7.
5	R	0b	TMR A1 Reading Register (RDA1) Bit 5 is the same as bit 7.
4	R	0b	TMR A0 Reading Register (RDA0) Bit 4 is the same as bit 7.
3	R/W	0b	TMR B1 Clock Group Select Register (GRSELB1) Select the clock group of channel B1. 0: Select Clock PRSC0. 1: Select Clock PRSC1.
2	R/W	0b	TMR B0 Clock Group Select Register (GRSELB0) Bit 2 is the same as bit 3 In the 16-bit pulse mode or toggle mode, this bit is of no use and the clock group of TMR B0 will be the same as TMR B1.
1	R/W	0b	TMR A1 Clock Group Select Register (GRSELA1) Bit 1 is the same as bit 3.
0	R/W	0b	TMR A0 Clock Group Select Register (GRSELA0) Bit 0 is the same as bit 3. In the 16-bit pulse mode or toggle mode, this bit is of no use and the clock group of TMR A0 will be the same as TMR A1.

7.13.4.12 TMR Clock Enable Register (TMRCE)

This register selects the clock group of TMR output.

Address Offset: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	TMR Clock Enable Register (CLKEN) 1: Enable TMR clock counter. Set this bit to 1 after all other registers have been set. 0: Disable TMR clock counter.
0	R/W	0b	TMR Test Mode (TMRTM) 1: The mode of TMR is switched to a test mode. 0: TMR works in a normal mode.

7.13.4.13 TMR Interrupt Enable Register (TMRIE)

This register controls the interrupt enable of all TMR channels.

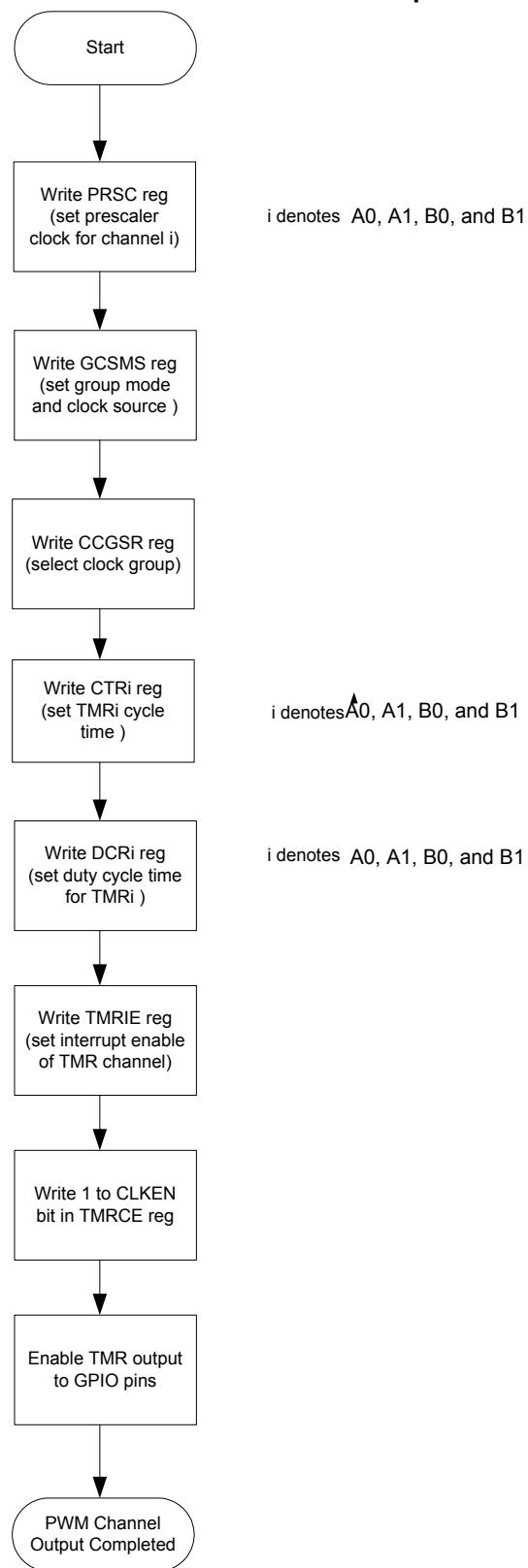
Address Offset: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	TMR B1 Duty Cycle Interrupt Enable Register (B1DCRIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable In 8-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the duty cycle compare-match interrupt enable. In 16-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the duty cycle compare-match interrupt enable In toggle mode: This bit controls the duty cycle compare-match interrupt enable.
6	R/W	0b	TMR B1 Cycle Time Interrupt Enable Register (B1CTRIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable In 8-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the cycle time compare-match interrupt enable. In 16-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the cycle time compare-match interrupt enable. In toggle mode: This bit is of no use.
5	R/W	0b	TMR B0 Duty Cycle Interrupt Enable Register (B0DCRIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable In 8-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the duty cycle compare-match interrupt enable. In 16-bit pulse mode: This bit is of no use. In toggle mode: This bit is of no use.
4	R/W	0b	TMR B0 Cycle Time Interrupt enable Register (B0CTRIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable In 8-bit pulse mode: The bit controls the cycle time compare-match interrupt enable. In 16-bit pulse mode: The bit is of no use. In toggle mode: The bit controls the cycle time compare-match interrupt enable.
3	R/W	0b	TMR A1 Duty Cycle Interrupt enable Register (A1DCRIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable In 8-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the duty cycle compare-match interrupt enable. In 16-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the duty cycle compare-match interrupt enable In toggle mode: This bit controls the duty cycle compare-match interrupt enable.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
2	R/W	0b	<p>TMR A1 Cycle Time Interrupt enable Register (A1CTRIE)</p> <p>0: Disable 1: Enable</p> <p>In 8-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the cycle time compare-match interrupt enable.</p> <p>In 16-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the cycle time compare-match interrupt enable.</p> <p>In toggle mode: This bit is of no use.</p>
1	R/W	0b	<p>TMR A0 Duty Cycle Interrupt enable Register (A0DCRIE)</p> <p>0: Disable 1: Enable</p> <p>In 8-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the duty cycle compare-match interrupt enable.</p> <p>In 16-bit pulse mode: This bit is of no use</p> <p>In toggle mode: This bit is of no use.</p>
0	R/W	0b	<p>TMR A0 Cycle Time Interrupt enable Register (A0CTRIE)</p> <p>0: Disable 1: Enable</p> <p>In 8-bit pulse mode: This bit controls the cycle time compare-match interrupt enable.</p> <p>In 16-bit pulse mode: This bit is of no use.</p> <p>In toggle mode: This bit controls the cycle time compare-match interrupt enable.</p>

7.13.5 TMR Programming Guide

Figure 7-36. Program Flow Chart for TMR Channel Output



7.14 Consumer Electronics Control (CEC)

7.14.1 Overview

CEC provides a number of high-level control functions within a HDMI system. Several CEC features are designed to enhance interoperability between the various audiovisual products in a user's environment.

7.14.1.1 General Description

CEC bus is a single wire and bi-direction signal. All the related transmission protocol and bit timing specification follow the HDMI 1.4a standard. F/W can use the frame-based data transmission to construct any CEC protocol which CEC device really supports. A CEC frame consists of a "Start bit", a "Header Block" and successive "Data Block". The "Data Block" and "Header Block" are the same structure which has 8-bit information bits plus two control bits "EOM" and "ACK".

There is a FFIO provided for continuity of successive bit transmitting. F/W can monitor FIFO status to control the flow of frame transmission. If device operates in the initiator mode, F/W should define Header Information in first byte of FIFO then the bytes afterward are Data. And switch device to initiator mode by register DMS, then writing 1 to register ICC to fire CEC frame.

Initial setting for CEC function: INT82 Enable, GPIOF0 set alternate function mode, CECEN, Enable CEC clock , CEC Interrupt Enable Register(CECIE).

Set logical device address (CECDLA) to decide Device Type when operating in follower mode.

7.14.1.2 CEC TX Flow

If CEC operates in initiator mode and want to transmit 2 byte, include header.(1 header + 1 data)

1. Write header information into FIFO
2. Write data byte into FIFO
3. Switch Device to Initiator mode
4. Issue CEC frame by writing 1 to bit ICC.
5. Wait Interrupt. If transmitting normally, status DBD will be set high
6. Set EOM high to terminate this transfer.
7. Wait Interrupt. If transmitting normally, status DBD will be set high
8. When last byte is transmitted. CEC will auto switch to follower mode.

7.14.1.3 CEC RX Flow

1. Wait interrupt. If header receives normally, status HDRCV will be set high
2. F/W read CECRH to get header information which is sent from initiator device.
3. Wait interrupt. If the following data receives normally
4. F/W could check FFCNT to monitor how many data bytes are received.
5. Read CECDR to get data byte which is sent from initiator device.
6. F/W also monitor EB@CECOPSTS to know when the initiator want to terminate this transfer.
7. Follower can response nack during ACK bit by setting NKEN, however default response is ack.

7.14.2 EC Interface Registers

These registers are mapped in the address space of EC. The registers are listed below and the base address is 2E00h.

Table 7-29. EC View Register Map, CEC

7	0	Offset
CEC Data Register (CECDR)		00h
CEC FIFO Status Register (CECFSTS)		01h
CEC Device Logical Address Register (CECDLA)		02h
CEC Control Register (CECCTRL)		03h
CEC Status Register (CECSTS)		04h
CEC Interrupt Enable Register (CECIE)		05h
CEC Operation Status Register (CECOPSTS)		06h
CEC Received Header Register (CECRH)		07h

7.14.2.1 CEC Data Register (CECDR)

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	CEC Data Buffer (CECDB) TX/RX Data Byte

7.14.2.2 CEC FIFO Status Register (CECFSTS)

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	WO		FIFO Clear (FCLR) 0: no action 1: Clear FIFO content.
5	RO	1b	FIFO Empty (FE) 0: FIFO is not empty 1: FIFO is empty
4	RO	0b	FIFO Full (FF) 0: FIFO is not full 1: FIFO is full
3	-	-	Reserved
2-0	RO	0h	FIFO Count (FCNT) 0h: FIFO is empty 1h: FIFO has 1 byte 2h: FIFO has 2 bytes 3h: FIFO has 3 bytes 4h: FIFO has 4 bytes (FIFO is full) 5h,6h,7h: Reserved

7.14.2.3 CEC Device Logical Address Register (CECDLA)

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	R/W	0h	Device Logical Address (DLA) Use CEC logical address to define Device Type. Default is TV device.

7.14.2.4 CEC Control Register (CECCTRL)

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	NACK Enable (NKEN) 0: response ACK 1: response NACK When device is in Follower mode, setting this bit to ACK or NACK the current receiving byte.
4	R/W	0b	EOM Bit Enable(EOM) 0: one block follows 1: final block When device is in Initiator mode, setting this bit to indicate whether the current transmitting byte is final or not
3	R/W	1b	Normal Bit Timing (NBT) 0: increase 0.1ms 1: normal Increase bit timing period by around 01ms
2	-	-	Reserved
1	-	-	Reserved
0	WO	0b	Issue CEC Cycle (ICC) Write 1 to transmit the Data Bytes that have been written into FIFO. Ignore write 0

7.14.2.5 CEC Status Register (CECSTS)

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/WC	0b	Header Received (HDRCV) 0: no event occur 1: even occurs Event occurs upon a “Start bit” plus “Header block” are received and CEC is in Follower mode.
4	R/WC	0b	Data Block Done (DBD) 0: no event occur 1: even occurs Event occurs when a “Data block” are transmitted or received.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
3	R/WC	0b	CEC Line Error (CLE) 0: no event occur 1: even occurs Event occurs upon detecting that the period between falling edges of a bit is less than the minimum bit period and CEC is in Follower mode.
2	R/WC	0b	CEC Error Notified (CEN) 0: no event occur 1: even occurs Even occurs upon a low bit period on CEC line of 1.4 - 1.6 times the nominal data bit period is generating from follower device. (while CEC is in Initiator mode)
1	R/WC	0b	BUS Low Error (BLE) 0: no event occur 1: even occurs Event occurs upon detecting a low status on CEC line while it is transmitting a high status on bus and CEC is in Initiator mode.
0	R/WC	0b	Bit Timing Error (BTE) 0: no event occur 1: even occurs Event occurs upon receiving an invalid bit timing while CEC is in Follower mode.

7.14.2.6 CEC Interrupt Enable Register (CECIE)

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6			Reserved
5	R/W	0b	Header Received Interrupt Enable (HDRCVIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable.
4	R/W	0b	Data Block Done Interrupt Enable (DBDIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable.
3	R/W	0b	CEC Line Error Interrupt Enable (CLEIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable
2	R/W	0b	CEC Error Notified Interrupr Enable (CENIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable
1	R/W	0b	BUS Low Error Interrupt Enable (BLEIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable.
0	R/W	0b	Bit Timing Error Interrup Enable (BTEIE) 0: Disable 1: Enable.

7.14.2.7 CEC Operation Status Register (CECOPSTS)

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	00h	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	CEC Follower Line Control (CFLCTL) 0: release bus 1: drive bus low When device is in Follower mode, write one to this bit can make CEC line drive to low state. Write zero would release CEC line.
4	R/W	0b	Initiator Broadcast Enable (IBE) When device is in initiator mode, write 1 to this bit before issuing a broadcast message.
3	R/W	0b	Device Mode Select (DMS) 0: Follower mode 1: Initiator mode
2	RO	0b	EOM Bit (EB) EOM status from initiator while device is in Follower mode
1	RO	1b	ACK Bit (AB) ACK status from follower while device is in Initiator mode
0	RO	0b	CEC In Process (CIP) 0: CEC write cycle is not in process. 1: After "Issue CEC Cycle", CEC write cycle is in process

7.14.2.8 CEC Received Header Register (CECRH)

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R/W	0h	Initiator address (IADDR) Received Header[7:4] from initiator while CEC is in Follower mode
3-0	R/W	0h	Destination address (DADDR) Received Header[3:0] from initiator while CEC is in Follower mode

7.15 EC Access to the Host Controlled Modules (EC2I Bridge)

7.15.1 Overview

The module enables EC access to PNPCFG and SWUC modules. It can access the host domain modules with host on alternate usage or take control of it and prevent any host from accessing that module.

7.15.2 Features

- Supports lock bit to prevent conflicts in host-controlled module.
- Supports Super I/O I-Bus arbitration
- Supports Super I/O access lock violation indication

7.15.3 Functional Description

The EC2I bridge enables the EC to access the Host Controlled module registers (e.g., host configuration module(PNPCFG) and SWUC), using the I-Bus which is arbitrated by I-Bus Arbiter to prevent I-Bus grant from fighting between EC and the host side. The bridge provides a lock bit to control the access of the Host Controlled modules. When the related lock bit is cleared, the host is allowed to access to the Host Controlled modules registers. When the related lock bit is set, the host is not allowed to access to the Host Controlled module registers (i.e., write operations are ignored and read operations return the unknown). Whenever the host accesses to the locked register, a violation flag is set on the respective bit in the SIOLV register.

EC should access the Host Controlled modules only after preventing host accessing to the module (using lock bits). The I-Bus arbiter arbitrates I-Bus usage between the host and EC. If a LPC transaction has started prior to the beginning of EC transaction, EC waiting for the completion of the LPC transaction. If EC transaction starts prior to LPC transaction, the LPC translation needs to wait for the completion of EC transaction.

EC firmware may access the Host Controlled modules only when VSTBY is on and VCC is on and LPCCLK is active.

EC Read Operation from a Host Controlled module register, refer to the followings:

1. Set CSAE bit in IBCTL register.
2. Make sure that both CRIB and CWIB bits in IBCTL register are cleared.
3. Setting its enable bit in IBMAE register for access module, only one module can enable at a time.
4. Assign the offset of the register in the device in IHIOA register.
5. Write 1 to CRIB bit in IBCTL register.
6. Read the CRIB bit in IBCTL until it returns 0.
7. Read the data from IHD register.

EC Write Operation from a Host Controlled module register, refer to the followings:

1. Set CSAE bit in IBCTL register.
 2. Make sure that both CRIB and CWIB bits in IBCTL register are cleared.
 3. Setting its enable bit in IBMAE register for access module, only one module can enable at a time.
 4. Assign the offset of the register in the device in IHIOA register.
 5. Write the data to IHD register, which begins a write transaction.
 6. Read the CWIB bit in IBCTL until it returns 0, which represents that a write transaction has been finished.
- For minimal conflict between host and EC in the use of Host Controlled modules, refer to the followings.

Notice for Read/Write Operation

1. The host is allowed to access the Host Controlled module only when the corresponding lock bit is cleared.

7.15.4 EC Interface Registers

The following set of registers is accessible only by the EC. The registers are maintained by VSTBY. The registers are listed below and the base address is 1200h.

Table 7-30. EC View Register Map, EC2I

7	0	Offset
	Indirect Host I/O Address.(IHIOA)	00h
	Indirect Host Data (IHD)	01h
	Lock Super I/O Host Access (LSIOHA)	02h
	Super I/O Access Lock Violation (SIOLV)	03h
	EC to I-Bus Modules Access Enable (IBMAE)	04h
	I-Bus Control (IBCTL)	05h

For a summary of the abbreviations used for the register type, see “Register Abbreviations and Access Rules”.

7.15.4.1 Indirect Host I/O Address Register (IHIOA)

This register defines the host I/O address for read or write transactions initiated by EC from/to the Host Controlled modules. The I/O address is an offset from the LSB bits of the address of the host controlled module. The accessed module is selected using EC to I-Bus Modules Access Enable Register (IBMAE).

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Indirect Host I/O Offset (IHIOO) These bits indicate the offsets within the device range are allowed.

7.15.4.2 Indirect Host Data Register (IHD)

This register holds host data for read or write transactions initiated by EC from/to the Host Controlled modules.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Indirect Host Data (IHDA)

7.15.4.3 Lock Super I/O Host Access Register (LSIOHA)

This register controls locking of host access to the Host Controlled modules.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	Lock BRAM Host Access (LKRTCHA) 0: Host access to the BRAM registers is enabled. 1: Host access to the BRAM registers is disabled.
0	R/W	0b	Lock PNPCFG Registers Host Access (LKCFG) 0: Host access to the PNPCFG Registers is enabled. 1: Host access to the PNPCFG Registers is disabled.

7.15.4.4 Super I/O Access Lock Violation Register (SIOLV)

This register provides an error indication when a host lock violation occurs on Host Controlled modules access.

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1	-	0h	Reserved
0	R/WC	0b	PNPCFG Register Lock Violation (CFGLV) 0: There is no lock violation when the host accesses PNPCFG registers. 1: when the host accesses PNPCFG register but LKCFG bit in LSIOHA register is set, this bit is set to indicate a violation and can be write-1-clear.

7.15.4.5 EC to I-Bus Modules Access Enable Register (IBMAE)

This register enables EC access to the Host Controlled modules. Only one of the bits in this register may be set at a time.

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	00h	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Mobile System Wake-Up Control (SWUC) Access Enable (SWUCAE) 0: EC access to the SWUC Registers is disabled. 1: EC access to the SWUC Registers is enabled.
1	-	0h	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	PNPCFG Register EC Access Enable (CFGAE) 0: EC access to the PNPCFG Registers is disabled. 1: EC access to the PNPCFG Registers is enabled.

7.15.4.6 I-Bus Control Register (IBCTL)

This register allows EC to the I-Bus Bridge operation.

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	0h	Reserved
3	-	-	Reserved
2	R	0b	EC Write to I-Bus (CWIB) Read: 1: EC write-access is still processing with IHD register. 0: It's completed.
1	R/W	0b	EC Read from I-Bus (CRIB) Write: See also CSAE bit definition. Read: 1: EC read-access is still processing. 0: It's completed and IHD register is available.
0	R/W	0b	EC to I-Bus Access Enabled (CSAE) 0: EC access to the I-Bus is disabled (default). 1: EC access to the I-Bus is enabled. The module to be accessed is selected in the IBMAE register. If 1 is written to both CSAE and CRIB, this access is a read-action. If 1 is written to CSAE and 0 to CRIB, this access is a write-action. If 0 is written to CSAE, the internal state machine of accessing is stopped.

7.15.5 EC2I Programming Guide

The read/write cycles PNPCFG and SWUC modules via EC2I are only valid when VCC is supplied. It means that such cycles may be executed after every VCC power-on.

Figure 7-37. Program Flow Chart for EC2I Read

Program flow chart for
EC2I Read

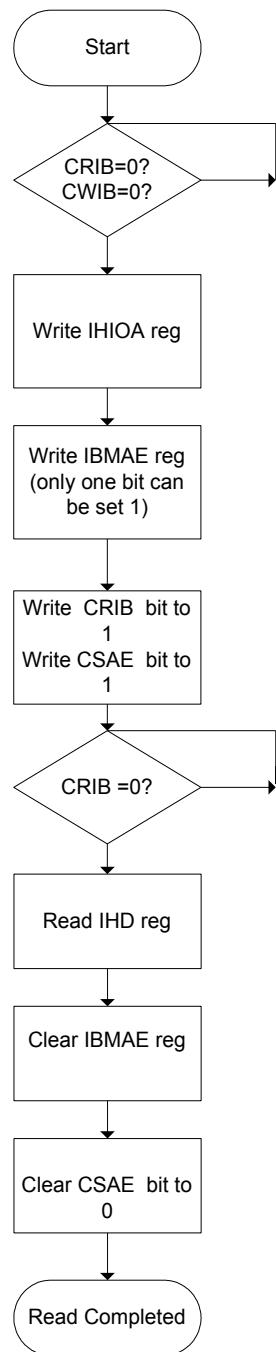
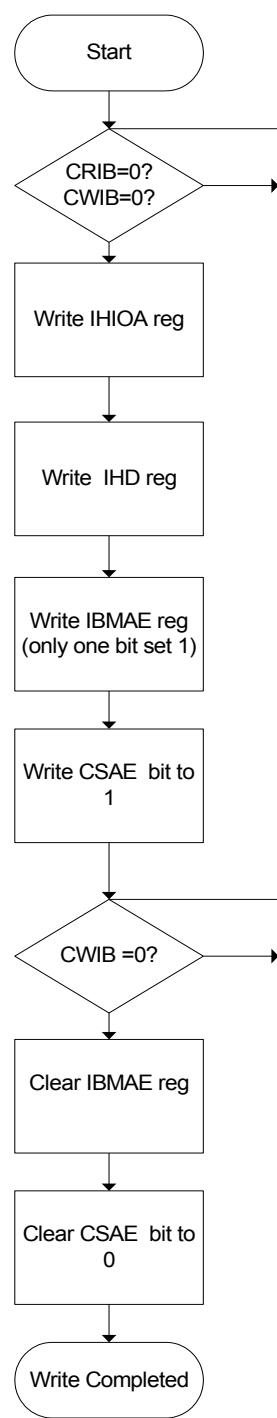


Figure 7-38. Program Flow Chart for EC2I Write

Program flow chart for
EC2I Write



7.16 External Timer and External Watchdog (ETWD)

7.16.1 Overview

Besides the internal timer 0, 1, 2 and WDT inside the 8032, there are external timer 1 with WDT and external Timer 2 without WDT outside the 8032. External Timer 1 with WDT and External Timer 2 without WDT are based on 32.768 k Clock and still work when EC is in Idle/Doze/Deep Doze/Sleep mode. The external timers are recommended to replace internal timer for periodical wakeup task.

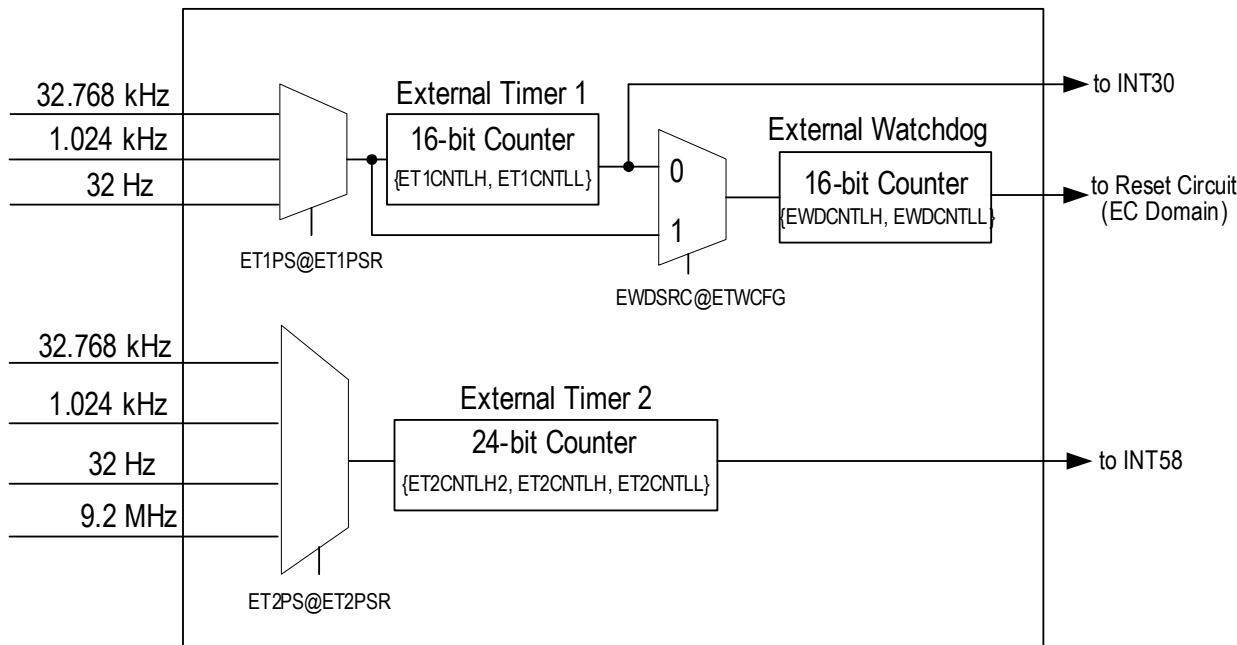
External Timer 1 with WDT has less power consumption than internal Timer/WDT due to the low frequency.

ETWD module cannot count external signal sources from pins. If the firmware wants to count external signal sources from pins, refer to TMRI0, TMRI1, TACH0A/B and TACH1A/B. TMRI0/TMRI1 are used as Timer1/2 sources of 8032 and TACH0/1 are tachometer inputs of PWM.

7.16.2 Features

- 32.768 kHz, 1.024 kHz and 32 Hz prescaler for External Timer 1
- 32.768 kHz, 1.024 kHz, 32 Hz, and 9.2 MHz prescaler for External Timer 2
- 16-bit count-down External Timer 1
- 24-bit count-down External Timer 2
- 16-bit count-down External WDT

Figure 7-39. Simplified Diagram



7.16.3 Functional Description

7.16.3.1 External Timer Operation

The External Timer 1 is a 16-bit counter down timer, and the External Timer 2 is a 24-bit count-down timer. Its clock source is based on 32.768 k Clock and can be selected by a prescaler defined at ET1PS/ET2PS field in ET1PSR/ET2PSR register.

The count number of External Timer 1 is defined in ET1CNTLH and ET1CNTLL registers, and that of External Watchdog is defined in EWDCNTLH and EWDCNTLL registers.

Timer 2 is defined in ET2CNTLH2, ET2CNTLH, and ET2CNTLL registers. External Timer 1/2 is stopped after reset and started after writing data to ET1CNTLL/ET2CNTLL register and never stops until reset. It asserts an interrupt to INTC (INT30 for External Timer 1; INT58 for External Timer 2) when it counts to zero every time.

The External Timer 1/2 re-starts when

- it counts to zero periodically.
- data is written to ET1CNTLL/ET2CNTLL register.
- 1 is written to ET1RST/ET2RST bit in ETWCTRL register.

External Timer 1/2 asserts periodical interrupt to EC 8032 via INT30/INT58 of INTC.

7.16.3.2 External WDT Operation

External WDT is a 16-bit counter down timer. Its clock source is either External Timer 1 output or the same clock source of External Timer 1, and it is controlled by EWDSRC bit in ETWCFG register.

The count number is defined in EWDCNTLH and EWDCNTLL registers. External WDT is stopped after reset and started after writing data to EWDCNTLL register and can be stopped by setting EWDSCEN bit and EWDSCMS bit in ETWCTRL register. It asserts an External Watchdog Reset to EC domain when it counts to zero. External WDT requires starting External Timer 1 regardless of EWDSRC field in ETWCFG register. External WDT cannot be started until External Timer 1 is started.

The External WDT re-starts when it is touched by the firmware.

There are two following ways to touch (re-start) External WDT:

- Writing data to EWDCNTLL register (if LEWDCNTL bit in ETWCFG register is not set)
- Writing 5Ch to EWDKEYR register, called key-match

External WDT asserts an External Watchdog Reset to EC domain when

- it counts to zero.
- data except 5Ch is written to EWDKEYR register.

7.16.4 EC Interface Registers

The following set of the registers is accessible only by the EC. They are listed below and the base address is 1F00h.

Table 7-31. EC View Register Map, ETWD

7	0	Offset
External Timer 1/WDT Configuration Register (ETWCFG)		01h
External Timer 1 Prescaler Register (ET1PSR)		02h
External Timer 1 Counter High Byte (ET1CNTLHR)		03h
External Timer 1 Counter Low Byte (ET1CNTLLR)		04h
External Timer 2 Prescaler Register (ET2PSR)		0Ah
External Timer 2 Counter High Byte (ET2CNTLHR)		0Bh
External Timer 2 Counter Low Byte (ET2CNTLLR)		0Ch
External Timer 2 Counter High Byte 2 (ET2CNTLH2R)		0Eh
External Timer/WDT Control Register (ETWCTRL)		05h
External WDT Counter High Byte (EWDCNTLHR)		09h
External WDT Counter Low Byte (EWDCNTLLR)		06h
External WDT Key Register (EWDKEYR)		07h

For a summary of the abbreviations used for the register type, see "Register Abbreviations and Access Rules"

7.16.4.1 External Timer 1/WDT Configuration Register (ETWCFG)

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	0b	Reserved
6	-	0b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	External WDT Key Enabled (EWDKEYEN) 1: Enable the key match function to touch the WDT. 0: Otherwise.
4	R/W	0b	External WDT Clock Source (EWDSRC) 1: Select clock after prescaler of the external timer 1. 0: Select clock from the output of the external timer 1.
3	R/W	0b	Lock EWDCNTLx Register (LEWDCNTL) 1: Writing to EWDCNTL is ignored. 0: Writing to EWDCNTL is allowed.
2	R/W	0b	Lock ET1CNTLx Registers (LET1CNTL) 1: Writing to ET1CNTLL is ignored. 0: Writing to ET1CNTLL is allowed.
1	R/W	0b	Lock ET1PS Register (LET1PS) 1: Writing to ET1PS is ignored. 0: Writing to ET1PS is allowed.
0	R/W	0b	Lock ETWCFG Register (LETWCFG) 1: Writing to ETWCFG itself is ignored, and this bit can't be cleared until reset. 0: Writing to ETWCFG itself is allowed.

7.16.4.2 External Timer 1 Prescaler Register (ET1PSR)

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	0h	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	External Timer 1 Prescaler Select (ET1PS) These bits control the clock input source to the external timer 1. 00b: 32.768 kHz 01b: 1.024 kHz 10b: 32 Hz 11b: Reserved Note the prescaler will not output clock until data is written to ET1CNTLLR register.

7.16.4.3 External Timer 1 Counter High Byte (ET1CNTLHR)

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	External Timer 1 Counter High Byte (ET1CNTLH) Define the count number of high byte of the 16-bit count-down timer.

7.16.4.4 External Timer 1 Counter Low Byte (ET1CNTLLR)

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	External Timer 1 Counter Low Byte (ET1CNTLL) Define the count number of low byte of the 16-bit count-down timer. The external timer 1 starts or re-starts after writing this register.

7.16.4.5 External Timer 2 Prescaler Register (ET2PSR)

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	External Timer 2 Prescaler Select (ET2PS) These bits control the clock input source to the external timer 2. 00b: 32.768 kHz 01b: 1.024 kHz 10b: 32 Hz 11b: 9.2 MHz Note the prescaler will not output clock until data is written to ET2CNTLLR register.

7.16.4.6 External Timer 2 Counter High Byte (ET2CNTLHR)

Address Offset: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	External Timer 2 Counter High Byte (ET2CNTLH) Define the count number of high byte of the 24-bit count-down timer.

7.16.4.7 External Timer 2 Counter Low Byte (ET2CNTLLR)

Address Offset: 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	External Timer 2 Counter Low Byte (ET2CNTLL) Define the count number of low byte of the 24-bit count-down timer. The external timer 2 starts or re-starts after writing this register.

7.16.4.8 External Timer 2 Counter High Byte 2 (ET2CNTLH2R)

Address Offset: 0Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	FFh	External Timer 2 Counter High Byte 2 (ET2CNTLH2) Define the count number of high byte 2 of the 24-bit count-down timer.

7.16.4.9 External Timer/WDT Control Register (ETWCTRL)

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	00b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	External WDT Stop Count Enable (EWDSCEN) 1: External WDT is stopped counting. 0: Otherwise. This bit cannot be set until EWDSCMS bit is set to 1.
4	R/W	0b	External WDT Stop Count Mode Select (EWDSCMS) 1: External WDT can be stopped by setting EWDSCEN bit. 0: External WDT cannot be stopped. Writing data to this bit is ignored after writing data to EWDCNTLL register, and this bit cannot be cleared until being reset.
3	R	0b	External Timer 2 Terminal Count (ET2TC) 1: Indicates the external timer 2 has counted down to zero, and it is cleared after reading it. 0: Otherwise. Writing data to this bit is ignored.
2	W	-	External Timer 2 Reset (ET2RST) Writing 1 forces the external timer 2 to re-start. Writing 0 is ignored. Read always returns zero.
1	R	0b	External Timer 1 Terminal Count (ET1TC) 1: Indicates the external timer 1 has counted down to zero, and it is cleared after reading it. 0: Otherwise Writing data to this bit is ignored.
0	W	-	External Timer 1 Reset (ET1RST) Writing 1 forces the external timer 1 to re-start. Writing 0 is ignored. Read always returns zero.

7.16.4.10 External WDT Counter High Byte (EWDCNTLHR)

Address Offset: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	External WDT Counter High Byte (EWDCNTL) Define the count number of high byte of the 16-bit count-down WDT.

7.16.4.11 External WDT Counter Low Byte (EWDCNTLLR)

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	0Fh	External WDT Counter Low Byte (EWDCNTLL) Define the count number of 16-bit count-down WDT.

7.16.4.12 External WDT Key Register (EWDKEYR)

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	-	External WDT Key (EWDKEY) External WDT is re-started (touched) if 5Ch is written to this register. Writing with other values causes an External Watchdog Reset. This function is enabled by EWDKEYEN bit. Read returns unpredictable value.

7.17 General Control (GCTRL)

7.17.1 Overview

This module controls EC function that doesn't belong to the specified module.

7.17.2 Features

- By module reset
- Hardwired SHA-1

7.17.3 Functional Description

Wait Next Clock Rising:

When writing 0 WNCKR register, the R8032TT will be paused and wait for a low to high transition of the internal 65.536 kHz clock. This may be useful to get a delay.

For a loop that writing 0 to WNCKR register for N times, the delay value will be
((N-1) / 65.536 kHz) to (N / 65.536 kHz)

e.g.

Consecutively writing 0 to WNCKR register for 33 times get 0.5ms delay with -2.3% ~ +0.7% tolerance.

Consecutively writing 0 to WNCKR register for 66 times get 1ms delay with -0.8% ~ +0.7% tolerance.

Consecutively writing 0 to WNCKR register for 132 times get 2ms delay with -0.05% ~ +0.7% tolerance.

SHA-1 Hash Calculation: SHA-1 use $32 * 4 = 128$ -byte in Scratch SRAM. HASHBADDR1 is the base address of the 128-byte in Scratch SRAM. HASHBADDR1 must be located at 128-byte boundary.

SHA-1 Program Flow:

1. Load 32-bit word data (W[0] ~ W[15], H0~H4, K0~K3) to SRAM.
2. Write HASHBADDR1 @ SHA1HBADDR
3. Write 1 to SHA1SCTRL @ SHA1HASHCTRLR
4. H0 to H4 will be updated.

Table 7-32. SHA-1 Scratch SRAM Usage Map

W[0] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (00 * 4)].
W[1] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (01 * 4)].
W[2] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (02 * 4)].
W[3] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (03 * 4)].
W[4] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (04 * 4)].
W[5] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (05 * 4)].
W[6] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (06 * 4)].
W[7] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (07 * 4)].
W[8] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (08 * 4)].
W[9] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (09 * 4)].
W[10] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (10 * 4)].
W[11] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (11 * 4)].
W[12] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (12 * 4)].
W[13] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (13 * 4)].
W[14] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (14 * 4)].
W[15] is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (15 * 4)].
Reserved.
Reserved.
Reserved.

Reserved.
Reserved.
H0 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (21 * 4)].
H1 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (22 * 4)].
H2 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (23 * 4)].
H3 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (24 * 4)].
H4 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (25 * 4)].
Reserved.
Reserved.
K0 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (28 * 4)].
K1 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (29 * 4)].
K2 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (30 * 4)].
K3 is 4-byte data and located at address [HASHBADDR1 + (31 * 4)].

7.17.4 EC Interface Registers

The following set of the registers is accessible only by EC. They are listed below and the base address is 2000h.

Table 7-33. EC View Register Map, GCTRL

7	0	Offset
Chip ID Byte 1 (ECHIPID1)		00h
Chip ID Byte 2 (ECHIPID2)		01h
Chip Version (ECHIPVER)		02h
Reserved		03h
Identify Input Register (IDR)		04h
Reserved		05h
Reset Status (RSTS)		06h
Reset Control 1 (RSTC1)		07h
Reset Control 2 (RSTC2)		08h
Reset Control 3 (RSTC3)		09h
Reset Control 4 (RSTC4)		11h
Reset Control DMM (RSTDMMC)		10h
Base Address Select (BADRSEL)		0Ah
Wait Next Clock Rising (WNCKR)		0Bh
Special Control 1 (SPCTRL1)		0Dh
Reset Control Host Side (RSTCH)		0Eh
Generate IRQ (GENIRQ)		0Fh
Special Control 2 (SPCTRL2)		12h
Reserved		16h
Port I2EC High-Byte Register (PI2ECH)		14h
Port I2EC Low-Byte Register (PI2ECL)		15h
BRAM Interrupt Address 0 Register (BINTADDR0R)		19h
BRAM Interrupt Address 1 Register (BINTADDR1R)		1Ah
BRAM Interrupt Control Register (BINTCTRLR)		1Bh
Special Control 4 (SPCTRL4)		1Ch
SHA-1 Hash Control Register (SHA1HASHCTRLR)		2Dh
SHA-1 Hash Base Address Register (SHA1HBADDR)		2Eh

For a summary of the abbreviations used for the register type, see "Register Abbreviations and Access Rules".

7.17.4.1 Chip ID Byte 1 (ECHIPID1)

The content of this EC side register is the same as that of the CHIPID1 register in the host side.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	89h	Chip ID Byte 1 (ECHIPID1) This register contains the Chip ID byte 1.

7.17.4.2 Chip ID Byte 2 (ECHIPID2)

The content of this EC side register is the same as that of the CHIPID2 register in the host side.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	87h	Chip ID Byte 2 (ECHIPID2) This register contains the Chip ID byte 2.

7.17.4.3 Chip Version (ECHIPVER)

This register contains revision ID of this chip.

The content of this EC side register is the same as that of the CHIPVER register in the host side.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	01h	Chip Version (ECHIPVER)

7.17.4.4 Identify Input Register (IDR)

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	-	Identify Input 7 (ID7)
6	R	-	Identify Input 6 (ID6)
5	R	-	Identify Input 5 (ID5)
4	R	-	Identify Input 4 (ID4)
3	R	-	Identify Input 3 (ID3)
2	R	-	Identify Input 2 (ID2)
1	R	-	Identify Input 1 (ID1)
0	R	-	Identify Input 0 (ID0)

7.17.4.5 Reset Status (RSTS)

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R/W	01b	<p>VCC Detector Option (VCCDO)</p> <p>00b: The VCC power status is treated as power-off. 01b: The VCC power status is treated as power-on. Otherwise: Reserved</p> <p>No matter which option is selected, the VCC power status is always recognized as power off if LPCPD# input is level low. The VCC power status is used as internal “power good” signal to prevent current leakage while VCC is off. The current VCC power status can be read from VCCPO bit in SWCTL1 register in section 6.4.5.1 on page 119.</p> <p>Intentionally toggling this field when VCC is supplied can reset logic VCC domain in EC.</p>
5	-	-	Reserved
4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	1b	<p>Host Global Reset (HGRST)</p> <p>0: The reset source of PNPCFG is RSTPNP bit in RSTCH register and WRST#. 1: The reset source of PNPCFG are RSTPNP bit in RSTCH register, internal VCC status controlled by VCCDO bit in RSTS register, LPCPD#, LPCRST# and WRST#.</p>
2	R/W	1b	<p>Global Reset (GRST)</p> <p>This bit controls whether to reset EC domain globally during Internal/External Watchdog Reset. 0: Only reset 8032, and each module can be reset by RSTCn register 1: Reset all the EC domain</p>
1-0	R	-	<p>Last Reset Source (LRS)</p> <p>If this register field is used, it is required to read this field once and only one time after reset.</p> <p>00b, 01b: VSTBY Power-Up Reset or Warm Reset 10b: Internal Watchdog Reset 11b: External Watchdog Reset</p>

7.17.4.6 Reset Control 1 (RSTC1)

Write 1 to the selected bit(s) to possibly reset corresponding module(s). Refer to VCCDO field in RSTS register to reset logic in VCC domain in EC.

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	W	-	Reset SMFI (RSMFI)
6	W	-	Reset INTC (RINTC)
5	W	-	Reset EC2I (REC2I)
4	W	-	Reset KBC (RKBC)
3	W	-	Reset SWUC (RSWUC)
2	W	-	Reset PMC (RPMC)
1	W	-	Reset GPIO (RGPIO)
0	W	-	Reset PWM (RPWM)

7.17.4.7 Reset Control 2 (RSTC2)

Write 1 to the selected bit(s) to possibly reset corresponding module(s).

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	W	-	Reset ADC (RADC)
6	W	-	Reset DAC (RDAC)
5	W	-	Reset WUC (RWUC)
4	W	-	Reset KBS (RKBS)
3	-	-	Reserved
2	W	-	Reset EGPC (REXGPIO)
1	W	-	Reset CIR (RCIR)
0	-	-	Reserved

7.17.4.8 Reset Control 3 (RSTC3)

Write 1 to the selected bit(s) to possibly reset corresponding module(s).

Address Offset: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	W	-	Reset PS/2 Channel 3 (RPS23)
5	W	-	Reset PS/2 Channel 2 (RPS22)
4	W	-	Reset PS/2 Channel 1 (RPS21) To reset the logic of PS/2 shared with all channels, write 1111b to bit 7-4 at the same time and writing 0111b is reserved.
3	W	-	Reset SMBus Channel D (RSMBD)
2	W	-	Reset SMBus Channel C (RSMBC)
1	W	-	Reset SMBus Channel B (RSMBB)
0	W	-	Reset SMBus Channel A (RSMBA) To reset the logic of SMBus shared with all channels, write 1111b to bit 3-0 at the same time and writing 0111b is reserved.

7.17.4.9 Reset Control 4 (RSTC4)

Write 1 to the selected bit(s) to possibly reset corresponding module(s).

Address Offset: 11h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	W	-	Reset CEC (RCEC)
6-5	-	-	Reserved
4	W	-	Reset PECI (RPECI)
3	W	-	Reset TMR (RTMR)
2	W	-	Reset UART2 (RUART2)
1	W	-	Reset UART1 (RUART1)
0	W	-	Reset SSPI (RSSPI)

7.17.4.10 Reset Control DMM (RSTDMMC)

Determine whether a double-mapping module belongs to the host or EC side.

Address Offset: 10h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	UART1 SIDE (UART1SD) 1: UART1 belongs to the EC side. For its clock, refer to section 7.6.3.5 Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG) on page 259. 0: UART1 belongs to the host side and it will be reset during Host Domain Hardware/Software reset. Its clock is off if VCC is off.
2	R/W	0b	UART2 SIDE (UART2SD) 1: UART2 belongs to the EC side. For its clock, refers to section 7.6.3.5 Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG) on page 259. 0: UART2 belongs to the host side and it will be reset during Host Domain Hardware/Software reset. Its clock is off if VCC is off.
1	R/W	1b	SSPI SIDE (SSPISD) 1: SSPI belongs to the EC side. For its clock, refer to section 7.6.3.5 Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG) on page 259. 0: SSPI belongs to the host side and it will be reset during Host Domain Hardware/Software reset. Its clock is off if VCC is off.
0	R/W	1b	CIR SIDE (CIRSD) 1: CIR belongs to the EC side. For its clock, refer to section 7.6.3.5 Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG) on page 259. 0: CIR belongs to the host side and it will be reset during Host Domain Hardware/Software reset. Its clock is off if VCC is off.

7.17.4.11 Base Address Select (BADRSEL)

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	-	Reserved
1-0	R/W	00b	Base Address (BADDR1-0) 00b: The register pair to access PNPCFG is 002Eh and 002Fh. 01b: The register pair to access PNPCFG is 004Eh and 004Fh. 10b: The register pair to access PNPCFG is determined by EC domain registers SWCBALR and SWCBAHR. 11b: Reserved.

7.17.4.12 Wait Next Clock Rising (WNCKR)

Address Offset: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	-	Wait Next 65K Rising (WN65K) Writing 00h to this register and the R8032TT program counter will be paused until the next low to high transition of 65.536 kHz clock. Writing other values is reserved.

7.17.4.13 Special Control 1 (SPCTRL1)

Address Offset: 0Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	P80L Enable (P80LEN) This bit will be set if 1 is written and cleared if 1 is written or there is a VCC on->off transition. This bit is supplied by the VSTBY power. Refer to section 7.19.3.1 P80L on page 414. 1b: Enable P80L function. 0b: Otherwise
6	R/W	0b	Accept Port 80h Cycle (ACP80) This bit will be set if 1 is written and cleared if 1 is written or there is a VCC on->off transition. This bit is supplied by the VSTBY power. Refer to section 7.19.3.1 P80L on page 414. 1b: The host LPC I/O cycle with address 80h will be accepted by EC. If P80LEN is set, enabling this bit to guarantee LPC I/O port 80h data can be latched even though there is a transaction cycle to BRAM. 0b: Otherwise
5-4	-	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	Accept Port 81h Cycle (ACP81) This bit will be set if 1 is written and cleared if 1 is written or there is a VCC on->off transition. This bit is supplied by the VSTBY power. Refer to section 7.19.3.1 P80L on page 414. 1b: The host LPC I/O cycle with address 81h will be accepted by EC. If P80LEN is set, enabling this bit to guarantee LPC I/O port 80h data can be latched even though there is a transaction cycle to BRAM. 0b: Otherwise
2	-	-	Reserved

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
1-0	R/W	00b	I2EC Control (I2ECCTRL) 00b: I2EC is disabled. 10b: I2EC is read-only. 11b: I2EC is read-write. 01b: Reserved Refer to section 7.23.3.6 EC Memory Snoop (ECMS) on page 456.

7.17.4.14 Reset Control Host Side (RSTCH)

Address Offset: 0Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2	W	-	Reset PNPCFG (RSTPNP)
1-0	-	-	Reserved

7.17.4.15 Generate IRQ (GENIRQ)

Address Offset: 0Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	-	-	Reserved
3-0	W	-	Generate IRQ Number (GENIRQNUM) Writing to this field will generate SERIRQ with a specified number. This field is valid only when it is between 1-12 or 14-15.

7.17.4.16 Special Control 2 (SPCTRL2)

Address Offset: 12h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	R/W	0b	Port I2EC Enable (PI2ECEN) 1b: Decode I2EC cycles via address I2EC_XADDR. 0b: Otherwise Refer to section 7.23.3.6 EC Memory Snoop (ECMS) on page 456.

7.17.4.17 Special Control 4 (SPCTRL4)

Address Offset: 1Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/WC	-	Last Reset Source Is Warm Reset (LRSIWR) To clear this bit, write a one to it. 0b: Last reset is not generated from Warm reset function. 1b: Last reset source is Warm reset.
1	R/WC	-	Last Reset Source Is PWRSW Timeout Reset (LRSIPWRSWTR) If this bit is used, it is required to write 1 to this bit once and only one time after reset. 0b: Last reset is not generated from PWRSW timeout reset function. 1b: Last reset source is PWRSW timeout reset. Write 1: Clear this bit Write 0: No action
0	R/WC	-	Last Reset Source Is Power Good Watch Reset (LRSIPGWR) If this bit is used, it is required to write 1 to this bit once and only one time after reset. 0b: Last reset is not generated from power good watch reset function. 1b: Last reset source is power good watch reset. Write 1: Clear this bit Write 0: No action

7.17.4.18 Port I2EC High-Byte Register (PI2ECH)

LPC I/O port with address equal to PORT_I2EC[15:0] + 1: I2EC_XADDR_H

LPC I/O port with address equal to PORT_I2EC[15:0] + 2: I2EC_XADDR_L

LPC I/O port with address equal to PORT_I2EC[15:0] + 3: I2EC_XDATA

EC only accepts the LPC I/O cycle with PORT_I2EC address if PI2ECEN bit in SPCTRL2 register is set.

Address Offset: 14h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	03h	Port I2EC[15:8] (PORT_I2EC[15:8]) High-byte address of I/O port for I2EC purpose. Bit 7-4 (PORT_I2EC[15:12]) are forced to 0000b and can't be written.

7.17.4.19 Port I2EC Low-Byte Register (PI2ECL)

Address Offset: 15h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	80h	Port I2EC[7:0] (PORT_I2EC[7:0]) Low-byte address of I/O port for I2EC purpose. Bit 1-0 (PORT_I2EC[1:0]) are forced to 00b and can't be written.

7.17.4.20 BRAM Interrupt Address 0 Register (BINTADDR0R)

BINTADDR0R, BINTADDR1R and BINTCTRLR are used for I2BRAM function.

Address Offset: 19h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	BRAM Interrupt Address 0 (BINTADDR0) When the host side writes data to BRAM and the address offset equals to the value of BINTADDR0, the interrupt source, INT71, will be issued. In addition, this function will be activated only when BINTA0EN bit is set. Notice that BRAM interrupt address range must be set from 2280h to 22BFh.

7.17.4.21 BRAM Interrupt Address 1 Register (BINTADDR1R)

Address Offset: 1Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	BRAM Interrupt Address 1 (BINTADDR1) When the host side writes data to BRAM and the address offset equals to the value of BINTADDR1, the interrupt source, INT71, will be issued. In addition, this function will be activated only when BINTA1EN bit is set. Notice that BRAM interrupt address range must be set from 2280h to 22BFh.

7.17.4.22 BRAM Interrupt Control Register (BINTCTRLR)

Address Offset: 1Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/WC	0b	BRAM Interrupt Address 1 Match Status (BINTA1MSTS) This bit will be set when the host side writes data to BRAM address offset, BINTADDR1 and it will be write-one-cleared.
4	R/WC	0b	BRAM Interrupt Address 0 Match Status (BINTA0MSTS) This bit will be set when host side writes data to BRAM address offset, BINTADDR0 and it will be write-one-cleared.
3-2	-	-	Reserved
1	R/W	0b	BRAM Interrupt Address 1 Enable (BINTA1EN) 0b: BRAM interrupt address 1 function is disabled. 1b: BRAM interrupt address 1 function is enabled.
0	R/W	0b	BRAM Interrupt Address 0 Enable (BINTA0EN) 0b: BRAM interrupt address 0 function is disabled. 1b: BRAM interrupt address 0 function is enabled.

7.17.4.23 SHA-1 Hash Control Register (SHA1HASHCTRLR)

SHA1HASHCTRLR and SHA1HBADDR are used for SHA-1.

Address Offset: 2Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	W	0b	SHA-1 Start Control (SHA1SCTRL) Write 01b to this bit to start SHA-1.

7.17.4.24 SHA-1 Hash Base Address Register (SHA1HBADDR)

Address Offset: 2Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Hash Base Address 1 Register (HASHBADDR1R) HASHBADDR1R = (HASHBADDR1 >> 6) & FFEh

7.18 External GPIO Controller (EGPC)

7.18.1 Overview

This module controls the external GPIO (General Purpose I/O Port) chip. It can maintain bi-directional communication with the 4 external IT8301/IT8302.

7.18.2 Features

- Communicate with 4 IT8301/IT8302 chip
 (IT8301 is a 48-pin GPIO chip)
 (IT8302 is a 24-pin GPIO chip)
- Each IT8301 supports 38 GPIO ports
- Each IT8302 supports 16 GPIO ports

7.18.3 Functional Description

This module uses a three-wire bidirectional interface for data transmission. When writing the data to the External GPIO Data Register, this module will start to transmit the data (the contents of the External GPIO Data Register) to the targeted register of the external GPIO chip (the targeted register can be assigned in the External GPIO Address Register). When reading the External GPIO Data Register, the contents of the targeted register of the external GPIO chip can be read.

Because of the serial nature of the interface, the time of accessing the external GPIO chip may be longer than the time that the 8032 CPU read/write the External GPIO Controller registers. We have two methods to handle this condition.

(1). A dedicated channel ready signal (internal signal) for the 8032 CPU

The channel ready signal (internal signal) is used to inform the 8032 CPU whether the data transfer process is ended or not. When the Channel Ready Enable bit in the External GPIO Control Register is set, the channel ready signal will not be asserted until the data transfer process is ended. When the Channel Ready Enable bit is cleared, the channel ready signal is always set high no matter the data transfer process is ended or not.

(2). Enable the cycle done interrupt

If the Channel Ready Enable bit in the External GPIO Control Register is cleared, the firmware must enable the Cycle Done Interrupt Enable bit in the External GPIO Control Register to know that the data transfer process is ended or not. When writing the data to the External GPIO Data Register, this module will start to transmit the data to the targeted register of the external GPIO chip. When the transfer process is ended, the Cycle Done Status bit in the External GPIO Status Register is set and the Cycle Done Interrupt is asserted. When firmware first reads the External GPIO Data Register, this module will start to receive data from the targeted register of the external GPIO chip. When the transfer process is ended, the Cycle Done Status bit in the External GPIO Status Register is set and the Cycle Done Interrupt is asserted. Then the firmware can read again the External GPIO Data Register to get the updated data.

7.18.4 EC Interface Registers

The EGPC registers are listed below. The base address is 2100h.

Table 7-34. EC View Register Map, EGPC

7	0	Offset
	External GPIO Address Register (EADDR)	00h
	External GPIO Data Register (EDAT)	01h
	External GPIO Control Register (ECNT)	02h
	External GPIO Status Register (ESTS)	03h

7.18.4.1 External GPIO Address Register (EADDR)

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	R/W	00h	Address (AD) The 6-bit address of the targeted register of the external GPIO chip.
1-0	R/W	00h	Chip Selection (CS) These bits will be transmitted as external chip selection

7.18.4.2 External GPIO Data Register (EDAT)

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Data (DATA) When writing to this register, the contents of this register are sent to the targeted register of the external GPIO chip. When reading this register, the contents of the targeted register of the external GPIO chip can be read.

7.18.4.3 External GPIO Control Register (ECNT)

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	-	-	Reserved
4-2	R/W	100b	Transmitted Data Bits (TMB) Define the number of the data bits that will be transmitted to (or received from) the data register of the external GPIO chip. 000: 1 bit 001: 2 bits 010: 3 bits 011: 4 bits 100: 5 bits 101: 6 bits 110: 7 bits 111: 8 bits
1	R/W	0b	Cycle Done Interrupt Enable (CDIE) Enable or disable the interrupt generation when the Cycle Done status occurs. 0: Disable the interrupt. 1: Enable the interrupt.
0	R/W	1b	Channel Ready Enable (CREN) The channel ready signal (internal signal) is used to inform the 8032 CPU that the data transfer process is ended or not. When this bit is set, the channel ready signal will not be asserted until the data transfer process is ended. When this bit is cleared, the channel ready signal is always set high no matter the data transfer process is ended or not. 0: Disabled. 1: Enabled.

7.18.4.4 External GPIO Status Register (ESTS)

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	R	-	Cycle Done Status (CDS) This bit is set when the data transfer was done.

7.19 BRAM

7.19.1 Overview

This module provides 192 bytes of memory area.

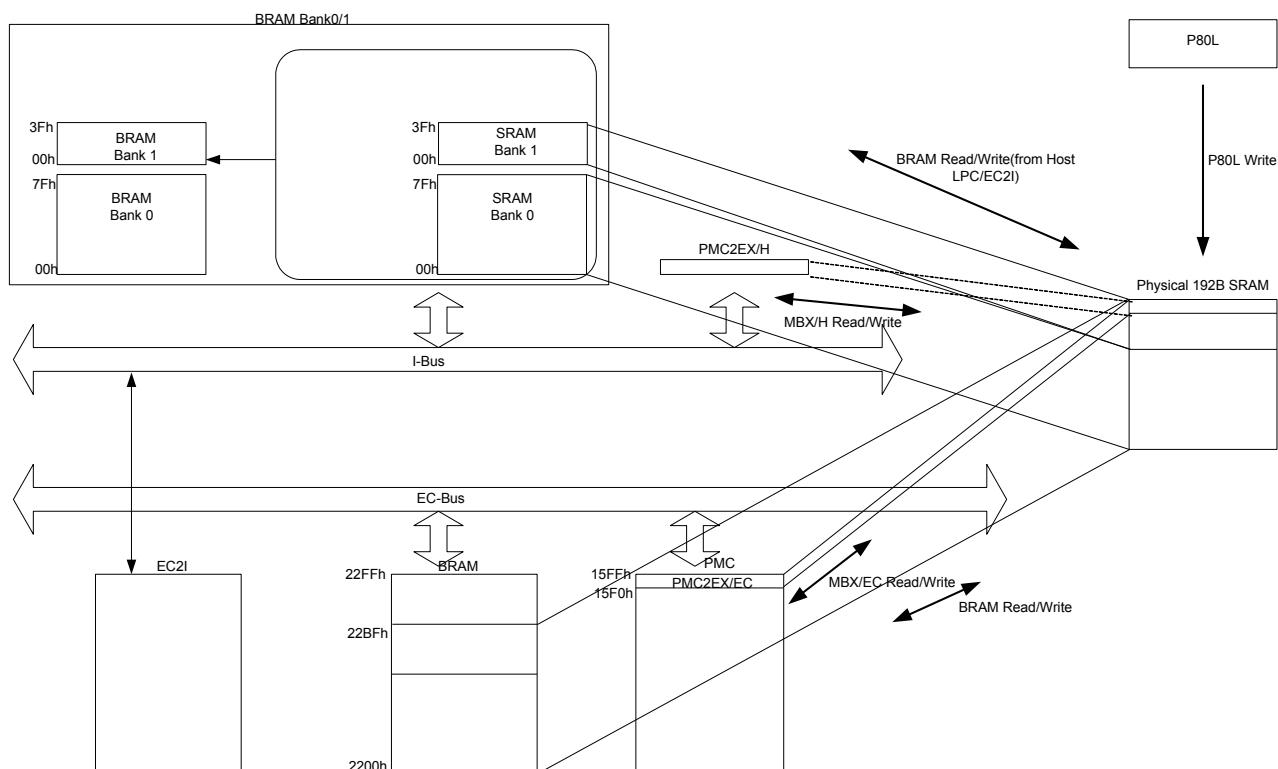
7.19.2 Features

- 192 bytes of SRAM mapped into the host and EC side

7.19.3 Functional Description

This module provides 192 bytes of SRAM for data-saving function shared with the host side.

Figure 7-40. BRAM Mapping Diagram



7.19.3.1 P80L

If this function is enabled by P80LEN bit in SPCTRL1 register, LPC I/O port 80h written data will be latched into SRAM of BRAM bank 1.

The data may fail to latch data if there is a transaction cycle to BRAM at the same time unless ACP80 bit in SPCTRL1 register is set, which guarantees written data is latched into SRAM by issuing Long Wait Sync on host LPC bus.

The destination address range in BRAM Bank 1 is determined by P80LB, P80LE register in the host side, which constructs a queue.

P80LB: It indicates the start index of the queue. Readable/Writable.

P80LE: It indicates the end index of the queue. Readable/Writable.

P80LC: It indicates the current index of the queue. Read-only.

These three registers are supplied by VSTBY power and not affected by VCC status.

Whenever written data is latched, P80LC increases one. If it reaches P80LE (queue end), it will wrap back to P80LB (queue begin).

7.19.4 Host Interface Registers

The registers of BRAM can be treated as Host Interface Registers or EC Interface Registers. This section lists the host interface registers. These registers can only be accessed by the host processor.

The BRAM resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. These registers are listed below. In addition to the I/O Port Base Addresses of channel, there are three I/O Port Base Addresses of channel for accessing BRAM of Bank1.

Table 7-35. Host View Register Map, BRAM

7	0	Offset
		Legacy 70h
		Legacy 71h
		Legacy 272h
		Legacy 273h

Legacy 70h represents (I/O Port Base Address 0) + (Offset 0h)

Legacy 71h represents (I/O Port Base Address 0) + (Offset 1h)

Legacy 272h represents (I/O Port Base Address 1) + (Offset 0h)

Legacy 273h represents (I/O Port Base Address 1) + (Offset 1h)

See also Table 6-3 on page 36.

Table 7-36. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, BRAM Bank 0

7	0	Offset
		00h
		...
		7Fh

Table 7-37. Host View Register Map via Index-Data I/O Pair, BRAM Bank 1

7	0	Offset
		00h
		...
		3Fh

7.19.5 EC Interface Registers

The registers of the SRAM are listed below. The base address is 2200h.

Table 7-38. EC View Register Map, BRAM

7	0	Offset
		00h
		...
		Bfh

7.19.5.1 SRAM Byte n Registers (SBTn, n= 0-191)

Address Offset: 00h – BFh for byte 0 – byte 191

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	SRAM Data (SD) When data is written to this register, it will be saved in the corresponding memory space. When this register is read, the contents of the corresponding memory space can be read.

7.20 Consumer IR (CIR)

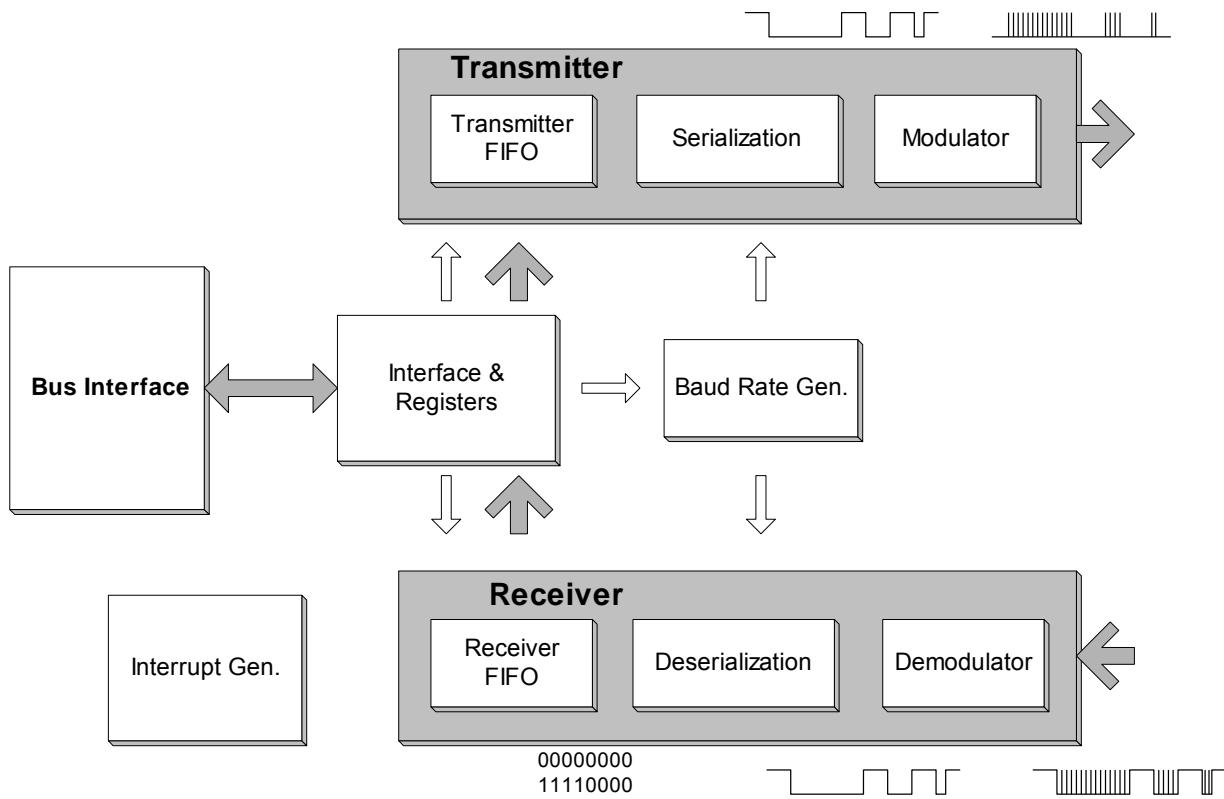
7.20.1 Overview

The CIR module is used in the Consumer Remote Control equipment, and is a programmable amplitude shift keyed (ASK) serial communication protocol. By adjusting frequencies, baud rate divisor values and sensitivity ranges, CIR registers are able to support the major protocols such as RC-5, NEC, and RECS-80. New protocols can be supported by programming the software driver.

7.20.2 Features

- Supports 1 CIR channels
- Supports 28 kHz ~ 57 kHz (low frequency) or 400 kHz ~ 500 kHz (high frequency) carrier transmission
- The baud rate up to 115200 BPS (high frequency)
- Demodulation optional
- Supports transmission run-length encoding and deferral functions
- Supports two dedicated 32-byte FIFO, one for data transmission and the other for data reception

Figure 7-41. Simplified Diagram



7.20.3 Functional Description

The CIR channel consists of two main elements, Transmitter and Receiver. The Transmitter transmits data to the FIFO, processes the FIFO data by serialization, modulation and sends out the data through the LED device. The Receiver is responsible for receiving the FIFO data, processing data by demodulation and deserialization, and storing data into the Receiver FIFO.

7.20.3.1 Transmit Operation

The Transmit data formats written to the Transmitter FIFO differ from one another with respect to different communication protocols. Only physical layer functions are provided in this module. The data written to the Transmitter FIFO will be exactly serialized from LSB to MSB, modulated with the carrier frequency and sent to the pad output. The communication commands are decoded by software.

Before the data transmission can be started, code byte write operations has to be performed to the Transmitter FIFO C0DR. The bit TXRLE in the C0TCR should be set to “1” before the run-length decode data can be written into the Transmitter FIFO. The bit width of the serialized bit string is determined by programming the baud rate divisor registers, C0BDLR and C0BDHR. When bits HCFS and CFQ[4:0] in the C0CFR are set, either the high-speed or low-speed carrier range is selected, and the corresponding carrier frequency will also be determined. Bits TXMPM[1:0] and TXMPW[2:0] in the C0TCR specify the pulse numbers in a bit width and the required duty cycles of the carrier pulse according to the communication protocol. Only a logic 0 can activate the Transmitter LED in the format of a series of modulating pulses.

7.20.3.2 Receive Operation

The Receiver function is enabled if bit RXEN in the C0RCR is set to “1”. Either demodulated or modulated RX# signal is loaded into the Receiver FIFO, and bit RXEND in the C0RCR determines how the demodulation logic should be used. When bits HCFS and CFQ[4:0] in the C0CFR are set, either the high-speed or low-speed carrier range is selected, and the corresponding carrier frequency will also be determined. Bit RXACT in the C0RCR is set to “1” if the serial data or the selected carrier is incoming, and the sampled data will then be kept in the Receiver FIFO. Write “1” to clear bit RXACT and then stop operation of Receiver FIFO; write “0” to bit RXEN to disable all the Receiver functions. It is strongly suggested that software clear RXACT every time when you will change the expected carrier frequency.

7.20.3.3 Wakeup (Power On) Controller Programming Sequence

Software power-off is performed by setting the resetting bits of RCRST and WCRST to “1”, and the CIRPOIS bit to “0” at the initial state in the C0WPS register. When the system is on, users can reset the read/write counter to 0 at any time. However, if users need to save codes into 20 bytes in the power-switch-code area, the best way is to reset the write counter first since users may not know the value in the counter. Therefore, it is possible that users will make a mistake when saving the codes. Users can also reset the read counter before reading the code in the power-switch-code area. Before users perform the power-off function, it is necessary to save the correct length into the C0WCL register and the coded into the power-switch-code area or the power-on function will not function normally. The CIRPOIS bit is set to one when the data received by CIR for first time matches the code data on the power-switch-code area. The CIRPOIS bit is toggled when the data received again by CIR matches the code data on the power-switch-code area.

Note: If the system designer needs to use the remote power-on function, the designer should program the related receive registers to some proper values via software before shutdown.

7.20.4 Host Interface Registers

The registers of CIR can be treated as Host Interface Registers or EC Interface Registers. This section lists the host interface registers. These registers can only be accessed by the host processor.

The CIR resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. These registers are listed below:

Table 7-39. Host View Register Map, CIR

7	0	Offset
CIR Data Register (C0DR)	Page 0	00h
CIR Master Control Register (C0MSTCR)	Page 0	01h
CIR Interrupt Enable Register (C0IER)	Page 0	02h
CIR Interrupt Identification Register (C0IIR)	Page 0	03h
CIR Carrier Frequency Register (C0CFR)	Page 1	04h
CIR Receiver Control Register (C0RCR)	Page 0	05h
CIR Transmitter Control Register (C0TCR)	Page 0	07h
CIR Slow Clock Control Register (C0SCK)	Page 1	03h
CIR Wake-Code Set Select Register (C0WCSSR)	Page 1	00h
CIR Baud Rate Divisor Low Byte Register (C0BDLR)	Page 1	01h
CIR Baud Rate Divisor High Byte Register (C0BDHR)	Page 1	02h
CIR Transmitter FIFO Status Register (C0TFSR)	Page 0	06h
CIR Receiver FIFO Status Register (C0RFSR)	Page 0	04h
CIR Wakeup Code Length Register (C0WCL)	Page 1	05h
CIR Wakeup Code Read/Write Register (C0WCR)	Page 1	06h
CIR Wakeup Power Control/Status Register (C0WPS)	Page 1	07h
CIR Scratch Register (CSCRR)	Page 2	00h
CIR General Purpose Interrupt (CGPINTR)	Page 2	01h

All registers are double mapped into the host and EC side, however, the CIR function should be controlled by a side only.

The definitions of all registers are the same as their identical register names in the EC side except HRAE (High Range Address Enable) bit. HRAE bit is a write-only bit, which is located in bit 7 in the registers with offset 07h (C0TCR or C0WPS). HRAE bit is used to select different registers if they have the same offset number.

7.20.5 EC Interface Registers

The EC interface registers are listed below. The base address for CIR is 2300h.

Table 7-40. EC View Register Map, CIR

7	0	Offset
	CIR Data Register (C0DR)	00h
	CIR Master Control Register (C0MSTCR)	01h
	CIR Interrupt Enable Register (C0IER)	02h
	CIR Interrupt Identification Register (C0IIR)	03h
	CIR Carrier Frequency Register (C0CFR)	04h
	CIR Receiver Control Register (C0RCR)	05h
	CIR Transmitter Control Register (C0TCR)	06h
	CIR Slow Clock Control Register (C0SCK)	07h
	CIR Baud Rate Divisor Low Byte Register (C0BDLR)	08h
	CIR Baud Rate Divisor High Byte Register (C0BDHR)	09h
	CIR Transmitter FIFO Status Register (C0TFSR)	0Ah
	CIR Receiver FIFO Status Register (C0RFSR)	0Bh
	CIR Wake-Code Set Select Register (C0WCSSR)	0Ch
	CIR Wakeup Code Length Register (C0WCL)	0Dh
	CIR Wakeup Code Read/Write Register (C0WCR)	0Eh
	CIR Wakeup Power Control/Status Register (C0WPS)	0Fh
	CIR Scratch Register (CSCRR)	10h

7.20.5.1 CIR Data Register (C0DR)

The C0DR, an 8-bit register, is the data port for CIR. Data is transmitted and received through this register.

Note: Reading an empty FIFO will return a default value, "FF".

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	CIR FIFO Data (CFD[7:0]) Writing data to this register causes data to be written to the Transmitter FIFO. Reading data from this register causes data to be received from the Receiver FIFO.

7.20.5.2 CIR Master Control Register (C0MSTCR)

The C0MSTCR, an 8-bit register, is used to control CIR functions.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description								
7	R/W	0b	CTX Channel Select (CTXSEL) 0: CTX0 selected 1: CTX1 selected This bit is valid only if both CTX0/CTX1 are set as func 1 mode in GPIO module.								
6	R/W	0b	CRX Channel Select (CRXSEL) 0: CRX0 selected 1: CRX1 selected This bit is valid only if both CRX0/CRX1 are set as func 1 mode in GPIO module.								
5	R/W	0b	Internal Loopback Select (ILSEL) This bit is used to determine the internal loopback source. When this bit is set to "0", the Serial data is the internal loopback source. When this bit is set to "1", the Modulated data is the internal loopback source.								
4	R/W	0b	Internal Loopback Enable (ILE) This bit is used to execute internal loopback for test and has to be "0" in normal operation. When this bit is set to "0", the internal Loopback mode is disabled. When this bit is set to "1", the internal Loopback mode is enabled.								
3-2	R/W	00b	FIFO Threshold Level (FIFOTL) These two bits are used to set the FIFO Threshold Level. The FIFO length is 32 bytes for TX/RX function. <table style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr><td>00</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>01</td><td>7</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>17</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>25</td></tr> </table>	00	1	01	7	10	17	11	25
00	1										
01	7										
10	17										
11	25										
1	R/W	0b	FIFO Clear (FIFOCLR) Writing a "1" to this bit clears both TX and RX FIFO. This bit is then cleared to "0" automatically.								
0	R/W	0b	RESET (RESET) The function of this bit is software reset. Writing a "1" to this bit resets the registers of C0DR, C0MSTCR, C0IER, C0IIR, C0CFR, C0TCR, C0TFSR and C0RFSR. This bit is then cleared to "0" automatically.								

7.20.5.3 CIR Interrupt Enable Register (C0IER)

The C0IER, an 8-bit register, is used to enable the CIR interrupt request.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Interrupt Enable Function Control (IEC) This bit is used to control the interrupt enabled function. Set this bit to "1" to enable the interrupt request for CIR. Set this bit to "0" to disable the interrupt request for CIR.
6	R/W	0b	Wakeup-Code Interrupt Type (WCIT) Set this bit to "1" to deliver the level interrupt request to EC(INT15) of Wakeup-code. The level interrupt request may be cleared by clearing their CIRPOII respectively. Set this bit to "0" to deliver the edge interrupt request to EC(INT15) of Wakeup-code.
5 – 3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	Receiver FIFO Overrun Interrupt Enable (RFOIE) This bit is used to control Receiver FIFO Overrun Interrupt request. Set this bit to "1" to enable Receiver FIFO Overrun Interrupt request. Set this bit to "0" to disable Receiver FIFO Overrun Interrupt request.
1	R/W	0b	Receiver Data Available Interrupt Enable (RDAIE) This bit is used to enable Receiver Data Available Interrupt request. The Receiver will generate this interrupt when the data available in FIFO exceeds FIFO Threshold Level. Under carrier period learning mode, the Receiver also generates this interrupt after receiving three carriers. Set this bit to "1" to enable Receiver Data Available Interrupt request. Set this bit to "0" to disable Receiver Data Available Interrupt request.
0	R/W	0b	Transmitter Low Data Level Interrupt Enable (TLDLIE) This bit is used to enable Transmitter Low Data Level Interrupt request. The Transmitter will generate this interrupt when the data available in FIFO is less than the FIFO threshold Level. Set this bit to "1" to enable Transmitter Low Data Level Interrupt request. Set this bit to "0" to disable Transmitter Low Data Level Interrupt request.

7.20.5.4 CIR Interrupt Identification Register (C0IIR)

The C0IIR, an 8-bit register, is used to identify the pending interrupt.

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	1b	No Interrupt Pending (NIP) This bit will be set to “1” if no interrupt is pending.
6 - 4	-	-	Reserved
3	R	0b	Receiver Carrier Period Learning Error Interrupt (RXCPEI) This bit is available only when RXCPEL is 1, and will be set to “1” if the period of the received carrier is greater than 488us.
2	R	0b	Receiver FIFO Overrun Interrupt (RFOI) This bit will be set to “1” if receiver FIFO overruns.
1	R	0b	Receiver Data Available Interrupt (RDAI) This bit will be set to “1” when the data available in the receiver FIFO exceeds the FIFO Threshold Level.
0	R	0b	Transmitter Low Data Level Interrupt (TLDLI) This bit will be set to “1” when the data available in the transmitter FIFO is less than the FIFO threshold Level.

7.20.5.5 CIR Carrier Frequency Register (C0CFR)

The CxCFR, an 8-bit register, is used to determine the carrier frequency.

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	-	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	High-Speed Carrier Frequency Select (HCFS) This bit is used to select whether the Carrier Frequency is at a high speed or low speed. 0: 30-58 kHz (Default) 1: 400-500 kHz
4-0	R/W	01011b	Carrier Frequency (CFQ[4:0]) These five bits are used to determine the modulation carrier frequency. See Table 7-41.

Table 7-41. Modulation Carrier Frequency

CFQ	Low Frequency (HCFS =0)	High Frequency (HCFS = 1)
00000	27 kHz	-
00001	28 kHz	-
00010	29 kHz	-
00011	30 kHz	400 kHz
00100	31 kHz	-
00101	32 kHz	-
00110	33 kHz	-
00111	34 kHz	-
01000	35 kHz	450 kHz
01001	36 kHz	-
01010	37 kHz	-
01011	38 kHz (default)	480 kHz (default)
01100	39 kHz	-
01101	40 kHz	500 kHz
01110	41 kHz	-
01111	42 kHz	-
10000	43 kHz	-
10001	44 kHz	-
10010	45 kHz	-
10011	46 kHz	-
10100	47 kHz	-
10101	48 kHz	-
10110	49 kHz	-
10111	50 kHz	-
11000	51 kHz	-
11001	52 kHz	-
11010	53 kHz	-
11011	54 kHz	-
11100	55 kHz	-
11101	56 kHz	-
11110	57 kHz	-
11111	58 kHz	-

7.20.5.6 CIR Receiver Control Register (C0RCR)

The C0RCR, an 8-bit register, is used to control the CIR Receiver.

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Receiver Enable (RXEN) This bit is used to enable the Receiver function. Set this bit to "1" to enable the Receiver function. Set this bit to "0" to disable the Receiver function. When the Receiver function is enabled, RXACT will be active if the selected carrier frequency is received.
6	R/W	0b	Receiver Carrier Period Learning Enable (RXCPL) 0b: Disable. 1b: Enable. Set this bit to "1" to enable the carrier learning mode. The Receiver then starts to measure the period of the received carrier, and takes down the result into RX FIFO. The carrier's period can be calculated by $217\text{ns} * \text{CFD}[7:0]$.
5	R/W	0b	Receiver Data Without Sync. (RDWOS) This bit is used to control the sync. logic for Receiving data. Set this bit to "1" to obtain the receiving data without sync. logic. Set this bit to "0" to obtain the receiving data in sync. logic.
4	R/W	0b	Receiver Demodulation Enable (RXEND) This bit is used to control the Receiver Demodulation logic. Set this bit to "1" to enable the Receiver Demodulation logic. Set this bit to "0" to disable the Receiver Demodulation logic. Set this bit to "1" to the Receiver device to demodulate the correct carrier.
3	R/WC	0b	Receiver Active (RXACT) This bit is used to control the Receiver operation. This bit is set to "0" when the Receiver is inactive. This bit is set to "1" when the Receiver detects a pulse (RXEND=0) or pulse-train (RXEND=1) with the correct carrier frequency. The Receiver then starts to sample the input data when Receiver Active is set. Writing a "1" to this bit to clear the Receiver Active condition and make the Receiver enter an inactive mode.
2-0	R/W	001b	Receiver Demodulation Carrier Range (RXDCR[2:0]) These three bits are used to set the tolerance of the Receiver Demodulation carrier frequency. See Table 7-42 and Table 7-43.

Table 7-42. Receiver Demodulation Low Frequency (HCFS = 0)

RXDCR	001		010		011		100		101		110		
CFQ	min.	max.	min.	max.	Min.	max.	min.	Max.	min.	max.	min.	max.	(Hz)
00001	26.25	29.75	24.5	31.5	22.75	33.25	21	35	19.25	36.75	17.5	38.5	28K
00010	27.19	30.81	25.38	32.63	23.56	34.44	21.75	36.25	19.94	38.06	18.13	39.88	29K
00011	28.13	31.88	26.25	33.75	24.38	35.63	22.5	37.5	20.63	39.38	18.75	41.25	30K
00100	29.06	32.94	27.13	34.88	25.19	36.81	23.25	38.75	21.31	40.69	19.38	42.63	31K
00101	30	34	28	36	26	38	24	40	22	42	20	44	32K
00110	30.94	35.06	28.88	37.13	26.81	39.19	24.75	41.25	22.69	43.31	20.63	45.38	33K
00111	31.88	36.13	29.75	38.25	27.63	40.38	25.5	42.5	23.38	44.63	21.25	46.75	34K
01000	32.81	37.19	30.63	39.38	28.44	41.56	26.25	43.75	24.06	45.94	21.88	48.13	35K
01001	33.75	38.25	31.5	40.5	29.25	42.75	27	45	24.75	47.25	22.5	49.5	36K
01010	34.69	39.31	32.38	41.63	30.06	43.94	27.75	46.25	25.44	48.56	23.13	50.88	37K
01011	35.63	40.38	33.25	42.75	30.88	45.13	28.5	47.5	26.13	49.88	23.75	52.25	38K
01100	36.56	41.44	34.13	43.88	31.69	46.31	29.25	48.75	26.81	51.19	24.38	53.63	39K
01101	37.5	42.5	35	45	32.5	47.5	30	50	27.5	52.5	25	55	40K
01110	38.44	43.56	35.88	46.13	33.31	48.69	30.75	51.25	28.19	53.81	25.63	56.38	41K
01111	39.38	44.63	36.75	47.25	34.13	49.88	31.5	52.5	28.88	55.13	26.25	57.75	42K
10000	40.31	45.69	37.63	48.38	34.94	51.06	32.25	53.75	29.56	56.44	26.88	59.13	43K
10001	41.25	46.75	38.5	49.5	35.75	52.25	33	55	30.25	57.75	27.5	60.5	44K
10010	42.19	47.81	39.38	50.63	36.56	53.44	33.75	56.25	30.94	59.06	28.13	61.88	45K
10011	43.13	48.88	40.25	51.75	37.38	54.63	34.5	57.5	31.63	60.38	28.75	63.25	46K
10100	44.06	49.94	41.13	52.88	38.19	55.81	35.25	58.75	32.31	61.69	29.38	64.63	47K
10101	45	51	42	54	39	57	36	60	33	63	30	66	48K
10110	45.94	52.06	42.88	55.13	39.81	58.19	36.75	61.25	33.69	64.31	30.63	67.38	49K
10111	46.88	53.13	43.75	56.25	40.63	59.38	37.5	62.5	34.38	65.63	31.25	68.75	50K
11000	47.81	54.19	44.63	57.38	41.44	60.56	38.25	63.75	35.06	66.94	31.88	70.13	51K
11001	49.18	54.55	46.88	57.69	44.78	61.22	42.86	65.22	41.1	69.77	39.47	75	52K
11010	49.69	56.31	46.38	59.63	43.06	62.94	39.75	66.25	36.44	69.56	33.13	72.88	53K
11011	50.63	57.38	47.25	60.75	43.88	64.13	40.5	67.5	37.13	70.88	33.75	74.25	54K
11100	51.56	58.44	48.13	61.88	44.69	65.31	41.25	68.75	37.81	72.19	34.38	75.63	55K
11101	52.5	59.5	49	63	45.5	66.5	42	70	38.5	73.5	35	77	56K
11110	53.44	60.56	49.88	64.13	46.31	67.69	42.75	71.25	39.19	74.81	35.63	78.38	57K

Table 7-43. Receiver Demodulation High Frequency (HCFS = 1)

RXDCR	001		010		011		100		101		110		
CFQ	Min.	Max.	(kHz)										
00011	375	425	350	450	325	475	300	500	275	525	250	550	400K
01000	421.9	478.1	393.8	506.3	365.6	534.4	337.5	562.5	309.4	590.6	281.3	618.8	450K
01011	450	510	420	540	390	570	360	600	330	630	300	660	480K
01011	468.8	531.3	437.5	562.5	406.3	593.8	375	625	343.8	656.3	312.5	687.5	500K

7.20.5.7 CIR Transmitter Control Register (C0TCR)

The C0TCR, an 8-bit register, is used to control the Transmitter.

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description																																				
7	-	-	Reserved																																				
6	R/W	0b	Transmitter Run Length Enable (TXRLE) This bit controls the Transmitter Run Length encoding/decoding mode, which condenses a series of "1" or "0" into one byte according to the value stored in bit 7 and the value stored in bits 6-0 minus 1. If this bit is set to "1", the Transmitter Run Length mode is enabled. If this bit is set to "0", the Transmitter Run Length mode is disabled.																																				
5	R/W	0b	Transmitter Deferral (TXENDF) This bit is used to avoid the Transmitter underrun condition. When this bit is set to "1", the Transmitter FIFO data will be kept until the transmitter time-out condition occurs or when FIFO is full.																																				
4 - 3	R/W	00b	Transmitter Modulation Pulse Mode (TXMPM[1:0]) These two bits are used to define the Transmitter modulation pulse mode. <table> <thead> <tr> <th>TXMPM[1:0]</th><th>Modulation Pulse Mode</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>00</td><td>C_pls mode (Default) Pulses are generated continuously for the entire logic 0 bit time.</td></tr> <tr> <td>01</td><td>8_pls mode 8 pulses are generated for each logic 0 bit.</td></tr> <tr> <td>10</td><td>6_pls mode 6 pulses are generated for each logic 0 bit.</td></tr> <tr> <td>11</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	TXMPM[1:0]	Modulation Pulse Mode	00	C_pls mode (Default) Pulses are generated continuously for the entire logic 0 bit time.	01	8_pls mode 8 pulses are generated for each logic 0 bit.	10	6_pls mode 6 pulses are generated for each logic 0 bit.	11	Reserved																										
TXMPM[1:0]	Modulation Pulse Mode																																						
00	C_pls mode (Default) Pulses are generated continuously for the entire logic 0 bit time.																																						
01	8_pls mode 8 pulses are generated for each logic 0 bit.																																						
10	6_pls mode 6 pulses are generated for each logic 0 bit.																																						
11	Reserved																																						
2-0	R/W	100b	Transmitter Modulation Pulse Width (TXMPW[2:0]) These three bits are used to set Transmitter Modulation Pulse Width. The duty cycle of the carrier will be determined according to the settings of Carrier Frequency and the selection of Transmitter Modulation Pulse Width. <table> <thead> <tr> <th>TXMPW[2:0]</th><th>HCFS= 0</th><th>HCFS= 1</th><th></th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>000</td><td>Reserved</td><td>Reserved</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>001</td><td>Reserved</td><td>Reserved</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>010</td><td>6 μs</td><td>0.7 μs</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>011</td><td>7 μs</td><td>0.8 μs</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>100</td><td>8.7 μs</td><td>0.9 μs (Default)</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>101</td><td>10.6 μs</td><td>1.0 μs</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>110</td><td>13.3 μs</td><td>1.16 μs</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>111</td><td>Reserved</td><td>Reserved</td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table>	TXMPW[2:0]	HCFS= 0	HCFS= 1		000	Reserved	Reserved		001	Reserved	Reserved		010	6 μ s	0.7 μ s		011	7 μ s	0.8 μ s		100	8.7 μs	0.9 μs (Default)		101	10.6 μ s	1.0 μ s		110	13.3 μ s	1.16 μ s		111	Reserved	Reserved	
TXMPW[2:0]	HCFS= 0	HCFS= 1																																					
000	Reserved	Reserved																																					
001	Reserved	Reserved																																					
010	6 μ s	0.7 μ s																																					
011	7 μ s	0.8 μ s																																					
100	8.7 μs	0.9 μs (Default)																																					
101	10.6 μ s	1.0 μ s																																					
110	13.3 μ s	1.16 μ s																																					
111	Reserved	Reserved																																					

7.20.5.8 CIR Slow Clock Control Register (C0SCK)

The C0SCK, an 8-bit register, is used to select the slow clock source of 32.768k or DLL output for operating with low power and can wake up EC from the Sleep mode.

In the Sleep mode, CIR only can receive serial data up to 2 kHz when

1. C0BDLR = 01h (max baud rate = 32.768k/16)
2. C0BDHR = 00h
3. SCKS = 1b
4. demodulation has to be disabled.

Note: prior to set up Wakeup code and receive enable before enter Sleep mode (set SCKS bit in C0SCK register). If firmware needs to compare received data stored in the C0DR register with Wakeup code(written into C0WCR previously), SCKS has to be set to zero beforehand after Wakeup code has received completely.

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	1b	DLL Lock (DLLOCK) This bit is available when DLLE = 1. 1: DLL in the locked state 0: DLL in the unlocked state
6-4	R/W	0b	Baud Rate Count Mode (BRCM) These three bits are used to select the baud rate counter number. They only need to be set when demodulation is disabled and SCKS = 1, DLL1P8E =0. Bits 6-4 baud counter 000 16 (488us) 001 14 (427us) 010 15 (457us) 011 18 (549us)
3	R/W	0b	DLL Test Enable (DLLTE) 1: Set DLL to the test mode. 0: DLL in the normal mode
2	R/W	0b	DLL Enable (DLLE) 1: DLL Enabled 0: DLL Disabled The slow clock selects 32.768 kHz when this bit is set to 0 and SCKS =1. The slow clock selects DLL when this bit is set to 1 and SCKS =1.
1	R/WC	0b	TXD Clock Gating (TXDCKG) 1: CIR transmitter clock source gating 0: CIR transmitter clock source not gating
0	R/W	0b	Slow Clock Select (SCKS) 1: Select the slow clock source (32.768k or DLL) for cir receiver to receive serial data which is input to CRX0/CRX1 when RXEND = 0, RDWOS =1, and RXEN = 1. 0: unselect slow clock as the receiver clock source.

7.20.5.9 CIR Baud Rate Divisor Low Byte Register (C0BDLR)

The C0BDLR, an 8-bit register, is used to program the CIR Baud Rate clock.

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Baud Rate Divisor Low Byte (BRDL[7:0]) These bits are the low byte of the register and used to divide the Baud Rate clock.

7.20.5.10 CIR Baud Rate Divisor High Byte Register (C0BDHR)

The C0BDHR, an 8-bit register, is used to program the CIR Baud Rate clock.

Address Offset: 09h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Baud Rate Divisor High Byte (BRDH[7:0]) These bits are the high byte of the register and used to divide the Baud Rate clock.

Baud rate divisor = 115200/baud rate when SCKS =0.

Ex1: 2400bps → 115200 /2400 = 48 → 48(d) = 0030 (h)

C0BDHR = 00(h), C0BDLR = 30(h)

Ex2: bit width = 0.565 ms → 1770 bps → 115200/1770 = 65 (d) = 0041 (h)

C0BDHR = 00(h), C0BDLR = 0041(h)

The baud rate will be set to 20K bps when C0BDHR = 00h and C0BDLR = 00h. This is a special case.

Baud rate divisor = 116500/baud rate when SCKS =1, and DLLE is enabled.

Ex1: 2540bps → 116500 / 2540 = 46 → 46(d) = 002E (h)

C0BDHR = 00(h), C0BDLR = 2E(h)

Ex2: bit width = 0.565 ms → 1770 bps → 116500/1770 = 66 (d) = 0042 (h)

C0BDHR = 00(h), C0BDLR = 0042(h)

7.20.5.11 CIR Transmitter FIFO Status Register (C0TFSR)

The C0TFSR, an 8-bit register, provides the status information of Transmitter FIFO.

Address Offset: 0Ah

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	-	-	Reserved
6	R/W	0b	Transmitter FIFO Clear (TXFIFOCLR) Writing 1 to this bit to clear TX FIFO. This bit is then cleared to 0 automatically.
5 - 0	R	00h	Transmitter FIFO Byte Count (TXFBC[5:0]) Return the number of bytes left in Transmitter FIFO.

7.20.5.12 CIR Receiver FIFO Status Register (C0RFSR)

The C0RFSR, an 8-bit register, provides the status information of Receiver FIFO.

Address Offset: 0Bh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	Receiver FIFO Time-out Monitor (RXFTO) This bit will be set to "1" when the Receiver FIFO time-out condition occurs. The conditions required for the occurrence of Receiver FIFO time-out include the followings: When at least one byte data are queued in Received FIFO for more than 64 ms, and the receiver has been inactive (RXACT=0) for over 64ms. If RXFTO = 1 and both IEC and RDAIE are set one, RDAI(receive data available interrupt) will be asserted at least 16msec to notify the firmware that FIFO still retains data and the firmware needs to read it.
6	R/W	0b	Receiver FIFO Clear (RXFIFOCLR) Writing 1 to this bit to clear RX FIFO. This bit is then cleared to 0 automatically.
5-0	R	00h	Receiver FIFO Byte Count (RXFBC[5:0]) Return the number of bytes left in Receiver FIFO.

7.20.5.13 CIR Wake-Code Set Select Register (C0WCSSR)

The C0WCSSR, an 8-bit register for index, is used to select one programming set from 5 sets of wake-up code which can be accessed in C0WCR. Its length can be accessed in C0WCL and its wakeup status can be accessed in C0WPS.

Address Offset : 0Ch

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	R/W	000b	Wake-Up Code Select Index(WUCSI) 000: Select the 1 st wakeup-code set and length to be programmed from C0WCR, C0WCL, and C0WPS. Hardware use this set to do wakeup-code comparison feature (original one set wakeup-code feature) 001: Select the 2 nd wakeup-code set and length to be programmed from C0WCR, C0WCL, and C0WPS. 010: Select the 3 rd wakeup-code set and length to be programmed from C0WCR, C0WCL, and C0WPS. 011: Select the 4 th wakeup-code set and length to be programmed from C0WCR, C0WCL, and C0WPS. 100: Select the 5 th wakeup-code set and length to be programmed from C0WCR, C0WCL, and C0WPS. Others: CIR in test mode of manufacture
4-0	R/W	00h	Reserved

7.20.5.14 CIR Wakeup Code Length Register (C0WCL)

The C0WCL, an 8-bit register, keeps the value of the valid code length minus 1 in the power-switch-code area. The wakeup controller in CIR module compares the received code with the code saved in the power-switch-code area of wakeup controller C0WCL - 1 bytes.

Address Offset : 0Dh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	00b	Reserved
5-0	R/W	111111b	CIR Wakeup Code Length (WCL[5:0]) The value in this register is the valid code length minus 1. For instance, when C0WCL is equal to 0, the valid code length is 1.

7.20.5.15 CIR Wakeup Code Read/Write Register (C0WCR)

The C0WCR, an 8-bit register, is the read/write port for accessing 20 wakeup code bytes. These bytes are accessed sequentially according to the read counter or write counter.

Address Offset : 0Eh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	CIR Wakeup Code Read/Write Register (WCR[7:0]) A port is for accessing 20 wakeup code bytes.

7.20.5.16 CIR Wakeup Power Control/Status Register (C0WPS)

The C0WPS, an 8-bit register, is used to record the power-on source, and two control bits are used to reset the read or write counter for accessing 20 code bytes through C0WCR.

Address Offset : 0Fh

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	-	00b	Reserved
5	R/W	0b	CIR Wakeup Code Writing Counter Resetting Bit (WCRST) This bit is used to reset the writing counter to 1, and it is where the first byte saved in the power-switch-code area. After the counter is reset, this bit will be reset to 0.
4	R/W	0b	CIR Wakeup Code Reading Counter Resetting Bit (RCRST) This bit is used to reset the reading counter to 1, and it is where the first byte is saved in the power-switch-code area.
3	-	-	Reserved
2	R/W	0b	CIR Power On/Off Interrupt Identification (CIRPOII) This bit is set to denote that the CIR Power On/Off interrupt(INT15) event has occurs . Writing 0 clears this identification bit.
1	R	0b	CIR Power On/Off Interrupt Status (CIRPOIS) This bit is set to denote that the CIR Power On request event has been generated by the CIR Remote-Controller-pressed power on/off key. Setting 0 denotes that the CIR Power Off request event has been generated by the CIR Remote-Controller-pressed power on/off key.
0	R/W	0b	CIR Power On/Off Status Interrupt Enable (CIRPOSIE) This bit is set to enable the CIR Power On/Off interrupt event(INT15), which is generated by the CIR Remote-Controller-pressed power on/off key. Setting 0 to disable interrupt by the Power on/off event.

7.20.5.17 CIR Scratch Register (CSCRR)

Address Offset: 10h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	EC side: R/W Host side: R	0b	Page mode 0: 2-page selected, to be compatible with old version firmware 1: 3-page selected, two consecutive writing cycles to HRAE to switch page
6	-	-	Reserved
5-0	R/W	00h	Scratch Bit (SCRB5-0) Reading returns the value that was previously written.

7.20.5.18 CIR General Purpose Interrupt (CGPINTR)

Address Offset: 01h on Page 2 (Host View Only)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-1	-	-	Reserved
0	W	-	CIR General Purpose Interrupt (CGPINT) Writing 1 to this bit will issue an interrupt to INT36.

7.21 Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI)

7.21.1 Overview

The SPI device uses 3-wire bi-directional or 4-wire interface for data transmission. The 4-wire device consists four signals, SSCE#, SSCK, SMOSI, and SMISO, for data transmission, and the 3-wire device consists three signals, SSCE#, SSCK, SMISO, for data transmission. The SPI interface consists of two identical channels which can be selected to connect to the 3-wire or 4-wire device.

7.21.2 Features

- Supports both Host and EC side.
- Supports eight frequency dividers of SSCK. (2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16)
- Supports n-bit transmission ($n = 1 \sim 8$).
- Supports blocking and non-blocking selection.
- Supports Interrupt enable and Interrupt disable in the non-blocking selection.
- Supports 3-wire SPI device and 4-wire SPI device.
- Supports four clock modes.
- Supports BUSY pin.

7.21.3 Functional Description

All instructions, addresses, and data are shifted in and out of the device, starting with the most significant bit. The interface supplies the synchronous clock (SSCK) for the serial interface and initiates the data transfer.

The device responds by sending (or receiving) the requested data. The device uses the interface clock to serially shift data out (or in) while the interface shifts the data in (or out).

7.21.3.1 Data Transmissions

8-bit Transmission

The interface supports 8-cycle SSCK for data transmission. It is available for 1-byte transaction devices. (default)

N-bit Transmission ($N = 1 \sim 7$)

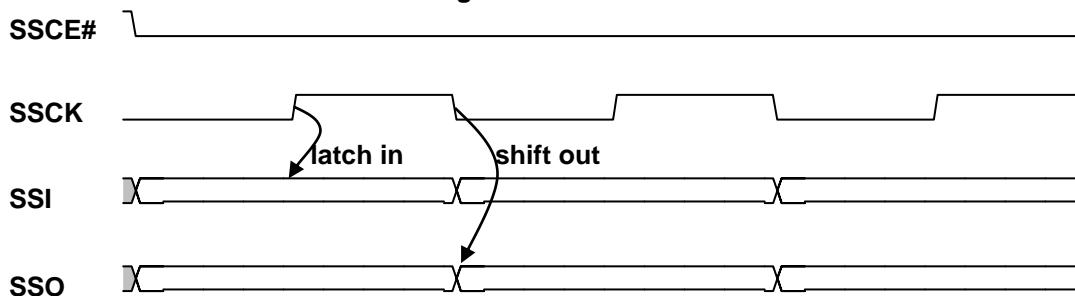
The interface supports N-cycle SSCK for data transmission. It is available for non-1-byte transaction devices.

7.21.3.2 SPI Mode

Mode 0

SSCK is low in the idle mode. Data is sampled on the rising edge, and shifted on the falling edge.

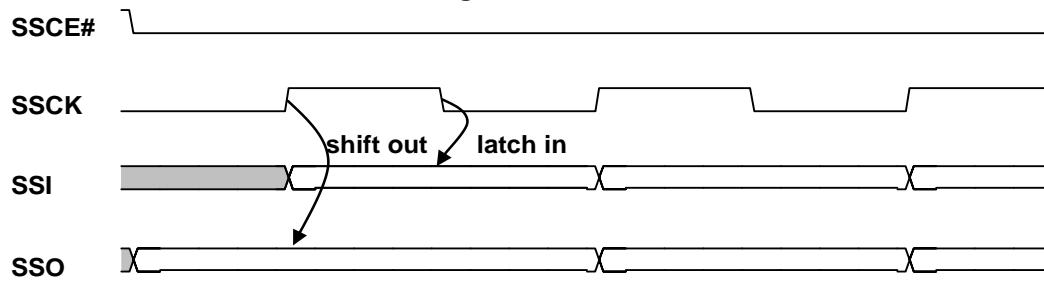
Figure 7-42. SPI Mode 0 Waveform



Mode 1

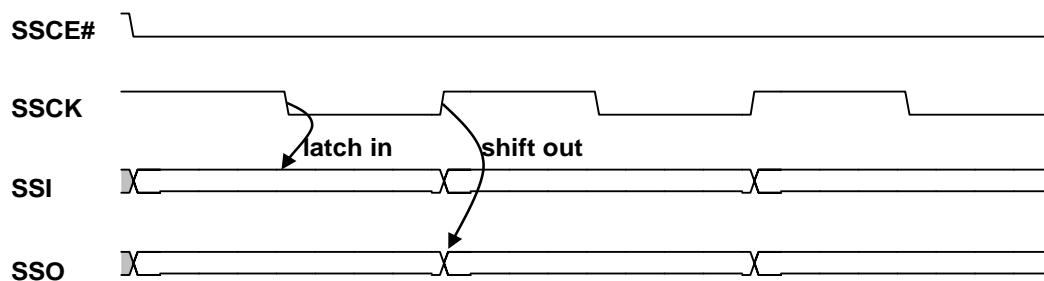
SSCK is low in the idle mode. Data is sampled on the falling edge, and shifted on the rising edge.

Figure 7-43. SPI Mode 1 Waveform


Mode 2

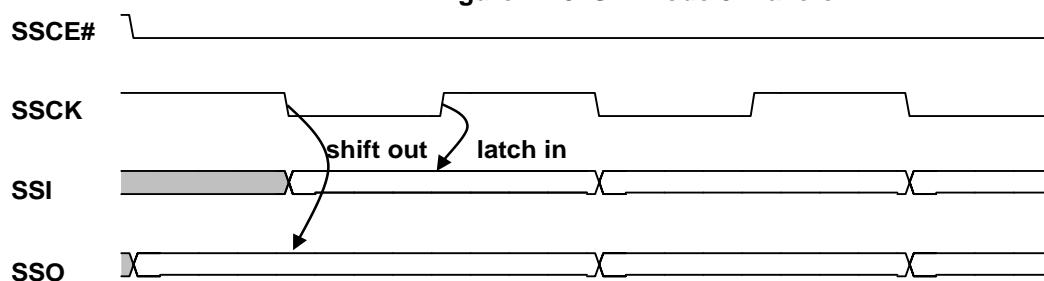
SSCK is high in the idle mode. Data is sampled on the falling edge, and shifted on the rising edge.

Figure 7-44. SPI Mode 2 Waveform


Mode 3

SSCK is high in the idle mode. Data is sampled on the rising edge, and shifted on the falling edge.

Figure 7-45. SPI Mode 3 Waveform



7.21.3.3 Blocking and Non-blocking mode

- Blocking mode:

After starting the read cycle or write cycle to the SPI module (writing 1 to CH0START or CH1START bit in SPISTS register), the bus will be blocked until this read/write command is finished.

If the SPI function is controlled by the EC side, 8032 instruction will be halted until this read/write command is finished.

If the SPI function is controlled by the host side, the LPC bus will return the long-wait sync pattern until this read/write command is finished.

It means that the interrupt and the polling are not needed.

- Non-blocking mode

After starting the read cycle or write cycle to the SSPI module (writing 1 to CH0START or CH1START bit in SPISTS register), the processor receives an interrupt signal or polls bit 2 of SPISTS register to determine if this read/write command will be terminated .

7.21.4 Host Interface Registers

The registers of SSPI can be treated as Host Interface Registers or EC Interface Registers. This section lists the host interface registers. These registers can only be accessed by the host processor.

The SSPI resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. These registers are listed below:

Table 7-44. Host View Register Map, SSPI

7	0	Offset
SPI Data Register (SPIDATA)		00h
SPI Control Register 1 (SPICTRL1)		01h
SPI Control Register 2 (SPICTRL2)		02h
SPI Control Register 3 (SPICTRL3)		01h
SPI Start and End Status Register (SPISTS)		03h

All registers are double mapped into the host and EC side, however, the SSPI function should be controlled by a side only.

7.21.5 EC Interface Registers

The register map of EC interface is listed below. The base address for SSPI is 2600h.

Table 7-45. EC View Register Map, SSPI

7	0	Offset
SPI Data Register (SPIDATA)		00h
SPI Control Register 1 (SPICTRL1)		01h
SPI Control Register 2 (SPICTRL2)		02h
SPI Control Register 3 (SPICTRL3)		04h
SPI Start and End Status Register (SPISTS)		03h

Other related register(s):

- General Control 1 Register (GCR1), SPICTRL bit
- General Control 1 Register (GCR1), SSSPIBP bit
- General Control 3 Register (GCR3), SSPIPDG bit

7.21.5.1 SPI Data Register (SPIDATA)

In the read mode, the register holds the shift data from the SPI device. In the write mode, the interface shift the data out to the SPI device.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	SPI Data (DATA) Receive Data from the SPI device or Transmit Data to the SPI device.

7.21.5.2 SPI Control Register 1 (SPICTRL1)

This register controls the SPI operation mode.

Address Offset: Host: 01h (Bank 0) / EC: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Chip Select Polarity (CHPOL) If CSPOLSEL is set to 1, the bit indicates the chip select polarity of device 0. Otherwise, the bit indicates both the chip select polarity of device 0 and device 1 0: Active low 1: Active high
6-5	R/W	00b	Bit 6:Clock Polarity (CLPOL) 0: SSCK is low in the idle mode. 1: SSCK is high in the idle mode. Bit 5:Clock Phase (CLPHS) 0: Latch data on the first SSCK edge. 1: Latch data on the second SSCK edge. Mode 0: SSCK is low in the idle mode. Data is sampled on the rising edge, and shifted on the falling edge. Mode 1: SSCK is low in the idle mode. Data is sampled on the falling edge, and shifted on the rising edge. Mode 2: SSCK is high in the idle mode. Data is sampled on the falling edge, and shifted on the rising edge. Mode 3: SSCK is high in the idle mode. Data is sampled on the rising edge, and shifted on the falling edge.
4-2	R/W	000b	SSCK Frequency (SCKFREQ) 000b: 1/2 FreqEC 001b: 1/4 FreqEC 010b: 1/6 FreqEC 011b: 1/8 FreqEC 100b: 1/10 FreqEC 101b: 1/12 FreqEC 110b: 1/14 FreqEC 111b: 1/16 FreqEC (FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484)

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
1	R/W	0b	Interrupt Enable (INTREN) 0: Disable 1: Enable
0	R/W	0b	Device0 3-Wire Mode (3WIRECH0) 0: Disable (4-wire) 1: Enable (3-wire)

7.21.5.3 SPI Control Register 2 (SPICTRL2)

This register controls the SPI operation mode.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Host Side Bank (HBANK) The bit is only available in host side. 0: bank 0 1: bank 1
6	R/W	0b	Device Busy Polarity (DEVBUSYPOL) The bit indicates the state of the device busy signal when the device is not busy.
5-3	R/W	000b	Byte Width (BYTEWIDTH) 000b: 8-bit transmission 001b: 1-bit transmission 010b: 2-bit transmission 011b: 3-bit transmission 100b: 4-bit transmission 101b: 5-bit transmission 110b: 6-bit transmission 111b: 7-bit transmission
2	R/W	0b	Channel Read/Write Cycle (CHRW) 0: Write cycle 1: Read cycle
1	R/W	0b	Block Select (BLKSEL) 0: Non-blocking selection 1: Blocking selection
0	R/W	0b	Device1 3-Wire Mode (3WIRECH1) 0: Disable (4-wire) 1: Enable (3-wire)

7.21.5.4 SPI Start and End Status Register (SPISTS)

This register reports the status of the SPI and controls the start and end signal.

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/WC	0b	Wait Busy Start Signal (WAITBUSYSTART) Write 1 to start the Wait Busy function after a write command or a read command. Read 0b.
6	R	-	Device Busy Signal (DEVBUSY) The bit indicates the device busy signal.
5	R/WC	0b	SPI Transmission End (TRANEND) Write 1 to end the SPI transmission. Read 0b.
4	R/WC	0b	Channel 0 Start Signal (CH0START) Write 1 to start the data transmission of device 0. Read 0b.
3	R/WC	0b	Channel 1 Start Signal (CH1START) Write 1 to start the data transmission of device 1. Read 0b.
2	R	0b	Transfer In Progress (TRANIP) This bit indicates the SPI is in the transmission state. 0: Data transfer is not in progress. 1: Data transfer is in progress.
1	R/WC	0b	Transfer End Flag(TRANENDIF) This bit indicates SPI transmission ends. The bit will be 1 when writing 1 to TRANEND bit. Write 1 to clear this bit and terminate data transmission.
0	R	0b	SPI Busy (SPIBUSY) This bit indicates whether the SPI interface is busy or not. 0: SPI idle 1: SPI busy

7.21.5.5 SPI Control Register 3 (SPICTRL3)

This register controls the SPI operation mode.

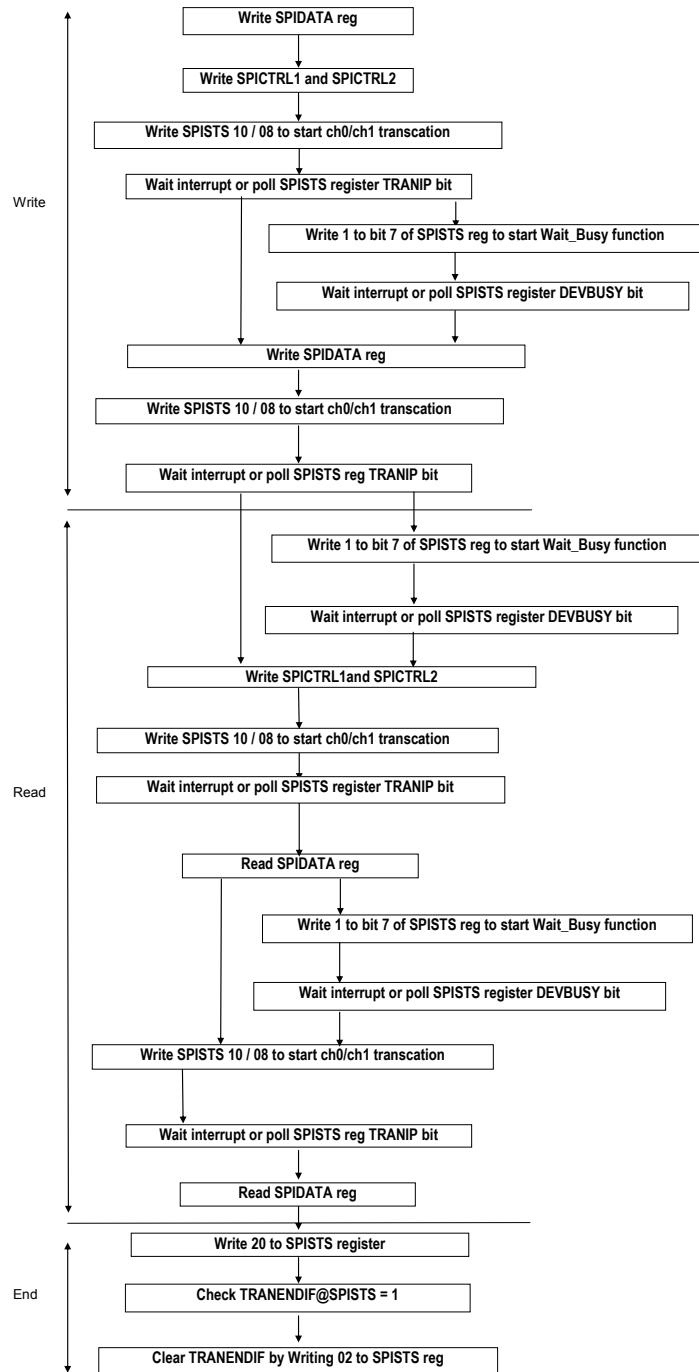
Address Offset: Host: 01h (Bank 1) / EC: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R	-	Reserved
3	R/W	0b	Device Busy Mode(DEVBUSYMODE) 0: Without device busy pin. 1: Wth device busy pin.
2	R/W	0b	Chip Select Polarity Select (CSPOLSEL) 0: The chip select polarity of device 1 and device 0 is the same. 1: The chip select polarity of device 1 and device 0 is different.
1	R/W	0b	Chip Select Polarity 1 (CHPOL1) If CSPOLSEL is set to 1, the bit indicates the chip select polarity of device 1. 0: Active low 1: Active high
0	R/W	0b	No BUSY Clock (BUSYNOCCLK) 0: Generate SSPI clock when waiting for the device busy signal. 1: Do not generate SSPI clock when waiting for the device busy signal.

7.21.6 Programming Guide

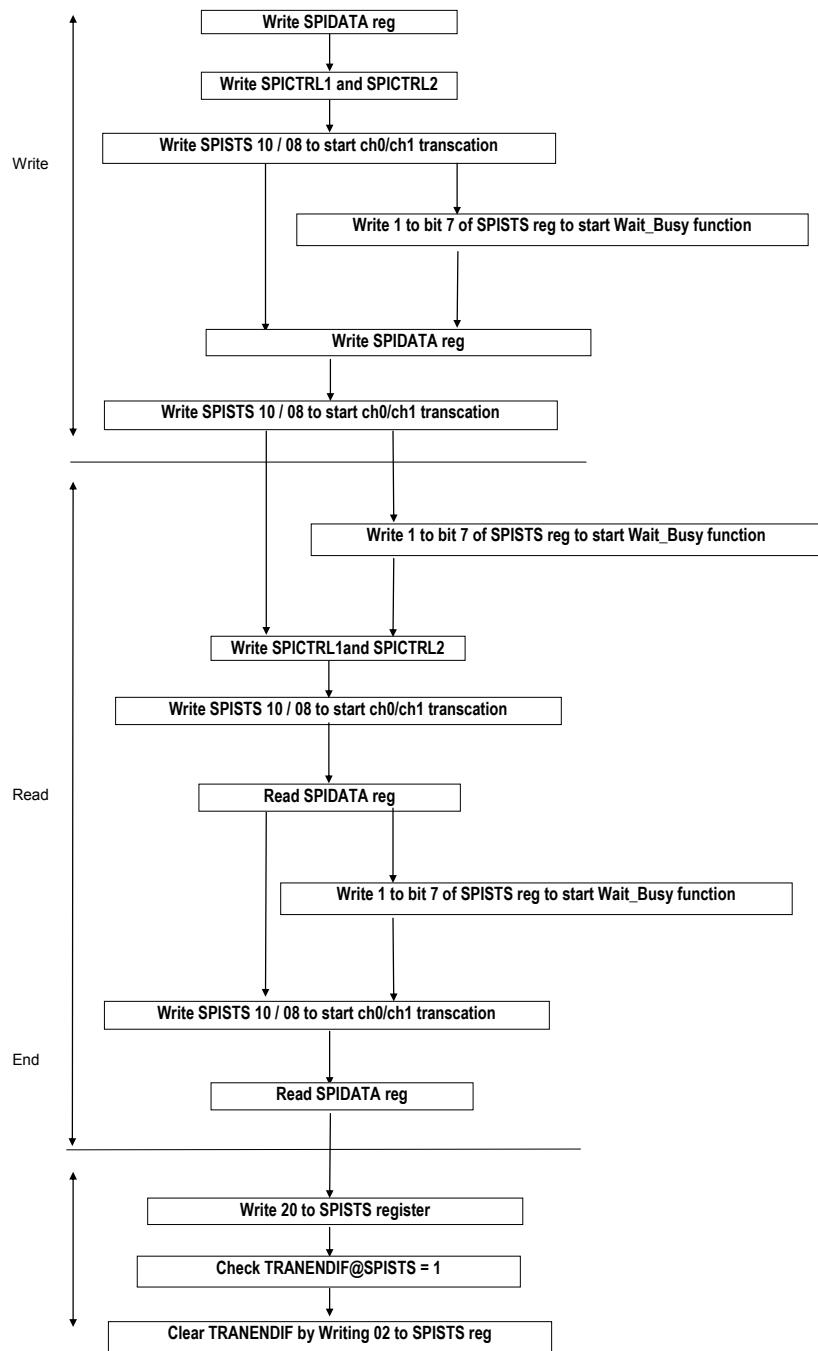
Write 16-bit data to SPI device and read 16-bit data from SPI device.

Figure 7-46. Program Flow Chart for SSPI Non-blocking



Write 16-bit data to SPI device and read 16-bit data from SPI device.

Figure 7-47. Program Flow Chart for SSPI Blocking



7.22 Serial Port (UART)

7.22.1 Overview

Besides the internal UART inside the 8032, there is an external UART1 outside the 8032. UART1 can be accessed by software in the host or EC side, however, the UART1 function should be controlled by a side only. So is UART2.

The UART1/UART2 module is 16550 compatible. This module performs the serial to parallel conversion for the received data, and parallel to serial conversion for the transmitted data.

7.22.2 Features

- Programmable FIFO or character mode
- The 16-byte FIFO buffer is on the transmitter and receiver in the FIFO mode
- Add or delete standard asynchronous communication bits (start, stop and parity) to or from serial data.
- The programmable baud rate generator allows the division of input clock by 1 to $2^{16}-1$ and generates the internal 16X clock.
- Modem control function (CTS#, RTS#, DTR#, DSR#, RI#, DCD#)
- Fully programmable serial-interface characteristics: 5, 6, 7 or 8-bit character
- Even, odd, forced 0/1 or no parity bit generation and detection
- 1, 1½, or 2 stop bits generation
- Baud rate up to 115.2K
- Baud rate up to 230.4K/460.8K if high speed mode enabled
- False start bit detection
- Receiver/Transmitter can be enabled separately.

7.22.3 Functional Description

UART contains a programmable baud rate generator that is capable of dividing the input clock by a number from 1 to 65535. The data rate of each serial port can also be programmed from 115.2K baud down to 50 baud. The character options are programmable for 1 start bit; 1, 1.5 or 2 stop bits; even, odd, stick or no parity; and privileged interrupts. Besides, if the High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS) or EC High Speed Select (ECHS) is activated, the highest baud rate can be up to 230.4K and 460.8K, which are determined by the divisor of the baud rate generator.

7.22.4 Host Interface Registers

The registers of UART1/UART2 can be treated as Host Interface Registers or EC Interface Registers. This section lists the host interface registers. These registers can only be accessed by the host processor. The UART resides at LPC I/O space and the base address can be configured through LPC PNPCFG registers. These registers are listed below:

Table 7-46. Host/EC View Register Map, UART

		Index
Receiver Buffer Register (RBR)	if DLAB=0	R
Interrupt Enable Register (IER)	if DLAB=0	R/W
Interrupt Identification Register (IIR)		R
Line Control Register (LCR)		R/W
Modem Control Register (MCR)		R/W
Divisor Latch LSB Register (DLL)	if DLAB=1	R/W
Divisor Latch MSB Register (DLM)	if DLAB=1	R/W
Line Status Register (LSR)		R/W
Modem Status Register (MSR)		R/W
Scratch Pad Register (SCR)		R/W
Transmitter Holding Register (THR)		W
FIFO Control Register (FCR)		W
EC Serial Port Mode Register (ECSPMR)	EC View	R/W

All registers are double mapped into the host and EC side except that ECSPMR is only for EC side; however, the UART function should be controlled by a side only.

7.22.5 EC Interface Registers

The register map of EC interface is the same as Host interface registers. The base address for UART1 is 2700h and the base address for UART2 is 2800h.

Other related register(s):

- General Control 1 Register (GCR1), U1CTRL bit
- General Control 1 Register (GCR1), U2CTRL bit
-
- General Control 3 Register (GCR3), UART1PDG bit
-
- General Control 3 Register (GCR3), UART2PDG bit

7.22.5.1 Receiver Buffer Register (RBR)

This register receives and holds the entering data. It contains a non-accessible shift register that converts the incoming serial data stream to a parallel 8-bit word.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R	00h	Receiver Buffer Register (URBR) This register receives and holds the entering data.

7.22.5.2 Transmitter Holding Register (THR)

This register holds and transmits the data via a non-accessible shift register. It converts the outgoing parallel data to a serial stream before transmission.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	-	Transmitter Holding Register (THR) This register holds and transmits the data via a non-accessible shift register.

7.22.5.3 Interrupt Enable Register (IER)

IER is used to enable (or disable) four active high interrupts that activate the interrupt outputs with its lower four bits, bit 0-bit 3.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-4	R	0h	Reserved These bits are always “0”.
3	R/W	-	Enable Modem Status Interrupt (EMSI) Set this bit high to enable the modem status interrupt when one of the modem status registers changes its bit state.
2	R/W	-	Enable Receiver Line Status Interrupt (ERLSI) Set this bit high to enable the receiver line status interrupt, which is caused when overrun, parity, framing or break occurs.
1	R/W	-	Enable Transmitter Holding Register Empty Interrupt (ETHREI) Set this bit high to enable the transmitter holding register empty interrupt.
0	R/W	-	Enable Received Data Available Interrupt (ERDVI) Set this bit high to enable the received data available interrupt (and time-out interrupt in the FIFO mode).

7.22.5.4 Interrupt Identification Register (IIR)

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-6	R	00b	Interrupt Identification Register Bit 7, Bit 6 (IIR7, IIR6) These bits are set when FCR[0] is equal to 1.
5-4	R	00b	Reserved Always logic 0.
3	R	0b	Interrupt Identification Register Bit 3 (IIR3) In the non-FIFO mode, this bit is logic 0. In the FIFO mode, this bit is set along with bit 2 when a time-out interrupt is pending.
2-1	R	00b	Interrupt Identification Register Bit 2, Bit 1 (IIR2, IIR1) These bits are used to identify the highest priority pending interrupt.
0	R	1b	Interrupt Identification Register Bit 0 (IIR0) This bit is used to indicate a pending interrupt in either a hard-wired prioritized or a polled environment with a logic 0 state. When the condition takes place, IIR contents may be used as a pointer to the appropriate interrupt service routine.

Table 7-47. Interrupt Control Functions

IIR				Interrupt Set and Reset Functions			
Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0	Priority Level	Interrupt Type	Interrupt Source	Interrupt Reset Control
0	0	0	1	-	None	None	-
0	1	1	0	1 st	Receiver Line Status	Overrun Error, Parity Error, Framing Error or Break Interrupt	Reading the Line Status Register
0	1	0	0	2 nd	Received Data Available	Receiver Data Available or Trigger Level Reached	Reading the Receiver Buffer Register or FIFO drops below the Trigger Level
1	1	0	0	2 nd	Character Timeout Identification	There is at least one character in the FIFO but no character has been input to the FIFO or read from it for the last four Char times.	Reading the Receiver Buffer Register
0	0	1	0	3 rd	Transmitter Holding Register Empty	Transmitter Holding Register Empty	Reading the IIR Register (if the source of interrupt is THRE) or Writing into the THR
0	0	0	0	4 th	Modem Status	Clear to Send or Data Set Ready or Ring Indicator or Received Line Signal Detect	Reading the Modem Status Register

7.22.5.5 FIFO Control Register (FCR)

This register is used to enable, and clear the FIFO, and set the RCVR FIFO trigger level.

Address Offset: 02h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description												
7-6	W	00b	FIFO Control Register Bit 7, Bit 6 (FCR7,FCR6) These bits set the trigger level for the RCVR FIFO interrupt. FCR7 FCR6 RCVR FIFO Trigger Level <table> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 byte</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>4 bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>8 bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>14 bytes</td> </tr> </table>	0	0	1 byte	0	1	4 bytes	1	0	8 bytes	1	1	14 bytes
0	0	1 byte													
0	1	4 bytes													
1	0	8 bytes													
1	1	14 bytes													
5-4	W	00b	Reserved												
3	W	0b	Reserved This bit does not affect the serial channel operation. RXRDY and TXRDY functions are not available on this controller.												
2	W	0b	XMIT FIFO Reset (XFRST) This self-clearing bit clears all contents of XMIT FIFO and resets its related counter to 0.												
1	W	0b	RCVR FIFO Reset (RFRST) Set this self-clearing bit to logic “1” to clear all contents of RCVR FIFO and resets its related counter to 0 (except the shift register).												
0	W	0b	FIFO Enable (FEN) XMIT and RCVR FIFOs are enabled when this bit is set high. XMIT and RCVR FIFOs will be disabled and cleared when this bit is cleared to low. This bit has to be a logic “1” if the other bits of the FCR are written or they will not be properly programmed. When this register is changed to the non-FIFO mode, all contents will be cleared.												

7.22.5.6 Divisor Latch LSB (DLL)

There are two 8-bit Divisor Latches (DLL and DLM), which store the divisor in a 16-bit binary format. They are loaded during initialization to generate a desired Baud Rate.

Address Offset: 00h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Divisor Latch LSB (DLL) This register stores the low byte of the divisor.

7.22.5.7 Divisor Latch MSB (DLM)

There are two 8-bit Divisor Latches (DLL and DLM), which store the divisor in a 16-bit binary format. They are loaded during initialization to generate a desired Baud Rate.

Address Offset: 01h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	00h	Divisor Latch LSB (DLM) This register stores the high byte of the divisor.

Table 7-48. Baud Rate Using 1.8432MHz Clock

Desired Baud Rate	Divisor Used	Percent Error Difference ¹	High Speed Bit ²
50	2304	-	X
75	1536	-	X
110	1047	0.1247	X
134.5	857	0.0409	X
150	768	-	X
300	384	-	X
600	192	-	X
1200	96	-	X
1800	64	-	X
2000	58	0.5916	X
2400	48	-	X
3600	32	-	X
4800	24	-	X
7200	16	-	X
9600	12	-	X
19200	6	-	X
38400	3	-	X
57600	2	-	X
115200	1	-	X
230400	32770	-	1
460800	32769	-	1

Note¹: The percent error difference, which is between the desired and the actual value, for all baud rates is 0.0986% except where the baud rates are indicated otherwise.

Note²: The high speed bit indicates whether the HHS bit or ECHS bit is set to high or not.

7.22.5.8 Scratch Pad Register (SCR)

There are two 8-bit Divisor Latches (DLL and DLM), which store the divisor in a 16-bit binary format. They are loaded during initialization to generate a desired Baud Rate.

Address Offset: 07h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	R/W	-	Scratch Pad Register (SCR) This 8-bit register does not control the operation of UART in any way. It is intended as a scratch pad register to be used by programmers to temporarily hold general-purpose data.

7.22.5.9 Line Control Register (LCR)

LCR controls the format of the data character and provides the information of the serial line.

Address Offset: 03h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description																		
7	R/W	-	Divisor Latch Access Bit (DLAB) This bit has to be set high to access the Divisor Latches of the baud rate generator during read or write operation and set low to access the Data Register (RBR and THR) or the Interrupt Enable Register.																		
6	R/W	-	Break Control (BREAK) This bit forces the Serial Output (SOUT) to the spacing state (logic 0) by a logic 1, and this state will remain until a low level resets this bit, enabling the serial port to alert the terminal in a communication system.																		
5	R/W	-	Stick Parity Bit (SP) When this bit and Parity Enable (PEN) bit are high at the same time, the parity bit is transmitted and then detected by the receiver. On the contrary, the parity bit is detected by Even Parity Select (EPS) bit to force the parity to a known state and to check the parity bit in a known state.																		
4	R/W	-	Even Parity Select (EPS) When the parity is enabled (Parity Enable=1), EPS=0 selects odd parity, and EPS=1 selects even parity.																		
3	R/W	-	Parity Enable (PEN) A parity bit, between the last data word bit and stop bit, will be generated or checked (transmit or receive data) when this bit is high.																		
2	R/W	-	Stop Bit Select (STB) Specify the number of stop bits in each serial character, which is summarized below: <table> <thead> <tr> <th>STB</th> <th>Word Length</th> <th>No. of Stop Bit</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>-</td> <td>1 bit</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>5</td> <td>1.5 bits</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>6</td> <td>2 bits</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>7</td> <td>2 bits</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>8</td> <td>2 bits</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> Note: The receiver will ignore all stop bits beyond the first, regardless of the number used in transmission.	STB	Word Length	No. of Stop Bit	0	-	1 bit	1	5	1.5 bits	1	6	2 bits	1	7	2 bits	1	8	2 bits
STB	Word Length	No. of Stop Bit																			
0	-	1 bit																			
1	5	1.5 bits																			
1	6	2 bits																			
1	7	2 bits																			
1	8	2 bits																			
1-0	R/W	-	Word Length Select Bit 1, Bit 0 (WLS1, WLS0) Specify the number of bits in each serial character, which is encoded below: <table> <thead> <tr> <th>WLS1</th> <th>WLS0</th> <th>Word Length</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>5 bits</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>6 bits</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>7 bits</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>8 bits</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	WLS1	WLS0	Word Length	0	0	5 bits	0	1	6 bits	1	0	7 bits	1	1	8 bits			
WLS1	WLS0	Word Length																			
0	0	5 bits																			
0	1	6 bits																			
1	0	7 bits																			
1	1	8 bits																			

7.22.5.10 Modem Control Register (MCR)

Address Offset: 04h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-5	R	000b	Reserved Bit 7-5 are always low.
4	R/W	0b	Loop This bit provides a loopback feature for the diagnostic test of the serial channel when it is set high. Serial Output (SOUT) is set to the Marking State. Shift Register output Loops back into the Receiver Shift Register. All Modem Control inputs (CTS#, DSR#, RI# and DCD#) are disconnected, and the four are forced to inactive high. The transmitted data are immediately received, allowing the processor to verify the data paths of transmitting and receiving of the serial channel.
3	R/W	0b	OUT2 The Output 2 bit enables the serial port interrupt output by a logic 1.
2	-	0b	OUT1 This bit does not have an output pin and can only be read or written by the processor.
1	R/W	0b	Request To Send (RTS) This bit controls the Request to Send (RTS#), which is in an inverse logic state with it.
0	R/W	0b	Data Terminal Ready (DTR) This bit controls the Data Terminal Ready (DTR#), which is in an inverse logic state with it.

7.22.5.11 Line Status Register (LSR)

Address Offset: 05h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R/W	0b	Error In RCVR FIFO (ERF) In the 16550 mode, this bit is always 0. In the FIFO mode, it is set high when there is at least one parity error, framing or break interrupt in the FIFO. This bit is cleared when the CPU reads LSR if there are no subsequent errors in the FIFO.
6	R	1b	Transmitter Empty (TEMT) This read-only bit indicates that the Transmitter Holding Register and Transmitter Shift Register are both empty; otherwise, this bit is "0". It has the same function in the FIFO mode.
5	R	1b	Transmitter Holding Register Empty (THRE) This read-only bit indicates that the THR is empty, and is ready to accept a new character for transmission. It is set high when a character is transferred from the THR into the Transmitter Shift Register, causing a priority 3 IIR interrupt which is cleared by read of IIR. In the FIFO mode, it is set when the XMIT FIFO is empty, and is cleared when at least one byte is written to XMIT FIFO.
4	R/W	0b	Break Interrupt (BI) This bit indicates that the last received character is a break character. The break interrupt status bit will be asserted only when the last received character, parity bits and stop bits are all break bits. When any of these error conditions is detected (LSR[1] to LSR[4]), a Receiver Line Status interrupt (priority 1) will be produced in IIR with IER[2] previously enabled.
3	RC	0b	Framing Error (FE) When this bit is a logic 1, it indicates that the stop bit in the received character is not valid. It is reset low when the CPU reads the contents of LSR.

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
2	RC	0b	Parity Error (PE) This bit Indicates the parity error (PE) with a logic “1”, representing that the received data character does not have the correct even or odd parity as bit 3 of LCR (Parity Enable) is set to “1”. It will be reset to “0” whenever LSR is read by CPU.
1	RC	0b	Overrun Error (OE) Overrun Error (OE) bit is set as a logic “1” after RBR has been overwritten by the next character before it is read by CPU. In the FIFO mode, OE occurs when FIFO is full and the next character has been completely received by the Shift Register. It will be reset when CPU reads LSR.
0	R/W	0b	Data Ready (DR) A logic “1” indicates a character has been received by RBR. A logic “0” indicates all data in the RBR or RCVR FIFO have been read.

7.22.5.12 Modem Status Register (MSR)

This 8-bit register provides the current state of the control lines from modems or peripheral devices. In addition to this current state information, bit 7-4 can provide the change information when a modem control input changes the state. It will be reset to low when the processor reads MSR.

Address Offset: 06h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7	R	0b	Data Carrier Detect (DCD#) This bit indicates the complement status of Data Carrier Detect input. If bit 4 of MCR is 1, this bit is equivalent to OUT2 of MCR.
6	R	0b	Ring Indicator (RI#) This bit indicates the complement to the RI# input. If bit 4 of MCR is 1, this bit is equivalent to OUT1 in MCR.
5	R	0b	Data Set Ready (DSR#) This bit indicates the modem is ready to provide received data to the serial channel receiver circuitry. If the serial channel is in the loop mode (bit 5 of MCR is 1), this bit is equivalent to DTR# in the MCR.
4	R	0b	Clear to Send (CTS#) This bit indicates the complement of CTS# input. If the serial channel is in the loop mode (bit 4 of MCR is 1), this bit is equivalent to RTS# in MCR.
3	R/W	0b	Delta Data Carrier Detect (DDCD) This bit indicates that the DCD# input state has been changed since the last time it is read by the processor.
2	R/W	0b	Trailing Edge of Ring Indicator (TERI) This bit indicates that RI input state to the serial channel has been changed from a low to high state since the last time it is read by the processor. The change of logic 1 doesn't activate TERI.
1	R/W	0b	Delta Data Set Ready (DDSR) A logic “1” indicates that DSR# input state to the serial channel has been changed since the last time it is read by the processor.
0	R/W	0b	Delta Clear to Send (DCTS) This bit indicates the CTS# input state to the serial channel has been changed since the last time it is read by the processor.

7.22.5.13 EC Serial Port Mode Register (ECSPMR)

Address Offset: 08h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved Bit 7-2 are always low.
1	R/W	0b	EC High Speed Select (ECHS) This bit indicates that the supported baud rate of UART1/UART2 can be up to 230.4K and 460.8K, which are determined by the divisor of the baud rate generator. (From EC Side) 0: Not selected 1: Selected
0	-	0b	Reserved This bit is always low.

7.22.6 Programming Guide

Each serial channel is programmed by control registers whose contents define the character length, number of stop bits, parity, baud and modem interface. Although the control registers can be written in any order, IER should be the last because it controls whether the interrupt is enabled. After the port is programmed, these registers can still be updated whenever the port is not transferring data.

7.22.6.1 Programming Sequence

UART module in Intelligent Peripheral Controller is compatible with standard 16550. The following is the programming sequence for standard 16550 compatible component register.

For access RBR/THR:

1. Set bit 7 of the LCR register to "0".
2. Access RBR/THR.

For Access IER:

1. Set bit 7 of the LCR register to "0".
2. Access IER.

For Access DLL/DLM:

1. Set bit 7 of the LCR register to "1".
2. Access DLL/DLM.

7.22.7 Software Reset

This method allows returning to a completely known state without a system reset. It consists of writing the required data to LCR, DLL, DLM and MCR. LSR and RBR has to be read before enabling interrupts in order to clear any residual data or status bits that may be invalid for the subsequent operations.

If UART function is controlled by the EC side, it can be done by writing 1 to the corresponding bit in RSTC4 register, too.

7.22.8 Clock Input Operation

The input frequency of the Serial Channel is FreqEC/5, not exactly 1.8432 MHz. FreqEC is listed in Table 10-2 on page 484.

7.22.9 FIFO Interrupt Mode Operation

(1) RCVR Interrupt

When bit 0 of FCR and bit 0 of IER are set to 1, RCVR FIFO and receiver interrupts are enabled. RCVR interrupt occurs under the following conditions:

- A. The received data available interrupt and the IIR receive data available indication will be issued only if the FIFO has reached its programmed trigger level. They will be cleared as soon as the FIFO drops below its trigger level.
- B. The receiver line status interrupt has higher priority than the received data available interrupt.
- C. The time-out timer will be reset after receiving a new character or after the processor reads RCVR FIFO whenever a time-out interrupt occurs.

RCVR FIFO time-out Interrupt: By enabling RCVR FIFO and receiver interrupts, the RCVR FIFO time-out interrupt will occur under the following conditions:

- A. It will occur only if there is at least one character in FIFO whenever the period between the most recent received serial character and the most recent processor read from the FIFO is longer than the period of four consecutive character-time.
- B. The time-out timer will be reset after receiving a new character or after the processor reads RCVR FIFO whenever any time-out interrupts occur. The timer will be reset when the processor reads one character from RCVR FIFO.

(2) XMIT Interrupt

By setting bit 0 of FCR and bit 1 of IER to high, the XMIT FIFO and transmitter interrupts are enabled, and the XMIT interrupt will occur as follows:

- A. The transmitter interrupt will occur when XMIT FIFO is empty, and it will be reset if THR is written or IIR is read.
- B. The transmitter FIFO empty indications will be delayed one character time minus the last stop bit time whenever the following conditions occurs:
THRE=1 and there are not at least two bytes in the transmitter FIFO at the same time since the last THRE=1.
The transmitter interrupt will be issued immediately after the bit 0 of FCR is changed. Once it is enabled, the THRE indication is delayed for 1 character time minus the last stop bit time.

The character time-out and RCVR FIFO trigger level interrupts are in the same priority order as the received data available interrupt. The XMIT FIFO empty is in the same priority as the transmitter holding register empty interrupt.

FIFO Polled Mode Operation (Bit 0 of FCR is 1, and bit 0, 1, 2, 3 of IER or all are 0.)

Either one or both XMIT and RCVR can be in this operation mode in which the program will check RCVR and XMIT status via the LSR as described below:

LSR[7]: RCVR FIFO error indication.

LSR[6]: XMIT FIFO and Shift register empty.

LSR[5]: The XMIT FIFO empty indication.

LSR[4] – LSR[1]: Specify that errors have occurs, and the character error status is handled in the same way as in the interrupt mode. IIR is not affected since IER(2)=0.

LSR[0]: This bit is high whenever RCVR FIFO contains at least one byte. There is no trigger level reached or time-out condition indicated in the FIFO Polled Mode.

7.22.10 High Speed Baud Rate Activation

When the high speed baud rate select bit is set to 1 from host side (High Speed Baud Rate Select ; HHS) or EC side (EC High Speed Select ; ECHS), the highest baud rate of UART1/UART2 can be up to 230.4K or 460.8K, which are determined by the divisor of the baud rate generator.

If HHS or ECHS is set to 1 and the divisor is 32770, the baud rate is 230.4K.
If HHS or ECHS is set to 1 and the divisor is 32769, the baud rate is 460.8K.

7.23 Debugger (DBGR)

7.23.1 Overview

This EC side module provides three 18-bit 8032 ROM trigger addresses and issues an INT0#, In-system Programming (ISP) and In-system Debugging (ISD).

DBGR can be performed by one of the two interfaces.

- DBGR/EPP
- DBGR/SMB

Both ISP and ISD can be performed by either DBGR/EPP or DBGR/SMB.

7.23.2 Features

- 3 trigger addresses
- ISP and ISD
- EC Memory Snoop (ECMS = I2EC + D2EC)

7.23.3 Functional Description

7.23.3.1 ROM Address Match Interrupt

The trigger address, where an instruction is constructed by one, two or three bytes, has to be the first byte of each instruction.

INT0RM is set when the trigger address matches the 8032 program counter except that the trigger address is equal to zero.

If Parallel Port cable is detected by internal hardware strap, this function is disabled.

Note that DBGR module is clock-gated in default and cannot work until 0 is written to DBGRCG bit in the CGCTRL3R register.

7.23.3.2 DBGR/EPP

Refer to section 7.24 Parallel Port (PP).

It can be disabled by OVRPPK bit in the KSICTRLR register.

Hot-plug is available.

7.23.3.3 DBGR/SMB

Refer to section 7.7.3.2 SMBus Slave Interface.

There is another dedicated SMBus slave for this function.

It can be disabled by OVRSMDBG bit in SLVISELR register.

Hot-plug is available, but can not exit DBGR mode after being detected.

7.23.3.4 In-system Programming Operation

It provides flash read and program function.

7.23.3.5 In-system Debugging Operation

It's performed by the utility provided by ITE and contains two features below.

1. D2EC described in section 7.23.3.6 EC Memory Snoop (ECMS).
2. Breakpoints, stepping, etc. and reset functions supported.

7.23.3.6 EC Memory Snoop (ECMS)

ECMS is available through one of the two ways:

1. I2EC (I-bus to EC Memory)

Local machine snoops EC memory through the LPC I/O cycle.

Here are two registers to provide the way to perform the I2EC access.

- I2EC_ADDR_H/I2EC_ADDR_L/I2EC_DATA register, defined in section 6.2.2.9 Depth 2 I/O Address (D2ADR) on page 42.
- I2EC_XADDR_H/ I2EC_XADDR_L/I2EC_XDATA register, with programmable address and defined in section 7.17.4.18 Port I2EC High-Byte Register (PI2ECH) on page 408.

Figure 7-48. I2EC through 2Eh/2Fh I/O Port Operation Flow

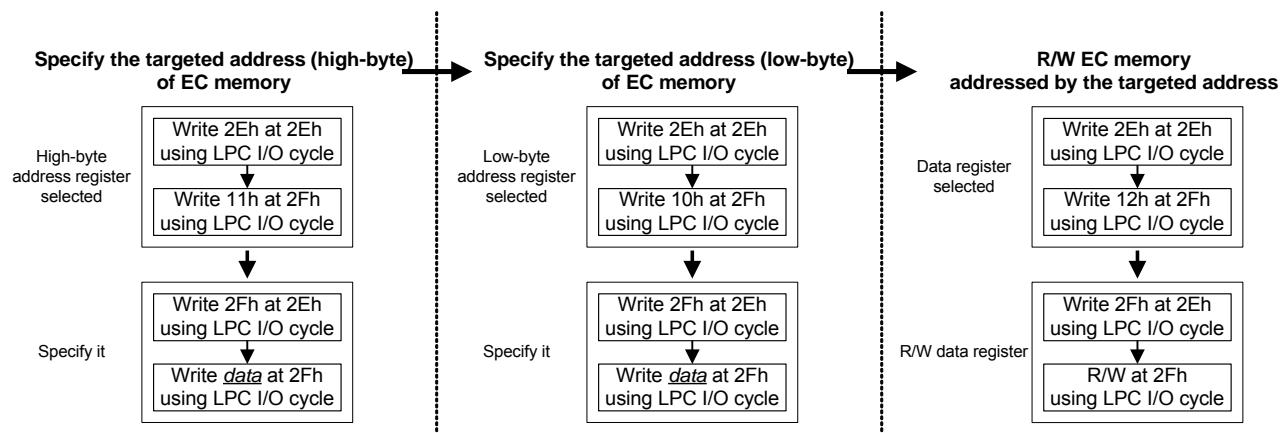
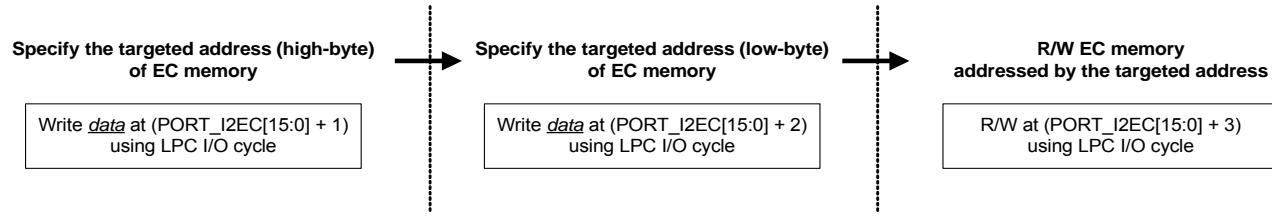


Figure 7-49. I2EC through Dedicated I/O Port Operation Flow



2. D2EC (DBG to EC Memory)

Remote machine snoops EC memory through EPP cycle.

I2EC/D2EC utility is provided by ITE.

I2EC is not enabled until its controlled register in the EC side register is written.

I2EC can be configured as read-only for all targets.

I2EC and D2EC can work at the same time.

I2EC/D2EC will not affect any register content of read-clear registers.

The writing action of I2EC/D2EC to F/F based register is okay, however, the result of writing to non-F/F based register is not expected. Such registers may be write-clear, or writing to start internal state-machine, etc.

If D2EC is enabled, PLL will not be power-down in the Sleep mode.

Table 7-49. I2EC/D2EC Accessible Target

	I2EC	D2EC
uC SFR (except ACC/IE reg.)	R	R
uC SFR – ACC/IE reg.	R	R/W
uC External Memory (except DMM)	R/W controlled by I2ECCTRL field in SPCTRL1 reg.	R/W
uC External Memory – DMM	Not Accessible	R

Note: DMM denotes double-mapping module.

7.23.3.7 Other Debug Topics

Here some debug features not covered in this DBGR section but may be useful for users.

1. Section 6.1.4 Debug Port Function on page 34.
2. Section 6.1.4 Debug Port Function on page 34. Hardware output signals to latch port 80h data on LAD[3:0].
3. LPCBEN bit in SPCTRL2 register.
4. Section 7.19.3.1 P80L on page 414.

7.23.4 EC Interface Registers

The following set of the registers is accessible only by the EC. They are listed below and the base address is 2500h.

Table 7-50. EC View Register Map, DBGR

7	0	Offset
Trigger 1 Address Low Byte Register (BKA1L)		10h
Trigger 1 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA1M)		11h
Trigger 1 Address High Byte Register (BKA1H)		12h
Trigger 2 Address Low Byte Register (BKA2L)		13h
Trigger 2 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA2M)		14h
Trigger 2 Address High Byte Register (BKA2H)		15h
Trigger 3 Address Low Byte Register (BKA3L)		16h
Trigger 3 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA3M)		17h
Trigger 3 Address High Byte Register (BKA3H)		18h

For a summary of the abbreviations used for the register type, see “Register Abbreviations and Access Rules”.

7.23.4.1 Trigger 1 Address Low Byte Register (BKA1L)

Address Offset: 10h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Trigger 1 Address (BK1A7-0)

7.23.4.2 Trigger 1 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA1M)

Address Offset: 11h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Trigger 1 Address (BK1A15-8)

7.23.4.3 Trigger 1 Address High Byte Register (BKA1H)

Address Offset: 12h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1-0	W	11b	Trigger 1 Address (BK1A17-16)

7.23.4.4 Trigger 2 Address Low Byte Register (BKA2L)

Address Offset: 13h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Trigger 2 Address (BK2A7-0)

7.23.4.5 Trigger 2 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA2M)

Address Offset: 14h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Trigger 2 Address (BK2A15-8)

7.23.4.6 Trigger 2 Address High Byte Register (BKA2H)

Address Offset: 15h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1-0	W	11b	Trigger 2 Address (BK2A17-16)

7.23.4.7 Trigger 3 Address Low Byte Register (BKA3L)

Address Offset: 16h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Trigger 3 Address (BK3A7-0)

7.23.4.8 Trigger 3 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA3M)

Address Offset: 17h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-0	W	00h	Trigger 3 Address (BK3A15-8)

7.23.4.9 Trigger 3 Address High Byte Register (BKA3H)

Address Offset: 18h

Bit	R/W	Default	Description
7-2	-	00h	Reserved
1-0	W	11b	Trigger 3 Address (BK3A17-16)

7.24 Parallel Port (PP)

7.24.1 Overview

IT8987 supports IEEE 1284 parallel port interface to allow in-system programming (ISP) or in-system debugging (ISD) regardless of running firmware code.

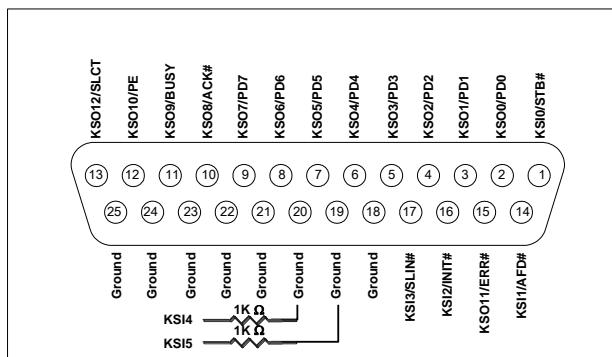
7.24.2 Features

- ISP/ISD via parallel port interface on existed KBS connector
- Fast flash programming with software provided by ITE
- Programming software supports EPP/SPP mode

7.24.3 Functional Description

7.24.3.1 KBS Connection with Parallel Port Connector

Figure 7-50. Parallel Port Female 25-Pin Connector



If Parallel Port cable is detected by internal hardware strap, the following functions will be disabled.

1. ROM Address Match Interrupt
2. Internal/External Watchdog

The DBGR/EPP debug mode takes place when VSTBY is supplied (other types of power are don't-care) and both EC chip and the flash are soldered on PCB. Parallel port interface occupies pins with the same interface as that of KBS to use the existing KBS connector.

This page is intentionally left blank.

8. Register List

Section	Register Name	Pg	Addr
6.2.2	Super I/O Configuration Registers	40	
6.2.2.1	Logical Device Number (LDN)	40	07h
6.2.2.2	Chip ID Byte 1 (CHIPID1)	40	20h
6.2.2.3	Chip ID Byte 2 (CHIPID2)	40	21h
6.2.2.4	Chip Version (CHIPVER)	41	22h
6.2.2.5	Super I/O Control Register (SIOCTRL)	41	23h
6.2.2.6	Super I/O IRQ Configuration Register (SIOIRQ)	41	25h
6.2.2.7	Super I/O General Purpose Register (SIOGP)	42	26h
6.2.2.8	Super I/O Power Mode Register (SIOPWR)	42	2Dh
6.2.2.9	Depth 2 I/O Address (D2ADR)	42	2Eh
6.2.2.10	Depth 2 I/O Data (D2DAT)	43	2Fh
6.2.4	Serial Port 1 (UART1) Configuration Registers	46	
6.2.4.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	46	30h
6.2.4.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	46	60h
6.2.4.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	46	61h
6.2.4.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	46	62h
6.2.4.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	47	63h
6.2.4.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	47	70h
6.2.4.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	47	71h
6.2.4.8	High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS)	47	F0h
6.2.5	Serial Port 2 (UART2) Configuration Registers	47	
6.2.5.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	48	30h
6.2.5.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	48	60h
6.2.5.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	48	61h
6.2.5.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	48	62h
6.2.5.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	48	63h
6.2.5.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	48	70h
6.2.5.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	48	71h
6.2.5.8	High Speed Baud Rate Select (HHS)	49	F0h
6.2.6	System Wake-Up Control (SWUC) Configuration Registers	49	
6.2.6.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	49	30h
6.2.6.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	49	60h
6.2.6.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	49	61h
6.2.6.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	50	62h
6.2.6.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	50	63h
6.2.6.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	50	70h
6.2.6.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	50	71h
6.2.7	KBC / Mouse Interface Configuration Registers	50	
6.2.7.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	50	30h
6.2.7.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	51	60h
6.2.7.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	51	61h
6.2.7.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	51	62h
6.2.7.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	51	63h
6.2.7.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	51	70h

6.2.7.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	51	71h
6.2.8	KBC / Keyboard Interface Configuration Registers	52	
6.2.8.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	52	30h
6.2.8.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	52	60h
6.2.8.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	52	61h
6.2.8.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	52	62h
6.2.8.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	52	63h
6.2.8.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	53	70h
6.2.8.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	53	71h
6.2.9	Consumer IR Configuration Registers	53	
6.2.9.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	53	30h
6.2.9.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	53	60h
6.2.9.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	53	61h
6.2.9.4	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	53	70h
6.2.9.5	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	54	71h
6.2.10	Shared Memory/Flash Interface (SMFI) Configuration Registers	54	
6.2.10.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	54	30h
6.2.10.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	54	60h
6.2.10.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	55	61h
6.2.10.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	55	62h
6.2.10.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	55	63h
6.2.10.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	55	70h
6.2.10.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	55	71h
6.2.10.8	LPC Memory Window Base Address [31:24] (LPCMWB[31:24])	55	F0h
6.2.10.9	LPC Memory Window Base Address [23:16] (LPCMWB[23:16])	56	F1h
6.2.10.10	LPC Memory Window Mapping Region Select (LPCMWMRS)	56	F2h
6.2.10.11	LPC Memory Window Control Register (LPCMWCR)	56	F3h
6.2.10.12	Shared Memory Configuration Register (SHMC)	56	F4h
6.2.10.13	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [15:12] (HLPCRAMBA[15:12])	57	F5h
6.2.10.14	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [23:16] (HLPCRAMBA[23:16])	57	F6h
6.2.10.15	H2RAM Host Semaphore Interrupt Enable (H2RAMHSIE)	57	F9h
6.2.10.16	H2RAM Host Semaphore Address (H2RAMHSA)	58	FAh
6.2.10.17	H2RAM EC Semaphore Status (H2RAMECSS)	59	FBh
6.2.10.18	H2RAM-HLPC Base Address [24] (HLPCRAMBA[24])	59	FCh
6.2.11	RTC-like Timer Configuration Registers	60	
6.2.11.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	60	30h
6.2.11.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	60	60h
6.2.11.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	60	61h
6.2.11.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	61	62h
6.2.11.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	61	63h
6.2.11.6	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[15:8])	61	64h
6.2.11.7	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[7:0])	61	65h
6.2.11.8	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 3 (IOBAD3[15:8])	61	66h
6.2.11.9	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 3 (IOBAD3[7:0])	61	67h
6.2.11.10	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 4 (IOBAD4[15:8])	61	68h
6.2.11.11	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 4 (IOBAD4[7:0])	62	69h
6.2.11.12	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	62	70h
6.2.11.13	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	62	71h

6.2.11.14	RAM Lock Register (RLR)	62	F0h
6.2.11.15	Date of Month Alarm Register Offset (DOMAO)	62	F1h
6.2.11.16	Month Alarm Register Offset (MONAO)	63	F2h
6.2.11.17	P80L Begin Index (P80LB)	63	F3h
6.2.11.18	P80L End Index (P80LE)	63	F4h
6.2.11.19	P80L Current Index (P80LC)	63	F5h
6.2.12	Power Management I/F Channel 1 Configuration Registers	64	
6.2.12.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	64	30h
6.2.12.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	64	60h
6.2.12.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	64	61h
6.2.12.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	64	62h
6.2.12.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	65	63h
6.2.12.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	65	70h
6.2.12.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	65	71h
6.2.13	Power Management I/F Channel 2 Configuration Registers	65	
6.2.13.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	65	30h
6.2.13.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	66	60h
6.2.13.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	66	61h
6.2.13.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	66	62h
6.2.13.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	66	63h
6.2.13.6	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[15:8])	66	64h
6.2.13.7	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 2 (IOBAD2[7:0])	66	65h
6.2.13.8	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	67	70h
6.2.13.9	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	67	71h
6.2.13.10	General Purpose Interrupt (GPINTR)	67	F0h
6.2.14	Power Management I/F Channel 3 Configuration Registers	67	
6.2.14.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	67	30h
6.2.14.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	68	60h
6.2.14.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	68	61h
6.2.14.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	68	62h
6.2.14.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	68	63h
6.2.14.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	68	70h
6.2.14.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	68	71h
6.2.15	Power Management I/F Channel 4 Configuration Registers	69	
6.2.15.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	69	30h
6.2.15.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	69	60h
6.2.15.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	69	61h
6.2.15.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	69	62h
6.2.15.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	70	63h
6.2.15.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	70	70h
6.2.15.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	70	71h
6.2.16	Power Management I/F Channel 5 Configuration Registers	70	
6.2.16.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	70	30h
6.2.16.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	70	60h
6.2.16.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	71	61h
6.2.16.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	71	62h

6.2.16.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	71	63h
6.2.16.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	71	70h
6.2.16.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	71	71h

6.2.17	Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) Configuration Registers	72	
6.2.17.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	72	30h
6.2.17.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	72	60h
6.2.17.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	72	61h
6.2.17.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	72	62h
6.2.17.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	73	63h
6.2.17.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	73	70h
6.2.17.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	73	71h

6.2.18	Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI) Configuration Registers	73	
6.2.18.1	Logical Device Activate Register (LDA)	73	30h
6.2.18.2	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[15:8])	73	60h
6.2.18.3	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 0 (IOBAD0[7:0])	74	61h
6.2.18.4	I/O Port Base Address Bits [15:8] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[15:8])	74	62h
6.2.18.5	I/O Port Base Address Bits [7:0] for Descriptor 1 (IOBAD1[7:0])	74	63h
6.2.18.6	Interrupt Request Number and Wake-Up on IRQ Enable (IRQNUMX)	74	70h
6.2.18.7	Interrupt Request Type Select (IRQTP)	74	71h

6.3	Shared Memory Flash Interface Bridge (SMFI)	77	
6.3.4	EC Interface Registers	87	
6.3.4.1	FBIU Configuration Register (FBCFG)	88	1000h
6.3.4.2	Flash Programming Configuration Register (FPCFG)	89	1001h
6.3.4.3	Flash EC Code Banking Select Register (FECBSR)	89	1005h
6.3.4.4	Shared Memory EC Control and Status Register (SMECCS)	90	1020h
6.3.4.5	Shared Memory Host Semaphore Register (SMHSR)	90	1022h
6.3.4.6	Flash Control 1 Register (FLHCTRL1R)	91	1031h
6.3.4.7	Flash Control 2 Register (FLHCTRL2R)	91	1032h
6.3.4.8	Cache Disabled Register (CACHDISR)	92	1033h
6.3.4.9	uC Control Register (UCCTRLR)	92	1034h
6.3.4.10	Host Control 2 Register (HCTRL2R)	92	1036h
6.3.4.11	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 0 (ECINDAR0)	92	103Bh
6.3.4.12	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 1 (ECINDAR1)	93	103Ch
6.3.4.13	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 2 (ECINDAR2)	93	103Dh
6.3.4.14	EC-Indirect Memory Address Register 3 (ECINDAR3)	93	103Eh
6.3.4.15	EC-Indirect Memory Data Register (ECINDDR)	93	103Fh
6.3.4.16	Scratch SRAM 0 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR0L)	93	1040h
6.3.4.17	Scratch SRAM 0 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR0M)	93	1041h
6.3.4.18	Scratch SRAM 0 Address High Byte Register (SCAR0H)	94	1042h
6.3.4.19	Scratch SRAM 1 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR1L)	94	1043h
6.3.4.20	Scratch SRAM 1 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR1M)	94	1044h
6.3.4.21	Scratch SRAM 1 Address High Byte Register (SCAR1H)	94	1045h
6.3.4.22	Scratch SRAM 2 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR2L)	94	1046h
6.3.4.23	Scratch SRAM 2 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR2M)	94	1047h
6.3.4.24	Scratch SRAM 2 Address High Byte Register (SCAR2H)	95	1048h
6.3.4.25	Scratch SRAM 3 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR3L)	95	1049h
6.3.4.26	Scratch SRAM 3 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR3M)	95	104Ah
6.3.4.27	Scratch SRAM 3 Address High Byte Register (SCAR3H)	95	104Bh
6.3.4.28	Scratch SRAM 4 Address Low Byte Register (SCAR4L)	95	104Ch
6.3.4.29	Scratch SRAM 4 Address Middle Byte Register (SCAR4M)	95	104Dh

6.3.4.30	Scratch SRAM 4 Address High Byte Register (SCAR4H)	96	104Eh
6.3.4.31	Protect 0 Base Addr Register 0 (P0BA0R)	96	104Fh
6.3.4.32	Protect 0 Base Addr Register 1 (P0BA1R)	96	1050h
6.3.4.33	Protect 0 Size Register (P0ZR)	96	1051h
6.3.4.34	Protect 1 Base Addr Register 0 (P1BA0R)	98	1052h
6.3.4.35	Protect 1 Base Addr Register 1 (P1BA1R)	98	1053h
6.3.4.36	Protect 1 Size Register (P1ZR)	98	1054h
6.3.4.43	Deferred SPI Instruction (DSINST)	99	1055h
6.3.4.44	Deferred SPI Address 15-12 (DSADR1)	99	1056h
6.3.4.45	Deferred SPI Address 23-16 (DSADR2)	100	1057h
6.3.4.46	Host Instruction Control 1 (HINSTC1)	100	1058h
6.3.4.47	Host Instruction Control 2 (HINSTC2)	100	1059h
6.3.4.52	Host RAM Window Control (HRAMWC)	102	105Ah
6.3.4.53	Host RAM Winodw 0 Base Address (HRAMW0BA[11:4])	103	105Bh
6.3.4.54	Host RAM Window 1 Base Address (HRAMW1BA[11:4])	103	105Ch
6.3.4.55	Host RAM Window 0 Access Allow Size (HRAMW0AAS)	103	105Dh
6.3.4.56	Host RAM Window 1 Access Allow Size (HRAMW1AAS)	104	105Eh
6.3.4.48	Flash Control Register 3 (FLHCTRL3R)	101	1063h
6.3.4.49	Flash Control Register 4 (FLHCTRL4R)	101	1064h
6.3.4.50	Security Host View Block Mode Select [15:8] (SHVBMS[15:8])	102	106Bh
6.3.4.51	Security Host View Block Mode Select [7:0] (SHVBMS[7:0])	102	106Ch
6.3.4.37	Protect 2 Base Addr Register 0 (P2BA0R)	98	1070h
6.3.4.38	Protect 2 Base Addr Register 1 (P2BA1R)	98	1071h
6.3.4.39	Protect 2 Size Register (P2ZR)	99	1072h
6.3.4.40	Protect 3 Base Addr Register 0 (P3BA0R)	99	1073h
6.3.4.41	Protect 3 Base Addr Register 1 (P3BA1R)	99	1074h
6.3.4.42	Protect 3 Size Register (P3ZR)	99	1075h
6.3.4.57	Host RAM Winodw 2 Base Address (HRAMW2BA[11:4])	104	1076h
6.3.4.58	Host RAM Winodw 3 Base Address (HRAMW3BA[11:4])	104	1077h
6.3.4.59	Host RAM Window 2 Access Allow Size (HRAMW2AAS)	105	1078h
6.3.4.60	Host RAM Window 3 Access Allow Size (HRAMW3AAS)	105	1079h
6.3.4.61	H2RAM EC Semaphore Interrupt Enable (H2RAMECSIE)	106	107Ah
6.3.4.62	H2RAM EC Semaphore Address (H2RAMECSA)	106	107Bh
6.3.4.63	H2RAM Host Semaphore Status (H2RAMHSS)	107	107Ch
6.3.4.64	Host Protect Authentication Data Register (HPADR)	108	107Eh
6.3.4.65	Flash Control Register 5 (FLHCTRL5R)	108	1080h
6.3.5	Host Interface Registers	108	
6.3.5.1	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 0 (SMIMAR0)	108	00h
6.3.5.2	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 1 (SMIMAR1)	109	01h
6.3.5.3	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 2 (SMIMAR2)	109	02h
6.3.5.4	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Address Register 3 (SMIMAR3)	109	03h
6.3.5.5	Shared Memory Indirect Memory Data Register (SMIMDR)	109	04h
6.3.5.6	Security Key Index Register (SECKIR)	109	05h
6.3.5.7	Security Key Data Register (SECKDR)	109	06h
6.3.5.8	Shared Memory Host Semaphore Register (SMHSR)	110	0Ch

7.2	Interrupt Controller (INTC)	193
7.2.4	EC Interface Registers	194
7.2.4.1	Interrupt Status Register 0-19 (ISR0 - ISR19)	196 1100h-1103h 1114h 1118h 111Ch 1120h 1124h 1128h

		112Ch
		1130h
		1134h
		1138h
		113Ch
		1140h
		1144h
		1148h
		114Ch
		1150h
7.2.4.2	Interrupt Enable Register 0-19 (IER0 - IER19)	197 1104h-1107h
		1115h
		1119h
		111Dh
		1121h
		1125h
		1129h
		112Dh
		1131h
		1135h
		1139h
		113Dh
		1141h
		1145h
		1149h
		114Dh
		1151h
7.2.4.3	Interrupt Edge/Level-Triggered Mode Register 0-19 (IELMR0 - IELMR19)	198 1108h-110Bh
		1116h
		111Ah
		111Eh
		1122h
		1126h
		112Ah
		112Eh
		1132h
		1136h
		113Ah
		113Eh
		1142h
		1146h
		114Ah
		114Eh
		1152h
7.2.4.4	Interrupt Polarity Register 0-19 (IPOLR0 - IPOLR19)	199 110Ch-110Fh
		1117h
		111Bh
		111Fh
		1123h
		1127h
		112Bh
		112Fh
		1133h
		1137h
		113Bh
		113Fh

		1143h
		1147h
		114Bh
		114Fh
		1153h
7.2.4.5	Interrupt Vector Register (IVCT)	200 1110h
7.2.4.6	8032 INT0# Status (INT0ST)	200 1111h
7.2.4.7	Power Fail Register (PFAILR)	201 1112h
7.15	EC Access to the Host Controlled Modules (EC2I Bridge)	389
7.15.4	EC Interface Registers	390
7.15.4.1	Indirect Host I/O Address Register (IHIOA)	390 1200h
7.15.4.2	Indirect Host Data Register (IHD)	390 1201h
7.15.4.3	Lock Super I/O Host Access Register (LSIOHA)	390 1202h
7.15.4.4	Super I/O Access Lock Violation Register (SIOLV)	391 1203h
7.15.4.5	EC to I-Bus Modules Access Enable Register (IBMAE)	391 1204h
7.15.4.6	I-Bus Control Register (IBCTL)	391 1205h
6.5	Keyboard Controller (KBC)	124
6.5.4	Host Interface Registers	125
6.5.4.1	KBC Data Input Register (KBDIR)	126 PnP
6.5.4.2	KBC Data Output Register (KBDOR)	126 PnP
6.5.4.3	KBC Command Register (KBCMDR)	126 PnP
6.5.4.4	KBC Status Register (KBSTR)	126 PnP
6.5.5	EC Interface Registers	127
6.5.5.1	KBC Host Interface Control Register (KBHICR)	127 1300h
6.5.5.2	KBC Interrupt Control Register (KBIRQR)	128 1302h
6.5.5.3	KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Status Register (KBHISR)	129 1304h
6.5.5.4	KBC Host Interface Keyboard Data Output Register (KBHIKDOR)	129 1306h
6.5.5.5	KBC Host Interface Mouse Data Output Register (KBHIMDOR)	129 1308h
6.5.5.6	KBC Host Interface Keyboard/Mouse Data Input Register (KBHIDIR)	130 130Ah
6.4	System Wake-Up Control (SWUC)	111
6.4.4	Host Interface Registers	115
6.4.4.1	Wake-Up Event Status Register (WKSTR)	115 00h
6.4.4.2	Wake-Up Event Enable Register (WKER)	116 02h
6.4.4.3	Wake-Up Signals Monitor Register (WKSMR)	116 06h
6.4.4.4	Wake-Up ACPI Status Register (WKACPIR)	117 07h
6.4.4.5	Wake-Up SMI# Enable Register (WKSMIER)	117 13h
6.4.4.6	Wake-Up IRQ Enable Register (WKIRQER)	118 15h
6.4.5	EC Interface Registers	118
6.4.5.1	SWUC Control Status 1 Register (SWCTL1)	119 1400h
6.4.5.2	SWUC Control Status 2 Register (SWCTL2)	120 1402h
6.4.5.3	SWUC Control Status 3 Register (SWCTL3)	120 1404h
6.4.5.4	SWUC Host Configuration Base Address Low Byte Register (SWCBALR)	120 1408h
6.4.5.5	SWUC Host Configuration Base Address High Byte Register (SWCBAHR)	121 140Ah
6.4.5.6	SWUC Interrupt Enable Register (SWCIER)	121 140Ch
6.4.5.7	SWUC Host Event Status Register (SWCHSTR)	122 140Eh
6.4.5.8	SWUC Host Event Interrupt Enable Register (SWCHIER)	123 1410h
6.6	Power Management Channel (PMC)	131
6.6.4	Host Interface Registers	136

6.6.4.1	PMC Data Input Register (PMDIR)	136	PnP
6.6.4.2	PMC Data Output Register (PMDOR)	136	PnP
6.6.4.3	PMC Command Register (PMCMDR)	136	PnP
6.6.4.4	Status Register (PMSTR)	137	PnP
6.6.5	EC Interface Registers	138	
6.6.5.1	PM Status Register (PMSTS)	139	1500h/10h
6.6.5.2	PM Data Out Port (PMDO)	139	1501h/11h
6.6.5.3	PM Data Out Port with SCI# (PMDOSCI)	139	1502h/12h
6.6.5.4	PM Data Out Port with SMI# (PMDOSMI)	140	1503h/13h
6.6.5.5	PM Data In Port (PMDI)	140	1504h/14h
6.6.5.6	PM Data In Port with SCI# (PMDISCI)	140	1505h/15h
6.6.5.7	PM Control (PMCTL)	141	1506h/16h
6.6.5.8	PM Interrupt Control (PMIC)	142	1507h/17h
6.6.5.9	PM Interrupt Enable (PMIE)	143	1508h/18h
6.6.5.10	Mailbox Control (MBXCTRL)	143	1519h
6.6.5.11	PMC3 Status Register (PM3STS)	144	1520h
6.6.5.12	PMC3 Data Out Port (PM3DO)	144	1521h
6.6.5.13	PMC3 Data In Port (PM3DI)	144	1522h
6.6.5.14	PMC3 Control (PM3CTL)	144	1523h
6.6.5.15	PMC3 Interrupt Control (PM3IC)	145	1524h
6.6.5.16	PMC3 Interrupt Enable (PM3IE)	145	1525h
6.6.5.17	PMC4 Status Register (PM4STS)	145	1530h
6.6.5.18	PMC4 Data Out Port (PM4DO)	146	1531h
6.6.5.19	PMC4 Data In Port (PM4DI)	146	1532h
6.6.5.20	PMC4 Control (PM4CTL)	146	1533h
6.6.5.21	PMC4 Interrupt Control (PM4IC)	146	1534h
6.6.5.22	PMC4 Interrupt Enable (PM4IE)	146	1535h
6.6.5.23	PMC5 Status Register (PM5STS)	147	1540h
6.6.5.24	PMC5 Data Out Port (PM5DO)	147	1541h
6.6.5.25	PMC5 Data In Port (PM5DI)	147	1542h
6.6.5.26	PMC5 Control (PM5CTL)	147	1543h
6.6.5.27	PMC5 Interrupt Control (PM5IC)	148	1544h
6.6.5.28	PMC5 Interrupt Enable (PM5IE)	148	1545h
6.6.5.29	16-byte PMC2EX Mailbox 0-15 (MBXEC0-15)	148	15F0h-FFh

7.5	General Purpose I/O Port (GPIO)	232
7.5.3	EC Interface Registers	232
7.5.3.1	General Control Register (GCR)	233 1600h
7.5.3.24	Port Data Registers A-J,M (GPDRA-J,M)	246 1601h~160Dh
7.5.3.26	Port Control n Registers (GPCRn, n = A0-M6)	248 1610h~16A6h
7.5.3.25	Port Data Mirror Registers A-J,M (GPDMRA-J,M)	247 1661h~166Dh
7.5.3.27	Output Type Registers A/B/D/E/F/H/J (GPOT A/B/D/E/F/H/J)	249 1671h/1672h/ 1674h/1675h/ 1676h/1678h 167Ah
7.5.3.17	General Control 16 Register (GCR16)	242 16E0h
7.5.3.18	General Control 17 Register (GCR17)	242 16E1h
7.5.3.19	General Control 18 Register (GCR18)	243 16E2h
7.5.3.20	General Control 19 Register (GCR19)	244 16E4h
7.5.3.21	General Control 20 Register (GCR20)	245 16E5h
7.5.3.22	General Control 21 Register (GCR21)	246 16E6h
7.5.3.23	General Control 22 Register (GCR22)	246 16E7h
7.5.3.2	General Control 1 Register (GCR1)	234 16F0h
7.5.3.3	General Control 2 Register (GCR2)	235 16F1h
7.5.3.4	General Control 3 Register (GCR3)	235 16F2h

7.5.3.5	General Control 4 Register (GCR4)	236 16F3h
7.5.3.6	General Control 5 Register (GCR5)	236 16F4h
7.5.3.7	General Control 6 Register (GCR6)	237 16F5h
7.5.3.8	General Control 7 Register (GCR7)	237 16F6h
7.5.3.9	General Control 8 Register (GCR8)	238 16F7h
7.5.3.10	General Control 9 Register (GCR9)	239 16F8h
7.5.3.11	General Control 10 Register (GCR10)	240 16F9h
7.5.3.12	General Control 11 Register (GCR11)	240 16FAh
7.5.3.13	General Control 12 Register (GCR12)	240 16FBh
7.5.3.14	General Control 13 Register (GCR13)	241 16FCh
7.5.3.15	General Control 14 Register (GCR14)	241 16FDh
7.5.3.16	General Control 15 Register (GCR15)	241 16FEh

7.9	PS/2 Interface	323
7.9.4	EC Interface Registers	324
7.9.4.1	PS/2 Control Register 1-3 (PSCTL1-3)	325 1700h-1702h
7.9.4.2	PS/2 Interrupt Control Register 1-3 (PSINT1-3)	325 1704h-1706h
7.9.4.3	PS/2 Status Register 1-3 (PSSTS1-3)	326 1708h-170Ah
7.9.4.4	PS/2 Data Register 1-3 (PSDAT1-3)	326 170Ch-170Eh

7.12	PWM	352
7.12.4	EC Interface Registers	356
7.12.4.1	Channel 0 Clock Prescaler Register (C0CPRS)	357 1800h
7.12.4.2	Cycle Time Register 0 (CTR0)	357 1801h
7.12.4.6	PWM Duty Cycle Register 0 to 7(DCRi)	358 1802h-1809h
7.12.4.7	PWM Polarity Register (PWMPOL)	358 180Ah
7.12.4.8	Prescaler Clock Frequency Select Register (PCFSR)	359 180Bh
7.12.4.9	Prescaler Clock Source Select Group Low (PCSSGL)	359 180Ch
7.12.4.10	Prescaler Clock Source Select Group High (PCSSGH)	360 180Dh
7.12.4.11	Prescaler Clock Source Gating Register (PCSGR)	361 180Fh
7.12.4.12	Fan 1 Tachometer LSB Reading Register (F1TLRR)	361 181Eh
7.12.4.13	Fan 1 Tachometer MSB Reading Register (F1TMRR)	361 181Fh
7.12.4.14	Fan 2 Tachometer LSB Reading Register (F2TLRR)	361 1820h
7.12.4.15	Fan 2 Tachometer MSB Reading Register (F2TMRR)	362 1821h
7.12.4.16	Zone Interrupt Status Control Register (ZINTSCR)	362 1822h
7.12.4.17	PWM Clock Control Register (ZTIER)	362 1823h
7.12.4.18	Channel 4 Clock Prescaler Register (C4CPRS)	363 1827h
7.12.4.19	Channel 4 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C4MCPRS)	363 1828h
7.12.4.20	Channel 6 Clock Prescaler Register (C6CPRS)	363 182Bh
7.12.4.21	Channel 6 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C6MCPRS)	363 182Ch
7.12.4.22	Channel 7 Clock Prescaler Register (C7CPRS)	364 182Dh
7.12.4.23	Channel 7 Clock Prescaler MSB Register (C7MCPRS)	364 182Eh
7.12.4.24	PWM Clock 6MHz Select Register (CLK6MSEL)	364 1840h
7.12.4.25	PWM5 Timeout Control Register (PWM5TOCTRL)	365 1844h
7.12.4.26	Color Frequency LSB Register (CFLRR)	365 1845h
7.12.4.27	Color Frequency MSB Register (CFMRR)	365 1846h
7.12.4.28	Color Frequency Interrupt Control Register (CFINTCTRL)	366 1847h
7.12.4.29	Tachometer Switch Control Register (TSWCTRL)	366 1848h
7.12.4.30	PWM Output Open-Drain Enable Register (PWMODENR)	367 1849h
7.12.4.3	Cycle Time Register 1 (CTR1)	357 1841h
7.12.4.4	Cycle Time Register 2 (CTR2)	357 1842h
7.12.4.5	Cycle Time Register 3 (CTR3)	358 1843h

7.11	Analog to Digital Converter (ADC)	329
7.11.4	EC Interface Registers	332
7.11.4.1	ADC Status Register (ADCSTS)	333 1900h
7.11.4.2	ADC Configuration Register (ADCCFG)	334 1901h
7.11.4.3	ADC Clock Control Register (ADCCTL)	334 1902h
7.11.4.4	ADC General Control Register (ADCGCR)	334 1903h
7.11.4.5	Voltage Channel 0 Control Register (VCH0CTL)	335 1904h
7.11.4.6	Calibration Data Control Register (KDCTL)	335 1905h
7.11.4.7	Voltage Channel 1 Control Register (VCH1CTL)	336 1906h
7.11.4.8	Volt Channel 1 Data Buffer LSB (VCH1DATL)	336 1907h
7.11.4.9	Volt Channel 1 Data Buffer MSB (VCH1DATM)	336 1908h
7.11.4.10	Voltage Channel 2 Control Register (VCH2CTL)	337 1909h
7.11.4.11	Volt Channel 2 Data Buffer LSB (VCH2DATL)	337 190Ah
7.11.4.12	Volt Channel 2 Data Buffer MSB (VCH2DATM)	337 190Bh
7.11.4.13	Voltage Channel 3 Control Register (VCH3CTL)	337 190Ch
7.11.4.14	Volt Channel 3 Data Buffer LSB (VCH3DATL)	338 190Dh
7.11.4.15	Volt Channel 3 Data Buffer MSB (VCH3DATM)	338 190Eh
7.11.4.16	Voltage Channel 0 Data Buffer LSB (VCH0DATL)	338 1918h
7.11.4.17	Voltage Channel 0 Data Buffer MSB (VCH0DATM)	338 1919h
7.11.4.18	Voltage Compare Scan Period (VCMPSCP)	339 1937h
7.11.4.19	Voltage Channel 4 Control Register (VCH4CTL)	339 1938h
7.11.4.20	Volt Channel 4 Data Buffer MSB (VCH4DATM)	340 1939h
7.11.4.21	Volt Channel 4 Data Buffer LSB (VCH4DATL)	340 193Ah
7.11.4.22	Voltage Channel 5 Control Register (VCH5CTL)	340 193Bh
7.11.4.23	Volt Channel 5 Data Buffer MSB (VCH5DATM)	341 193Ch
7.11.4.24	Volt Channel 5 Data Buffer LSB (VCH5DATL)	341 193Dh
7.11.4.25	Voltage Channel 6 Control Register (VCH6CTL)	341 193Eh
7.11.4.26	Volt Channel 6 Data Buffer MSB (VCH6DATM)	342 193Fh
7.11.4.27	Volt Channel 6 Data Buffer LSB (VCH6DATL)	342 1940h
7.11.4.28	Voltage Channel 7 Control Register (VCH7CTL)	342 1941h
7.11.4.29	Volt Channel 7 Data Buffer MSB (VCH7DATM)	343 1942h
7.11.4.30	Volt Channel 7 Data Buffer LSB (VCH7DATL)	343 1943h
7.11.4.31	ADC Data Valid Status (ADCDVSTS)	343 1944h
7.11.4.32	Voltage Compare Status (VCMPSTS)	344 1945h
7.11.4.33	Voltage Compare 0 Control Register (VCMP0CTL)	345 1946h
7.11.4.34	Voltage Comparator 0 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP0THRDATM)	346 1947h
7.11.4.35	Voltage Comparator 0 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP0THRDATL)	346 1948h
7.11.4.36	Voltage Compare 1 Control Register (VCMP1CTL)	346 1949h
7.11.4.37	Voltage Comparator 1 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP1THRDATM)	347 194Ah
7.11.4.38	Voltage Comparator 1 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP1THRDATL)	347 194Bh
7.11.4.39	Voltage Compare 2 Control Register (VCMP2CTL)	347 194Ch
7.11.4.40	Voltage Comparator 2 Threshold Data Buffer MSB (CMP2THRDATM)	348 194Dh
7.11.4.41	Voltage Comparator 2 Threshold Data Buffer LSB (CMP2THRDATL)	348 194Eh
7.11.4.42	Voltage Comparator Output Type Register (VCMPOTR)	348 194Fh
7.11.4.43	Voltage Comparator Lock Register (VCMPLR)	348 1952h
7.10	Digital to Analog Converter (DAC)	327
7.10.4	EC Interface Registers	327
7.10.4.1	DAC Power Down Register (DACPDRREG)	328 1A01h
7.10.4.2	DAC Data Channel 2~5 Register (DACDAT2~5)	328 1A02h-1A07h
7.3	Wake-Up Control (WUC)	209
7.3.4	EC Interface Registers	209
7.3.4.1	Wake-Up Edge Mode Register 1-14 (WUEMR1-WUEMR14)	210 1B00h-1B03h

		1B10h
		1B14h
		1B18h
		1B1Ch
		1B20h
		1B24h
		1B28h
		1B2Ch
		1B30h
7.3.4.2	Wake-Up Edge Sense Register 1-14 (WUESR1-WUESR14)	211 1B04h-1B07h 1B11h 1B15h 1B19h 1B1Dh 1B21h 1B25h 1B29h 1B2Dh 1B31h
7.3.4.3	Wake-Up Enable Register 1/3/4 (WUENR1, WUENR3, WUENR4)	211 1B08h 1B0Ah 1B0Bh

7.7	SMBus Interface (SMB)	261
7.7.4	EC Interface Registers	295
7.7.4.1	Host Status Register (HOSTA)	296 1C00h/1C11h 1C29h/1C35h
7.7.4.2	Host Control Register (HOCTL)	297 1C01h/1C12h 1C2Ah/1C36h
7.7.4.3	Host Command Register (HOCMD)	297 1C02h/1C13h 1C2Bh/1C37h
7.7.4.4	Transmit Slave Address Register (TRASLA)	298 1C03h/1C14h 1C2Ch/1C38h
7.7.4.5	Data 0 Register (D0REG)	298 1C04h/1C15h 1C2Dh/1C39h
7.7.4.6	Data 1 Register (D1REG)	298 1C05h/1C16h 1C2Eh/1C3Ah
7.7.4.7	Host Block Data Byte Register (HOBDB)	298 1C06h/1C17h 1C2Fh/1C3Bh
7.7.4.8	Packet Error Check Register (PECERC)	299 1C07h/1C18h 1C30h/1C3Ch
7.7.4.9	Receive Slave Address Register (RESLADR)	299 1C08h
7.7.4.11	Slave Data Register (SLDA)	299 1C09h
7.7.4.12	SMBus Pin Control Register (SMBPCTL)	300 1C0Ah/1C1Bh 1C31h/1C3Dh
7.7.4.13	Slave Status Register (SLSTA)	300 1C0Bh
7.7.4.14	Slave Interrupt Control Register (SICR)	301 1C0Ch
7.7.4.15	Notify Device Address Register (NDADR)	301 1C0Dh
7.7.4.16	Notify Data Low Byte Register (NDLB)	302 1C0Eh
7.7.4.17	Notify Data High Byte Register (NDHB)	302 1C0Fh
7.7.4.18	Host Control Register 2 (HOCTL2)	302 1C10h/1C21h 1C32h/1C3Eh
7.7.4.20	4.7 μ s Low Register (4P7USL)	303 1C22h
7.7.4.21	4.0 μ s Low Register (4P0USL)	304 1C23h
7.7.4.22	300 ns Register (300NSREG)	304 1C24h

7.7.4.23	250 ns Register (250NSREG)	304 1C25h
7.7.4.24	25 ms Register (25MSREG)	304 1C26h
7.7.4.25	45.3 μs Low Register (45P3USLREG)	304 1C27h
7.7.4.26	45.3 μs High Register (45P3USHREG)	305 1C28h
7.7.4.27	4.7 μs And 4.0 μs High Register (4p7A4P0H)	305 1C33h
7.7.4.19	Slave Interface Select Register (SLVISELR)	303 1C34h
7.7.4.10	Receive Slave Address Register 2 (RESLADR2)	299 1C3Fh
7.7.4.28	SMCLK Timing Setting Register A (SCLKTS_A)	305 1C40h
7.7.4.29	SMCLK Timing Setting Register B (SCLKTS_B)	306 1C41h
7.7.4.30	SMCLK Timing Setting Register C (SCLKTS_C)	306 1C42h
7.7.4.31	SMCLK Timing Setting Register D (SCLKTS_D)	307 1C43h
7.7.4.32	Master FIFO Control 1 Register (MSTFCTRL1)	307 1C45h
7.7.4.33	Master FIFO Status 1 Register (MSTFSTS1)	307 1C46h
7.7.4.34	Master FIFO Control 2 Register (MSTFCTRL2)	308 1C47h
7.7.4.35	Master FIFO Status 2 Register (MSTFSTS2)	308 1C48h
7.7.4.36	Host Nack Source (HONACKSRC) (A)(B)(C)(D)	309 1C49h/1C4Ah 1C4Bh/1C4Ch
7.7.4.37	Slave FIFO Threshold (SLVFTH)	309 1C4Dh
7.7.4.38	Master FIFO Threshold (MSTFTH)	309 1C4Fh
7.7.4.39	Master FIFO Threshold Enable (MFTHEN)	310 1C50h
7.7.4.40	Master FIFO Threshold Interrupt Status (MFTISTA)	311 1C51h
7.7.4.41	Slave FIFO Threshold Enable (SFTHEN)	311 1C58h
7.7.4.42	Slave FIFO Threshold Interrupt Status (SFTISTA)	312 1C59h
7.7.4.43	Slave FIFO Control Register (SFFCTL)	312 1C5Eh
7.7.4.44	Slave FIFO Status (SFFSTA)	312 1C5Fh
7.7.4.45	I2C Wr To Rd FIFO Register (I2CW2RF)	313 1C69h
7.7.4.46	I2C Wr To Rd FIFO Interrupt Status (IWRFISTA)	313 1C6Ah

7.4	Keyboard Matrix Scan Controller	217
7.4.4	EC Interface Registers	218
7.4.4.1	Keyboard Scan Out Low Byte Data Register (KSOL)	218 1D00h
7.4.4.2	Keyboard Scan Out High Byte Data 1 Register (KSOH1)	219 1D01h
7.4.4.3	Keyboard Scan Out Control Register (KSOCTRL)	219 1D02h
7.4.4.4	Keyboard Scan Out High Byte Data 2 Register (KSOH2)	219 1D03h
7.4.4.5	Keyboard Scan In Data Register (KSIR)	219 1D04h
7.4.4.6	Keyboard Scan In Control Register (KSICTRLR)	220 1D05h
7.4.4.7	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Control Register (KSIGCTRLR)	220 1D06h
7.4.4.8	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSIGOENR)	221 1D07h
7.4.4.9	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Data Register (KSIGDATR)	221 1D08h
7.4.4.10	Keyboard Scan In [7:0] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSIGDMRRR)	222 1D09h
7.4.4.11	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Control Register (KSOHGCTRLR)	223 1D0Ah
7.4.4.12	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSOHGOENR)	223 1D0Bh
7.4.4.13	Keyboard Scan Out [15:8] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSOHGDMMRRR)	224 1D0Ch
7.4.4.14	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Control Register (KSOLGCTRLR)	225 1D0Dh
7.4.4.15	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Output Enable Register (KSOLGOENR)	225 1D0Eh
7.4.4.16	Keyboard Scan Out [7:0] GPIO Data Mirror Register (KSOLGDMRRR)	226 1D0Fh
7.4.4.17	KSO0 Low Scan Data Register (KSO0LSDR)	226 1D10h
7.4.4.18	KSO1 Low Scan Data Register (KSO1LSDR)	227 1D11h
7.4.4.19	KSO2 Low Scan Data Register (KSO2LSDR)	227 1D12h
7.4.4.20	KSO3 Low Scan Data Register (KSO3LSDR)	227 1D13h
7.4.4.21	KSO4 Low Scan Data Register (KSO4LSDR)	227 1D14h
7.4.4.22	KSO5 Low Scan Data Register (KSO5LSDR)	227 1D15h
7.4.4.23	KSO6 Low Scan Data Register (KSO6LSDR)	227 1D16h
7.4.4.24	KSO7 Low Scan Data Register (KSO7LSDR)	228 1D17h
7.4.4.25	KSO8 Low Scan Data Register (KSO8LSDR)	228 1D18h

7.4.4.26	KSO9 Low Scan Data Register (KSO9LSDR)	228 1D19h
7.4.4.27	KSO10 Low Scan Data Register (KSO10LSDR)	228 1D1Ah
7.4.4.28	KSO11 Low Scan Data Register (KSO11LSDR)	228 1D1Bh
7.4.4.29	KSO12 Low Scan Data Register (KSO12LSDR)	228 1D1Ch
7.4.4.30	KSO13 Low Scan Data Register (KSO13LSDR)	229 1D1Dh
7.4.4.31	KSO14 Low Scan Data Register (KSO14LSDR)	229 1D1Eh
7.4.4.32	KSO15 Low Scan Data Register (KSO15LSDR)	229 1D1Fh
7.4.4.33	KSO16 Low Scan Data Register (KSO16LSDR)	229 1D20h
7.4.4.34	KSO17 Low Scan Data Register (KSO17LSDR)	229 1D21h
7.4.4.35	Scan Data Control1 Register (SDC1R)	230 1D22h
7.4.4.36	Scan Data Control2 Register (SDC2R)	230 1D23h
7.4.4.37	Scan Data Control3 Register (SDC3R)	231 1D24h
7.4.4.38	Scan Data Status Register (SDSR)	231 1D25h

7.6	EC Clock and Power Management Controller (ECPM)	257
7.6.3	EC Interface Registers	257
7.6.3.1	Clock Gating Control 1 Register (CGCTRL1R)	257 1E01h
7.6.3.2	Clock Gating Control 2 Register (CGCTRL2R)	258 1E02h
7.6.3.3	Clock Gating Control 3 Register (CGCTRL3R)	258 1E05h
7.6.3.4	PLL Control (PLLCTRL)	259 1E03h
7.6.3.5	Auto Clock Gating (AUTOCG)	259 1E04h
7.6.3.6	PLL Frequency (PLLREQR)	260 1E06h
7.6.3.7	Clock Gating Control 4 Register (CGCTRL4R)	260 1E09h

7.16	External Timer and External Watchdog (ETWD)	394
7.16.4	EC Interface Registers	395
7.16.4.1	External Timer 1/WDT Configuration Register (ETWCFG)	396 1F01h
7.16.4.2	External Timer 1 Prescaler Register (ET1PSR)	396 1F02h
7.16.4.3	External Timer 1 Counter High Byte (ET1CNTLHR)	396 1F03h
7.16.4.4	External Timer 1 Counter Low Byte (ET1CNTLLR)	397 1F04h
7.16.4.9	External Timer/WDT Control Register (ETWCTRL)	398 1F05h
7.16.4.11	External WDT Counter Low Byte (EWDCTNLLR)	398 1F06h
7.16.4.12	External WDT Key Register (EWDKEYR)	399 1F07h
7.16.4.10	External WDT Counter High Byte (EWDCTNLLHR)	398 1F09h
7.16.4.5	External Timer 2 Prescaler Register (ET2PSR)	397 1F0Ah
7.16.4.6	External Timer 2 Counter High Byte (ET2CNTLHR)	397 1F0Bh
7.16.4.7	External Timer 2 Counter Low Byte (ET2CNTLLR)	397 1F0Ch
7.16.4.8	External Timer 2 Counter High Byte 2 (ET2CNTLH2R)	397 1F0Eh

7.17	General Control (GCTRL)	400
7.17.4	EC Interface Registers	401
7.17.4.1	Chip ID Byte 1 (ECHIPID1)	402 2000h
7.17.4.2	Chip ID Byte 2 (ECHIPID2)	402 2001h
7.17.4.3	Chip Version (ECHIPVER)	402 2002h
7.17.4.4	Identify Input Register (IDR)	402 2004h
7.17.4.5	Reset Status (RSTS)	403 2006h
7.17.4.6	Reset Control 1 (RSTC1)	404 2007h
7.17.4.7	Reset Control 2 (RSTC2)	404 2008h
7.17.4.8	Reset Control 3 (RSTC3)	404 2009h
7.17.4.11	Base Address Select (BADRSEL)	406 200Ah
7.17.4.12	Wait Next Clock Rising (WNCKR)	406 200Bh
7.17.4.13	Special Control 1 (SPCTRL1)	406 200Dh
7.17.4.14	Reset Control Host Side (RSTCH)	407 200Eh

7.17.4.15	Generate IRQ (GENIRQ)	407 200Fh
7.17.4.10	Reset Control DMM (RSTDMMC)	405 2010h
7.17.4.9	Reset Control 4 (RSTC4)	405 2011h
7.17.4.16	Special Control 2 (SPCTRL2)	407 2012h
7.17.4.18	Port I2EC High-Byte Register (PI2ECH)	408 2014h
7.17.4.19	Port I2EC Low-Byte Register (PI2ECL)	408 2015h
7.17.4.20	BRAM Interrupt Address 0 Register (BINTADDR0R)	409 2019h
7.17.4.21	BRAM Interrupt Address 1 Register (BINTADDR1R)	409 201Ah
7.17.4.22	BRAM Interrupt Control Register (BINTCTRLR)	409 201Bh
7.17.4.17	Special Control 4 (SPCTRL4)	408 201Ch
7.17.4.23	SHA-1 Hash Control Register (SHA1HASHCTRLR)	409 202Dh
7.17.4.24	SHA-1 Hash Base Address Register (SHA1HBADDR)	410 202Eh

7.18	External GPIO Controller (EGPC)	411
7.18.4	EC Interface Registers	411
7.18.4.1	External GPIO Address Register (EADDR)	412 2100h
7.18.4.2	External GPIO Data Register (EDAT)	412 2101h
7.18.4.3	External GPIO Control Register (ECNT)	412 2102h
7.18.4.4	External GPIO Status Register (ESTS)	413 2103h
7.19	BRAM	414
7.19.5	EC Interface Registers	415
7.19.5.1	SRAM Byte n Registers (SBTn, n= 0-191)	416 22xxh

6.7	RTC-like Timer (RTCT)	149
6.7.4	Host Interface Registers	150
6.7.4.1	RTCT Bank 0 Register	152
6.7.4.1.1	Seconds Register (SECREG)	152 00h
6.7.4.1.2	Seconds Alarm 1 Register (SECA1REG)	152 01h
6.7.4.1.3	Minutes Register (MINREG)	153 02h
6.7.4.1.4	Minutes Alarm 1 Register (MINA1REG)	153 03h
6.7.4.1.5	Hours Register (HRREG)	153 04h
6.7.4.1.6	Hours Alarm 1 Register (HRA1REG)	153 05h
6.7.4.1.7	Day Of Week Register (DOWREG)	153 06h
6.7.4.1.8	Date Of Month Register (DOMREG)	154 07h
6.7.4.1.9	Month Register (MONREG)	154 08h
6.7.4.1.10	Year Register (YRREG)	154 09h
6.7.4.1.11	RTCT Control Register A (CTLREGA)	155 0Ah
6.7.4.1.12	RTCT Control Register B (CTLREGB)	156 0Bh
6.7.4.1.13	RTCT Control Register C (CTLREGC)	157 0Ch
6.7.4.1.14	RTCT Control Register D (CTLREGD)	158 0Dh
6.7.4.1.15	Date of Week Alarm 1 Register (DOWA1REG)	158 0Eh
6.7.4.1.16	Date of Month Alarm 1 Register (DOMA1REG)	158 Programmed
6.7.4.1.17	Month Alarm 1 Register (MONA1REG)	158 Programmed
6.7.4.2	RTCT Bank 1 Register	158
6.7.4.2.1	Seconds Alarm 2 Register (SECA2REG)	158 00h
6.7.4.2.2	Minutes Alarm 2 Register (MINA2REG)	159 01h
6.7.4.2.3	Hours Alarm 2 Register (HRA2REG)	159 02h
6.7.4.2.4	Date of Month Alarm 2 Register (DOMA2REG)	159 03h
6.7.4.2.5	Month Alarm 2 Register (MONA2REG)	159 04h
6.7.4.2.6	Date of Week Alarm 2 Register (DOWA2REG)	159 05h
6.7.4.3	RTCT I/O Register	160

6.7.4.3.1	RTCT Index Register of Bank 0 (RIRB0)	160 70h
6.7.4.3.2	RTCT Data Register of Bank 0 (RDRB0)	160 71h
6.7.4.3.3	RTCT Index Register of Bank 1 (RIRB1)	160 272h
6.7.4.3.4	RTCT Data Register of Bank 1 (RDRB1)	160 273h

7.20	Consumer IR (CIR)	417
7.20.4	Host Interface Registers	419
7.20.5	EC Interface Registers	420
7.20.5.1	CIR Data Register (C0DR)	420 2300h
7.20.5.2	CIR Master Control Register (C0MSTCR)	421 2301h
7.20.5.3	CIR Interrupt Enable Register (C0IER)	422 2302h
7.20.5.4	CIR Interrupt Identification Register (C0IIR)	423 2303h
7.20.5.5	CIR Carrier Frequency Register (C0CFR)	423 2304h
7.20.5.6	CIR Receiver Control Register (C0RCR)	425 2305h
7.20.5.7	CIR Transmitter Control Register (C0TCR)	428 2306h
7.20.5.8	CIR Slow Clock Control Register (C0SCK)	429 2307h
7.20.5.9	CIR Baud Rate Divisor Low Byte Register (C0BDLR)	430 2308h
7.20.5.10	CIR Baud Rate Divisor High Byte Register (C0BDHR)	430 2309h
7.20.5.11	CIR Transmitter FIFO Status Register (C0TFSR)	430 230Ah
7.20.5.12	CIR Receiver FIFO Status Register (C0RFSR)	431 230Bh
7.20.5.13	CIR Wake-Code Set Select Register (C0WCSSR)	431 230Ch
7.20.5.14	CIR Wakeup Code Length Register (C0WCL)	432 230Dh
7.20.5.15	CIR Wakeup Code Read/Write Register (C0WCR)	432 230Eh
7.20.5.16	CIR Wakeup Power Control/Status Register (C0WPS)	432 230Fh
7.20.5.17	CIR Scratch Register (CSCR)	433 2310h
7.20.5.18	CIR General Purpose Interrupt (CGPINTR)	433 -

7.23	Debugger (DBGR)	455
7.23.4	EC Interface Registers	457
7.23.4.1	Trigger 1 Address Low Byte Register (BKA1L)	457 2510h
7.23.4.2	Trigger 1 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA1M)	457 2511h
7.23.4.3	Trigger 1 Address High Byte Register (BKA1H)	458 2512h
7.23.4.4	Trigger 2 Address Low Byte Register (BKA2L)	458 2513h
7.23.4.5	Trigger 2 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA2M)	458 2514h
7.23.4.6	Trigger 2 Address High Byte Register (BKA2H)	458 2515h
7.23.4.7	Trigger 3 Address Low Byte Register (BKA3L)	458 2516h
7.23.4.8	Trigger 3 Address Middle Byte Register (BKA3M)	458 2517h
7.23.4.9	Trigger 3 Address High Byte Register (BKA3H)	458 2518h

7.21	Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI)	434
7.21.5	EC Interface Registers	436
7.21.5.1	SPI Data Register (SPIDATA)	437 2600h
7.21.5.2	SPI Control Register 1 (SPICTRL1)	437 2601h
7.21.5.3	SPI Control Register 2 (SPICTRL2)	438 2602h
7.21.5.4	SPI Start and End Status Register (SPISTS)	439 2603h
7.21.5.5	SPI Control Register 3 (SPICTRL3)	440 2604h

7.22	Serial Port (UART)	443
7.22.4	Host Interface Registers	443
7.22.5	EC Interface Registers	444
7.22.5.1	Receiver Buffer Register (RBR)	444 2700h
7.22.5.2	Transmitter Holding Register (THR)	444 2700h

7.22.5.6	Divisor Latch LSB (DLL)	447 2700h
7.22.5.3	Interrupt Enable Register (IER)	445 2701h
7.22.5.4	Interrupt Identification Register (IIR)	445 2701h
7.22.5.7	Divisor Latch MSB (DLM)	447 2701h
7.22.5.5	FIFO Control Register (FCR)	447 2702h
7.22.5.9	Line Control Register (LCR)	449 2703h
7.22.5.10	Modem Control Register (MCR)	450 2704h
7.22.5.11	Line Status Register (LSR)	450 2705h
7.22.5.12	Modem Status Register (MSR)	451 2706h
7.22.5.8	Scratch Pad Register (SCR)	448 2707h
7.22.5.13	EC Serial Port Mode Register (ECSPMR)	452 2708h

7.22	Serial Port (UART)	443
7.22.4	Host Interface Registers	443
7.22.5	EC Interface Registers	444
7.22.5.1	Receiver Buffer Register (RBR)	444 2800h
7.22.5.2	Transmitter Holding Register (THR)	444 2800h
7.22.5.6	Divisor Latch LSB (DLL)	447 2800h
7.22.5.3	Interrupt Enable Register (IER)	445 2801h
7.22.5.4	Interrupt Identification Register (IIR)	445 2801h
7.22.5.7	Divisor Latch MSB (DLM)	447 2801h
7.22.5.5	FIFO Control Register (FCR)	447 2802h
7.22.5.9	Line Control Register (LCR)	449 2803h
7.22.5.10	Modem Control Register (MCR)	450 2804h
7.22.5.11	Line Status Register (LSR)	450 2805h
7.22.5.12	Modem Status Register (MSR)	451 2806h
7.22.5.8	Scratch Pad Register (SCR)	448 2807h
7.22.5.13	EC Serial Port Mode Register (ECSPMR)	452 2808h

7.13	8-bit Timer (TMR)	372
7.13.4	EC Interface Registers	377
7.13.4.1	TMR Prescaler Register (PRSC)	377 2900h
7.13.4.2	Group Clock Source and Mode Select Register (GCSMS)	378 2901h
7.13.4.3	A0 Cycle Time Register (CTR_A0)	378 2902h
7.13.4.4	A1 Cycle Time Register (CTR_A1)	378 2903h
7.13.4.5	B0 Cycle Time Register (CTR_B0)	378 2904h
7.13.4.6	B1 Cycle Time Register (CTR_B1)	379 2905h
7.13.4.7	A0 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_A0)	379 2906h
7.13.4.8	A1 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_A1)	379 2907h
7.13.4.9	B0 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_B0)	379 2908h
7.13.4.10	B1 Duty Cycle Register (DCR_B1)	379 2909h
7.13.4.11	Channel Clock Group Select Register (CCGSR)	380 290Ah
7.13.4.12	TMR Clock Enable Register (TMRCE)	380 290Bh
7.13.4.13	TMR Interrupt Enable Register (TMRIE)	381 290Ch

7.14	Consumer Electronics Control (CEC)	384
7.14.2	EC Interface Registers	385
7.14.2.1	CEC Data Register (CECDR)	385 2E00h
7.14.2.2	CEC FIFO Status Register (CECFSTS)	385 2E01h
7.14.2.3	CEC Device Logical Address Register (CECDLA)	386 2E02h
7.14.2.4	CEC Control Register (CECCTRL)	386 2E03h
7.14.2.5	CEC Status Register (CECSTS)	386 2E04h
7.14.2.6	CEC Interrupt Enable Register (CECIE)	387 2E05h

7.14.2.7	CEC Operation Status Register (CECOPSTS)	388 2E06h
7.14.2.8	CEC Received Header Register (CECRH)	388 2E07h

7.8	Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI)	314
7.8.5	EC Interface Registers	317
7.8.5.1	Host Status Register (HOSTAR)	318 3000h
7.8.5.2	Host Control Register (HOCTRL)	319 3001h
7.8.5.3	Host Command (Write Data 1) Register (HOCMDR)	320 3002h
7.8.5.4	Host Target Address Register (HOTRADDR)	320 3003h
7.8.5.5	Host Write Length Register (HOWRLR)	320 3004h
7.8.5.6	Host Read Length Register (HORDLR)	320 3005h
7.8.5.7	Host Write Data (2-16) Register (HOWRDR)	320 3006h
7.8.5.8	Host Read Data (1-16) Register (HORDDR)	320 3007h
7.8.5.9	Host Control 2 Register (HOCTL2R)	321 3008h
7.8.5.10	Pad Control Register (PADCTRL)	321 300Eh
7.8.5.11	Received Write FCS Value (RWFCVS)	321 3009h
7.8.5.12	Received Read FCS Value (RRFCSV)	321 300Ah
7.8.5.13	Write FCS Value (WFCSV)	322 300Bh
7.8.5.14	Read FCS Value (RFCSV)	322 300Ch
7.8.5.15	Assured Write FCS Value (AWFCSV)	322 300Dh

7.1	8032 Embedded Controller (EC)	165
7.1.9	EC Internal Register Description	178
7.1.9.1	Port 0 Register (P0R)	179 80h
7.1.9.2	Stack Pointer Register (SPR)	179 81h
7.1.9.3	Data Pointer Low Register (DPLR)	179 82h
7.1.9.4	Data Pointer High Register (DPHR)	180 83h
7.1.9.5	Data Pointer 1 Low Register (DP1LR)	180 84h
7.1.9.6	Data Pointer 1 High Register (DP1HR)	180 85h
7.1.9.7	Data Pointer Select Register (DPSR)	180 86h
7.1.9.8	Power Control Register (PCON)	180 87h
7.1.9.9	Timer Control Register (TCON)	181 88h
7.1.9.10	Timer Mode Register (TMOD)	182 89h
7.1.9.11	Timer 0 Low Byte Register (TL0R)	182 8Ah
7.1.9.12	Timer 1 Low Byte Register (TL1R)	182 8Bh
7.1.9.13	Timer 0 High Byte Register (TH0R)	182 8Ch
7.1.9.14	Timer 1 Low Byte Register (TH1R)	183 8Dh
7.1.9.15	Clock Control Register (CKCON)	183 8Eh
7.1.9.16	Port 1 Register (P1R)	183 90h
7.1.9.17	Serial Port Control Register (SCON)	184 98h
7.1.9.18	Serial Port Buffer Register (SBUFR)	184 99h
7.1.9.19	Port 2 Register (P2R)	184 A0h
7.1.9.20	Interrupt Enable Register (IE)	185 A8h
7.1.9.21	Port 3 Register (P3R)	185 B0h
7.1.9.22	Interrupt Priority Register (IP)	185 B8h
7.1.9.23	Status Register (STATUS)	186 C5h
7.1.9.24	Timer 2 Control Register (T2CON)	186 C8h
7.1.9.25	Timer Mode Register (T2MOD)	187 C9h
7.1.9.26	Timer 2 Capture Low Byte Register (RCAP2LR)	187 CAh
7.1.9.27	Timer 2 Capture High Byte Register (RCAP2HR)	187 CBh
7.1.9.28	Timer 2 Low Byte Register (TL2R)	187 CCh
7.1.9.29	Timer 2 High Byte Register (TH2R)	187 CDh
7.1.9.30	Program Status Word Register (PSW)	188 D0h
7.1.9.31	Watch Dog Timer Control Register (WDTCON)	188 D8h

7.1.9.32	Accumulator Register (ACC)	188 E0h
7.1.9.33	B Register (BR)	189 F0h
7.1.9.34	Manual Prefetch Register (MPREFC)	189 F7h

9. DC Characteristics

Operating Conditions

VSTBY	3.3V±0.15V
VSTBY_FSPI (3.3V)	3.3V±0.15V
VSTBY_FSPI (1.8V)	1.8V±0.09V
VCC (3.3V).....	3.3V±0.15V
VCC (1.8V).....	1.8V±0.09V
AVCC.....	3.3V±0.05V
Operating Temperature (Ta)	-25°C to +85°C

Absolute Maximum Ratings

Applied Voltage of VSTBY_FSPI(1.8V), VCC(1.8V)	-0.3V to +2.1V
Applied Voltage of VSTBY, VSTBY_FSPI(3.3V), VCC(3.3V), AVCC	-0.3V to +3.6V
Input Voltage of 1.8V Interface....	-0.3V to VSUP+0.3V
Input Voltage of 3.3V Interface....	-0.3V to VSUP+0.3V
Input Voltage of 5.0V Interface.....	-0.3V to +5.8V

Input Voltage of 1.8V/3.3V

Optional Interface -0.3V to +3.6V

Storage Temperature -40°C to +125°C

Note: VSUP is VCC, VSTBY, VSTBY_FSPI or AVCC.

Comments

Stresses above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to this device. These are stress ratings only. Functional operation of this device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied, and exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

DC Electrical Characteristics

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Conditions
3.3V CMOS Interface					
V_{IL}	Input Low Voltage	—	—	0.8	
V_{IH}	Input High Voltage	2.0	—	—	
V_{IH}	Input High Voltage (5V tolerant pad)	2.0	—	—	
V_{OL}	Output Low Voltage	—	—	0.4	$I_{OL} = -2 \text{--} 16\text{mA}$
V_{OH}	Output High Voltage	2.4	—	—	$I_{OH} = 2 \text{--} 16\text{mA}$
V_{T-}	Schmitt Trigger Negative Going Threshold Voltage	0.8	—	—	
V_{T+}	Schmitt Trigger Positive Going Threshold Voltage	—	—	2.0	
I_{IL}	Input leakage Current	-10 μA	$\pm 1\mu\text{A}$	10 μA	no pull-up or pull-down
I_{OZ}	Tri-state Leakage Current	-10 μA	$\pm 1\mu\text{A}$	10 μA	no pull-up or pull-down
R_{pu}	Input Pull-Up Resistance	40K Ω	75K Ω	190K Ω	$V_I = 0\text{V}$
R_{pd}	Input Pull-Down resistance	40K Ω	75K Ω	190K Ω	$V_I = VSUP$
C_{in}	Input Capacitance	—	2.8pF	—	
C_{out}	Output Capacitance	2.7pF	—	4.9pF	
C_{bld}	Bi-directional Buffer	2.7pF	—	4.9pF	

Note : VSUP is VCC (3.3V), VSTBY, VSTBY_FSPI (3.3V) or AVCC.

1.8V CMOS Interface					
V_{IL}	Input Low Voltage	—	—	0.25*VSUP	
V_{IH}	Input High Voltage	0.75*VSUP	—	—	
V_{IH}	Input High Voltage (3.3V tolerant pad)	0.75*VSUP	—	—	
V_{OL}	Output Low Voltage	—	—	0.4	$I_{OL} = -2 \text{--} 16\text{mA}$
V_{OH}	Output High Voltage	0.75*VSUP	—	—	$I_{OH} = 2 \text{--} 16\text{mA}$
V_{T-}	Schmitt Trigger Negative Going Threshold Voltage	0.25*VSUP	—	—	
V_{T+}	Schmitt Trigger Positive Going Threshold Voltage	—	—	0.75*VSUP	
I_{IL}	Input leakage Current	-10 μA	$\pm 1\mu\text{A}$	10 μA	no pull-up or pull-down
I_{OZ}	Tri-state Leakage Current	-10 μA	$\pm 1\mu\text{A}$	10 μA	no pull-up or pull-down
R_{pu}	Input Pull-Up Resistance	80K Ω	200K Ω	510K Ω	$V_I = 0\text{V}$
R_{pd}	Input Pull-Down resistance	80K Ω	200K Ω	510K Ω	$V_I = VSUP$
C_{in}	Input Capacitance	—	2.8pF	—	
C_{out}	Output Capacitance	2.7pF	—	4.9pF	
C_{bld}	Bi-directional Buffer	2.7pF	—	4.9pF	

Note : VSUP is VCC (1.8V), VSTBY_FSPI (1.8V).

Table 9-1. Power Consumption

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Conditions
3.3V CMOS Interface					
I _{SLEEP}	V _{STBY} supply current if Crystal-Free	—	45 μA	—	Internal pull is disabled V _{IL} = GND V _{IH} = V _{STBY} No load

This page is intentionally left blank.

10.AC Characteristics

Figure 10-1. VSTBY Power-on Reset Timing

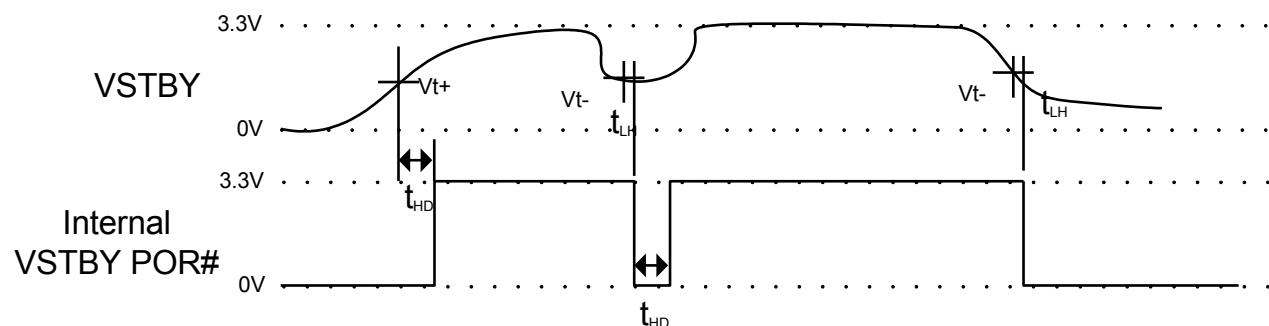


Table 10-1. VSTBY Power-on Reset AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Vt+	Level Detection Positive Going Threshold Voltage	—	2.6	—	V
Vt-	Level Detection Negative Going Threshold Voltage	—	Vt+ - 0.2	—	V
t _{HD}	Internal VSTBY POR Going High Delay	—	500	—	μs
t _{LH}	Minimum Hold Time after VSTBY < Vt- and before Internal VSTBY POR Going Low	—	10	—	μs

Figure 10-2. Reset Timing

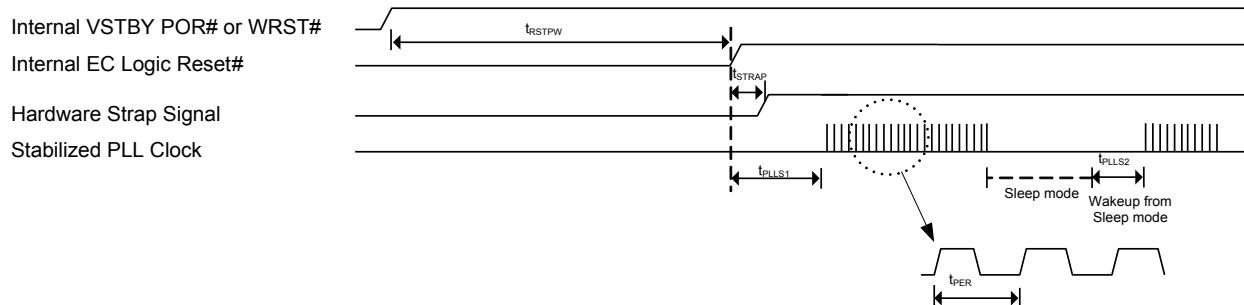


Table 10-2. Reset AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t _{RSTPW}	Internal EC logic reset after VSTBY POR or WRST#	—	1650	—	Tick (by 32.768 kHz)
t _{STRAP}	Strap sampling time	0	—	—	ns
t _{PLLS1}	PLL stabilization time hardware	—	5	—	ms
t _{PLLS2}	PLL stabilization time after waking up from Sleep mode	—	5	—	ms
t _{PER}	PLL clock period	—	1/FreqPLL	—	ns
FreqPLL	PLL clock frequency if PLLFREQ = 0001b	—	18.4	—	MHz
FreqEC	EC clock frequency	—	9.2	—	MHz
E _{cf1}	“Crystal-Free”: Center frequency of FreqPLL/FreqEC Temperature: 0 ~ 70°C	—	—	±1.7	%
E _{cf2}	“Crystal-Free”: Center frequency of FreqPLL/FreqEC Temperature: -25 ~ 85°C	—	—	±2.3	%

Figure 10-3. Warm Reset Timing

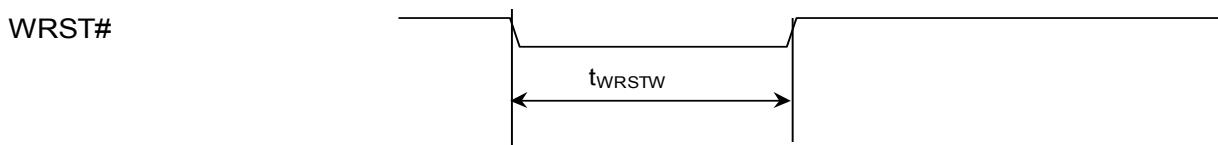


Table 10-3. Warm Reset AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t _{WRSTW}	Warm reset width	10	—	—	μs

Figure 10-4. Wakeup from Doze Mode Timing

INT0#, INT1#
8032 Clock

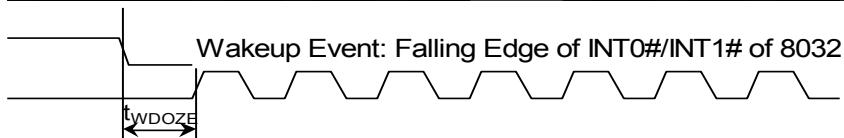


Table 10-4. Wakeup from Doze Mode AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{WDOZE}	Doze wakeup time from falling edge of INT0#/INT1# to rising edge of first 8032 clock.	—	—	2 / (EC Clock Freq)	—

Figure 10-5. Wake Up from Sleep Mode Timing

INT0#, INT1#
8032 Clock

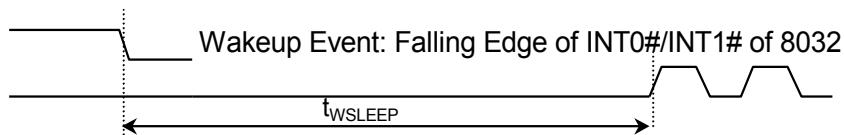


Table 10-5. Wake Up from Sleep Mode AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{WSLEEP}	Sleep wakeup time from falling edge of INT0#/INT1# to rising edge of first 8032 clock.	—	5	—	ms

Figure 10-6. Asynchronous External Wakeup/Interrupt Source Edge Detected Timing

WUx/INT28 (Rising Edge Mode)
WUx/INT28 (Falling Edge Mode)

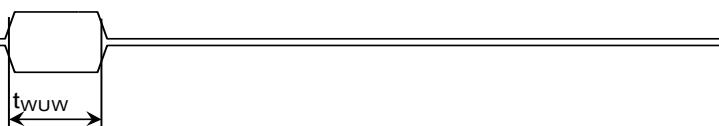


Table 10-6. Asynchronous External Wakeup/Interrupt Source Edge Detected AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{WUW}	Wakeup source pulse width	—	1	—	ns

Figure 10-7. LPC and SERIRQ Timing

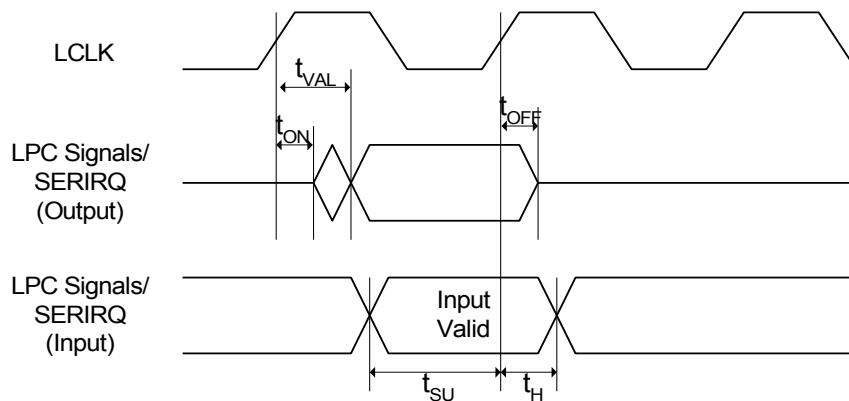


Table 10-7. LPC and SERIRQ AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{ON}	Float to Active Delay	3	—	—	ns
t_{VAL}	Output Valid Delay	—	—	12	ns
t_{OFF}	Active to Float Delay	—	—	20	ns
t_{SU}	Input Setup Time	7	—	—	ns
t_H	Input Hold Time	0	—	—	ns

Figure 10-8. SWUC Wake Up Timing

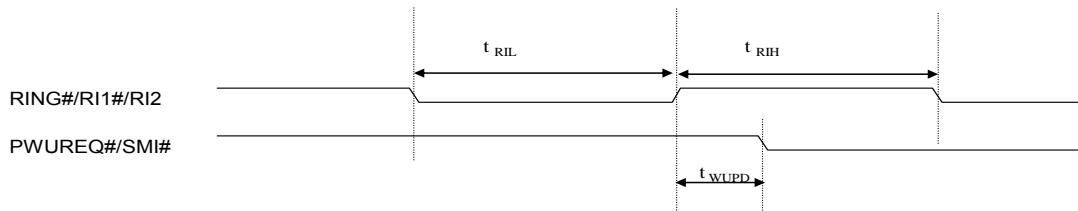
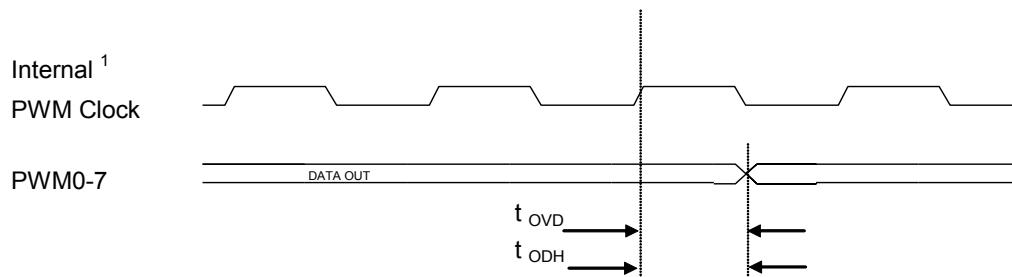


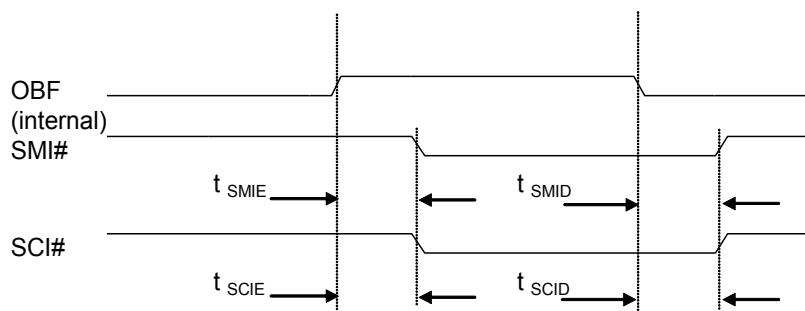
Table 10-8. SWUC Wake Up AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{RIL}	RING#, RI1#, RI2# Low Time	10	—	—	ns
t_{RH}	RING#, RI1#, RI2# High Time	10	—	—	ns
t_{WUPD}	Wake Up propagation delay time	—	20	—	ns

Figure 10-9. PWM Output Timing

Table 10-9. PWM Output AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{OVD}	PWM output valid delay time	—	—	0.5	T ^{NOTE1}
t_{ODH}	PWM output hold time	0	—	—	ns

Note 1: T is one time unit and its length is equal to the EC clock period X C0CPRS +1 (ns) for CH0~3, or X C4CPRS +1 (ns) for CH4~7.

Figure 10-10. PMC SMI#/SCI# Timing

Table 10-10. PMC SMI#/SCI# AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{SMIE}	OBF asserted to SMI# asserted time	—	10	—	ns
t_{SMID}	OBF de-asserted to SMI# de-asserted time	—	5	—	ns
t_{SCIE}	OBF asserted to SCI# asserted time	—	10	—	ns
t_{SCID}	OBF de-asserted to SCI# de-asserted time	—	5	—	ns

Figure 10-11. PMC IBF/SCI# Timing

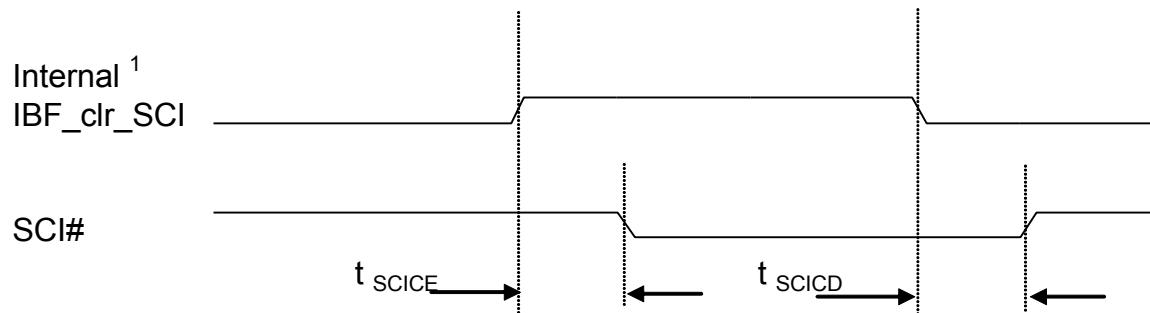


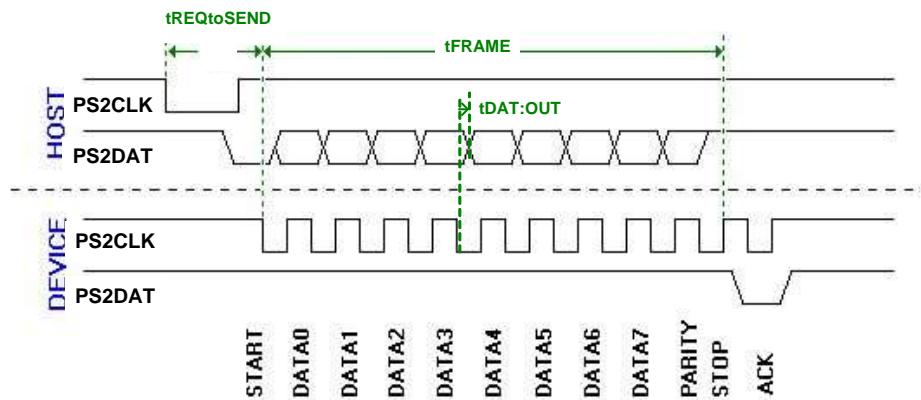
Table 10-11. PMC IBF/SCI# AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{SCICE}	IBF_clr_SCI# asserted to SCI# asserted time	—	70	—	ns
t_{SCICD}	IBF_clr_SCI# de-asserted to SCI# de-asserted time	—	40	—	ns

Note 1: IBF_clr_SCI# means the invert signal of IBF, IBF_clr_SCI# set to one when EC read PMDI or PMDISCI.

Figure 10-12. PS/2 Receive/Transmit Timing

Receive:



Transmit:

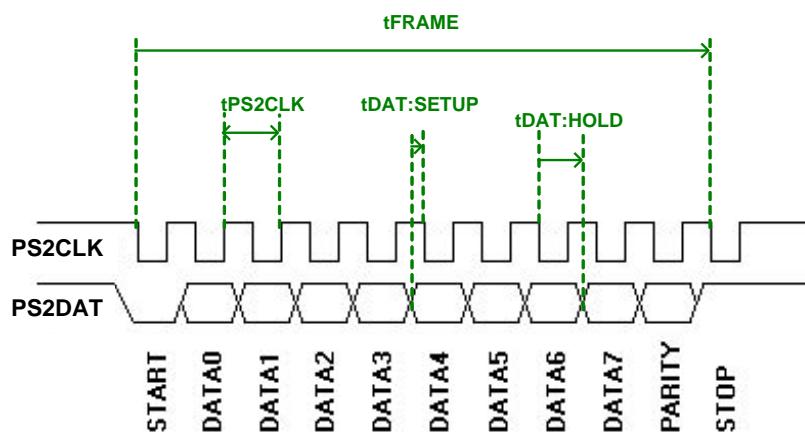


Table 10-12. PS/2 Receive/Transmit AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
$t_{REQtoSEND}$	PS/2 host Request to send and wait for PS/2 device responding by driving PS2CLK low	—	—	15	ms
t_{FRAME}	Duration of frame	—	—	2	Ms
$t_{DAT:OUT}$	Date output by PS/2 host following the falling edge of PS2CLK	400 ^{Note1} ns	—	1 ^{Note1} μs	—
		700 ^{Note2} ns	—	2 ^{Note2} μs	—
$t_{DAT:SETUP}$	Date setup time to falling edge of PS2CLK	1	—	—	μs
$t_{DAT:HOLD}$	Date hold time from falling edge of PS2CLK	1	—	—	μs
t_{PS2CLK}	PS/2 clock line period	60	—	100	μs

Note 1: DCEN@PSCTL1-3 = 0b

Note 2: DCEN@PSCTL1-3 = 1b

Figure 10-13. SMBus Timing

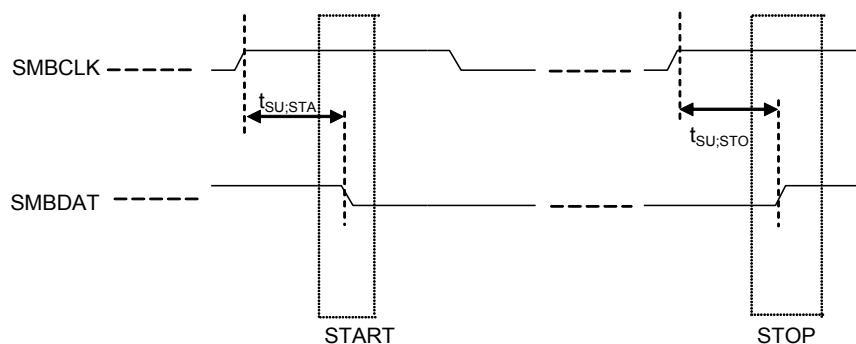
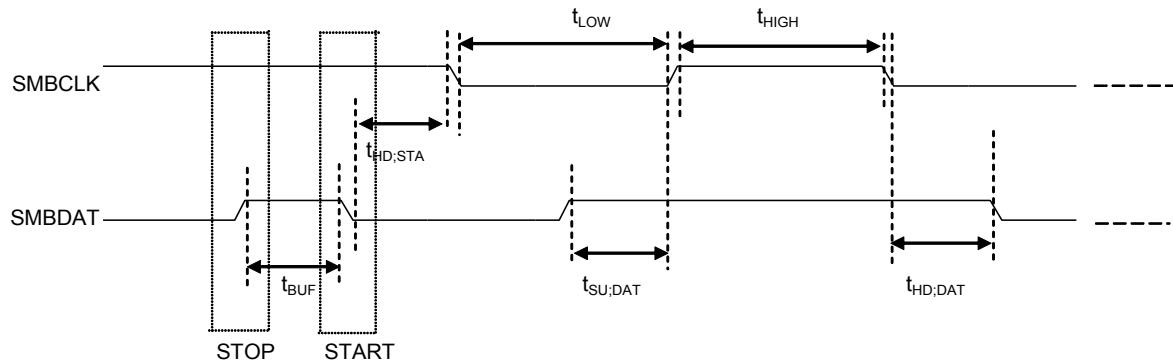
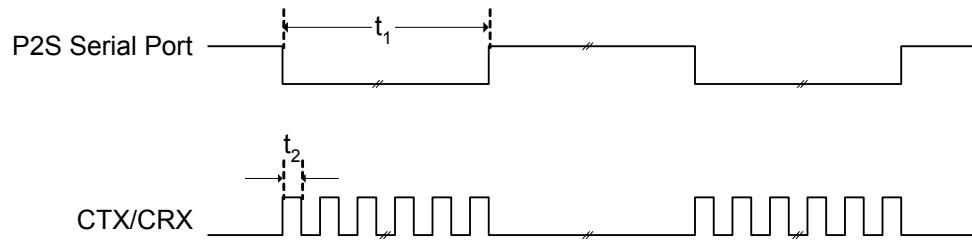


Table 10-13. SMBus AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{BUF}	Bus free time between Stop and Start condition	4.7	—	—	μs
$t_{HD;STA}$	Hold time after (Repeated) Start condition. After this period, the first clock is generated.	4.0	—	—	μs
t_{LOW}	Clock low period	4.7	—	—	μs
t_{HIGH}	Clock high period	4.0	—	50	μs
$t_{SU;DAT}$	Data setup time	250	—	—	ns
$t_{HD;DAT}$	Data hold time	300	—	—	ns
$t_{SU;STA}$	Repeated Start condition setup time	4.7	—	—	μs
$t_{SU;STO}$	Stop condition setup time	4.0	—	—	μs

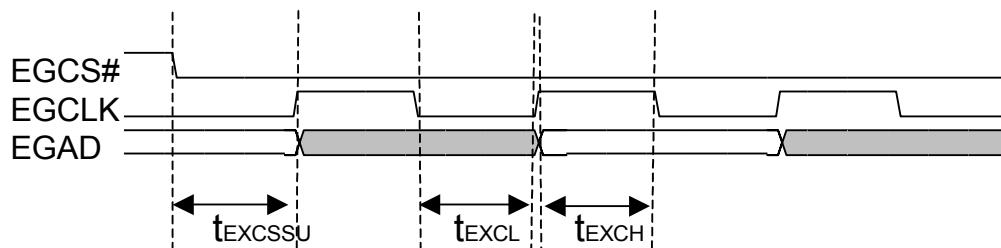
Figure 10-14. Consumer IR (CIR) Timing

Table 10-14. Consumer IR (CIR) AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min.	Max.	Unit
t_1	Single Bit Time in P2S of CIR	Transmitter	$t_{BTN} - Tclk$ ^{Note1}	$t_{BTN} + Tclk$ ^{Note1}	ns
		Receiver	$t_{BTN} - 2\%$	$t_{BTN} + 2\%$	ns
t_2	Modulation Signal Pulse Width in CTX0/CRX0 and CTX1/CRX1	Transmitter	$Tpwd - Tclk$ ^{Note2}	$Tpwd + Tclk$ ^{Note2}	ns
		Receiver	$Tpwd - 2\%$	$Tpwd + 2\%$	ns

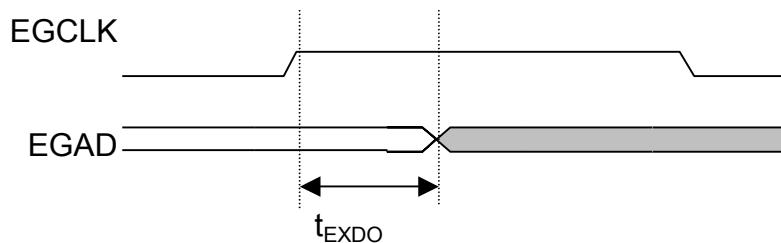
Note 1: t_{BTN} is the nominal bit time in Serial Port of P2S block of CIR. It is determined by the setting on the Baud Rate Divisor registers (C0BDHR/C0BDLR). $Tclk$ equals to $1/\text{FreqEC}$.

Note 2: $Tpwd$ is normal modulated pulse width on CTX0/CRX0 and CTX1/CRX1pin. It is determined by C0TCR registers.

Figure 10-15. External GPIO Controller Data Timing



Transmit:



Receive:

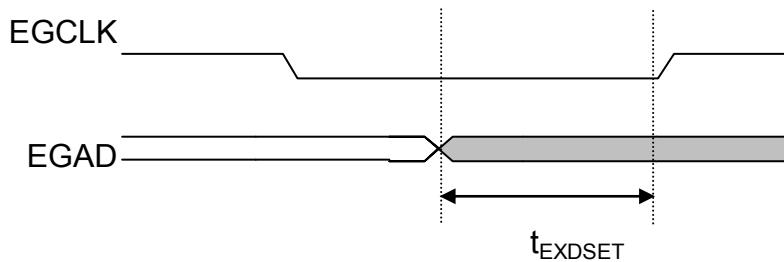
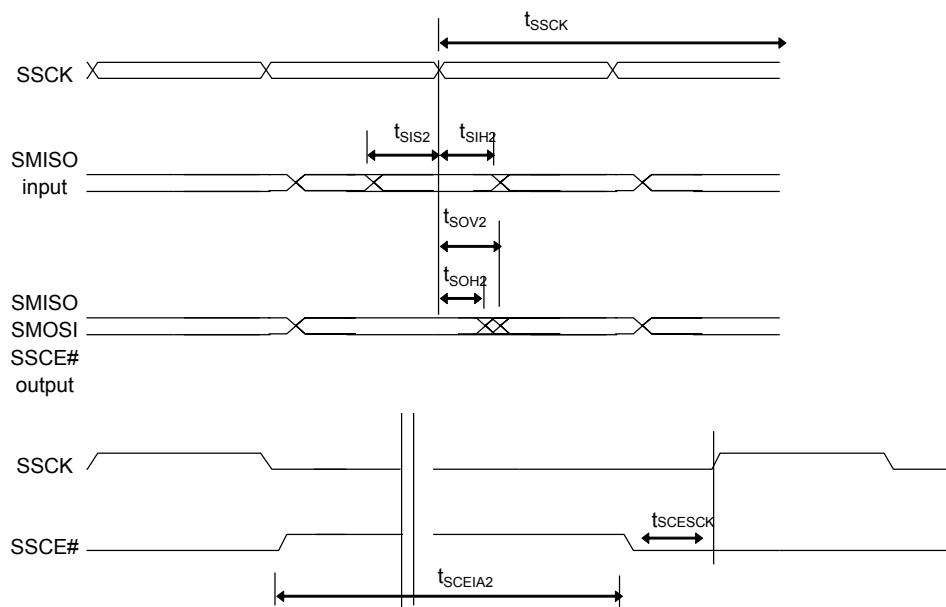
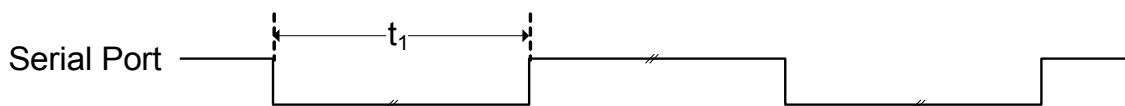


Table 10-15. External GPIO Controller Interface AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{EXCSSU}	EGCS# line input set up time	30	—	—	ns
t_{EXCL} , t_{EXCH}	EGCLK line period time	—	1/FreqEC	—	ns
t_{EXDO}	EGAD line output data time	—	—	50	ns
t_{EXDSET}	EGAD line input set up time	1	—	—	ns

Figure 10-16. Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) Timing

Table 10-16. Serial Peripheral Interface (SSPI) AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
t_{SSCK}	SSCK period	2/ FreqEC	—	16/ FreqEC	ns
t_{SIS2}	Input setup time	5	—	—	ns
t_{SIH2}	Input hold time	5	—	—	ns
t_{SOV2}	Clock edge to output valid	—	—	5	ns
t_{SOH2}	Output hold time	0	—	—	ns
t_{SCEIA2}	SSCE# inactive time	1/ FreqEC	—	—	ns
t_{SCESCK}	From SSCE# active edge to first SSCK active edge	—	2/ FreqEC	—	ns

Figure 10-17. Serial Port (UART) Timing

Table 10-17. Serial Port (UART) AC Table

Symbol	Parameter	Conditions	Min.	Max.	Unit
t_1	Single Bit Time in UART	Transmitter	$t_{BTN} - Tclk$ Note1	$t_{BTN} + Tclk$ Note1	ns
		Receiver	$t_{BTN} - 2\%$	$t_{BTN} + 2\%$	ns

Note 1: t_{BTN} is the nominal bit time in Serial Port (UART). It is determined by setting the Baud Rate Divisor registers. $Tclk$ equals to 1/ FreqEC. $Tclk$ equals to 1/ FreqEC.

This page is intentionally left blank.

11. Analog Device Characteristics

Table 11-1. ADC Characteristics

Parameter	Condition	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Resolution	—	—	10	—	Bit
Integral Non-linearity Error (INL)	—	—	—	± 4	LSB
Differential Non-linearity Error (DNL)	—	—	—	± 4	LSB
Offset Error	—	—	—	± 4	LSB
Gain Error	—	—	—	± 4	LSB
External Input Accuracy	—	—	—	± 4	LSB
ADC Input Voltage Range	—	0	—	3	V
ADC Input Leakage Current	$ADC0-9: 0 \leq Vin \leq AVCC$	—	± 1	—	μA
ADC Input Resistance	—	4	—	—	$M\Omega$
ADC Input Capacitance	—	—	—	8	pF
ADC Clock Frequency	—	—	0.5	—	MHz
Voltage Conversion Time	—	—	—	100	us

Note: INL / DNL calculated only within 0.25V ~ 2.85V.

Table 11-2. DAC Characteristics

Parameter	Condition	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit
Resolution	—	—	8	—	Bit
Integral Non-linearity Error (INL)	$AVCC = 3.3V$	—	—	± 1	LSB
Differential Non-linearity Error (DNL)	$AVCC = 3.3V$	—	—	± 1	LSB
DAC Output Voltage Range	—	0	—	$AVCC$	V
DAC settling time	$C_{load} = 50pF$	—	—	1	μs
DAC Output Resistance	$0 \leq Vout \leq AVCC$	3	—	800	Ω
DAC Output Capacitance	—	—	6.5	—	pF

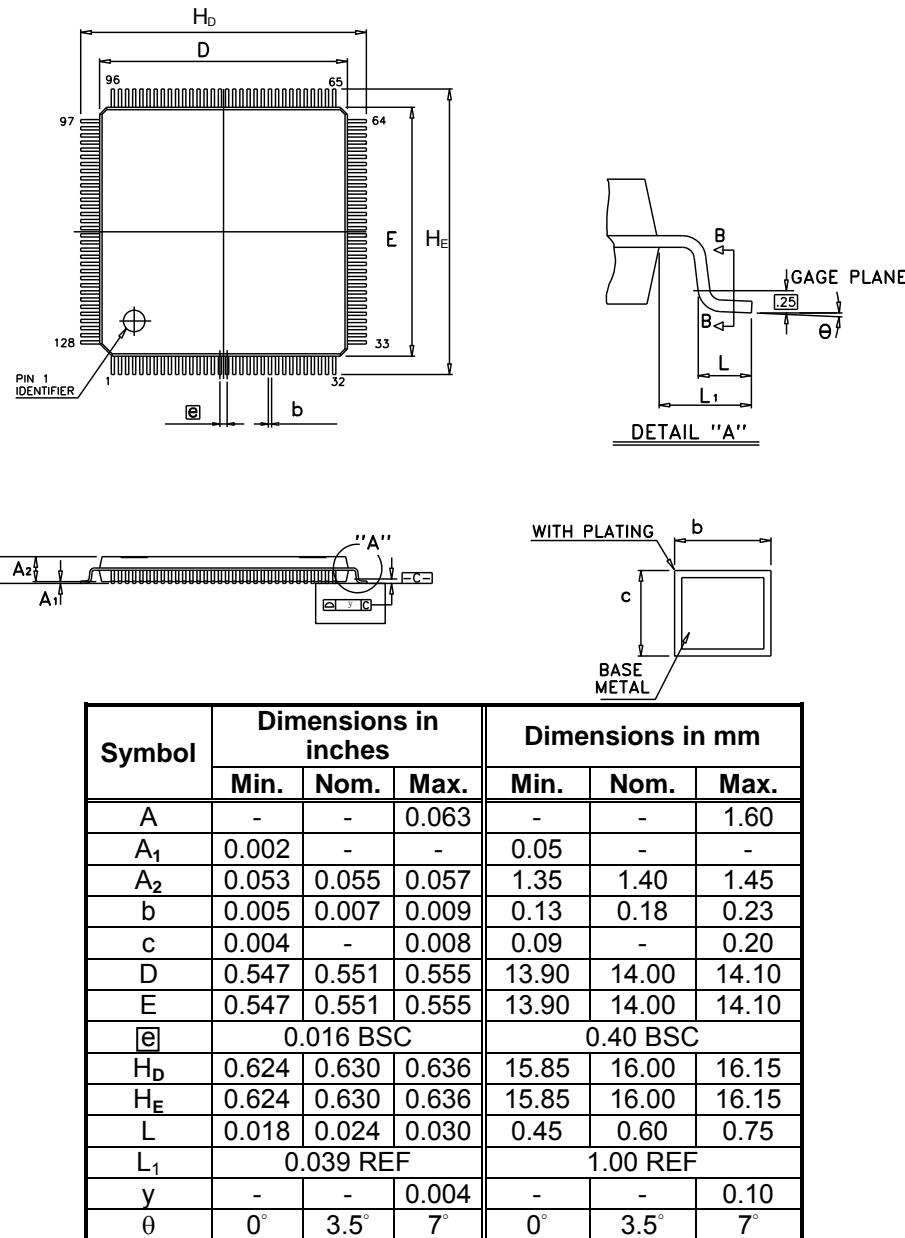
Note: $C_{load} = (\text{DAC Output Capacitance}) + (\text{External Load Capacitance})$

This page is intentionally left blank.

12. Package Information

LQFP 128 Outline Dimensions

unit: inches/mm



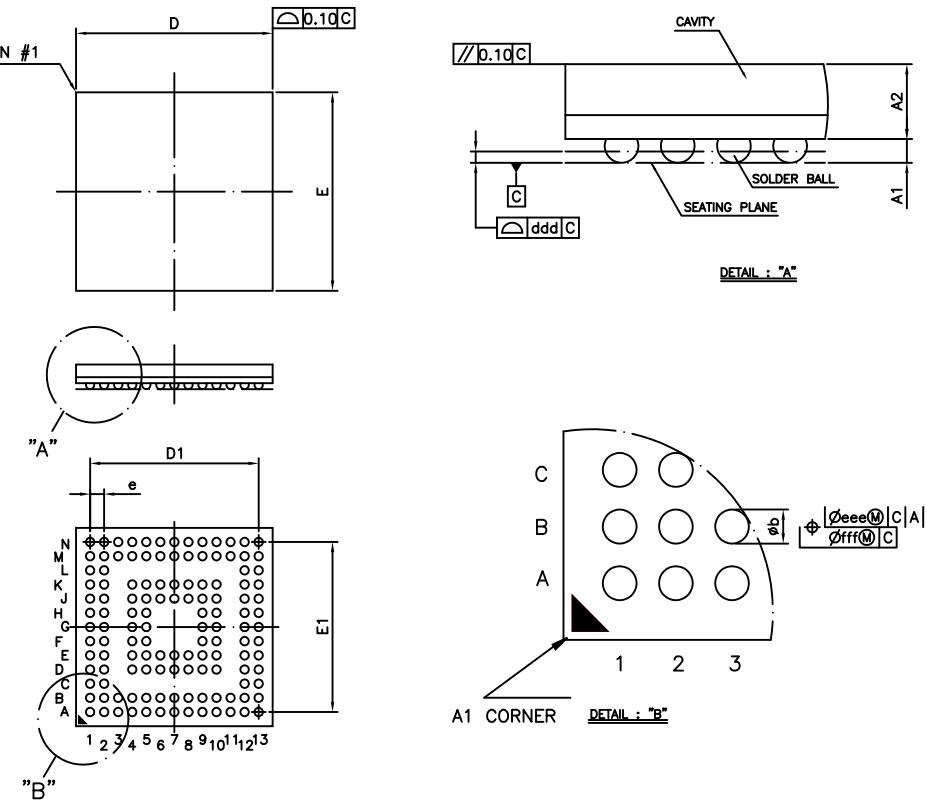
Notes:

1. Dimensions D and E do not include mold protrusion.
2. Dimensions b does not include dambar protrusion.
Total in excess of the b dimension at maximum material condition.
Dambar cannot be located on the lower radius of the foot.
3. Controlling dimension : Millimeter
4. Reference document : JEDEC MS-026

DI-LQFP128(14*14)v4

VFBGA 128 Outline Dimensions

unit: inches/mm



Symbol	Dimensions in inches			Dimensions in mm		
	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.
A	---	---	0.038	---	---	0.97
A1	0.006	0.008	0.010	0.16	0.21	0.26
A2	0.024	0.026	0.028	0.61	0.66	0.71
D	0.272	0.276	0.280	6.90	7.00	7.10
E	0.272	0.276	0.280	6.90	7.00	7.10
D1	0.236 BSC			6 BSC		
E1	0.236 BSC			6 BSC		
e	0.02 BSC			0.5 BSC		
b	0.010	0.012	0.014	0.25	0.30	0.35
ddd	0.003			0.08		
eee	0.006			0.15		
fff	0.003			0.08		
MD/ME	13/13			13/13		

Notes:

1. Controlling dimension : Millimeter.
2. Reference document: JEDEC MO-225

DI-VFBGA 128(7*7)v2

13. Ordering Information

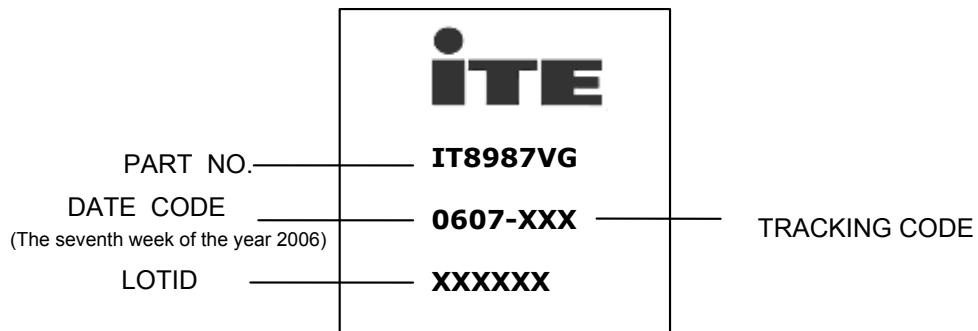
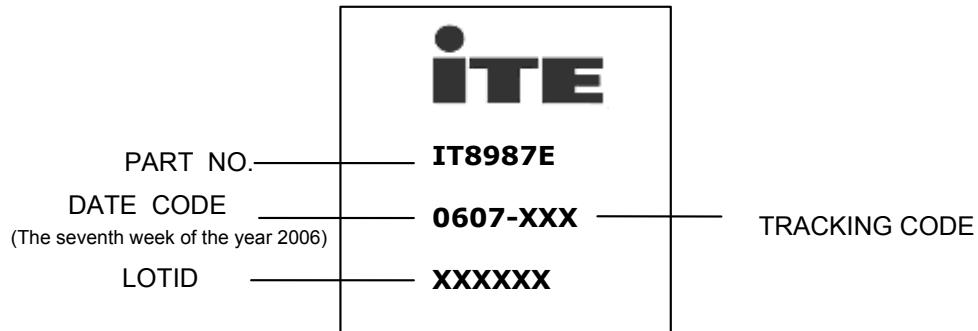
Part No.	Package
IT8987E/BX	LQFP 128
IT8987VG/BX	VFBGA 128

All components provided are RoHS-compliant (100% Green Available).

This page is intentionally left blank.

14. Top Marking Information

IT8987



0. PARTIES

ITE Tech. Inc. ("Seller") is a company headquartered in Taiwan, Republic of China, and incorporated under laws of Republic of China. Buyer is a company or an entity, purchasing product from ITE Tech. Inc.

1. ACCEPTANCE OF TERMS

BUYER ACCEPTS THESE TERMS (I) BY WRITTEN ACCEPTANCE (BY PURCHASE ORDER OR OTHERWISE), OR (II) BY FAILURE TO RETURN GOODS DESCRIBED ON THE FACE OF THE PACKING LIST WITHIN FIVE DAYS OF THEIR DELIVERY.

2. DELIVERY

- (a) Otherwise specified in the order agreed by Seller, delivery will be made Free Carrier (Incoterms), Seller's warehouse, Science-Based Industrial Park, Hsinchu, Taiwan.
- (b) Title to the goods and the entire risk will pass to Buyer upon delivery to carrier.
- (c) Shipments are subject to availability. Seller shall make every reasonable effort to meet the date(s) quoted or acknowledged; and if Seller makes such effort, Seller will not be liable for any delays.

3. TERMS OF PAYMENT

- (a) Terms are as stated on Seller's quotation, or if none are stated, net thirty (30) days. Accounts past due will incur a monthly charge at the rate of one percent (1%) per month (or, if less, the maximum allowed by applicable law) to cover servicing costs.
- (b) Seller reserves the right to change credit terms at any time in its sole discretion.

4. LIMITED WARRANTY

- (a) Seller warrants that the goods sold will be free from defects in material and workmanship and comply with Seller's applicable published specifications for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of Seller's delivery. Within the warranty period and by obtaining a return number from Seller, Buyer may request replacement or repair for defective goods.
- (b) Goods or parts which have been subject to abuse (including without limitation repeated or extended exposure to conditions at or near the limits of applicable absolute ratings) misuse, accident, alteration, neglect, or unauthorized repair or improper application are not covered by any warranty. No warranty is made with respect to custom products or goods produced to Buyer's specifications (unless specifically stated in a writing signed by Seller).
- (c) No warranty is made with respect to goods used in devices intended for use in applications where failure to perform when properly used can reasonably be expected to result in significant injury (including, without limitation, navigation, aviation or nuclear equipment, or for surgical implant or to support or sustain life) and Buyer agrees to indemnify, defend, and hold harmless Seller from all claims, damages and liabilities arising out of any such uses.
- (d) This Paragraph 4 is the only warranty by Seller with respect to goods and may not be modified or amended except in writing signed by an authorized officer of Seller.
- (e) Buyer acknowledges and agrees that it is not relying on any applications, diagrams or circuits contained in any literature, and by its conditions Buyer will test all parts and applications under extended field and laboratory conditions. Notwithstanding any cross-references or any statements of compatibility, functionality, interchangeability, and the like, the goods may differ from similar goods from other vendors in performance, function or operation, and in areas not contained in the written specifications, or as to ranges and conditions outside such specifications; and Buyer agrees that there are no warranties and that Seller is not responsible for such things.
- (f) EXCEPT AS PROVIDED ABOVE, SELLER MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS, EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY; AND SELLER EXPRESSLY EXCLUDES AND DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR APPLICATION.

5. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

- (a) Seller will not be liable for any loss, damage or penalty resulting from causes beyond its reasonable control, including but not limited to delay by others, force majeure, acts of God, or labor conditions. In any such event, the date(s) for Seller's performance will be deemed extended for a period equal to any delay resulting.
- (b) THE LIABILITY OF SELLER ARISING OUT OF THE CONTRACT OR ANY GOODS SOLD WILL BE LIMITED TO REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OR REPLACEMENT OF PURCHASED GOODS (RETURNED TO SELLER FREIGHT PRE-PAID) OR, WITH SELLER'S PRIOR WRITTEN CONSENT, REPAIR OF PURCHASED GOODS.
- (c) Buyer will not return any goods without first obtaining a customer return order number.
- (d) AS A SEPARATE LIMITATION, IN NO EVENT WILL SELLER BE LIABLE FOR COSTS OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS; FOR ANY SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES; OR LOSS OF USE, OPPORTUNITY, MARKET POTENTIAL, AND/OR PROFIT ON ANY THEORY (CONTRACT, TORT, FROM THIRD PARTY CLAIMS OR OTHERWISE). THESE LIMITATIONS SHALL APPLY NOTWITHSTANDING ANY FAILURE OF ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY REMEDY.
- (e) No action against Seller, whether for breach, indemnification, contribution or otherwise, shall be commenced more than one year after the cause of action has accrued, or more than one year after either the Buyer, user or other person knew or with reasonable diligence should have known of the matter or of any claim of dissatisfaction or defect involved; and no such claim may be brought unless Seller has first been given commercially reasonable notice, a full written explanation of all pertinent details, and a good faith opportunity to resolve the matter.
- (f) BUYER EXPRESSLY AGREES TO THE LIMITATIONS OF THIS PARAGRAPH 5 AND TO THEIR REASONABleness.

6. SUBSTITUTIONS AND MODIFICATIONS

Seller may at any time make substitutions for product ordered which do not materially and adversely affect overall performance with the then current specifications in the typical and intended use. Seller reserves the right to halt deliveries and shipments and alter specifications and prices without notice. Buyer shall verify that the literature and information is current before purchasing.

7. CANCELLATION

The purchase contract may not be canceled by Buyer except with written consent by Seller and Buyer's payment of reasonable cancellation charges (including but not be limited to expenses already incurred for labor and material, overhead, commitments made by Seller, and a reasonable profit).

8. INDEMNIFICATION

Seller will, at its own expense, assist Buyer with technical support and information in connection with any claim that any parts as shipped by Seller under the purchase order infringe any valid and enforceable copyright, or trademark, provided however, that Buyer (i) gives immediate written notice to Seller, (ii) permits Seller to participate and to defend if Seller requests to do so, and (iii) gives Seller all needed information, assistance and authority. However, Seller will not be responsible for infringements resulting from anything not entirely manufactured by Seller, or from any combination with products, equipment, or materials not furnished by Seller. Seller will have no

liability with respect to intellectual property matters arising out of products made to Buyer's specifications, code, or designs.

Except as expressly stated in this Paragraph 8 or in another writing signed by an authorized officer, Seller makes no representations and/or warranties with respect to intellectual and/or industrial property and/or with respect to claims of infringement. Except as to claims Seller agrees in writing to defend, BUYER WILL INDEMNIFY, DEFEND AND HOLD HARMLESS SELLER FROM ALL CLAIMS, COSTS, LOSSES, AND DAMAGES (INCLUDING ATTORNEYS FEES) AGAINST AND/OR ARISING OUT OF GOODS SOLD AND/OR SHIPPED HEREUNDER.

9. NO CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION

Seller shall have no obligation to hold any information in confidence except as provided in a separate non-disclosure agreement signed by both parties.

10. ENTIRE AGREEMENT

- (a) These terms and conditions are the entire agreement and the only representations and understandings between Seller and Buyer, and no addition, deletion or modification shall be binding on Seller unless expressly agreed to in writing and signed by an officer of Seller.
- (b) Buyer is not relying upon any warranty or representation except for those specifically stated here.

11. APPLICABLE LAW

The contract and all performance and disputes arising out of or relating to goods involved will be governed by the laws of R.O.C. (Taiwan, Republic of China), without reference to the U.N. Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods or to conflict of laws principles. Buyer agrees at its sole expense to comply with all applicable laws in connection with the purchase, use or sale of the goods provided hereunder and to indemnify Seller from any failure by Buyer to so comply. Without limiting the foregoing, Buyer certifies that no technical data or direct products thereof will be made available or re-exported, directly or indirectly, to any country to which such export or access is prohibited or restricted under R.O.C. laws or U.S. laws or regulations, unless prior authorization is obtained from the appropriate officials and agencies of the government as required under R.O.C. or U.S. laws or regulations.

12. JURISDICTION AND VENUE

The courts located in Hsinchu, Taiwan, Republic of China, will have the sole and exclusive jurisdiction and venue over any dispute arising out of or relating to the contract or any sale of goods hereunder. Buyer hereby consents to the jurisdiction of such courts.

13. ATTORNEYS FEES

Reasonable attorneys' fees and costs will be awarded to the prevailing party in the event of litigation involving and/or relating to the enforcement or interpretation of the contract and/or any goods sold under it.